00054499

NOT TO BE ISSUED
OUT OF THE LIBRARY.

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 23 January, 2019

A GRAMMAR OF THE TIN LANGUAGE

BY SIR WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.
AND THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A.

TWENTY-FIRST IMPRESSION

LONDON
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.
1910

Uniform with the present volume.

A Smaller Latin Grammar. For the Middle and Lower Forms in Schools. Abridged from the present Work. 12mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Student's Greek Grammar. For the Higher Forms. By Dr. GEORGE CURTIUS, Professor in the University of Leipzig. Edited by Sir WM. SMITH, D.C.L. Post 8vo. 6*s.*

A Smaller Greek Grammar. For the Middle and Lower Forms in Schools. Abridged from the above Work. 12mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

The Student's French Grammar; Practical and Historical. For the Higher Forms. By C. HERON-WALL. With an Introduction by LITTRÉ. Post 8vo. 6*s.*

A Smaller Grammar of the French Language. For the Middle and Lower Forms. Abridged from the above. 12mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

A School Manual of English Grammar; with Copious Exercises. By THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A. Revised Edition. Post 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

A Primary English Grammar for Elementary Schools. With numerous Exercises and Questions; also special Appendix on Parsing, with carefully graduated Exercises. Founded on the above Work. By THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A. 18mo. 1*s.*

A Manual of English Composition. With Copious Illustrations and Practical Exercises. By THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A. 12mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

00054499

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
LONDON AND BECCLES.

PREFACE TO THE NEW EDITION.

It was stated in the Preface to the original edition of the *Student's Latin Grammar* that it was intended to supply a twofold want. 1. It was designed to occupy an intermediate position between elaborate works such as those of Zumpt and Madvig, and treatises of a purely elementary nature; thus serving as a Manual of convenient size, and easy of reference for the class room, and at the same time containing, as far as possible, everything really needful for the Student. 2. In the second place, the Work was designed to introduce the Student to some of the linguistic discoveries of modern philologists; and more especially to make him acquainted with the laws which regulate the changes of the letters, and the formation of the Cases and Tenses, upon which subjects so much light has been thrown by the study of Comparative Grammar.

In the present edition, all the leading features of the original work have been preserved, and the arrangement of matter has been in the main adhered to; while at the same time great pains have been taken to supplement deficiencies and to render the book more thoroughly serviceable to those for whose use it is designed. In consequence of these additions, the present edition has been increased by about fifty pages.

The improvements introduced are chiefly the following:—

1. *The Accidence has been treated more fully and critically.*—In this part of the work Neue's invaluable Thesaurus [*Formenlehre der lateinischen Sprache*, Berlin, 2nd edition] has been constantly consulted. Also the chapter on the Formation of Cases (Part IV.) has been re-cast, and supplemented by a special chapter on Pronominal Inflexions (Chapter LXXI.). Besides Corssen, on whose researches this part of the work was originally based, special acknowledgment is due to Wordsworth's "*Fragments and Specimens of Early Latin, with Introduction*" (Oxford: Clarendon Press).

The chapter on the Gender of Nouns of the Third Declension (pp. 30–35) has been carefully re-studied. Some minor aids to memory in this department will, it is hoped, be found of service: especially the use of characteristic Adjectives with particular Nouns (as "mons sacer," "lūcidus ordo"), which the student may easily carry further for himself; and the arrangement of certain lists of words in such ways as to impress the memory either through the eye or by the principle of association. (See especially Masculines in "is," p. 32, which are arranged on the linking plan suggested by the ingenious Dr. Pick: fire—fire-brand; fire-brand—bellows; bellows—bread; bread—fish; etc.)

2. *The Syntax has been worked out with greater nicety of detail.*—While the chief aim has been, as before, to illustrate clearly the leading principles of the Latin language, fuller treatment has been accorded to peculiar points of usage and idiom: such as the special concords

of the Predicate and Relative (§§ 220, 222, 229); the construction of Verbs compounded with Prepositions (§§ 238, 239, 246; 292; 646); the extent of the use of the "epistolary" style (§ 398, *Obs.*); the discrimination of the Passive forms with "sum" and "fui," "eram" and "fueram," etc. (§ 401); the use of the Imperfect Subjunctive in wishes referring to the past (§ 446), where the Greek language employs a Past Indicative; of the Present or Past Tenses Subjunctive in Indirect Speech (§ 473). On these and similar points it is hoped that the information furnished will be found adequate to the purposes of the careful student, even if not in all cases sufficient for the advanced scholar. Special acknowledgment should here be made to Dräger's "*Historical Syntax of the Latin Language*" (Leipzig: Teubner); a work the fulness and accuracy of which will be attested by all who have had occasion frequently to consult it.

3. With certain obvious exceptions, which sufficiently explain themselves, *every citation from a Latin author has been carefully verified, and its precise place recorded.* — Many additional and important examples have also been added. In the cases of Cicero and Pliny, the number following the name of the particular speech, or number of "book," is that of the section, not of the chapter. Those who are in the habit of looking up references will appreciate the economy of time secured by this plan.

4. *The sections dealing with etymological and philological matter have been enlarged.*—In this department, and indeed throughout the work, special acknowledgment is due to Dr. J. K. Ingram, Fellow and Librarian of Trinity

College, Dublin, who kindly undertook to read the proofs, and while doing so from time to time offered many valuable suggestions.

The present edition has been prepared entirely by Mr. Hall, subject only to the editorial superintendence of Dr. William Smith.

W. S.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

CHAP.		PAGE
I.	The Alphabet	1
II.	Parts of Speech: Inflexion	5
III.	Nouns: Declension	6
IV.	First or A Declension	8
V.	Second or O Declension	10
VI.	Third or Consonant and I Declension	14
VII.	Remarks on some Peculiarities of Case-Endings in the Third Declension of Nouns and Adjectives and in Greek Nouns	25
VIII.	Gender of Nouns of the Third Declension	30
IX.	Fourth or U Declension	35
X.	Fifth or E Declension	37
XI.	Irregularities and Peculiarities of Nouns	38
XII.	Declension of Adjectives	40
XIII.	Comparison of Adjectives	45
XIV.	The Numerals	49
XV.	The Pronouns	54
XVI.	The Verb	63
XVII.	The Verb Sum and the Four Conjugations	66
XVIII.	Deponent Verbs	85
XIX.	Irregular Verbs	88
XX.	Defective Verbs	96
XXI.	Impersonal Verbs	98
XXII.	Analysis of Verbal Forms; Formation of Tenses; Peculiar Inflexions	100
XXIII.	List of Verbs with their Perfects and Supines	108
XXIV.	Adverbs	128
XXV.	Prepositions	133
XXVI.	Conjunctions	136

THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE

CHAPTER I.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 1. The Latin Language was the language of the people of *Latium*, of which Rome was the chief city. The conquests of the Romans caused it to spread over the rest of Italy and the greater part of Western continental Europe. The Latin Language is no longer spoken; but the Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese languages, together with those of part of Roumania and of the Grisons in Switzerland, are mainly derived from it.

§ 2. The Latin Alphabet was derived from the Phœnician, through the Greek. As now accepted, it consists of 25 letters, divided into Vowels and Consonants, being the same as the English without W.

Obs. 1. Cicero says (*de Nat. Deo.* ii. 37, 93) the alphabet contained 21 letters, which must have been *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, x*, without *j, v, y, z*. That *x* was the last letter of the alphabet in the time of Augustus, may be inferred from Suetonius (*Aug.* 88).

Obs. 2. The forms of the letters *j* and *v* are of comparatively modern origin; *i* originally represented both the vowel *i* and the semi-vowel *j* (probably pronounced *y*), and *u* the vowel *u* and the semi-vowel *v*. Thus jugum, *yoke*, was written iugum; and vox, *voice*, was written uox.

Obs. 3. The letters *y* and *z* occur only in words borrowed from the Greek. (For a fuller discussion of the several letters of the Alphabet, see Part IV.)

§ 3. *Classification of Vowels.*—The Vowels are a, e, i, o, u, [y], of which a (as in *fa*-ther) is the simplest and most elementary. e, i may be called lingual vowels, because the tongue is brought into play in articulating them—that is, in modifying the stream of vocal sound which issues from the larynx. The sound of e is 'lighter,' that is, less full and broad than that of a, and that of i lighter than that of e. o, u may be called labial vowels, the lips

being chiefly used in articulating them. The sound of o is lighter than that of a, and that of u than that of o. We thus obtain two series of vowel sounds, each starting from the fundamental sound a: viz.—

$$a < \begin{matrix} e & i \\ o & u \end{matrix}$$

Obs. Hence in word-formation, *a* often passes into *e* or *i*; as *căp*-io, ac-*cĭp*-io, ac-*cep*-tum; but *e*, *i* do not pass into *a*. Similarly *o* (which may sometimes be traced back to an original *a*) often passes into *u*: see p. 12, *Obs.* 1.

§ 4. *Classification of Consonants.*—(i) Consonants are classified according to the organ chiefly used in articulating them: e.g. *labials* or lip-consonants; *gutturals* or throat-consonants; *dentals* or teeth-consonants; etc. For some, the modifying action of two organs is necessary. Thus m is articulated by the combined action of lips and nose, and may therefore be described as a *nasal-labial.* Similarly n is a *nasal-dental;* and the sound of n(g) a *nasal-guttural:* thus uncus, *hooked,* is pronounced ung-cus. l, r are mainly articulated by means of the tongue, and may be called *linguals.*

(ii) *Mutes, Spirants.*—Again, some Consonants are capable only of a momentary sound, and cannot be articulated at all without a vowel, as, p, b. Such Consonants are called *Mutes.* Others have a continuous sound, and are capable of being articulated more or less perfectly without a vowel, as, f, v. These are called *Spirants.*

(iii) Consonants are further classified as *hard* [also, 'sharp' or 'thin': Lat. tenues] and *soft* [also, 'flat' or 'medial': Lat. mediae]. Thus p, k, t are hard or sharp, and b, g, d soft or flat.

CLASSIFIED TABLE OF CONSONANTS.

	Mutes.		Spirants.	
	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft
Labials.	p	b	f	v
Nasal-Labial	m			
Gutturals.	c (k) q	g	h [ch]	—
Nasal-Guttural	n(g)			
Dentals.	t	d	[th]	
Nasal-Dental	n			
Lingual-Dental			s	[z]
Linguals.	l r			

Obs. 1. *K* went gradually out of use, and was retained only before *a* at the beginning of a few words: as, Kălendae, the *Kalends*. Originally the same character represented the sounds of *C* and *G*. (See Part IV.) In proper names G. (C.) stands for Gaius (Caius) and Gn. (Cn.) for Gnaeus (Cnaeus).

Obs. 2. *Q* is used only in the combination of *qu* followed by a vowel: as sĕquor, *I follow*; quis, *who?*

Obs. 3. The Nasals are hard (sharp) only when immediately connected with a hard Mute: e.g. temp-lum, cant-o.

Obs. 4. The aspirated consonants ph, ch, th, occur only in isolated Latin words: as, trium-phus, Grac-chus, Otho. Cicero (Orat. 48, 160) says that these aspirated consonants were not used in old Latin.

Obs. 5. The guttural force of *h* is traceable in such words as vĕho, vectum; trăho, tractum; hiems (Gk. χειμ-ών), etc.

(iv) Certain Consonants are further classified as *Liquids* and *Sibilants*.

The *Liquids* are l, m̄, n̄, r.
The *Sibilants* are s, x, z.

X is compounded of *cs* or *gs:* as, dux=ducs, *leader;* rex=regs, *king.*

Obs. *X* is a compound letter, representing both the guttural and sibilant sounds united: but the sibilant sound preponderated.

§ 5. *Diphthongs.*—These arose from the rapid articulation of two vowels in succession, without a consonant to part them. Those of common occurrence in Latin are ae (æ), oe (œ), au. Besides these, ei, eu, ui, occur in isolated words.

§ 6. *Pronunciation.*—The ancient pronunciation of Latin is lost; but the following table represents approximately the mode in which the different letters were sounded, so far as it can be determined:—

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	ă =	English	*a* in *f*a*ther*. } never as in *f*a*te*.
,,	ā =	,,	*first a* in *a*way, or *a* in vill*a*. } never as in *f*a*te*.
,,	ă =	,,	*ai* in p*ai*n. Never as in s*ee*n.
,,	ae =	,,	*ai* in p*ai*n.
,,	oe =	,,	uncertain: akin to the sound of *u*.
,,	ĕ =	,,	*e* in m*e*n.
,,	ī =	,,	*i* in mach*i*ne. } never as in f*i*ne
,,	ĭ =	,,	*i* in p*i*ty. } never as in f*i*ne
,,	ō =	,,	*o* in gl*o*ry.
,,	ŏ =	,,	*o* in t*o*p.
,,	ū =	,,	*u* in r*u*le.
,,	ŭ =	,,	*u* in f*u*ll or *oo* in b*oo*k.
,,	y =	,,	probably French *u* or German *ü*.

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS—*continued.*

Latin	au	= English	*ow* in p*ow*er.
„	ei	= „	Latin ē followed quickly by Latin i (differing little from *ai* in pl*ai*n).
„	eu	= „	Latin ĕ followed quickly by Latin ŭ (as in modern Italian).
	ui	= „	perhaps as long ī.

CONSONANTS.

Latin	c, ch	= English	*k*.
„	g	= „	*g* in *g*et.
„	s	= „	*s* in *s*in.
„	t	= „	*t* in *t*in, never *sh*, as in na*t*ion.
„	j	= „	*y* in *y*ard.
„	v	= „	probably intermediate between *v* and *w*, similar to *w* in modern German.
„	z	= „	*z*, or perhaps *j* or *dz*.

Latin s between two vowels=(sometimes) English *s* in ro*s*e, *e.g.* 'rosa.'

Obs. For some centuries past, Latin has been pronounced in this country according to the analogy of our own language; and this usage still largely prevails: e.g. vēnī, old Latin pronunciation *vay-nee;* traditional English pronunciation, *vee-ny;* mātrī, old Lat. pron. *mah-tree;* traditional English pronunciation, *may-try;* cingĕrĕ, old Lat. pron. *kinghere;* traditional English pronunciation, *sinjere.*

§ 7. *Syllables, Quantity.*—A Syllable consists of one or more articulate sounds pronounced with one impulse of the voice, and having only one vowel or diphthong: as, mā-ter, men-sae.

A Vowel is said to be *long* when the voice dwells upon it in pronunciation: as, mā-lā. A vowel is short when the voice passes over it without any pause: as, mă-lă. In grammars and lexicons the long sound of a vowel is indicated by (¯): as, mā-lum, *apple:* and the short sound by (˘): as, mă-lum, *evil.* This characteristic of a vowel is called its Quantity.

In some words the Quantity fluctuates between long and short: as, lŏcŭples and lŏcŭples. Such vowels or syllables are called *doubtful* or *common*, and are sometimes marked thus (˘¯). (In the present work such vowels are as a rule given without any mark of quantity.)

The Quantity of a syllable does not depend exclusively upon the vowel. If the vowel is naturally long, the syllable is of course long: as vī-vo, vī-xi. But a combination of letters, consisting of a vowel naturally short followed by two or more consonants, is also considered as constituting a long syllable: thus, from root fĭg- *(to mould),*

como fingo, fictus, fictĭlis, in all of which the first syllable is metrically long. The vowel is then said to be long 'by position.'

A vowel followed by a vowel in the next syllable is generally short: as, fīlĭus, *a son*, fīlĭa, *a daughter*, pŭer, *a boy*. (In the present work such vowels are as a rule unmarked.)

Sometimes a vowel is long both by nature and by position: as, mēnsa (from mēt-ior); rōstrum (from rōdo). It should then, strictly, retain its long sound in pronunciation, as mēn-sa; but this rule is not commonly observed.

Obs. When a vowel naturally short is followed by a mute and either of the liquids l, r, the quantity of the syllable is doubtful: e.g. tenĕbrae or tenēbrae, *darkness*.

§ 8. *Accent.*—In words of two syllables the accent is on the first syllable: as músa, *a muse*, dólus, *deceit*.

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the penultimate, i.e. the last syllable but one, if this syllable is long: as, Rōmānus, *a Roman*; or on the antepenultimate, i.e. the last syllable but two, if the penultimate is short: as, dŏmĭnus, *a lord*.

Obs. The Accents are not written in Latin.

CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH: INFLEXION.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech: Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, Interjection.

Obs. There are no 'Articles' in Latin: thus, dōmus (*house*) may be translated either *a house*, or *the house*, according to the context.

§ 10. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected: that is, they undergo various changes of form, expressing modifications of meaning or relation. The inflexion of Nouns, Adjectives and Pronouns to denote Case, Number, and Gender, is called Declension; the inflexion of Verbs is called Conjugation.

The remaining parts of speech are uninflected.

§ 11. Roots and *Stems*.—All words are traced back to certain earlier forms called *roots*; from which Nouns, Verbs and other words are formed by the addition of prefixes and suffixes, or by internal change. Thus the Latin

root frăg- means *break;* and from it are derived the Verb frang-ĕre, *to break*, with Perfect Tense frēg-i; the Noun frăg-or, *a crash;* the Adjective frăg-ĭlis, *liable to be broken, brittle;* with such compounds as re-fring-ĕre, *to break back;* ef-fring-ĕre, *to break open;* etc.

§ 12. All words alike are traced back to Roots. *Stems* belong to inflected words only. The Stem of a Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, or Verb is that part to which the variable elements are attached. Thus in rex (=reg-s), *king*, rēg-ĭs, *of a king*, rēg-um, *of kings*, the stem is rēg-; and in ămā-rĕ, *to love*, ămā-bam, *I was loving*, etc., the Stem is āma-. See Chapter XXIX.

Chapter III.—Nouns: Declension.

§ 13. Nouns are inflected to indicate Gender, Number and Case.

Gender.—There are three Genders, *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*. The Masculine comprises the names of males; the Feminine, of females. Thus rex, *king*, and păter, *father*, are Masculine; while rēgīna, *queen*, and māter, *mother*, are Feminine. Nouns denoting objects without sex are called *Neuter*, i.e. *neither* Masculine nor Feminine.

But while Nouns denoting males are invariably Masculine, and Nouns denoting females invariably Feminine, an immense number of Nouns denoting objects without sex are included among Masculines and Feminines. Thus ignĭs, *fire*, is Masculine; while ăquă, *water*, is Feminine. The ground of classification here is in some cases mythological or imaginative; but in most, that of termination. (See Gender Rules, p. 30.)

Nouns, which may be either Masculine or Feminine, are called *Common;* as părens, *a parent.*

§ 14. *Number.*—There are two Numbers; *Singular* and *Plural.*

Obs. Traces of a Dual are found in the Numeral Adjectives, duo, *two;* ambo, *both.*

§ 15. *Cases.*—Cases are the different forms which a Noun assumes to denote its varying relations to other words.

There are six Cases in Latin: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative.

Obs. The greatest number of Cases found in any Indo-European language is eight. The Sanskrit language has eight Cases; being the same as the Latin with the addition of a Locative and an Instrumental. Abundant traces of a Locative Case remain in Latin: as, dŏmī, *at home;* rūrī, *in the country;* Cŏrinthī, *at Corinth.* (See also §§ 17, 18, *Observations on the Cases.*) The function of an Instrumental Case is discharged by the Ablative. (Concerning the suffixes of the cases, see Part IV.)

§ 16. *Declensions.*—Nouns are arranged in Declensions, according to the ways in which their Cases are formed. There are Five Declensions.

(i) The First Declension consists of Nouns whose Stems end in **a**; forming the Genitive Singular in **ae**, and the Genitive Plural in **-ārum**: as, mens-a, *table*, mens-ae, mens-ārum (stem: **mensa-**).

(ii) The Second Declension consists of Stems in **o** (passing into **u**); forming the Genitive Singular in **i** and the Genitive Plural in **ōrum**: as, ăvŭs (old form ăvŏs), *grandfather*, ăvī, ăv-ōrum (stem: **ăvo-**).

(iii) The Third Declension comprises all consonantal Stems; together with those in **i**. The Genitive Singular is **is**, and the Genitive Plural in **um**: as, rex (for reg-s), *king*, rēg-ĭs, rēg-um (stem: **rēg-**); nāvĭs, *ship*, nāv-ĭs, nāvĭ-um (stem: **nāvi-**).

(iv) The Fourth Declension consists of stems in **u**; forming the Genitive Singular in **-ūs**, and the Genitive Plural in **-ŭum**: as, grădŭs, *step*, grăd-ūs, grădŭ-um (stem: **grădu-**).

Obs. The Fourth Declension is simply a contracted form of the Third; *Gen.* gradūs = gradŭ-is. Two Nouns in **u** are uncontracted, and are therefore classed with the Third: grū-s, grū-is, *crane;* sū-s, sŭ-is, *swine.* See § 27.

(v) The Fifth Declension consists of Stems in **e**; forming the Genitive Singular in **ei**, and the Genitive Plural in **-ērum**: as dīēs, *day*, dĭ-ēī, dĭ-ērum (stem: **die-**).

Synoptic View of Declensions.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Stem.	**a**	**o**	**consonant** or **i**	**u**	**e**
Gen. Sing.	ae	ī	ĭs	ūs	ei
Gen. Plur.	ā-rum	ō-rum	-um ĭ-um	ŭ-um	ē-rum

Obs. The *Stems* of Nouns can generally be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural.

Chapter IV.—First or A Declension.

§ 17. The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension is identical with the Stem, and ends in ă. All Nouns of this Declension are declined according to the following paradigm.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	mens-ă	*a table*	mens-ae	*tables.*
Gen.	mens-ae	*of a table*	mens-ārum	*of tables*
Dat.	mens-ae	*to* or *for a table*	mens-īs	*to* or *for tables*
Acc.	mens-am	*a table*	mens-ās	*tables*
Voc.	mens-ă	*O table* [*table.*	mens-ae	*O tables*
Abl.	mens-ā	*by, with, or from a*	mens-īs	*by, with,* or *from tables.*

Obs. The meanings here assigned to the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* cases are the usual ones; but it must not be supposed that these cases can always be thus translated.

Examples for Declension.

āla *wing*	porta *gate*	agrĭcŏla *farmer*	
barba *beard*	fēmĭna *woman*	nauta *sailor*	
causa *cause*	silva *a wood*	scrība *scribe*	

Gender.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, except such as are shown by their meaning to be Masculine: as agrĭcŏla, nauta, scrība, and some proper names, as Sulla. There is no Neuter Noun belonging to either the First or the Fifth Declension.

Obs. Names of rivers in **a** are regularly Masculine (see § 41): as, Addŭa, Bagrăda, Gărumna (where the Gk. forms are ὁ Ἀδούας, ὁ Βαγράδας, ὁ Γαρούνας); likewise Hădria, *the Adriatic Sea* (Gk. ὁ Ἀδρίας). Albŭla, the ancient name of *the Tiber*, and some others, occur both as Masculine and Feminine. [In some cases the Gender appears to be quite arbitrary. Ausonius, Idyll. 10, *fin.*, has Mosella first as Fem., and in the next line but one as Masc.: dominae Mosellae .... corniger Mosella.]

Observations on the Cases.

1. The old *Genitive Singular* ended in *ās*. This ending is kept in fămĭlia, when compounded with păter, măter, filius or filia: as, păterfămĭlĭās, *the father of a family*; *Gen.* patris fămĭlĭās; *Dat.* patrī fămĭlĭās; *Plur.* patres fămĭlĭārum or patres fămĭlĭas, etc. The later *Genitive* in *ae* is a contraction of an older form āi, found in the earlier writers, and sometimes in Virgil: as, āquāī, *of water*; terrāī, *of the earth*. The form *ai* appears to have been originally a Locative; and, in its later form (*ae*), it continued to be used as such in names of towns: as Romae, *at Rome*, and in the word mīlĭtiae, *at the wars*. (See § 15, *Obs.*) The form *ai* is also found as a Dative in inscriptions.

2. The *Genitive Plural* of some Nouns ends in *um* instead of *ārum*. (i) In compounds of cŏlo and gigno: as caelĭcŏlum from caelĭcŏla, *an inhabitant of heaven;* terrĭgĕnum from terrĭgĕna, *earth-born*. (ii) In drachmum, amphŏrum, from drachma, amphŏra, when used with numerals. (iii) With Greek patronymics: as Aeneădum, from Aeneădēs, *a descendant of Aeneas*. (iv) In the names of certain tribes: as Lăpīthum (for Lapitharum) from Lăpīthae.

3. The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* of Nouns in *ia* sometimes have *īs* instead of *iīs:* as taenīs (Virg.) instead of taeniīs, from taenia, a *band, ribbon;* grātīs instead of grātiīs from grātia, *favour;* used adverbially, *without recompense* or *reward*.

4. The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* of the First Declension originally ended in ābus: and this form is retained in certain words: e.g. dea, *goddess*, deābus; filia, *daughter*, fīliābus. These forms are used when it is necessary to distinguish such words from the corresponding Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension: e.g. filiis et fīliābus, *to sons and daughters;* deīs et deābus, *to gods and goddesses*. In the same way are occasionally found mūlābus, lībertābus, etc.

The fem. of duo, *two*, and ambo, *both*, is always duābus, ambābus, in *Dat.* and *Abl. Pl.*

Declension of Greek Nouns.

§ 18. Greek Nouns of the First Declension adopted into Latin (chiefly proper names) end in **a, ē, ās, ēs.**

1. Those in *a* are declined as pure Latin words, except that they may take either *m* or *n* in the Accusative: as, Ossam or Ossan.

2. Those in *ē* (Feminine names and technical terms) have e in all Cases except the Genitive. Many of these are often perfectly Latinized: as, Hĕlĕnă (for Hĕlĕnē), ae, etc.

3. Masculines in *ās* and *ēs* drop the final *s* in Voc., and take (usually) *n* in Acc.; with Abl. in ā and ē respectively: see below.

Some of these also are declined as pure Latin words: as, Apellă, Philoctētă (for Apellēs, Philoctetēs), etc.

The Plural, rare except in patronymics, is like mensa: as, Aenēădae, ārum (contr. -um), etc.

Synoptic View of Greek Nouns of First Declension.

Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Acc.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Ossă	ae	ae	am, ăn	ă	ā
Electrā	ae	ae	am, ăn	ā	ā
hўperbŏlē	ēs	ae	ēn	ē	ē
Circē	ēs	ae	ēn	ē	ē
Circă	ae	ae	am	ă	ā
Aeneās	ae	ae	ān, am	ā	ā
Pōlīdēs	ae	ae	ēn (am)	ē	ē (ā)
geōmetrēs	ae	ae	ēn (am)	ă	ā

Obs. No universal rules can be laid down for the Latinization of Greek Nouns. Of common Nouns in ē some were perfectly naturalized: as, bibliŏthēcă, aulă, mūsĭcă: others, especially in technical writing, retained the Greek inflexion: as, ĕpĭtŏmē (better than ĕpĭtŏmă), ăpostrŏphē, antistrŏphē, etc.

So, of Fem. proper Nouns in ē, some rarely appear in a Latin form: as, Agāvē, Circē, Dānāē, Dircē, Andrŏmăchē (rarely, Agāvă, Circă, etc.); while in others the Latin form is of equal authority with the Greek: as, Atălantă, Hĕlĕnă, Andrŏmēda, etc.

The same general remarks apply to Greek Nouns in *as* and *es*. Compare pōētă, Persă, Scўthă, prŏpōlă, (all fully Latinized), with cŏmētēs, plānētēs, Anchīsēs, Pēlīdēs, etc.

Chapter V.—Second or O Declension.

§ 19. The Nominative Singular of the Second Declension has the following endings:—

1. **ŭs** (anciently **ŏs**): chiefly Masculine.
2. **ĕr** (**ĭr**): all Masculine.
3. **um** (anciently **om**): all Neuter.

The Stems of all Nouns of the Second Declension end in **o**. The Nominative suffixes are **s** (Masc. and Fem.) and **m** (Neuter).

I. Stems in o not preceded by r.

Stem English	dŏmĭno *lord*	ulmo *elm*	regno *kingdom*
Sing.			
Nom.	dŏmĭn-ŭs (*m.*)	ulm-ŭs (*f.*)	regn-um (*n.*)
Gen.	dŏmĭn-ī	ulm-ī	regn-ī
Dat.	dŏmĭn-ō	ulm-ō	regn-ō
Acc.	dŏmĭn-um	ulm-um	regn-um
Voc.	dŏmĭn-ĕ	(*not found*)	regn-um
Abl.	dŏmĭn-ō	ulm-ō	regn-ō
Plur.			
Nom.	dŏmĭn-ī	ulm-ī	regn-ă
Gen.	dŏmĭn-ōrum	ulm-ōrum	regn-ōrum
Dat.	dŏmĭn-īs	ulm-īs	regn-īs
Acc.	dŏmĭn-ōs	ulm-ōs	regn-ă
Voc.	dŏmĭn-ī	(*not found*)	regn-ă
Abl.	dŏmĭn-īs	ulm-īs	regn-īs

Obs. The *Voc.* in **e** is radically the same as the Stem, the *e* being merely a euphonic shortening of the *o* of the Stem.

II. Stems in ĕro (ĭro).

Stems in ĕro *generally* drop the final *us* in the *Nom. Sing.* (Masc. and Fem.), and the final *e* in the *Voc. Sing.*; the majority omit the *e* before ro in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*

Stem English	puĕro *boy*	măgistĕro *master*	vĭro *man*	memb(ĕ)ro *limb*
Sing.				
Nom.	puĕr (*m.*)	măgistĕr (*m.*)	vĭr (*m.*)	membr-um (*n.*)
Gen.	puĕr-ī	măgistr-ī	vĭr-ī	membr-ī
Dat.	puĕr-ō	măgistr-ō	vĭr-ō	membr-ō
Acc.	puĕr-um	măgistr-um	vĭr-um	membr-um
Voc.	puĕr	măgistĕr	vĭr	membr-um
Abl.	puĕr-ō	măgistr-ō	vĭr-ō	membr-ō
Plur.				
Nom.	puĕr-ī	măgistr-ī	vĭr-ī	membr-ă
Gen.	puĕr-ōrum	măgistr-ōrum	vĭr-ōrum	membr-ōrum
Dat.	puĕr-īs	măgistr-īs	vĭr-īs	membr-īs
Acc.	puĕr-ōs	măgistr-ōs	vĭr-ōs	membr-ă
Voc.	puĕr-ī	măgistr-ī	vĭr-ī	membr-ă
Abl.	puĕr-īs	măgistr-īs	vĭr-īs	membr-īs

Obs. 1. Stems in ĕro appear to have originally ended in -ĕrus in the *Nom. Sing.*: as, puĕrus. The Voc. puĕrĕ occurs in Plautus. Compare also Lat. ăgĕr, with Gk. ἀγρός. A few stems in ĕro retain the *us* in the Nom. Sing.: as nūmĕrŭs, *number*; hūmĕrŭs, *shoulder*; ūtĕrŭs, *womb*; jūnīperus (*f.*), *juniper*; together with some Adjective-stems.

Obs. 2. Vīr and its compounds triumvīr, dĕcemvīr, &c., and lēvīr, *a husband's brother, a brother-in-law*, are the only words with the stem ending in ĭro.

Gender of Nouns in us.—Nouns in us are Masculine, with the following exceptions:—

Feminine: (*a*) Names of Trees, as, mālus, *apple-tree* [but mālus, *a mast* or *post*, masc.]; pīrus, *pear-tree*; etc.
(*b*) These Common Nouns: hŭmus, *the ground*; alvus, *the bowels*; cŏlus [also 4 Decl.], *a distaff*; vannus, *a winnowing-fan*; with some Greek words: as, mĕthŏdus, *method*; carbăsus, *fine flax* (plural irregular: carbăsa, orum, *canvas, sails*, Neut.).
(*c*) Proper names of Towns: as, Cŏrinthus, *Corinth*, etc.

2. Neuter: three Nouns: vīrus, *poison;* vulgus, *the multitude* (also Masc. Virg. Aen. ii. 99); pĕlăgus, *the (wide) sea.* Vīrus and vulgus have no plural; pĕlăgus, which is a Greek word (πέλαγος), has a Greek plural pĕlăgē in Lucretius (5, 35; 6, 619). With the exception of these three nouns, all neuters of the 2nd Declension have the Nom. and Acc. Sing. in **um**.

NOTE.—*All* Neuter Nouns have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases alike in each number; and in the Plural these Cases always end in ă.

Examples for Declension like *dŏmĭnŭs*.

lŭpus	*wolf.*	annus	*year.*	hortus,	*garden.*

Examples for Declension like *puĕr*.

sŏcer	*father-in-law.*	gĕner	*son-in-law.*	Līber	*Bacchus.*
vesper	*evening* [irreg.: see § 53, 2].	ădulter	*adulterer.*	lībĕrī (plu.)	*children.*

NOTE.—The above are the only Nouns in *er* which preserve the *e* in all the cases. The Adjectives which preserve the *e* are given in § 56, *Obs.* 1.

Examples for Declension like *măgistĕr*.

ăger	*field.*	cancer	*crab.*	făber	*smith.*
ăper	*boar.*	căper	*he-goat.*	lĭber	*book.*

Examples for Declension like *regnum*.

dōnum	*gift.*	scūtum	*shield.*	bellum	*war.*
tectum	*roof.*	vīnum	*wine.*	templum	*temple.*

Observations on the Cases.

Obs. 1. The *o* of the Stem was originally found in Nom. and Acc. Singular (instead of *u*): and Stems in *vo* and *quo* frequently retained the *o* after the Augustan period, in order to avoid the concurrence of the double *u*: as ăvos, ēquos, aequom. To prevent this concurrence *quos* was sometimes written *cus:* as ĕcus, *antĭcus*, for ĕquus, antīquus.

Obs. 2. The Genitive form in *i* was originally a Locative, and it continued to be so used in names of Towns: as, Cōrinthi, *at Corinth;* and also with the words hūmi, *on the ground;* belli, *at the wars;* vespĕri (vespĕre), *at evening.* Comp. §§ 15, 17, *Obs.* 1. The original Genitive probably ended in -ius: comp. ūnīus, istīus, &c., Gen. of ūnus, iste, &c.

Obs. 3. Nouns in *ius* and *ium* have, in the older Latin, a single *i* in Gen. Sing.: as, Tulli, consīli, impĕri, ingĕni. The earliest undoubted authority for the form in ii is Propertius; but it appears to have been the usual form in writers of the Augustan age and subsequently. In Adjectives, the double *i* was used: e.g. patrĭi sermōnis (Lucr.).

Obs. 4. The *Vocative Singular* of filius, *a son*, gĕnius, *a guardian deity*, and of Proper Names in *ius* ends in ī: as, filī, gĕnī, Laelī, Tullī, etc. Other Nouns in *ius* appear to have kept the *ie* uncontracted: as, flūvie, glādie. So likewise Adjectives, as, impie, Dēlie, Sāturnie, etc.

Obs. 5. The *Genitive Plural* of some words ends in *um* for *ōrum*. (i) In words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades: as, nummum from nummus, *a piece of money*; sestertium from sestertius, *a sesterce*, *a silver coin* (about 2*d.*); mŏdium from mŏdius, *a Roman corn-measure*, *a peck*; fabrum, from făber, *a smith*. (ii) In the names of peoples: as Argīvum. (iii) With many other words in poetry: as ĕquum or ĕquom, from ĕquus, *a horse*. (Virg. G. 2, 542.)

Obs. 6. The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* of duo, *two*, ambo, *both*, is duō-bus, ambō-bus. Comp. § 17.

Deŭs, *God*, *a god*, is declined thus.

Nom.	Deŭs	Deī, Dii, *or* Dī
Gen.	Deī	Deōrum *or* Deûm
Dat.	Deō	Deīs, Diīs, *or* Dīs
Acc.	Deum	Deōs
Voc.	Deŭs	Deī, Diī, *or* Dī
Abl.	Deō	Deīs, Diīs, *or* Dīs

The forms *Dei* (*pl.*) and *Deis* are rarely used.

§ 20. Declension of Greek Nouns.

1. Greek Nouns of the Second Declension end in ŏs (*ος*), ōs (*ως*), and ŏn (*ον*). The Acc. Sing. is usually in *ŏn* and *ōn*. Those in *ŏs* and *ŏn* are mostly names of places; as, Ĕphĕsŏs, Īlĭŏn; and they usually have also pure Latin forms; as, Ĕphesus, Īlium. Nouns in *ōs* have sometimes *ō* for *i* in Gen., and *ō* or *ōna* for *ōn* in Acc.: thus—

Nom.	Dēlŏs *or* Dēlŭs	Andrŏgĕōs
Gen.	Dēlī	Andrŏgĕī *or* Andrŏgĕō
Dat.	Dēlō	Andrŏgĕō
Acc.	Dēlŏn *or* Dēlum	Andrŏgĕōn *or* Andrŏgĕō, Andrŏgĕōnă
Voc.	Dēlĕ	Andrŏgĕōs
Abl.	Dēlō	Andrŏgĕō

2. Greek Nouns in *-ρος* usually follow the Latin declension in *ĕr*; but the Greek forms are also found in some cases:

Nom.	Maeandĕr *or* Maeandrŏs
Gen.	Maeandrī *or* Maeandrū (*ου*)
Dat.	Maeandrō
Acc.	Maeandrum *or* Maeandrŏn
Voc.	Maeandrĕ *or* Maeandĕr
Abl.	Maeandrō

3. Greek Nouns in *eus* (monosyll. *-εύς*) of the Third Declension sometimes follow the Second Declension in Latin, but retaining

always the Vocative in *-eu*. They are also found inflected as in Greek:

Nom.	Orphĕŭs	*or*	Orphēus
Gen.	Orphĕī, Orphēī		Orphĕōs
Dat.	Orphĕō		Orphēī, Orphī
Acc.	Orphĕum		Orphĕa
Voc.	Orphēu		Orphĕū
Abl.	Orphĕō		

4. The Genitive Plural in some titles of books has the Greek ending *ōn* instead of the Latin *orum*: as, Geōrgĭcōn librī, *the books of the Georgics.*

Chapter VI.—The Third or Consonant and I Declension.

§ 21. Nouns of the Third Declension are classified according to the final letters of their Stems: thus—

A. Consonant Stems, or those ending in a Consonant.
B. Vowel Stems, or those ending in the Vowel i.

The following are the case-endings of this Declension. They appear most clearly in Consonant Stems; in I Stems, the final vowel of the Stem cannot always be distinguished from the case-endings.

	Consonant Stems.	I Stems.
Sing.		
Nom.	s or no ending. *Neut.* no ending	ĭs *Neut.* ĕ
Gen.	ĭs	ĭs
Dat.	ī	ī
Acc.	em *Neut.* no ending	em, sometimes im *Voc.* *Neut.* ĕ
Voc.	same as Nom.	same as Nom.
Abl.	ĕ rarely ī	ĕ or ī
Plur.		
Nom.	ēs *Neut.* ă	ēs *Neut.* ĭă
Gen.	um	ĭum
Dat.	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs
Acc.	ēs *Neut.* ă	ēs or ĭs *Neut.* ĭĭ
Voc.	same as Nom	same as Nom.
Abl.	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs

The Consonant Stems may be arranged according to the order of Mutes to which the final letter belongs (see § 4, No. 3): thus,

1. Labial Stems in **p, b, m**: as, princĕp-, Arăb-, hĭĕm-.
2. Guttural Stems in **c, g**: as, dūc-, lēg-.
3. Dental Stems in **t, d**: as, aetāt-, pĕd-.
4. Lingual and Sibilant Stems in **l, r, s**: as, consŭl-, pătĕr-, flōs-.
5. Nasal-Dental Stems in **n**: as, leōn-, virgŏn-, flāmĕn-.

A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

The Nominative-Suffix of Masculine and Feminine Nouns is **s**, as in all Declensions except the First. The Nominative of Lingual Stems and of Stems ending in the Sibilant **s** is without suffix.

Note.—For Gender Rules of Third Declension, see Chap. VIII.

§ 22. I.—Labial Stems.

Mutes b, p, and nasal m.

Stem English	Ărăb *Arabian*	princĕp *chief*	hiĕm *winter*
Sing.			
Nom.	Ărăb-s (*m.*)	princep-s (*c.*)	hiems* (*f.*)
Gen.	Ărăb-ĭs	princĭp-ĭs	hiĕm-ĭs
Dat.	Ărăb-ī	princĭp-ī	hiĕm-ī
Acc.	Ărăb-em	princĭp-em	hiĕm-em
Voc.	Ărab-s	princeps	hiem-s
Abl.	Ărăb-ē	princĭp-ē	hiĕm-ē
Plur.			
Nom.	Ărăb-ēs	princĭp-ēs	hiĕm-ēs
Gen.	Ărăb-um	princĭp-um	hiĕm-um
Dat.	Ărăb-ĭbŭs	princĭp-ĭbus	hiĕm-ĭbŭs
Acc.	Ărăb-ēs	princĭp-ēs	hiĕm-ēs
Voc.	Ărăb-ēs	princĭp-ēs	hiĕm-ēs
Abl.	Ărăb-ĭbŭs	princĭp-ĭbŭs	hiĕm-ĭbŭs

* Also written (less accurately) **hiemps** with *p* euphonic.

Obs. When a Stem of more than one syllable has *ĕ* in the last syllable, preceded by a consonant, the *ĕ* is changed into *ĭ* before an additional syllable: as, *Stem* princĕp, *Gen.* princip-is; *Stem* jūdĕc, *Gen.* jūdĭc-is; so also below, *Stem* milĕt, *Gen.* milĭt-is; *Stem* nōmĕn, *Gen.* nōmĭn-is.

§ 23. II.—Guttural Stems.

Mutes c, g.

Stem English	dŭc *leader*	lēg *law*	jūdĕc *judge*
Sing.			
Nom.	dux (*c.*)	lex (*f.*)	jūdex (*c.*)
Gen.	dŭc-ĭs	lēg-ĭs	jūdĭc-ĭs
Dat.	dŭc-ī	lēg-ī	jūdĭc-ī
Acc.	dŭc-em	lēg-em	jūdĭc-em
Voc.	dux	lex	jūdex
Abl.	dŭc-ĕ	lēg-ĕ	jūdĭc-ĕ
Plur.			
Nom.	dŭc-ēs	lēg-ēs	jūdĭc-ēs
Gen.	dŭc-um	lēg-um	jūdĭc-um
Dat.	dŭc-ĭbŭs	lēg-ĭbŭs	jūdĭc-ĭbŭs
Acc.	dŭc-ēs	lēg-ēs	jūdĭc-ēs
Voc.	dŭc-ēs	lēg-ēs	jūdĭc-ēs
Abl.	dŭc-ĭbŭs	lēg-ĭbŭs	jūdĭc-ĭbŭs

Obs. In nix, *snow*, *Gen.* nīv-is, *Dat.* nīv-i, etc., the *Nom.* ends in *x*, because the original Stem was nigv. In the oblique cases the *g* disappears. The guttural is seen in ni(n)g-it, *it snows*.

Examples for Declension.

nux (*f.*)	nŭc-is	*nut.*	rex (*m.*)	rēg-is	*king.*
fax (*f.*)	făc-is	*torch.*	grex (*m.*)	grĕg-is	*flock.*
pax (*f.*)	pāc-is	*peace.*	rēmex (*m.*)	rēmĭg-is	*rower.*
fornax (*f.*)	fornāc-is	*oven.*	pollex (*m.*)	pollĭc-is	*thumb.*
vox (*f.*)	vōc-is	*voice.*	index (*c.*)	indĭc-is	*informer.*
rādix (*f.*)	rādīc-is	*root.*	vertex (*m.*)	vertĭc-is	*eddy.*

§ 24. III.—Dental Stems.

Mutes t, d.

Stem English	aetāt *age*	lapĭd *stone*	mīlĕt *soldier*	pĕd *foot*
Sing.				
Nom.	aetā-s (*f.*)	lăpĭ-s (*m.*)	mīlĕ-s (*c.*)	pē-s (*m.*)
Gen.	aetāt-ĭs	lăpĭd-ĭs	mīlĭt-ĭs	pĕd-ĭs
Dat.	aetāt-ī	lăpĭd-ī	mīlĭt-ī	pĕd-ī
Acc.	aetāt-em	lăpĭd-em	mīlĭt-em	pĕd-em
Voc.	aetā-s	lăpĭ-s	mīlĕ-s	pē-s
Abl.	aetāt-ĕ	lăpĭd-ĕ	mīlĭt-ĕ	pĕd-ĕ

STEM ENGLISH	aetāt *age*	lăpĭd *stone*	mīlĕt *soldier*	pĕd *foot*
Plur.				
Nom.	aetāt-ēs	lăpĭd-ēs	mīlĭt-ēs	pĕd-ēs
Gen.	aetāt-um	lăpĭd-um	mīlĭt-um	pĕd-um
Dat.	aetāt-ĭbŭs	lăpĭd-ĭbŭs	mīlĭt-ĭbŭs	pĕd-ĭbŭs
Acc.	aetāt-ēs	lăpĭd-ēs	mīlĭt-ēs	pĕd-ēs
Voc.	aetāt-ēs	lăpĭd-ēs	mīlĭt-ēs	pĕd-ēs
Abl.	aetāt-ĭbŭs	lăpĭd-ĭbŭs	mīlĭt-ĭbŭs	pĕd-ĭbŭs

Examples for Declension.

cīvĭtās (*f.*)* cīvĭtāt-is *state.*	cassĭs (*f.*)	cassĭd-is	*helmet.*
virtūs (*f.*) virtūt-is *virtue.*	cŏmĕs (*c.*)	cŏmĭt-is	*companion*
ĕquĕs (*m.*) ĕquit-is *horseman.*	obsĕs (*c.*)	obsĭd-is	*hostage.*
săcerdōs (*c.*) săcerdōt-is *priest, priestess.*			

* Cīvĭtās and some other Nouns in *-tat* have a plural in *ium* as well as in *um*.

Obs. *t* and *d* are dropped before *s*; as, aeta-s, lăpi-s, mile-s, insted of aetat-s, lăpid-s, milet-s.

§ 25. IV.—LINGUAL AND SIBILANT STEMS.

STEM ENGLISH	consŭl *consul*	clāmōr *shout*	anser *goose*	pătĕr *father*	flōs *flower*
Sing.					
Nom.	consŭl (*m.*)	clāmŏr (*m.*)	anser (*m.*)	pătĕr (*m.*)	flōs (*m.*)
Gen.	consŭl-ĭs	clāmōr-ĭs	anser-ĭs	patr-ĭs	flōr-ĭs
Dat.	consŭl-ī	clāmōr-ī	anser-ī	patr-ī	flōr-ī
Acc.	consŭl-em	clāmōr-em	anser-em	patr-em	flōr-em
Voc.	consŭl	clāmŏr	anser	pătĕr	flōs
Abl.	consŭl-ĕ	clāmōr-ĕ	anser-ĕ	patr-ĕ	flōr-ĕ
Plur.					
Nom.	consŭl-ēs	clāmōr-ēs	anser-ēs	patr-ēs	flōr-ēs
Gen.	consŭl-um	clāmōr-um	anser-um	patr-um	flōr-um
Dat.	consŭl-ĭbŭs	clāmōr-ĭbŭs	anser-ĭbŭs	patr-ĭbŭs	flōr-ĭbŭs
Acc.	consŭl-ēs	clāmōr-ēs	anser-ēs	patr-ēs	flōr-ēs
Voc.	consŭl-ēs	clāmōr-ēs	anser-ēs	patr-ēs	flōr-ēs
Abl.	consŭl-ĭbŭs	clāmōr-ĭbŭs	anser-ĭbŭs	patr-ĭbŭs	flōr-ĭbŭs

Examples for Declension.

sōl (*m.*)	sōl-is	*sun.*	aggĕr (*m.*)	aggĕr-is	*mound.*
exsŭl (*c.*)	exsŭl-is	*an exile.*	carcĕr (*m.*)	carcĕr-is	*prison.*
cŏlŏr (*m.*)	cŏlōr-is	*colour.*	mŭlĭĕr	mŭlĭĕr-is	*woman.*
tĭmŏr (*m.*)	tĭmōr-is	*fear.*	mātĕr	mātr-is	*mother.*
mōs (*m.*)	mōr-is	*custom.*	frātĕr	frātr-is	*brother.*

Obs. 1. In some Nouns ending in *ĕr*, the *ĕ* is dropped in all cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as, pāter, māter, etc.

Obs. 2. The *s* of the Stem is changed into *r*, when another syllable follows: as, *Stem* and *Nom.* flōs, *Gen.* flōr-is; *Stem* and *Nom.* pulvis, *dust*, *Gen.* pulvĕr-is. There are two apparent exceptions: ās (*m.*), *a pound weight*, and ŏs (*n.*), *bone*; *Gen.* ass-is, oss-is, &c. The actual Stems are ass- and oss- (originally assi-, ossi-), one *s* being dropped in the *Nom.* The *Nom. Sing.* assis occurs in the Grammarians. On the Stem ossi, see § 31, *Obs.* 3.

§ 26. V.—Nasal-Dental Stems in n.

Most Masculine and Feminine Nouns in ŏn and ōn drop the *n* in the Nominative. There are only a few Masculine Nouns ending in ĕn, most Nouns with this termination being Neuter. See § 30, *Obs.* 1.

Stem English	leōn *lion*	virgŏn *maiden*	flāmĕn *priest*
Sing.			
Nom.	leo (*m.*)	virgo (*f.*)	flāmĕn (*m.*)
Gen.	leōn-is	virgĭn-is	flāmĭn-is
Dat.	leōn-ī	virgĭn-ī	flāmĭn-ī
Acc.	leōn-em	virgĭn-em	flāmĭn-em
Voc.	leo	virgo	flāmĕn
Abl.	leōn-ĕ	virgĭn-ĕ	flāmĭn-ĕ
Plur.			
Nom.	leōn-ēs	virgĭn-ēs	flāmĭn-ēs
Gen.	leōn-um	virgĭn-um	flāmĭn-um
Dat.	leōn-ĭbŭs	virgĭn-ĭbŭs	flāmĭn-ĭbŭs
Acc.	leōn-ēs	virgĭn-ēs	flāmĭn-ēs
Voc.	leōn-ēs	virgĭn-ēs	flāmĭn-ēs
Abl.	leōn-ĭbŭs	virgĭn-ĭbŭs	flāmĭn-ĭbŭs

Examples for Declension.

sermo (*m.*)	sermōn-is	*discourse.*	grando (*f.*)	grandĭn-is	*hail.*
pūgio (*m.*)	pūgiōn-is	*dagger.*	ordo (*m.*)	ordĭn-is	*rank.*
latro (*m.*)	latrōn-is	*robber.*	ĭmāgo (*f.*)	ĭmāgĭn-is	*likeness.*
praeco (*m.*)	praecōn-is	*crier.*	hĭrundo (*f.*)	hĭrundĭn-is	*swallow.*
ōrātio (*f.*)	ōrātiōn-is	*speech.*	ărundo (*f.*)	ărundĭn-is	*reed.*
pāvo (*m.*)	pāvōn-is	*peacock.*	tī-bīcĕn (*m.*)	ĭnis	*flute-player.*
hŏmo (*c.*)	hŏmĭn-is	*man or woman.*	pectĕn (*m.*)	ĭnis	*comb.*

Obs. 1. If the Stem ends in ŏn (short), the ŏ is changed into ĭ when another syllable follows: as, *Stem* virgŏn, *Gen.* virgĭn-is. Comp. § 22, *Obs.*

Obs. 2. Cāro (*Stem* cărŏn), *flesh*, drops the ŏ in all Cases except the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*: as, *Nom.* cāro, *Gen.* carn-is, *Dat.* carn-i, &c. *Gen. Pl.* is carn-ium.

§ 27. There are two stems in u, namely gru- *crane*, su- *swine*, which belong to the Consonant Declension, and not to the U or Fourth Declension. They are monosyllabic, and the *u* is radical; whereas in the Fourth Declension the u is part of a suffix attached to the root. Akin to these two stems in u are two stems in v: namely, bŏv- *ox, cow*, and Jov- (Nom. Jū-pĭtĕr = Jŏv, pătĕr), *the god Jupiter.*

Stem English	gru *crane*	su *swine*	bŏv *ox, cow*	Jŏv *Jupiter*
Sing.				
Nom.	grū-s (*m.*)	sū-s (*m. & f.*)	bōs (*m. & f.*)	Jū-pĭtĕr (*m.*)
Gen.	grŭ-ĭs	sŭ-ĭs	bŏv-ĭs	Jŏv-ĭs
Dat.	grŭ-ī	sŭ-ī	bŏv-ī	Jŏv-ī
Acc.	grŭ-em	sŭ-em	bŏv-em	Jŏv-em
Voc.	grū-s	sū-s	bō-s	Jū-pĭtĕr
Abl.	grŭ-ĕ	sŭ-ĕ	bŏv-ĕ	Jŏv-ĕ
Plur.				
Nom.	grŭ-ēs	sŭ-ēs	bŏv-ēs	
Gen.	grŭ-um	sŭ-um	bŏv-um bō-um	
Dat.	grŭ-ĭbŭs	sŭ-ĭbŭs sŭ-bŭs sū-bŭs	bū-bŭs bō-bŭs	
Acc.	grŭ-ēs	sŭ-ēs	bŏv-ēs	
Voc.	grū-ēs	sū-ēs	bŏv-ēs	
Abl.	grŭ-ĭbŭs	sŭ-ĭbŭs sŭ-bŭs sū-bŭs	bū-bŭs bō-bus	

§ 28. VI.—Pseudo-Consonant Stems.

The following Nouns really belong to the class of Vowel (i) Stems, but are placed here on account of their close resemblance to Consonant Stems. In these the Nominative Singular has undergone contraction: e.g. stirps, contr. from stirpi-s (*trunk*); mens, contr. from menti-s (*mind*). This is very generally the case with Nouns which show two consonants before the Case-endings, as these do. The Stem-vowel appears in Gen. Plur. *i-um*, and old Acc. Pl. ending *īs* for *ēs*. In the case of pars, *a part*, the Vowel appears also in the old Acc. Sing. part-i-m.

Stem English	urb and urbi *city*	arc and arci *citadel*	mont and monti *mountain*
Sing.			
Nom.	urb-s (*f.*)	arx (*f.*)	mon-s (*m.*)
Gen.	urb-ĭs	arc-ĭs	mont-ĭs
Dat.	urb-ī	arc-ī	mont-ī
Acc.	urb-em	arc-em	mont-em
Voc.	urb-s	arx	mon-s
Abl.	urb-ĕ	arc-ī	mont-ĕ
Plur			
Nom.	urb-ēs	arc-ēs	mont-ēs
Gen.	urb-ĭum	arc-ĭum	mont-ĭ-um
Dat.	urb-ĭbŭs	arc-ĭbŭs	mont-ĭbŭs
Acc.	urb-ēs, īs	arc-ēs, īs	mont-ēs, īs
Voc.	urb-ēs	arc-ēs	mont-ēs
Abl.	urb-ĭbŭs	arc-ĭbŭs	mont-ĭbŭs

Examples for Declension.

calx (*f.*)	calc-ĭs	*heel.*	ars (*f.*)	art-ĭs	*art.*
falx (*f.*)	falc-ĭs	*sickle.*	pars (*f.*)	part-ĭs	*part.*

Obs. Trabs, trăbis, *a beam*, must be reckoned among Pseudo-Consonantal Stems, although the Genitive Plural is trăb-um. An older uncontracted form trăb-es or trăb-is occurs. Also stips, stīpis, *a coin*, appears to have had an earlier form stīpis.

§ 29. VII.—Vowel Stems in I.

Some Stems in **i** sometimes change the *i* into *e* in Nom. Sing. (But see below, *Obs.* 2.)

Stem English	hosti *enemy*	tussi *cough*	nūbi *cloud*
Sing.			
Nom.	host-ĭs (*c.*)	tuss-ĭs (*f.*)	nūb-ēs (*f.*)
Gen.	host-ĭs	tuss-ĭs	nūb-ĭs
Dat.	host-ī	tuss-ī	nūb-ī
Acc.	host-em	tuss-im	nūb-em
Voc.	host-ĭs	tuss-ĭs	nūb-ēs
Abl.	host-ĕ	tuss-ī	nūb-ĕ
Plur.			
Nom.	host-ēs	tuss-ēs	nūb-ēs
Gen.	host-ĭum	tuss-ĭum	nūb-ĭum
Dat.	host-ĭbŭs	tuss-ĭbŭs	nūb-ĭbŭs
Acc.	host-ēs, ĭs	tuss-ēs, ĭs	nūb-ēs, ĭs
Voc.	host-ēs	tuss-ēs	nūb-ēs
Abl.	host-ĭbŭs	tuss-ĭbŭs	nūb-ĭbŭs

Examples for Declension.

cīvĭs (*c.*) *citizen.* | ŏvĭs (*f.*) *sheep.* | vestĭs (*f.*) *garment*
ăvĭs (*f.*) *bird.* | fēlĭs, -ēs (*f.*) *cat.* | classĭs (*f.*) *fleet.*

clādēs (*f.*) *defeat.* | rūpēs (*f.*) *rock.* | sēdēs (*f.*)* *seat.*
vātēs (*c.*) *prophet.* | verrēs (*m.*) *boar-pig.*

* *Gen. Plur.* usually sēd-um.

Obs. 1. Some Stems in **i** have the *Accusative Singular* in *im* and the *Ablative Singular* in *i:* for examples, see § 33.

Obs. 2. Nouns like nūbēs may have had the original Stem in *e* (belonging to the Fifth Declension). In favour of this view is the long *ē* of *Nom. Sing.*, together with the endings *em* and *ĕ* in *Acc.* and *Abl.*, never *im* and *i*.

Obs. 3. The Stems with Nom. in **es** are all Feminine, except verrēs (*m.*), *boar-pig;* and vātēs (*c.*), *prophet.*

Obs. 4. Lintĕr, *a wherry*, has a Stem lintĕri: as appears from the *Abl. Sing.* lintrī or lintrĕ, Gen. Pl. lintrium, Acc. Pl. lintrīs or lintrēs.

B. Neuter Nouns.

In Neuter Nouns the *Nom. Acc.* and *Voc.* Singular are properly the same as the Stem, but subject to certain euphonic changes.

§ 30. I.—Consonant Stems (n, r, s, t).

Stem English	nōmĕn *name*	fulgŭr *flash of lightning*	crūs *leg*	ŏpŭs *work*	căpŭt *head*
Sing.					
Nom.	nōmĕn	fulgŭr	crūs	ŏpŭs	căpŭt
Gen.	nōmĭn-ĭs	fulgŭr-ĭs	crūr-ĭs	ŏpĕr-ĭs	căpĭt-ĭs
Dat.	nōmĭn-ī	fulgŭr-ī	crūr-ī	ŏpĕr-ī	căpĭt-ī
Acc.	nōmĕn	fulgŭr	crūs	ŏpŭs	căpŭt
Voc.	nōmĕn	fulgŭr	crūs	ŏpŭs	căpŭt
Abl.	nōmĭn-ĕ	fulgŭr-ĕ	crūr-ĕ	ŏpĕr-ĕ	căpĭt-ĕ
Plur.					
Nom.	nōmĭn-ă	fulgŭr-ă	crūr-ă	ŏpĕr-ă	căpĭt-ă
Gen.	nōmĭn-um	fulgŭr-um	crūr-um	ŏpĕr-um	căpĭt-um
Dat.	nōmĭn-ĭbŭs	fulgŭr-ĭbŭs	crūr-ĭbŭs	ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs	căpĭt-ĭbŭs
Acc.	nōmĭn-ă	fulgŭr-ă	crūr-ă	ŏpĕr-ă	căpĭt-ă
Voc.	nōmĭn-ă	fulgŭr-ă	crūr-ă	ŏpĕr-ă	căpĭt-ă
Abl.	nōmĭn-ĭbŭs	fulgŭr-ĭbŭs	crūr-ĭbŭs	ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs	căpĭt-ĭbŭs

Examples for Declension.

flūmĕn	ĭnis	*river.*	fūnŭs	ĕris	*funeral.*
carmĕn	ĭnis	*song.*	lătŭs	ĕris	*side.*
fulmĕn	ĭnis	*thunderbolt.*	sīdŭs	ĕris	*constellation.*
sēmĕn	ĭnis	*seed.*	vulnŭs	ĕris	*wound.*
murmŭr	ŭris	*murmur.*	lītŭs	ŏris	*shore.*
guttŭr	ŭris	*throat.*	pignŭs	ŏris	*pledge.*
ōs	ōris	*mouth.*	tempŭs	ŏris	*time.*
gĕnŭs	ĕris	*race.*	nĕmŭs	ŏris	*grove.*
fœdŭs	ĕris	*treaty*	pectŭs	ŏris	*breast.*

Obs. 1. A few Nouns in *en* and two in *us* are not Neuter: see Gender Rules, p. 33.

Obs. 2. The substitution of *r* for the final *s* of the Stem, when another syllable follows, is a euphonic change: as, crūs, crūr-is, instead of crūs-is; ŏpĕs, ŏpĕr-is, instead of ŏpĕs-is; corpŏs, corpŏr-is, instead of corpŏs-is. See § 25, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 3. The *u* in *ŭs* of the *Nom. Sing.* is only a euphonic change of the *ĕ* or *ŏ* of the *Stem:* as, *Stems* ŏpĕs, corpŏs; *Nom.* ŏpŭs, corpŭs.

Obs. 4. In căpŭt, căpĭt-is, the *ŭ* of the Stem is changed into *ĭ* when another syllable follows, like the *ĕ* in nōmĕn, nōmĭn-is. See § 22, *Obs.*

§ 31. II.—Vowel Stems in i (Nom. in e, al, ar).

Stem English	mări *sea*	ănĭmāli *animal*	calcari *spur*
Sing.			
Nom.	măr-ĕ	anĭmăl	calcăr
Gen.	măr-ĭs	anĭmāl-ĭs	calcār-ĭs
Dat.	măr-ī	anĭmāl-ī	calcār-ī
Acc.	măr-ĕ	anĭmăl	calcăr
Voc.	măr-ĕ	anĭmăl	calcăr
Abl.	măr-ī*	anĭmāl-ī	calcār-ī
Plur.			
Nom.	măr-ĭă	anĭmāl-ĭă	calcār-ĭă
Gen.	măr-ĭum	anĭmāl-ĭum	calcār-ĭum
Dat.	măr-ĭbŭs	anĭmāl-ĭbŭs	calcār-ĭbŭs
Acc.	măr-ĭă	anĭmāl-ĭă	calcār-ĭă
Voc.	măr-ĭă	anĭmāl-ĭă	calcār-ĭă
Abl.	măr-ĭbŭs	anĭmāl-ĭbŭs	calcār-ĭbŭs

* There is an *Abl.* mărĕ used in poetry after prepositions (Lucr. 1, 161; Ov. Trist. 5, 2, 20).

Examples for Declension.

rētĕ	*net.*	mōnīlĕ	*necklace.*	cervīcăl	*pillow.*
ŏvīlĕ	*sheepfold.*	vectīgăl	*tax.*	exemplăr	*example.*

Obs. 1. In Nouns like mărĕ, the **e** in the *Nom. Sing.* is simply a euphonic change of *i.*

Obs. 2. Nouns like ănĭmăl, calcăr, originally ended in *e* in the *Nom. Sing.*, like mărĕ. First the *ĕ* was dropped, and then the final vowel shortened. Jūbăr, ăris, *sunbeam*, nectăr, ăris, *nectar*, and others with *ă* in *Gen.*, also far, farris, *spelt*, make *ĕ* in *Abl. Sing.* See § 33, No. 4.

Obs. 3. In ŏs, ossis, *a bone*, the Stem is ossi (cf. *Gen. Pl.* ossium), for osti: cf. Gr. ὀστέον. A *Nom. Sing.* ossum is given by the Grammarians.

§ 32. Irregular Nouns—*continued.*

Stem English	sĕnĕc or sĕn *old-man, old-woman*	vīs *strength*	sŭpellectĭli *furniture*
Sing.			
N. V.	sĕn-ex (*c.*)	vīs (*f.*)	sŭpellex (*f.*)
Gen.	sĕn-ĭs	vīs (rare)	sŭpellectĭl-ĭs
Dat.	sĕn-ī	*wanting*	sŭpellectĭl-ī
Acc.	sĕn-em	vi-m	sŭpellectĭl-em
Abl.	sĕn-ĕ	vī	sŭpellectĭl-ĕ, or ī
Plur.			
N. V.	sĕn-ēs	vīr-ēs	Plural only in later Latin.
Gen.	sĕn-um	vīr-ĭŭm	
Dat.	sĕn-ĭbŭs	vīr-ĭbŭs	
Acc.	sĕn-ēs	vīr-ēs	
Abl.	sĕn-ĭbŭs	vīr-ĭbŭs	

Obs. 1. Sĕnex is properly an Adjective.

Obs. 2. Sŭpellex has also *Nom.* supellectĭlis, which form, as well as the *Abl.* in *i*, shows that the Stem is supellectĭli-.

Obs. 3. The Stem ĭtĭnĕr- (*journey*) is contracted: *Nom. Voc. Acc.* ĭtĕr, *n.*, *Gen.* ĭtĭnĕr-ĭs, etc.

Note.—There are some Nouns of the Third Declension, otherwise complete, of which no Genitive Plural is known to occur. Such are cor, *heart*, cos, *whetstone*, fel, *gall*, glos (glōris), *husband's sister*, mel, *honey*, nex, *violent death*, ŏs (ōris), *mouth*, rus, *the country*, sal, *salt*, sol, *sun*, tus, *frankincense*, vas, *a surety*. (In most of these, other Cases of the Plural are of frequent occurrence: e.g. corda—mella—neces—ora—rura—sales—soles—tura—vades.)

Chapter VII.—Remarks on some Peculiarities of Case-endings in the Third Declension of Nouns and Adjectives and in Greek Nouns.

§ 33. Accusative in im and Ablative in ī.

1. The *Accusative* in *im* is found only in *i*-Stems. It is the only form in the following Nouns: vis, tussī-s, sītī-s, Tĭbĕrī-s, etc.: see also § 52, 3.

The following *i*-Stems waver between *im* and *em* in *Acc.* and between *ī* and *ĕ* in *Abl.*

febrĭs	*fever*	turrĭs	*tower*
pelvĭs	*basin*	sĕcūrĭs	*hatchet*
nāvĭs	*ship*	bĭpennĭs	*battle-axe*
puppĭs	*stern*	sēmentĭs	*sowing*
restĭs	*rope*	clāvĭs	*key.*

N.B. The above are all Feminine. Restis has *ĕ* only in *Abl.*; sĕcūrĭs and bĭpennis only *ī*. Bĭpennis being properly Adj. has rarely *im* in *Acc.*

2. The forms in *im* and *i* are rare in Masculine Stems. Some Masculines, however, along with some Feminines, are found with *i* in *Abl. Sing.*, without having *im* in *Acc. Sing.*: as,

Masc.: ignĭs, *fire;* axĭs, *axle;* fīnĭs, *end* [rarely Fem.]; amnĭs, *river:*—with cīvĭs, *citizen;* sŏdālĭs, *comrade* [Com.].
Fem.: classĭs, *fleet;* vītĭs, *vine;* ăvĭs, *bird;* trīrēmĭs, *trireme.*
(In all these, however, the usual Abl. is in *ĕ*.

3. From Nouns increasing in the *Genitive*, the forms in *im* and *i* are exceedingly rare. Exceptions:—

pars (*f.*) has sometimes partim, not only as Adverb, but also as Noun: (but the MSS. often vary). Also partī as Abl. occurs.
sors (*f.*), *lot*, has sometimes sortī in *Abl.*: also pons (*bridge*), pontī.
imber, brĭs (*m.*), *rain*, makes either imbrī or imbrĕ in *Abl.*

Names of months in *bĕr* (shortened from *bĕrĭs*), have ī in *Abl.*: as, Septembrī, Octobrī, etc.

4. In the case of Neuters in *ĕ*, the *Abl.* in *ĕ* is rare, and chiefly confined to the older writers. But mānĕ, *the early morning*, has always mānĕ. Also, names of towns in *ĕ* keep *ĕ* in *Abl.*: as, Praenestĕ, Rĕātĕ.
Nouns in *āl* have very rarely *ĕ* in *Abl.*
Nouns in *ăr*, with short penultima in *Gen.*, make *Abl.* in *ĕ:* as, jŭbăr, *sunbeam;* jŭbārĭs, jŭbārĕ; nectăr, *nectar*, nectārĭs, nectārĕ: also far, *spelt*, makes farrĕ. (The plural is farra.)

§ 34. *Abl. Sing. of Adjectives and of Participles in* **ns** (stem, **nti**).—In the case of Adjectives in ĭs, ĕ, or ĕr, rĭs, rĕ, the *Abl.* in *ĕ* is very rare. It is believed to occur in Virg. Aen. vi. 383,

cognōmĭnĕ terrā (Dactylic rhythm: but see Papillon, a.l.); and is found occasionally in prose.

Comparatives usually have *ĕ*, rarely *ī*.

Adjectives of one Termination have more frequently *ī* than *ĕ*. Some appear to have *ī* exclusively, or at all events regularly: e.g. pār, *equal*, *Abl.* pārī; ĭnops, *destitute*, ĭnŏpī; anceps, *double*, ancĭpĭtī; praeceps, *headlong*, praecĭpĭtī; concors, *agreeing*, concordī; vēcors, *mad*, vēcordī; ĭners, *sluggish*, ĭnertī; concŏlor, *of the same colour*, concŏlōrī; Arpīnās, *belonging to Arpinum*, Arpīnātī; etc.

On the other hand, some have *Abl.* in *ĕ* either exclusively or at least regularly; viz. dīvĕs, *rich*, *Abl.* dīvĭtĕ; paupĕr, *poor*, paupĕrĕ; (dēses), *slothful*, dēsīdĕ; princeps, *chief*, princĭpĕ; sŭperstĕs, *surviving*, sŭperstĭtĕ; also, compŏs, *possessed of*, compŏtĕ; impŏs, *not possessed of*, impŏtĕ; caelebs, *unmarried*, caelĭbĕ; etc.

When an Adjective is used as a Noun, it usually prefers *ĕ*: as, sĭnĕ pārĕ, *without an equal*.

Obs. It may be assumed that any Adjective of one termination may take ĕ in Abl. in order to meet the exigencies of metre. Thus, compārĕ, dispārĕ, impārĕ would be possible in Dactylic verse, while the forms in ī would be excluded. (Compare the remark above about Abl. of Adjectives like tristis.)

Present Participles, when used strictly as such, have usually *ĕ*, especially in the Absolute construction: *e.g.* Tarquinio regnantĕ; nātūrā rĕpugnantĕ, etc. When used as Adjectives, they follow the general rule, and take oftener *ī* than *ĕ*: e.g. insĕquentī noctĕ, *in the following night*.

§ 35. Nominative Plural of Neuters.

The Neuter Plural of Adjectives of one termination (when it occurs) is almost invariably in *-ĭă*: as, victrīcĭă, pārĭă, concordĭă, sĕquentĭă, ingentĭă. But Comparatives have simply *a*: as, mĕlĭōrā; also, vĕtŭs, *old*, has vĕtĕră; plūs, plūră; and complūrēs, either complūrĭă or complūră.

In the case of inops, tridens, degener, inops, (deses), (reses), superstes, insons, sons, ales, sospes, particeps, princeps, vigil, supplex, redux, trux, memor, and some others, no Neut. Pl. is known to occur. This is especially the case with Adjectives having a short vowel before *is* in Gen.: e.g. rĕdux, rĕdŭc-is.

§ 36. Genitive Plural in um and ium.

The proper Gen. Plur. suffix is **-um**, which is added to Consonant and Vowel Stems alike: e.g. dŭc-um, tussī-um, urbī-um, ănīmālī-um, nūbī-um, etc.

Exceptions in Consonant Stems.

1. *Stems in* r:—păter, māter, frāter, have Gen. Plur. patr-um, mātr-um, frātr-um. But lintĕr, *f.*, *boat*; ūtĕr, *m.*, *skin-bag*; imbĕr, *m.*, *rain*;

ventĕr, *m.*, *belly*, have *ium*. These are only apparent exceptions, as they were originally *i* stems: compare Abl. imbr-i; and collateral Nom. form lintr-is = linter.

2. *Dental Stems:*—Stems in *t* preceded by a long vowel have often *ium:* e.g. līs, *f.*, *lawsuit*, which has only lit-ium: so, cīvītāt-ium, tempestāt-ium, etc. (given by Priscian as the regular forms), which have also *um*. Gentile Nouns and Adjj. like Arpīnās, Samnīs, have usually *ium;* which is explained by the existence of older Nom. forms Arpīnāt-is, Samnīt-is, etc.

But Stems in *t* preceded by a short vowel have always *um:* e.g. ănăs, *duck*, ănāt-um; mīlĕs, *soldier*, mīlĭt-um; cŏmĕs, *companion*, cŏmĭt-um. Pălūs, *f.*, *marsh*, has usually pălūd-ium.

3. *Guttural Stems:*—Stems in *c* preceded by a long vowel have sometimes *ium*. In Nouns this is quite exceptional: thus, cornix (*crow*), cōturnix (*quail*), rādix (*root*), have regularly cornī-cum, coturnīc-um, radīc-um (though the form radīc-ium is also quoted). But in Adjectives it is the rule: e.g. felix, felīc-ium; audax, audāc-ium; etc. When the vowel preceding *c* is short the Gen. has always *um:* e.g. supplex (Noun and Adj.), *suppliant*, Gen. Plur. supplĭc-um; jūdex, *judge*, judĭc-um; etc.

4. *Miscellaneous:* glīs, *dormouse*, has glīr-ium; mūs, *mouse*, mūr-ium; mās, *male*, măr-ium; nix, *snow*, nĭv-ium (also nĭv-um); faux, *gorge*, fauc-ium.

§ 37. In **Pseudo-Consonant Stems** (see § 26), the *Gen. Pl.* properly ends in **ium**, as the original Stem ended in *i*. Hence monosyllabic words having two Consonants before *is* in Gen. Sing. have *ium:* e.g. dent-ium, mont-ium, oss-ium (from ŏs, *bone*). Also in polysyllabic words, the *Nom. Sing.* of which ends in *ns*, the Gen. Pl. is usually in *ium:* e.g. ădŏlescent-ium rather than ădŏlescent-um, clīent-ium rather than clīent-um. (But părens, *parent*, has usu. părent-um.)

§ 38. The **I Stems** almost invariably have *ium* in *Gen. Pl.:* as, tussi-um, hosti-um, igni-um, nūbi-um, rūpi-um, etc.

Exceptions in I Stems.

1. Two Nouns in *is* have always *um:* căn-is, *c.*, *dog;* and jŭvĕn-is, *c.*, *youth; Gen. Pl.* căn-um, jŭvĕn-um. [In these two, the true stem appears to be Consonantal: compare Lat. can-, Gk. κυν-, Sanskr. çun-; Lat. jŭvĕn-, Sanscr. yuvan-; and perhaps also in mens-is, which has usually mensum.] Also ăpis, *f.*, *bee*, has both ăp-ĭum and ăp-um.

Some Adjectives having stems in *i* take a contracted form in *um:* esp. in poetry: as, caelestis, *heavenly*, caelestum as well as -ium; agrestis, *of the fields*, agrest-um as well as -ium (esp. when used as Nouns). Vŏlucris, *winged*, has regularly vŏluer-um both as Adjective and Noun. Cĕlĕr had a Gen. Pl. cĕlĕr-um.

2. Nouns in *ēs:* vātēs, *c.*, *seer*, has vāt-um; and sēdēs, *f.*, *seat*, usu. sēd-ium: also, ambāges, *f.*, *circuit* (see p. 39), has ambāg-um, and compāgēs, *f.*, *fabric*, either compāg-um or -ium.

§ 39. Accusative Plural in īs and ēs.

The Acc. Plur. of most Masc. and Fem. Nouns and Adjectives having Stems in *i* has the ending *īs* (older form *eis*), rather than in *ēs:* as, aedēs (*f.*), *temple*, Acc. Plur. aedīs and aedēs; ignīs (*m.*), *fire*, ignīs and ignēs; imbĕr (*m.*), *rain*, imbrīs and imbrēs.

The Acc. Pl. in *īs* is the more correct form for Adjectives like cĕlĕr, ācĕr and tristis. It is also frequent in the Pseudo-Consonant Stems: e.g. montīs (-eis), frondīs (-eis), etc. In the case of Greek nouns having the Pl. in *εις* it is also the more correct form: e.g. Alpīs, Sardīs, Syrtīs. (Prisc.)

But the oldest and best MSS. vary between the two forms even in the case of the same word. According to Gellius (13, 20), urbīs was found in a copy of Virgil (Georg. i. 25) corrected by the poet's own hand, while the same critic vouches for the correctness of urbēs in another place (Aen. 3. 106).

Such forms as hominīs, bovīs, morīs, though occasionally found in MSS., are based on a false analogy. In the case of Adjectives of one termination with Consonant Stem, however, the form in *is* is well established, though less frequent than that in ēs: e.g. audacīs (*Acc. Pl.*) less frequent than audacēs. (Prisc.) In the case of Adjectives like ingens, iners (Pseudo-Cons.), the same authority puts the two forms on a par. In many of these Adjectives the original Stem was doubtless in *i:* e.g. ingenti-, inerti-, concordi-, etc.

§ 40. Greek Nouns of Third Declension.

1. *Nominative Singular.*

The *Nom. Sing.* of many proper names ends in the Greek *ōn* (*ων*): as Ăgămemnōn, rarely Ăgămemno. Especially when the Gen. is in -ontis: as, Autŏmĕdōn, Xĕnŏphōn. But Plăto, Mĕno, Crīto, in which the Gen. is in -ōnis.

2. *Genitive Singular.*

1. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in *es* often ends in *ī:* as, Pĕriclēs, *Gen.* Pĕricl-ī and Pĕricl-īs.

2. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ŏs* (*ος*) rather than the Latin *īs:* as, Thĕtīs, *Gen.* Thĕtī-dŏs; Pallās, *Gen.* Pallăd-ŏs.

3. The *Gen. Sing.* of Feminine Nouns in *ō* generally ends in the Greek *ūs* (*ους*): as, Sapphō, *Gen.* Sapphūs. In *Dat.*, *Acc.*, and *Abl.* usually Sapphō; rarely Sapphōn-īs, -ī, -em, -ĕ.

3. *Dative Singular.*

The *Dat. Sing.* in the poets sometimes has Gk. *ĭ* instead of Latin *ī:* as, Pallădĭ, Iāsŏnĭ (Stat.).

4. *Accusative Singular.*

1. The *Acc. Sing.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ă*: as, aethēr, *Acc.* (always) aethĕră; āēr, *Acc.* āĕr-ă and āĕr-em; Ăgămemnōn, *Acc.* Ăgămemnŏn-ă and -em.

2. The *Acc. Sing.* of Nouns in *is* (with Stem in *i*) ends either in Lat. *im* or in Greek *in* (ιν): as pŏēsĭs, *Acc.* pŏēsim and pŏēsĭn; Chărybdĭs, *Acc.* Chărybdim and Chărybdĭn.

3. The *Acc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *es* frequently ends in the Greek *ēn* (ην): as, Aeschīnes, *Acc.* Aeschīnēn and Aeschīnem.

5. *Vocative Singular.*

1. The *Voc. Sing.* of Nouns in *is*, *ys* (υς), *eus* (ευς), *ūs* (ους), and *as* (Gen. *antis*), ends, as in Greek, without *s*: as, Phyllīs, *Voc.* Phyllī; Cōtȳs, *Voc.* Cōtȳ; Orpheus, *Voc.* Orpheu (see § 20, 3); Panthūs, *Voc.* Panthū; Calchās, *Voc.* Calchā.

2. The *Voc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *ēs*, Gen. *ĭs*, ends in ēs, ĕs, or ē: as Sōcrătēs, Sŏcrătĕs, or Sŏcrătē.

6. *Ablative Singular*

The *Abl. Sing.* of Nouns in *ēs* ends in *ē* or *ĕ*; as, Periclē, Sŏcrătē or Sŏcrătĕ.

7. *Nominative and Vocative Plural.*

The *Nom. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ĕs* (ες) instead of the Latin *ēs*: as Arcădĕs (Virg.) Neuter Nouns in *ŏs* or *ŭs* have the *Nom. Pl.* in *ē*: as cētŏs, *a whale*, cētē; mĕlŏs, *a tune*, mĕlē; pĕlăgŭs, *open sea*; pĕlăgē.

8. *Genitive Plural.*

The *Gen. Plur.* in *ōn* (ων) is rare except in the titles of books: as, Epigrammătōn, Mĕtămorphōseōn libri.

9. *Accusative Plural.*

The *Acc. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ăs* instead of the Latin *ēs*: as, Arcăd-ăs.

10. *Dative and Ablative Plural.*

The *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* of Greek Nouns in *ma*, Gen. *mătĭs*, frequently end in *īs* (according to the Second Declension), rather than *ĭbŭs*: as, pŏēmăt-īs from pŏēmă (ποίημα). The Greek ending of the Dative Plural *sĭ* (*sĭn*) is occasionally found in the poets: as Troăsin, Dryăsin, Charīsin (Ov.).

Synoptical View of Greek Nouns of Third Declension.

	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Periclēs	Isĭs	Dīdō	Atreus	Trōădēs, ĕs
Gen.	Periclĭs, ī	Isĭdĭs, ŏs	Dīdūs, ōnĭs	Atrĕōs, ī	Trōădum, ōn
Dat.	Periclī	Isĭdī, ĭ	Dīdō, ōnī	Atrĕī, eō	Trōădĭbŭs, Trōăsĭ(n)
Acc.	Periclem, ĕa	Isĭdem, ă, Isĭn	Dīdō, ōnem	Atrĕă	Trōădēs, ăs
Voc.	Periclēs, ĕs, ē	Isĭ	Dīdō	Atreu	Trōădēs, ĕs
Abl.	Periclē	Isĭdĕ	Dīdō, ōnĕ	Atrĕō	Trōădĭbŭs

Chapter VIII.—Gender of Nouns of Third Declension.

I. Gender determined by the meaning.

§ 41. In this, as in all Declensions, the rule holds good, that all Nouns which are names of Males are Masculine; and those which are names of Females are Feminine. The Gender of all other Nouns must be determined from the ending of the Nominative Case or of the Stem, or simply from usage.

Note.—The names of some objects without life are Masculine or Feminine from mythological or fanciful considerations: thus, sōl, *the sun (sun-god)*, is Masc.; as are also the names of rivers as, Tĭbĕris, *the Tiber (river-god)*. Arbŏr, ŏris, *tree*, is Fem. (being the *mother of fruit*), with the names of particular trees (see § 19).

Again: some Nouns are Masc. or Fem. according to the general term to which each may be referred (compare arbor, *supr.*) thus, Carthāgo, ĭnis, *Carthage*, is Fem., urbs being supplied. Libs, *a S.W. wind*, Masc., ventus being supplied. Similarly the names of the *months* are Masc., mensis being understood.

II. Gender determined by the ending or other considerations.

A. *Masculine Nouns.*

§ 42.—1. Abstract and other Nouns in **ŏr, ōris; ōs, ōris,** are Masc.: as, dŏlor, ōris, *grief*; flōs, flōris, *flower*; rōs, rōris, *dew*.

Exception:—ōs, ōris, *mouth*, is Neuter

[For nouns in ŏr, ōris, see § 44.]

2. Nouns in **es** and **is**, increasing *short* in the Genitive, are mostly Masc.: as, pēs, pĕdis, *foot*; lăpis, ĭdis, *stone*; vōmis (vomer), ĕris, *plough-share*; cŭcŭmis, ĕris (also, cŭcŭmis), *cucumber*.

EXCEPTIONS.

(*a*) Three in *es* are Fem. :—
ĕges, ĕtis *crop* ĕges, ĕtis *mat* compes, ĕdis *fetter*

Also, merges, ĭtis, *sheaf*, occurs as Fem., but is given Masc. by Prisc. [Ălĕs, ĭtis, *winged creature*, is properly Adj., with bestia understood, and so Fem.; also sometimes Masc.]

(*b*) Two in *is*, *ĭdis* are Fem.: viz. cassis, *helmet;* and cuspis, *point.* (Also Greek Nouns in as, ădis; is, ĭdis; ys, ўdis: as, lampas, *torch;* pўrămis, *pyramid;* chlămys, *cloak.*)

(*c*) Cinis, ĕris, *ashes;* pulvis, ĕris, *dust;* usu. Masc.

3. Nouns in **ax, ex, ix, ux,** increasing *short* in Gen. are Masc.: as, anthrax, ăcis, *coal, cinnabar;* ăpex, ĭcis, *top;* lătex, ĭcis, *liquid;* călix, ĭcis, *cup;* fornix, ĭcis, *arch;* trădux, ŭcis, *a layer (of vine).*

EXCEPTIONS.

(*a*) in *ax:* fax, făcis, *fire-brand*, Fem. [Mem. face mutuā, Hor.]

(*b*) in *ex:*—
Fem.: (prex) prĕcis *prayer;* nex, nĕcis *violent death* [as mors].
Also ilex, ĭcis, *oak;* cārex, ĭcis, *sedge* [as names of trees or plants].
Com.: ōbex, ĭcis *barrier* imbrex, ĭcis *tile* sĭlex, ĭcis, *flint.*
Cortex, *cork*, is regularly Masc., but is also found Fem. (Neue, i. 662, cites *fifteen* cases in Ov. in which it is Masc., against *three* Fem.: in one of the latter the reading is doubtful, and in the other two the connexion favours the use of the word as Fem.)

(*c*) in *ix:*—
Fem.: appendix ĭcis *appendage* coxendix ĭcis *hip*
pix pĭcis *pitch*
[also, sălix, *willow;* fĭlix, *fern:* "names of trees, etc.": fălix, also fălĭca, *moor-hen*, follows gender of avis.]

(*d*) in *ux:*—
crux, crŭcis, *cross*, is usu. Fem. [Mem. mala crux]; also nux, nŭcis, *walnut, tree* or *fruit*, follows rule for "names of trees."

4. Most Nouns in o (Stem on-), ōnis or ĭnis are Masc.: e.g. tĕmo, ōnis, *beam;* ordo, ĭnis, *order* [Mem. lucidus ordo, Hor.]; septentrio, ōnis, *the North.*

EXCEPTIONS.

(*a*) Abstracts in tūdo, derived from Adjectives, are Fem.: as, altĭtūdo, multĭtūdo, etc. See foll. section.

(*b*) Also fem.: grando, ĭnis, *hail* [Mem. dirae grandinis, Hor.]; (h)ărundo, ĭnis, *reed;* hĭrūdo, ĭnis, *leech* [Mem. plena cruoris hirudo, Hor.]; testūdo, ĭnis, *tortoise;* cāro, carnis [for carĭnis], *flesh.* [Mem.: agnīna, fērīna, *lamb, venison*, etc.]

(*c*) Nouns derived from Verbs and Nouns in *īgo, ūgo:* as, prūrīgo, ĭnis, *itching;* ferrūgo, ĭnis, *rust;* aerūgo, ĭnis, *verdigris* [Mem. aerugo mera, Hor.]. Also, lōlīgo, *cuttle-fish.*

5. Nouns declined like mons [Mem.: Mons Sacer], dens, are mostly Masc.: as, ădămas, antis, *adamant;* pons, ntis, *bridge*

[Mem. Pons Sublicius]; fons, ntis, *fountain*. But frons, ntis, *forehead* [Mem. frons turgida cornibus, Hor.]; frons, ndis, *foliage* [Mem. fronde novā, Hor.]; glans, ndis, *acorn*; are Fem.

6. Many Nouns in **is** are Masc.: for complete list, see § 43.

B. *Feminine Nouns.*

§ 43. The following are Feminine:—

1. All Abstract Nouns denoting Qualities and States, derived chiefly from Adjectives and Verbs. Principal terminations:—

-tūdo, Gen. ĭnis: as, altĭtūdo, multĭtūdo, fortĭtūdo, etc.
-ēdo, -īdo, *Gen.* ĭnis: dulcēdo, formīdo, cŭpīdo [but Cupīdo in sense of *Cupid*, Masc.]. To these add grando, (h)ărundo, hĭrūdo, testūdo, căro: see § 42, Exc.
-tās, *Gen.* tātis: jŭventas, ĕgestas, etc.
-tūs, „ tūtis: jŭventūs, virtūs.
-īgo, „ ĭnis: ŏrīgo, prūrīgo (*itching*). To these add lōlīgo, *cuttle-fish*; and ferrūgo, aerūgo (*rust of iron or copper*).

2. Abstract Nouns in **io** (**tio**, **sio**) derived from Verbs, and denoting actions or states: as, ŏpīnio, *opinion*; expugnātio, *taking by storm*; lŏcūtio, indignātio, etc.

Obs. In some of these the abstract sense has given way to the concrete: as, rĕgio, *region*; lĕgio, *legion*.

3. Nouns in **ēs**, Gen. **ĭs** are Fem.: as, nūbes, *cloud*; rūpes, *rock*.

[Exceptions: verrēs, *boar-pig*, follows the regular rule for names of Males: ăcīnăces, *sabre*, follows Gender in Gk. ἀκινάκης, Masc. of 1 Decl.]

4. Nouns in **ĭs**, Gen. **ĭs**, are more frequently Fem. than Masc. Those which have the Stem in **i**, with Acc. (often) in **im** and Abl. in **i** are all Fem.: viz. tussis, vis, sĕcūris, messis, sēmentis, restis, clāvis, nāvis, pelvis: see § 33.

Exceptions: Masculines in **is**.

[Mem.—In the following list, the words are arranged by association of meaning, each following word being linked in some way with the one immediately preceding. Those marked with an asterisk are also found as Fem.]

ignis	*fire*	cănālis	*canal*
torris	*fire-brand*	orbis	*circle*
follis	*bellows*	axis*	*axle*
pānis	*bread*	vectis	*lever*
piscis	*fish*	fustis	*cudgel*
mŭgĭlis	*mullet*	ensis	*sword*
vermis	*worm*	postis	*door-post*
anguis*	*snake*	torquis (ēs)*	*chain (collar)*
fūnis	*rope*	crīnis	*hair*
fascis	*bundle*	unguis	*nail*
sentis[2]	*bramble*	caulis	*stalk*
collis	*hill*	finis*	*end*
amnis*	*river*	mensis	*month*

Obs. 1. Finis is uniformly Fem. in Lucr., but regularly Masc. in the authors of the best period.

Obs. 2. Mūgilis has duplicate form mūgil.

Obs. 3. Sentis, *bramble*, is Masc.; but veprēs (such is the correct form), *bramble*, is Fem., according to No. 3.

5. Nouns in **ēs, ōs, ax, ex, ix, ox, ux,** increasing *long* in Gen., are Fem.: as, quiēs, ētis, *rest*, with comps. rēquiēs, inquiēs); cōs, cōtis, *hone;* dōs, dōtis, *dowry;* pax, pācis, *peace;* lex, lēgis, *law;* cervix, īcis, *back of neck;* rādix, īcis, *root;* vox, vōcis, *voice;* lux, lūcis, *light;* (frux), frūgis, *fruit;* also faex, faecis, *lees of wine;* (faux), faucis, *gorge.*

Exception.—Allex or hallex, ēcis, is Fem.; but the form allec (hallec) is Neut.

6. Most Nouns having two Consonants before **is** in Gen. are Fem.: as, urbs, urb-is, *city;* stirps, stirp-is, *trunk* (sometimes Masc.); arx, arc-is, *citadel* [*i*-stems, pseudo-consonantal: see § 28].

Exceptions:—lac, lactis, *milk;* cŏr, cordis, *heart;* both Neut.; together with most Nouns like mons (§ 42, 5), Masc.

7. Nouns in **aus** and **ūs,** Gen. **-dis,** are all Fem.: viz. laus, *praise;* fraus, *harm, fraud;* pālūs (-ūs, once in Hor.), *marsh;* incūs, *anvil.*

8. Labial Stems in **b, p, m**: as, trabs, hiems, stips (*small coin*); (ops), ŏpis, *aid, resource;* etc.: all Feminine.

ădeps, ĭpis, *fat*, is Common.

C. *Neuter Nouns.*

§ 44. The following terminations are Neuter:—

ĕ	*Gen.* **is**:	măre, *sea;* rēte, *net;* etc.
ĕn	„ **ĭnis**:	nōmen, *name;* flūmen, *river;* etc.
ăl	„ **ālis**:	ănīmal, *animal;* pūteal, *well-cover;* etc.
ăr	„ **āris, arris,** and **ăris**:	calcar, *spur;* far, *farris, spelt;* baccar, ăris, *a fragrant plant.*
ĕr	„ **ĕris**:	cădāver, *corpse;* ăcer, *maple.*
ēr	„ **ēris**:	vēr, vēris, *spring.*
ŏr	„ **ŏris**:	marmor, *marble;* aequor, *level surface, sea.*
ŭr	„ **ŭris** and **ŏris**:	fulgur, ŭris, *flash of lightning;* rōbur, ŏris, *heart of oak;* etc.
ŭs	„ **ĕris** and **ŏris**:	ŏpus, ĕris, *work;* corpus, oris, *body.*
ūs	„ **ūris**:	crūs, *leg;* tūs, *frankincense.*
ă	„ **ătis** (Gr.):	pōēma, *poem;* ĕpigramma, *epigram;* etc.
ŭt	„ **ĭtis**:	căput, *head.*

Also the Nouns: vās, vāsis, *vessel* (pl. vāsa follows 2 Dec.); aes, aeris, *copper;* ŏs, ossis, *bone.*

EXCEPTIONS.

(*a*) One Noun only in **ĕn** is Masc.: pecten, ĭnis, *comb.* (Besides, of course, such as denote males: e.g. flāmen, *a special priest of Jupiter, Mars* or *Quirinus;* tūbĭcĕn, *trumpeter,* and other comps. of căn-o.)

[Those in ēn, ēnis, are Masc.: liēn or splēn, *the spleen;* rēn, rēnis, usu. pl., *kidney;* attăgēn, ēnis, *wood-cock.*]

(*b*) One in *ăl* is Masc.: sal, sălis, *salt;* *pl.* sāles, *witticisms.* [Proper Names in *ăl*, Masc.: Hannibal, Hiempsal, etc.]

(*c*) Masculines in *ĕr*:—

ăcĭpenser (-sis)	*sturgeon*	carcĕr	*starting-post, goal*
aggĕr	*mound*	lătĕr	*brick*
anser	*goose*	passĕr	*sparrow.*

(*d*) Masculines in *ŭr*:—

furfŭr	*bran*	turtŭr	*turtle-dove.*
(lĕmur)	*ghost;* usu. *pl.*	vultŭr	*vulture.*

(*e*) ās, assis, *pound, unit,* is Masc.

(*f*) tellūs, ūris, is Fem., being strictly appellation of *Earth-goddess.*

D. *Epicene Nouns.*

§ 45. Epicene Nouns are those names of animals in which both sexes are included under one gender. Such are ăquīla, *fem., eagle (male* or *female);* ănas, ătis, *fem., duck* or *drake;* vulpēs, *fem., fox* or *vixen.*

Epicene Nouns are conveniently used when the sex of an animal is an indifferent matter to us. This is the case with all inferior animals, reptiles, insects, etc. But where it may be important to distinguish the sex of animals, as in the case of cattle, the male and female are denoted either by different words or by appropriate terminations. Instances of the former mode of distinction are: taurus *bull,* vacca, *cow;* ăries, *ram,* ovis, *sheep;* of the latter, ĕquus *horse,* ĕqua, *mare;* leo, *lion,* leaena, *lioness;* etc. Even in the case of such, there is sometimes a common form as well.

List of ordinary Epicene Nouns of Third Declension.

Masc.		*Com.*		*Fem.*	
ĕlĕphas	ntis*	cănis	is	fēlēs	is
accĭpĭter	tris	bōs	bŏvis	mēlēs	is
lĕpus	ŏris	sūs	sŭis	tigris	ĭs & ĭdis
mūs	mūris	serpens, anguis } usu. masc.		ŏvis	is
sōrex	ĭcis			strix	ĭgis
glīs	īris	līmax	ācis	cornix	īcis
phoenix	īcis	perdix	īcis	nātrix	īcis
turtur	ŭris	pălumbes	is	ăpis	is
pāvo	ōnis				
vermis	is				
vespertīlio	ōnis				
cŭlex	ĭcis				
pūlex	ĭcis				
cīmex	ĭcis				
būfo	ōnis				

[N.B.—The above are arranged in column to aid the memory.]

* Duplicate form: ĕlĕphantus, more frequent.

English of the above.—Elephas, *elephant;* accipiter, *hawk;* lepus *hare;* mus, *mouse* or *rat;* sorex, *field-mouse;* glis, *dormouse;* phoenix, *phoenix;* turtur, *turtle-dove;* pavo, *peacock;* vermis, *worm;* vespertilio, *bat;* culex, *gnat;* pulex, *flea;* cimex, *bug;*

bufo, *toad*; feles, *cat*; meles, *badger*; tigris, *tiger*; ovis, *sheep*; strix, *screech-owl*; cornix, *crow*; natrix, *water-snake*; apis, *bee*; canis, *dog*; bos, *ox* or *heifer*; sus, *swine*; serpens, *reptile*; anguis, *snake*; limax, *snail*; perdix, *partridge*; palumbes, *wood-pigeon*.

Chapter IX.—The Fourth or U Declension.

§ 46. The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in ŭs, and of Neuters in ū. The Stem is always in u.

Stem English	grădu *step*	ănu *old-woman*	gĕnu *knee*
Sing.			
Nom.	grăd-ŭs (*m.*)	ăn-ŭs (*f.*)	gĕn-ū (*n.*)
Gen.	grăd-ūs	ăn-ūs	gĕn-ūs
Dat.	grăd-ŭī (grăd-ū)	ăn-ŭī (ăn-ū)	gĕn-ū
Acc.	grăd-um	ăn-um	gĕn-ū
Voc.	grăd-ŭs	ăn-ūs	gĕn-ū
Abl.	grăd-ū	ăn-ū	gĕn-ū
Plur.			
Nom.	grăd-ūs	ăn-ūs	gĕn-ŭa
Gen.	grăd-ŭum	ăn-ŭum	gĕn-ŭum
Dat.	grăd-ĭbŭs	ăn-ĭbŭs	gĕn-ĭbus
Acc.	grăd-ūs	ăn-ūs	gĕn-ŭă
Voc.	grăd-ūs	ăn-ūs	gĕn-ŭă
Abl.	grăd-ĭbŭs	ăn-ĭbŭs	gĕn-ĭbŭs

The following Nouns usually retain the Stem-Vowel in the Dative and Ablative Plural, which therefore end in ŭbŭs:—

ăcus (*f.*)	*needle.*	portus (*m.*)	*harbour.*
arcus (*m.*)	*bow.*	spĕcus (*m. f. & n.*)	*cave.*
artus (*m.*)	*joint.*	trĭbus (*f.*)	*tribe.*
ŭcus (*m.*)	*lake, tank.*	vĕru (*n.*)	*spit.*

Obs. In two of these the *u* in *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* serves to distinguish them from the corresponding forms of other Nouns; arcŭbus from arcus, arcĭbus from arx; artŭbus from artūs, artĭbus from ars. The only two which appear to have invariably *ŭbus* are acus and arcus.

Gender.—Nouns in us of the Fourth Declension are regularly masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and of women, and the words mentioned below.

Examples for Declension

Masculine.

cantus	*song.*	cursus	*running.*	passus	*pace.*
cāsus	*fall.*	fructus	*fruit.*	sensus	*sense.*
currus	*chariot.*	mōtus	*movement.*	ūsus	*use.*

Feminine.

ăcus	*needle.*	nūrus	*daughter-in-law*
ănus	*old-woman.*	portĭcus	*portico.*
cŏlus	*distaff.*	quinquātrūs (*pl.*)	*fifth day after the Ides.*
dŏmus (*irreg.*)	*house.*		
īdūs (*pl.*)	*Ides* (*the* 15*th* or 13*th day* of the Roman month).	socrus	*mother-in-law.*
		trĭbus	*tribe* (a division of the Roman people).
mănus	*hand.*		

Neuter.

cornu	*horn.*	vĕru	*spit.*

Obs. 1. The *Gen. Sing.* **ūs** is a contraction of *uĭs:* as, grădūs fro grăduĭs.

Obs. 2. The *Dat. Sing.* *uī* is often contracted into *ū*, especially in th poets: as, grăduī, grădū: currū = currui (Virg. Ec. 5, 29). It stated to have been used and defended by Caesar (Gell. N. A. 4, 1 *fin.*), and is found also in Cic. and Sall.

Obs. 3. Several Nouns waver between the **o** and **u** Declensions. I the older writers the *Gen. Sing.* often follows the 2nd Decl., tl form in *i* being originally Locative (Comp. § 19, *Obss. on the Case* No. 2). The form senati consultum occurs in Sallust (Cat. 36 and appears to have been the regular form in early Latin. Othe examples occur: as, tumulti, adventi, fructi, etc.

Obs. 4. The following Nouns have forms taken from both Declensions fīcus, *fig-tree;* laurus, *bay-tree;* myrtus, *myrtle;* cŏlus, *distaff* and especially dŏmus, *house*, which is the most important word this kind. It is also remarkable as having a distinct Locati Case in the Singular: it is thus declined—

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. dŏm-ŭs	dŏm-ūs
Gen. dŏm-ūs	dŏm-ōrum (*post-Aug.* dŏm-ŭum)
Dat. dŏm-ūī (*rarely* dŏm-ō)	dŏm-ĭbŭs
Acc. dŏm-um	dŏm-ōs (*rarely* dŏm-ūs)
Voc. dŏm-ŭs	dŏm-ūs
Abl. dŏm-ō (*rarely* dŏm-ū)	dŏm-ĭbŭs
Loc. dŏm-ī, *at home*	

Obs. 5. Two Nouns in **u** belong to the Consonant Declension namely, grū-s, sū-s. See § 27.

Chapter X.—The Fifth or E Declension.

§ 47. The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*. The Stem is in **e**.

Stem English	dĭe *day*	re *thing*	luxŭrie *luxury*
Sing.			
Nom.	dĭ-ēs	rē-s	luxŭri-ēs
Gen.	dĭ-ēī (dĭē)	rĕ-ī (rē)	*See below, Obs. 4.*
Dat.	dĭ-ēī (dĭē)	rĕ-ī (rē)	
Acc.	dĭ-em	rem	luxŭri-em
Voc.	dĭ-ēs	rēs	luxŭri-ēs
Abl.	dĭ-ē	rē	luxŭri-ē
Plur.			
Nom.	dĭ-ēs	rē-s	
Gen.	dĭ-ērum	rē-rum	
Dat.	dĭ-ēbŭs	rē-bŭs	*wanting*
Acc.	dĭ-ēs	rē-s	
Voc.	dĭ-ēs	rē-s	
Abl.	dĭ-ēbŭs	rē-bŭs	

Gender.—Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine; excepting dies, which in the Singular is Common, and in the Plural always Masculine: also mĕrĭdies, *noon*, which is always Masculine.

Obs. 1. Rēs and diēs are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural. The following words occur in the Plural in *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* No others have any Plural.

ăciēs	*edge.*	effĭgiēs	*likeness.*	spĕciēs	*form.*
făciēs	*face.*	sĕriēs	*row.*	spēs	*hope.*

Obs. 2. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *e* in eī is usually long after a vowel, but short after a consonant: as, dī-ēī, făci-ēī; but rēī, fĭdĕī. (But in older Latin the *e* is long also after a consonant: fĭdēī, Enn. ap. Cic. Am. 1.)

Obs. 3. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē*: as, dĭē, fĭdē. A *Gen.* and *Dat.* in *ī* is also occasionally found: as, ăcī-ī, pernĭcī-ī, for acī-ēi, pernĭcī-ēi (Gell. Noct. Att. 9, 13). According to Gell., Virgil wrote dīi (for di-ēi) in Aen. 1. 636. In old Latin a *Gen.* in **es** is sometimes found: răbiēs, Lucr. 4. 1083.

Obs. 4. Some Nouns waver between the First and Fifth Declensions; having Stems both in **a** and **e**: as, *Nom.* luxurĭă and luxŭriēs, *luxury*; the *Gen.* and *Dat.* are always formed from the *a* Stem, as, luxŭriae. So also, mollĭtĭă and mollĭtiēs, *softness*; mātĕriēs or mātĕrĭă, *timber*, &c.

Obs. 5. Some Nouns waver between the Third and Fifth Declensions: as, plebs and plēbēs, *the commons*; *Gen.* plēb-īs and plēb-ei; fāmēs, *hunger*, with old *Gen.* fām-ei (Prisc.) and fām-i, and *Abl.* fāmē (Virg. Aen. 6. 421).

Chapter XI.—Irregularities and Peculiarities of Nouns.

§ 48. Some Nouns are not declined: as, fās, *divine law*; nĕfās, *what is opposed to divine law*; nīhil (nīl), *nothing*; instăr, *scale, resemblance* (all Neuter). Such Nouns are used only in *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*

§ 49. Some have no Plural: as, aurum, *gold*; argentum, *silver*; and, as a general rule, Abstract Nouns: as, pax, *peace*; justĭtia, *justice*. But these latter are occasionally found in the Plural, where the sense requires it.

§ 50. Many have no Singular: as, dīvĭtiae, *riches*; exŭviae, *spoil stript from the slain*; nuptiae, *wedding*; indūtiae, *truce*; fēriae, *holidays*; tĕnebrae, *darkness*; lībĕri, *children*; arma, *arms*; mānes, *shades of the dead*; moenia, *fortifications*; with the divisions of the month, Kălendae, Nōnae, Īdūs; names of festivals, as, Sāturnālia, Flōrālia; also many names of towns, as, Găbii, Athĕnae, etc.

§ 51. Many modify their meaning in the Plural: as,

	Sing.		Plur.
aedes	*chamber, temple*	aedes	*a house*
aes	*copper, bronze*	aera	*copper coins; bronze statues*
ăqua	*water*	ăquae (often)	*medicinal springs*
auxĭlium	*help*	auxĭlia	*auxiliary forces*
bŏnum	*good*	bŏnă	*goods, property*
carcer	*prison*	carcĕres	*starting-place*
castrum	*fort*	castra	*camp*
Cōmĭtium	*the place of Assembly*	cōmĭtia	*the assembly itself; [the elections*
cōpia	*plenty*	cōpiae	*forces*
făcultas	*ability*	făcultātes	*means, resources*
fīnis	*end*	fīnes	*boundaries, territories*
grātia	*favour*	grātiae	*thanks*
hortus	*garden*	horti	*pleasure-grounds*
impĕdīmentum	*hindrance*	impĕdīmenta	*baggage*
littĕra	*letter of the alphabet*	littĕrae	*an epistle, literature*
lūdus	*play, school*	lūdi	*public games*
marmor	*marble*	marmŏra	*marble statues*
ŏpĕra	*exertion*	ŏpĕrae	*workmen; hired 'roughs'*
ŏpis (Gen.)	*help*	ŏpes	*power, wealth*
pars	*portion*	partes	*a part in a play, etc.*

	Sing.		Plur.
rostrum	*beak*	rostra	*the Roman pulpit (adorned with the beaks of ships)*
sal	*salt*	sāles	*wit*
tăbŭla	*a board, picture*	tăbŭlae	*writing tablets.*

§ 52. Some Nouns are defective in Case.

1. The following have Sing. complete except Nom.:—
   (daps), dăpis, *f.*, *feast.* Full Plur.
   (dĭcio), -ōnis, *f.*, *dominion.* No Plur.
   (frux), frūgis, *f.*, *fruit.* Full Plur.
   (internĕcio), -ōnis, *f.*, *extermination.* No Plur.

2. These have only certain Cases:—
   (compes), *f.*, *fetter*, compĕdem, compĕde. Full Plur.
   fors, *f.*, *chance*: Nom. and Abl. only. No Plur.
   (ops), ŏpis, ŏpem, ŏpĕ, *f.*, *aid.* Full Plur.
   (prex, prĕcis), prĕcī, em, ĕ, *f.*, *prayer.* Full Plur.
   (vicis), is, em, ĕ, *f.*, *change.* Full Plur. except Gen.
   (verbĕr), ĕris, ĕ, *n.*, *stripe.* Full Plur.
   (spons), spontis, ĕ, *f.*, (*of*) *one's own accord.* No Plur.
   vis, vīs (Gen. v. rare), vim, vī, *f.*, *strength.* Full Plur.: vīres, vīrium, vīribus.

3. These have one Case only in use:
   Gen. dicis, *legal form:* in phr. dicis causā, *for form's sake.*
   Acc. ămussim, *joiner's rule:* in phr. ad amussim, *by rule, exactly.*
   rāvim, *hoarseness:* chiefly in phr. ad ravim.
   (?) fātim, *exhaustion:* in phr. ad fatim (affatim).
   sĕcŭs, *n.*, *sex:* in phr. virile *or* muliebre secus.
   Abl. ambāgĕ, *f.*, *round-about course.* Full Plur.
   faucĕ, *f.*, *throat.* Full Plur.
   nātu, *by birth.* No Plur.
   jussū, injussū, *with* or *without orders* (*of*). So other Verbal Nouns: as, in procinctū, *in equipment of battle;* in promptū, *in readiness*, etc.; ductū, *under the leadership* (*of*); etc.

§ 53. Some Nouns waver between two (or more) modes of declension [**Hĕtĕroclĭtă**].

1. In the Second Declension some have forms both in *us* and *um:* as, callus and callum, *hardened skin;* commentārius and commentārium, *a note-book.*
2. Some fluctuate between 1 and 2 Decl.; as, margărīta and margărītum, *pearl;* menda and mendum, *a blemish.* Vespĕr (also vespĕra), *evening*, has, according to 2 Decl., *Acc.* vespĕrum, but *Abl.* usually according to 3 Decl., vespĕrĕ, vespĕrī.
3. Some fluctuate between 1 and 5 Decl.: v. § 47, *Obs.* 4.
4. Some fluctuate between 1 and 4 Decl.: as, dŏmus, *house* (see § 46, *Obs.* 4); laurus, *bay-tree;* cupressus, *cypress;* fīcus, *fig-tree;* pīnus, *pine-tree;* ēventus (4) and ēventum, *occurrence;* suggestus (4) and suggestum, *platform for speakers;* vēnus (*or* vaenus), *sale*, *Dat.* vēnui and (rarely) vēno.
5. Some fluctuate between 3 and 5 Decl.: as, plebs, plēbis, and plēbēs, plēbēī (archaic), *the commonalty;* rĕquiēs, rĕquiētis and rĕquiēī, *rest.*

6. Jūgĕrum, jūger, *an acre*, is of 2 Decl. in Sing., but of 3 Decl. in Plur.: viz. jūgĕrā, jūgĕrum, jūgĕrĭbŭs. Vās, vāsis, *vessel*, is of 3 Decl. in Sing., but of 2 Decl. in Plur.: viz. vāsă, vāsōrum, vāsīs. Names of festivals like Vulcānālia, have *Gen. Pl.* according to either 2 or 3 Decl., Vulcānāliorum or Vulcānālium: *Dat.* and *Abl.* Vulcānālibus.

§ 54. Some Nouns have different genders in Singular and Plural [**Hĕtĕrŏgĕnĕă**].

	Sing.	Plur.
jŏcus, *m.*	*sport*	jŏci and jŏcă.
lŏcus, *m.*	*place*	usu. lŏcă; also lŏci, esp. in fig. sense, loci communes.
carbăsus, *f.*	*fine linen*	carbăsă, *canvas, sails*
Tartărus, *m.*	*Tartarus*	Tartăra.
Pergămus, *f.*	*citadel of Troy*	Pergăma.
frēnum, *n.*	*bit*	frēna and frēni.
rastrum, *n.*	*rake*	rastri and rastra.

Chapter XII.—Declension of Adjectives.

§ 55. Adjectives are declined either according to the First and Second Declensions of Nouns conjointly, or exclusively by the Third Declension.

§ 56. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions end in ŭs, ă, um, or ĕr, (ĕ)ra, (ĕ)rum, and are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension: as, bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnum, *good*, Stems bŏno-bŏna; tĕnĕr, tĕnĕra, tĕnĕrum, *tender*, Stems tĕnĕro-tĕnĕra; nĭgĕr, nigră, nigrum, *black*, Stems nĭg(ĕ)ro-nĭg(ĕ)ra.

1.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bŏn-ŭs	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Gen.	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ōrum	bŏn-ārum	bŏn-ōrum
Dat.	bŏn-ō	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ō	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
Acc.	bŏn-um	bŏn-am	bŏn-um	bŏn-ōs	bŏn-ās	bŏn-ă
Voc.	bŏn-ĕ	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Abl.	bŏn-ō	bŏn-ā	bŏn-ō	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs

2.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Gen.	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum
Dat.	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs
Acc.	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă
Voc.	tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Abl.	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ā	tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs

	Sing.			3.	Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	nĭgĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Gen.	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Acc.	nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ă
Voc.	nĭg-ĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Abl.	nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

Obs. 1. The only Adjectives declined like tĕnĕr are the following:—

asper	ĕra	ĕrum	*rough.*	liber	ĕra	ĕrum *free*
lăcer	ĕra	ĕrum	*torn*	mīser	ĕra	ĕrum *wretched*
prosper	ĕra	ĕrum	*prosperous*			

together with all compounds in *fer* and *ger:* as,

lānīger ĕra ĕrum *wool-bearing* | ōpīfer ĕra ĕrum *help-bringing*

Dextĕr is declined in both ways, dextĕrā and dextrā, dextĕrum and dextrum.

All other Adjectives in *ĕr* drop the *ĕ*, and are declined like nīger.

Obs. 2. There is one Adjective of this class in *ŭr:* sātŭr, sātŭrā, sātŭrum, *full of food, sated.*

§ 57. *Irregular Declension in us, a, um,* and *er, a, um.*

Certain Adjectives have the Genitive Sing. in *ius* and the Dative in *i* in all Genders: e.g.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ūn-ŭs	ūn-ă	ūn-um	ŭt-ĕr	utr-ă	utr-um
Gen.	ūn-īŭs (-ĭus)			utr-īŭs (-ĭus)		
Dat.	ūn-ī			utr-ī		
Acc.	ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um	utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
Voc.	ūn-ĕ	ūn-ă	ūn-um	(*wanting*)		
Abl.	ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō	utr-ō	utr-ā	utr-ō

The Plural is regular.

The *Voc.* of ūnus occurs (Cat. 37, 17): also the *Voc.* of sōlus.

The following Adjectives are declined as above:

ūnus	*one*	ullus	*any*	neuter	*neither of two*
sōlus	*alone*	nullus	*none*	alter	*one of two*
tōtus	*whole*	ŭter	*which of two*	ălĭus	*one of any number, another*

Obs. 1. Most of the above are found at times with the *Gen.* and *Dat.* as in bonus. Thus Ter. (Andr. 3, 5, 2) has nulli consili, and Cic. (as cited by Prisc. 6, 1, 5) unae rei (*Dat.*). The forms in ius appear to exhibit the original ending of the Genitive of the 2nd Declension (cf. § 19, Obss. on the Cases).

Obs. 2. The *i* of the Gen. *ius* is regularly long: but such forms as unīus, ipsīus, etc., occur frequently in Dactylic verse. Even alterius

is found with *i* long, though Priscian expressly states that it was regularly short (see Neue, ii. 252). It accords with Priscian's dictum that alterius occurs frequently in Dactylic but rarely in Iambic verse. The (rare) Gen. of alius, alius, is *always* long, being a contraction for aliius.

Obs. 3. The compounds of ŭtĕr are declined in the same way: as, ŭterquĕ, ŭtervīs, ŭterlĭbĕt, ŭtercunquĕ: *Gen.* utriusque, utriusvīs, etc. In altĕrŭter, *the one or the other*, the former part of the word is usually not inflected: *Fem.* altĕrutra, etc.: see Lat. Dict.

§ 58. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION have some of them three different terminations in the Nominative Case Singular for the three Genders, some two, and some only one for all genders.

I.—*Adjectives of three terminations* end in ĕr, (ē)rīs ĕr(ĕ): as, ācĕr, ācris, ācrĕ, *sharp*, Stem āc(ē)ri-.

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	ācĕr (ācrīs)	ācrīs	ācrĕ	ācrēs	ācrĭă
Gen.	ācrīs (*all Genders*)			ācrĭum (*all Genders*)	
Dat.	ācrī (*all Genders*)			ācrĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	
Acc.	ācrem		ācrĕ	ācrēs or ācrīs	ācrĭă
Voc.	ācĕr	ācrīs	ācrĕ	ācrēs	ācrĭă
Abl.	ācrī (*all Genders*)			ācrĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	

Obs. 1. The termination *ris* frequently occurs in the Masc. as well a in the Fem. Only one Adjective of this class retains the e through out: cĕlĕr (cĕlĕris), cĕlĕris, cĕlĕre, *swift*.

Obs. 2. The termination *er* was anciently common to both Masc. an Fem.

The following Adjectives are declined like ācer:—

ălăcer	(cris)	*lively*	pŭter	(tris)	*rotten*
campester	(tris)	*level*	pălustер	(tris)	*marshy*
cĕlĕber	(bris)	*crowded*	sălŭber	(bris)	*healthful*
ĕquester	(tris)	*equestrian*	silvester	(tris)	*wooded*
pĕdester	(tris)	*pedestrian*	vŏlūcer	(cris)	*flying*

terrestris (terrester, rare) *pertaining to earth*

In the case of illustris (*famous*), mĕdiocris (*moderate*), mŭliebris (*feminine*), sēmestris (*of six months' duration*), the form in ris only is in use.

§ 59. II.—*Adjectives of two terminations* end in ĭs (Masc. and Fem.), ĕ (Neut.), Stem in i; and in ĭōr (Masc. and Fem.), ĭŭs (Neut.), Stem in ōs. The latter class comprises the Comparatives of all Adjectives, and no others. Examples: tristĭs, e, *sad*, Stem tristi; altĭōr, us, *higher*, Stem altĭōs.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Gen.	trist-ĭs (*all Genders*)		trist-ĭum (*all Genders*)	
Dat.	trist-ī (*all Genders*)		trist-ĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	
Acc.	trist-em	trist-ĕ	trist-ēs or -ĭs	trist-ĭă
Voc.	trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ	trist-ēs	trist-ĭă
Abl.	trist-ī (*all Genders*)		trist-ĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	

2.

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	altĭŏr	altĭŭs	altĭŏr-ēs	altĭŏr-ă
Gen.	altĭŏr-ĭs (*all Genders*)		altĭŏr-um (*all Genders*)	
Dat.	altĭŏr-ī (*all Genders*)		altĭŏr-ĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	
Acc.	altĭŏr-em	altĭŭs	altĭŏr-ēs (-ĭs)	altĭŏr-ă
Voc.	altĭŏr	altĭŭs	altĭŏr-ēs	altĭŏr-ă
Abl.	altĭŏrĕ *and* ī (*all Genders*)		altĭŏr-ĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	

Obs. On the stem *-iōs*, and the change of *s* into *r* in inflexion, see § 63, Note 1.

Examples for Declension.

lĕvis	*light*	brĕvis	*short*	mollis	*soft*
lēvis	*smooth*	fortis	*brave*	făcĭlis	*easy*
grăvis	*heavy*	turpis	*disgraceful*	vīlis	*cheap*
dulcis	*sweet*	sĭmĭlis	*like*	hŭmĭlis	*low*
	lĕvior	*lighter*	mājor	*greater*	
	grăvior	*heavier*	mĭnor	*less*	

§ 60. III.—*Adjectives of one termination* are of various endings. Many end in ax, ix, ox, Stems āci, īci, ōci; and many more in ens and ans, Stems enti, anti. The Neuter of these, as of all Adjectives, adheres to the rule laid down concerning Neuter Nouns, § 19. Examples: fēlix, *lucky*, Stem fēlīci; prūdens, *prudent*, Stem prūdenti.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	fēlix (*all Genders*)		fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Gen.	fēlīc-ĭs (*all Genders*)		fēlīc-ĭum (*all Genders*)	
Dat.	fēlīc-ī (*all Genders*)		fēlīc-ĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	
Acc.	fēlīc-em	fēlix	fēlīc-ēs (-ĭs)	fēlīc-ĭă
Voc.	fēlix (*all Genders*)		fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Abl.	fēlīc-ī or ĕ (*all Genders*)		fēlīc-ĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	

2.

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	prūdens (*all Genders*)		prūdent-ēs	prūdent-ĭă
Gen.	prūdent-ĭs (*all Genders*)		prūdent-ĭum (*all Genders*)	
Dat.	prūdent-ī (*all Genders*)		prūdent-ĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	
Acc.	prūdent-em	prūdens	prūdent-ēs (-ĭs)	prūdent-ĭă
Voc.	prūdens (*all Genders*)		prūdent-ēs	prūdent-ĭă
Abl.	prūdent-ī or ĕ (*all Genders*)		prūdent-ĭbŭs (*all Genders*)	

Examples for Declension.

audax	ācis	*bold*	pŏtens	entis	*powerful*
vērax	ācis	*truthful*	ingens	entis	*huge*
lŏquax	ācis	*talkative*	dīlĭgens	entis	*diligent*
vēlox	ōcis	*swift*	săpiens	entis	*wise*
fĕrox	ōcis	*high-spirited*	praesens	entis	*present*

NOTE 1.—Many Adjectives derived from names of Italian towns end in *-as*, Stem **āti**: e.g. Arpīn-ās, *born at Arpinum*; Casīn-ās, *born at Casinum*, etc. Analogous to these are, nostr-ās, *born in our country*; vestr-ās, *born in your country*. *Gen.* always in ātis.

NOTE 2.—Dīves, dīvĭt-is, *rich*, Stem **dīvĕt** or **dīvĕti**, has also a contracted form: *Nom.* dīs (*rare*), neut. dītĕ; *Gen.* dīt-is; *Nom. Pl.* neut. dītĭ-ă; *Gen. Pl.* dītĭ-um.

§ 61. IRREGULARITIES AND PECULIARITIES OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Some Adjectives are found only in isolated forms: as, pŏtĭs, *neut.* pŏtĕ (also pŏtis, Lucr.), *able* (no other forms); nĕcessĕ (nĕcessum), *necessary*, neither of which can be used attributively; exspēs (Hor.), *hopeless*, used only in *Nom. Sing.*; exlex, *bound by no law*, only other form, exlēgem (Cic.).

2. Some are defective in *Nom. Sing. Masc.*: as, (cēter-), cētĕra, um, *the rest of*; (poster-), postĕra, um, *following after*; (lūdicer-), lūdicra, crum, *done in play*.

In some Adjectives of 3 Decl., no *Nom. Sing.* is found: as (sons), sont-em, *guilty*; (semĭnex), seminĕc-em, *half-killed*; (caelĕs), caelĭt-em, *inhabiting heaven*; etc.

3. In some Adjectives of 3 Decl., the *Neut Plur.* is not in use: see § 35.

4. Some Adjectives in *is, e*, have a less frequent collateral form in *us, a, um*: as, ĭnerm-is, e, *unarmed*; less freq. ĭnerm-us, a, um; exănĭm-is, e, *lifeless*; less freq. exănĭm-us, a, um. Other instances are, imberbis (us), *beardless*; hĭlăris (us), *cheerful*; sēmĭsomn-is (us), *half-asleep*; prōclīv-is (us), *inclining*.

Again, some Adjectives of 1 and 2 Decl. have collateral forms in *is, e*: as, inbēcill-us, a, um (is, e), *feeble*; effrēn-us, a, um (is, e), *unbridled*.

Vĭŏlent-us, *violent*, has a (rare) form vĭŏlens, ntis.

5. Some Adjectives are indeclinable: as, nēquam, *worthless*; frūgī (originally Dat. Sing. of Noun), *honest*.

6. Some stems undergo considerable contraction in *Nom. Sing.*: as Stem, **praecĭpĭt-**, *Nom.* praeceps, *Gen.* praecĭpĭt-is, *headlong*; with other compounds of caput.

NOTE.—Concerning the *Abl. Sing.* in *i* and *e*; the *Gen. Plur.* in *um* and *ium*, *Neut. Pl.* in *ia*, and *Acc. Pl.* in *ēs* and *īs*, see § 33.

CHAPTER XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 62. Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison, called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees: as,

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
altŭs *high*	altĭŏr *higher*	altissĭmŭs *highest* or *very high.*

§ 63. The Comparative is formed by adding iŏr, and the Superlative by adding issĭmŭs to the Stem of the Positive, any final vowel giving place to the i of those suffixes: as,

	Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
Nom.	Stem.			
altŭs	alto	*high*	alt-iŏr	alt-issĭmŭs
lĕvĭs	lĕvi	*light*	lĕv-iŏr	lĕv-issĭmŭs
fēlix	fēlīci	*fortunate*	fēlīc-iŏr	fēlīc-issĭmŭs
prūdens	prūdenti	*prudent*	prūdent-iŏr	prūdent-issĭmŭs

NOTE 1.—The Comparative is an Adjective of two terminations: altior, altius. Its inflexion is given in § 59. The suffix of the Comparative is iōs; the *s* being changed into *r* not only before a vowel, according to the usual practice, but also in the *Nom. Sing. Masc.*, contrary to the usual rule (Comp. flos, flōris). In the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing. Neut.* the iōs becomes *iŭs*, probably through intermediate form *iŏs*, as the Stem corpŏs becomes corpus in the *Nom. Sing.* (see § 30, *Obs.* 3).

NOTE 2.—The Superlative is an Adjective of Three Terminations: as, altissĭmŭs, altissĭmă, altissĭmum: Stem, issimo, a.

The suffix of the Superlative is (t)ĭmo. It was probably added to the Stem of the Comparative: as, alt-ios- (t)ĭmo, becoming euphonically alt-issĭmo. The older ending of the Superlative was in (t)ŭmo; and forms in *u* are common in the earlier writers: as, pulcherrŭmŭs, ācerrŭmŭs, optŭmŭs, pessŭmŭs, maxŭmŭs, mĭnŭmŭs, intŭmŭs, extŭmŭs, etc.

§ 64. EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in er (Stems ĕro and ĕri) form the Superlative in rĭmŭs: as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
aspĕr	*rough*	aspĕr-iŏr	asper-rĭmŭs
lībĕr	*free*	lībĕr-iŏr	līber-rĭmŭs
pulchĕr	*beautiful*	pulchr-iŏr	pulcher-rĭmŭs
nĭgĕr	*black*	nigr-iŏr	nĭger-rĭmŭs
ācĕr	*sharp*	ācr-iŏr	ācer-rĭmŭs
cĕlĕr	*swift*	cĕlĕr-iŏr	cĕler-rĭmŭs

So also:—

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
vĕtŭs, ĕrĭs	*old*	(none)	vĕter-rĭmŭs
prospĕrŭs	*prosperous*	prospĕr-iŏr	prosper-rĭmŭs
mātūrŭs	*ripe*	mātūr-iŏr	mātūr-rĭmŭs and mātūr-issĭmŭs

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ĭlis* form their Superlative in *līmus:* as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
făcĭlĭs	*easy*	făcĭl-iŏr	făcil-līmŭs
difficĭlĭs	*difficult*	difficĭl-iŏr	difficil-līmŭs
sĭmĭlĭs	*like*	sĭmĭl-iŏr	sĭmil-līmŭs
dissĭmĭlĭs	*unlike*	dissĭmĭl-iŏr	dissĭmil-līmŭs
grăcĭlĭs	*thin*	grăcĭl-iŏr	grăcil-līmŭs
hŭmĭlĭs	*low*	hŭmĭl-iŏr	hŭmil-līmŭs

Obs. The substitution of *rimus* and *limus* for *simus* in these Superlatives is owing to the assimilation of *s* to the preceding liquids *r* and *l*. All other Adjectives in *ĭlis* have issimus: e.g. frăgĭlis *brittle*, frăgĭlissimus.

III. Adjectives ending in -dĭcŭs, -fĭcŭs, and vŏlŭs (derived from the verbs dīco, făcĭo, and vŏlo) form their Comparatives and Superlatives as if from Participles in *ens:* as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
mălĕdĭcŭs	*slanderous*	mălĕdĭcentiŏr	mălĕdĭcentissĭmŭs
bĕnĕfĭcŭs	*beneficent*	bĕnĕfĭcentiŏr	bĕnĕfĭcentissĭmŭs
mălĕfĭcŭs	*doing-ill*	—	mălĕfĭcentissĭmŭs
bĕnĕvŏlŭs (bĕnĕvŏlens, Plaut., Ter.)	*benevolent*	bĕnĕvŏlentiŏr	bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmŭs
mălĕvŏlŭs (mălĕvŏlens, Plaut.)	*malevolent*	mălĕvŏlentiŏr	mălĕvŏlentissĭmŭs
magnĭfĭcŭs	*magnificent*	magnĭfĭcentiŏr	magnĭfĭcentissĭmŭs
mūnĭfĭcŭs	*munificent*	—	mūnĭfĭcentissĭmŭs
hŏnōrĭfĭcŭs	*conferring-honour*	hŏnōrĭfĭcentiŏr	hŏnōrĭfĭcentissĭmŭs

Similarly:—

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
ĕgēnŭs	*needy*	ĕgentiŏr (fr. ĕgens)	ĕgentissĭmŭs
prōvĭdŭs	*foreseeing*	prōvĭdentiŏr (fr. prōvĭdens)	prōvĭdentissĭmŭs

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb măgĭs, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb maxĭmē, *most:* as, noxiŭs, *hurtful*, măgĭs noxiŭs, *more hurtful*, maxĭmē noxiŭs, *most hurtful*.

Obs. 1. Superlatives in *issĭmus* are sometimes formed from Adjectives in *ius* and *uus:* e.g. egregiissimus, assiduissimus (Cic.), piissimus (used by M. Antonius, and objected to by Cic.: see Phil. xiii. 19: frequent in Inscriptions). Similar Comparatives are very rare.

Obs. 2. Adjectives ending in *quus* form the *Comp.* and *Sup.* regularly, since the *u* in *qu* is not regarded as a vowel: as, antiquŭs, *ancient*, antiquiŏr, antiquissimŭs.

§ 65. Irregular and Defective Comparison.

1. In some Adjectives the Comparative and Superlative are not formed from the Positive, but from a different root or stem: as,

Posit.		*Comp.*	*Sup.*
bŏnŭs	*good*	mĕliŏr	optĭmŭs
mălŭs	*bad*	pējŏr	pessĭmŭs
magnŭs	*great*	mājŏr	maxĭmŭs
parvŭs	*small*	mĭnŏr	mĭnĭmŭs
multŭs	*much*	plūs (*neut.*)	plūrĭmŭs
dīvĕs / dīs (*rare*)	*rich*	dīvĭtiŏr, dītiŏr	dīvĭtissĭmŭs dītissĭmŭs
nēquam (*indecl.*)	*worthless*	nēquiŏr	nēquissĭmŭs
frūgi (see § 61, 5)	*frugal*	frūgālĭŏr	frūgālissĭmŭs

Obs. 1. Plūs, plūris, *more*, is used in *Sing.* only in Neut., and substantively. The Plural is complete: plūres, neut. plūra (plūria), plūrium, plūribus; so also the compound complūres, etc.

Obs. 2. From dis (v. rare) for dives, a neuter form dītĕ is found, which implies a stem dīti. See § 60, Note 2.

Obs. 3. Dextĕr, *right hand*, has dextĕrĭŏr, dextĭmŭs; and sīnistĕr, *left hand*, sinistĕrĭŏr, sīnistĭmŭs (rare).

2. Sometimes one or more of the Degrees of Comparison are wanting even in Adjectives of Quality: as,

Posit.		*Comp.*		*Sup.*
jŭvĕnĭs (*m.* & *f.*)	*young*	jūnĭŏr		—
sĕnex	*old*	sĕnĭŏr		—
—		dēterĭŏr	*worse*	dēterrĭmŭs
(ὠκύς, *swift*)		ōcĭŏr		ōcissĭmŭs
nŏvŭs	*new*	—		nŏvissĭmŭs, *last*
(pŏtĭs, e: see § 61, No. 1.)		pŏtĭŏr	*preferable*	pŏtissĭmŭs
(sătĭs, *enough*, *adv.*)		sătĭŭs	*better*	—
(? sĕcus *otherwise*, *adv.*)		sēquĭŭs / sēcĭŭs	*worse*	—

Obs. 1. Mājor and mīnor, and maxīmus and minīmus (with or without nātu, *in age*, see § 52, No. 3) are used as Comp. and Sup. of senex and jŭvĕnis.

Obs. 2. Detĕrĭŏr is from root dē, *down from*, and implies *decline from some standard.*

Obs. 3. Sătĭŭs and sēcĭŭs are neut. indeclinable.

3. Besides the above, the following Adjectives denoting position are defective or irregular, or both:

Posit.	*Comp.*	*Sup.*
(intrā, *inside of, prep.*)	intĕrĭŏr *inner*	intĭmŭs (-ŭmŭ
exter, extĕrus } *outside of* (rare)	extĕrĭŏr *outer*	extrēmŭs, extĭmŭs
(citrā, *on this side of, prep.*)	cĭtĕrĭŏr *on this side*	cĭtĭmŭs
(ultrā, *on the further side of, prep.*)	ultĕrĭŏr *on the further side*	ultĭmŭs
sŭpĕrŭs *upper*	sŭpĕrĭŏr	suprēmŭs, summŭs
infĕrus *lower*	infĕrĭŏr	infĭmŭs; īmŭs
(prŏpĕ, *near, adv.*)	prŏpĭŏr *nearer*	proxĭmŭs
(prae, pro, *in front of, before, preps.*)	prior *former*	prīmŭs
postĕrus, *hinder*	postĕrĭŏr *coming after*	postrēmŭs, postŭmŭs

(See § 61, No, 2.)

§ 66. Many Adjectives are from their meaning incapable of a Comparative or Superlative: e.g. ĕquester, terrestris, hĭbernus, vernus, etc. Others, again, seem to have been limited by usage: thus, bellus, *pretty*, is common in Sup. but not used in Comp.: and the same is true of falsus, persuāsus, invictus, and (especially) other participial Adjectives. The converse is true of memorābilis, flēbilis, prōnus, proclīvis, and others.

Note.—The Sup. proxĭmus has a Compar. in late Latin and legal writing only: proxĭmior, *more nearly akin* (Sen., Ulp.).

Chapter XIV.—The Numerals.

§ 67. *Cardinal Numerals* denote number in the simplest way: as, ūnŭs, *one;* dŭŏ, *two;* trēs, *three.*

The first three Cardinal Numerals are declined as follows:

1.

Nom. ūn-us, ă, um; *Gen.* ūn-ĭus, etc. See § 57.

Obs. Unus is used in the *Plural* with Plural Nouns which have a singular meaning: as, ūnă castrā, *one camp;* ūnae aedēs, *one house;* ūnae littĕrae, *one letter* (*epistle*); ūnae Athēnae, *one Athens.*

	2.			3.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	du-ŏ	du-ae	duŏ	trēs	trĭă
Gen.	du-ōrum (contr. du-um)	du-ārum	du-ōrum	trĭum	—
Dat.	du-ōbŭs	du-ābŭs	du-ōbŭs	trĭbŭs	—
Acc.	du-ōs(duŏ)	du-ās	du-ŏ	trēs or trīs	trĭă
Abl.	du-ōbŭs	du-ābŭs	du-ōbŭs	trĭbŭs	—

Obs. Ambŏ, *both*, is declined like duŏ; but with Gen. Pl. uncontracted.

§ 68. The Cardinal Numerals from quattuŏr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly. But the Gen. Pl. is usually contracted, dŭcentûm, trĕcentûm, etc.

Millĕ, *thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective; but it is used in the Plural as a declinable Noun: as, *Nom.* millĭă, *Gen.* millium, *Dat.* millĭbŭs, &c.

Note 1.—Millĕ is sometimes, but rarely, used as a Noun in the Singular: as, millĕ hŏmĭnum, *a thousand of men* (Cic.), the common form being millĕ hŏmĭnēs. In the Plural millĭă is regularly followed by the Genitive: as, trĭă (or terna) millĭă hŏmĭnum, *three thousand men.* But if smaller Numerals follow, the Genitive is not used: as, trĭă millĭă trĕcentī hŏmĭnēs, *three thousand three hundred men*, in which case hominum must be supplied with millĭă.

Note 2.—The numbers between 20 and 100 are usually expressed either by the larger numeral first without *ĕt*, or by the smaller numeral first with *ĕt:* as, vīgintī ūnŭs, or ūnŭs et vīgintī, *twenty-one* or *one and twenty.* The numbers above 100 usually have the larger number first: as, centum (ĕt) sexāgintā sex, *one hundred and sixty-six.* But sometimes the units and tens precede: e.g. V et lx et ccc, Cic. N.D. 2, 49.

NOTE 3.—The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, 38, 39, etc., are usually expressed by ūnūs, duŏ, and the next multiple of *ten*, with the preposition *dē* to indicate subtraction: as, duodēvīgintī, undēvīgintī, duodētrīgintā, undētrīgintā, &c. But such combinations as octo et vīgintī or vīgintī *octo* are also found.

NOTE 4.—Besides the Numerals proper, there exist also *indefinite* numeral Adjectives: quŏt, *how many?* tŏt, *so many;* ălĭquŏt, *a good many.* These are indeclinable.

§ 69. *Ordinal Numerals* denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series: as, prīmŭs, *first;* sĕcundŭs, *second.* They are declined regularly as adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

NOTE 1.—Dates of years are expressed by Ordinal Numerals: as, annūs millēsĭmŭs octingentēsĭmŭs octogēsĭmŭs tertiŭs, *the eighteen-hundred-and-eighty-third year*, i.e. *the year* 1883.

NOTE 2.—Besides the definite Ordinals, there are also the Indefinite: quŏtus, ă, um, *what number* (*in the series*)? tŏtus, a, um, *such and such a number.*

§ 70. *Distributive Numerals* denote numbers regarded as constituting groups, each group being treated as a unit. They may be translated in various ways: as, bīnī, ae, a, *two each, two a-piece, two by two.* They are declined like the Plural of bŏnus.

The *Gen. Plur.* of Distributives is usually contracted, as, bīnûm, ternûm, dŭcēnûm, etc.

NOTE 1.—Distributive Numerals are also used with those nouns the plural forms of which have a singular meaning: as, bīnă castră, *two camps;* bīnae aedēs, *two houses;* bīnae lĭtĕrae, *two letters;* trīnă (not usu. terna in this use) castră, *three camps.* Duo castra would be two forts; duae aedēs, *two temples*, etc. See § 51. (But ūnă castră, not singŭla castră; ūnae aedēs, not singŭlae aedēs.)

NOTE 2.—Distributive Numerals are also used in expressions of multiplication: as, bis bīna pōcŭla, *twice two cups;* quātĕr quīnī vĭri, *four times five men;* tĕr nŏvēnae virgĭnes, *thrice nine maidens.*

NOTE 3.—Distributive Numerals are frequently used by the poets as Cardinals: as, centēnae mănūs, *a hundred hands* (Virg. A. 10, 566).

§ 71. *Multiplicative Numerals* end in -plex, *Gen.* -plĭcĭs (from the verb plĭco, *to fold*), and, as their name implies, denote *how many times* any number or quantity is to be taken. Only the following are in use:

simplex *onefold*	4. quadruplex *fourfold*	10. dĕcemplex *tenfold*
duplex *twofold*	5. quincuplex *fivefold*	100. centuplex *a hundredfold*
triplex *threefold*	7. septemplex *sevenfold*	

§ 72. *Proportional Numerals* end in -plŭs, -plă, -plum, and denote the number of times that one number or quantity contains another: as, tripla pars, *a part three times as great as another.* Only the following are in use, corresponding to the multiplicatives in the preceding list:

1. simplŭs	4. quadruplŭs	8. octuplŭs
2. duplŭs	5. (quinqueplŭs)	10. dĕcuplŭs
3. triplŭs	7. septuplŭs	100. centuplŭs

§ 73. *Other Numeral Adjectives.* 1. Adjectives in **ārius** formed from Distributives, and signifying *containing a certain number:* as, bīnārius, *containing two;* ternārius, quaternārius, quīnārius, sēnārius, &c.

2. Adjectives in **ānus** formed from Ordinals, and chiefly used in reference to *the legion to which a soldier belonged:* as, prīmānus, *belonging to the first legion.*

3. The words used to express *Fractions* are explained in Appendix III. *Money.*

§ 74. *Numeral Adverbs* denote the *number of times* that anything occurs: as, sĕmĕl, *once;* bĭs, *twice;* tĕr, *three times;* quŏtiēs or quŏtiens, *how many times.*

For a complete table of Numerals, Cardinal, Ordinal and Distributive, with their corresponding Adverbs, see next page.

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus, a, um	singŭlī ae a	sĕmĕl
2	II	duŏ	sĕcundus (*or* alter)	bīnī „	bĭs
3	III	trēs	tertĭus, a, um	ternī *or* trīnī „	tĕr
4	IV	quattuŏr, quātuor	quartus „ „	quăternī „	quătĕr
5	V	quinquĕ	quintus „ „	quīnī „	quinquiēs (-ens)
6	VI	sex	sextus „ „	sēnī „	sexiēs „
7	VII	septem	septĭmus (-ŭmus), a, um	septēnī „	septiēs „
8	VIII	octo	octāvus „	octōnī „	octiēs „
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus „	nŏvēnī „	nŏviēs „
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus (-ŭmus) „	dēnī „	dĕciēs „
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmus „	undēnī „	undĕciēs „
12	XII	duŏdĕcim	duŏdĕcĭmus „	duŏdēnī „	duŏdĕciēs „
13	XIII	trēdĕcim (dec. et tres)	tertĭus dĕcĭmus „	ternī dēnī „	terdĕciēs *or* trēdĕciēs
14	XIV	quattuordĕcim	quartus dĕcĭmus „	quăternī dēnī „	quattŭordĕciēs (-ens)
15	XV	quindĕcim	quintus dĕcĭmus „	quīnī dēnī „	quindĕciēs „
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextus dĕcĭmus „	sēnī dēnī „	sēdĕciēs „
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmus dĕcĭmus „	septēnī dēnī „	septiesdĕciēs „
18	XVIII	duŏdēvīginti (see § 69,	duŏdēvīcēsĭmus „	duŏdēvīcēnī „	duŏdēvīciēs „
19	XIX	undēvīginti [Note 3	undēvīcēsĭmus „	undēvīcēnī „	undēvīciēs „
20	XX	vīginti	vīcēsĭmus (-ensĭmus)	vīcēnī „	vīciēs „
21	XXI	{ūnus et vīginti *or* vīginti [et] ūnus}	{prīmus et vīcēsĭmus *or* vīcēsĭmus prīmus}	vīcēnī singŭlī „	sĕmĕl et vīciēs „
22	XXII	{duo et vīginti *or* vīginti du[illegible]}	{alter et vīcēsĭmus *or* vīcēsĭmus alter}	vīcēnī bīnī „	bĭs et vīciēs „

28	XXVIII	duŏdētrīgintā	duŏdētrīgēsĭmus	duŏdētrīcēnī „	duŏdētrīciēs „
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsĭmus	undētrīcēnī „	undētrīciēs „
30	XXX	trīgintā	{trīgēsĭmus (trīc-)} (-ensĭmus)	trīcēnī „	trīciēs „
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsĭmus „	quadrāgēnī „	quadrāgiēs „
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsĭmus „	quinquāgēnī „	quinquāgiēs „
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsĭmus „	sexāgēnī „	sexāgiēs „
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsĭmus „	septuāgēnī „	septuāgiēs „
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsĭmus ✓ „	octōgēnī „	octōgiēs „
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsĭmus ✓ „	nōnāgēnī „	nōnāgiēs „
100	C	centum	centēsĭmus „	centēnī „	centiēs „
200	CC	dŭcentī, ae, a	dŭcentēsĭmus „	dŭcēnī „	dŭcentiēs „
300	CCC	trĕcentī „ „	trĕcentēsĭmus „	trĕcēnī „	trĕcentiēs „
400	CCCC	quadringentī „	quadringentēsĭmus „	quadringēnī „	quadringentiēs „
500	D *or* Iↀ	quingentī „	quingentēsĭmus „	quingēnī „	quingentiēs „
600	DC	sexcentī (sescentī) „	sexcentēsĭmus (sesc-) „	sexcēnī „	sexcentiēs „
700	DCC	septingentī „	septingentēsĭmus „	septingēnī „	septingentiēs „
800	DCCC	octingentī „	octingentēsĭmus ✓ „	octingēnī „	octingentiēs „
900	DCCCC	nongentī „	nongentēsĭmus „	nongēnī „	nongentiēs „
1000	M *or* CIↀ	millĕ (see § 69, Note 1	millēsĭmus ✓ „	singŭlā millĭă	milliēs „
2000	MM	duŏ (bīna) millĭă	bis millēsĭmus	bīnā millĭă	bĭs milliēs „
5000	IↃↃ	quinquĕ (quīna) millĭă	quinquiēs millēsĭmus	quīnā millĭă	quinquiēs milliēs „
10,000	CCIↃↃ	dĕcem (dēna) millĭă	dĕciēs millēsĭmus	dēnā millĭă	dĕciēs milliēs „
50,000	IↃↃↃ	quinquāgintā millĭă	quinquāgiēs millēsĭmus	quinquāgēnā millĭă	quinquāgiēs milliēs „
100,000	CCCIↃↃↃ	centum (-ēna) millĭă	centiēs millēsĭmus	centēnā millĭă	centiēs milliēs „
500,000	IↃↃↃↃ	quingentā millĭă	quingentiēs millēsĭmus	quingēnā millĭă	quingentiēs milliēs „
1,000,000	CCCCIↃↃↃↃ	dĕciēs centum (-ēna) millĭă	dĕciēs centiēs millēsĭmus	dĕciēs centēnā millĭă	dĕciēs centiēs milliēs „

ORTHOGRAPHY.—1. In the Ordinal Numerals, the old orthography of the termination **ēsĭmŭs** was **ensŭmŭs** or **ensĭmŭs**.
2. In the Adverbs the old orthography of the termination **-ēs** was **-ens**.
3. **Millĭă**, *thousands*, is frequently, and perhaps as correctly written **millĭă**.

CHAPTER XV.—PRONOUNS.

§ 76. *Pronouns* are properly of the nature of Nouns, but the name is also applied to many words used also as Adjectives. The Possessive Pronouns are wholly Adjectival.

§ 77. I.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	ĕgŏ	*I*	nōs	*we*
Gen.	mēī	*of me*	**nostrum** and **nostrī**	*of us*
Dat.	mĭhi or mī	*to* or *of me*	nōbīs	*to* or *for us*
Acc.	mē	*me* [*me*	nōs	*us* [*from*
Abl.	mē	*by, with,* or *from*	nōbīs	*by, with,*

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	tū	*thou*	vōs	*ye*
Gen.	tŭī	*of thee*	**vestrum** and **vestrī**	*of you*
Dat.	tĭbi	*to* or *for thee*	vōbīs	*to* or *for you*
Acc.	tē	*thee*	vōs	*you*
Voc.	tū	*O thou*	vōs	*O ye* [*ye*
Abl.	tē	*by, with,* or *from thee*	vōbīs	*by, with,* or *fro*

Obs. 1. All Cases of ĕgŏ and tū may be strengthened by the addition of the syllable **mĕt**; as, ĕgŏmet, *I myself;* nosmĕt, vosmĕt, *we ourselves, you yourselves.* Tū in the *Nom.* is strengthened by the syllable **tĕ**: as, tūtĕ, *thou thyself,* also with the addition of mĕt as, tūtĕmet (tumet simply is never used).

Obs. 2. The *Gen. Sing.* of ĕgo and tū were originally **mis** and **tis** (cf. Prisc. 13, 2). The forms meī and tuī are perhaps borrowed from the Possessive Adjectives meus and tuus, and are used as Objective Genitives. The Possessive sense is expressed by the Adjectives meus tuus.

Obs. 3. The *Dat. Sing.* of ĕgŏ is frequently contracted into **mī**.

Obs. 4. In the *Acc.* and *Abl. Sing.* the forms **mēd** and **tēd** are found in Plautus. The *d* is the old sign of the Ablative, which is transferred irregularly to the Accusative also. Sometimes tŏ is doubled: tĕtŭ.

Obs. 5. In the *Gen. Pl.* **nostrum -i** and **vestrum -i** are borrowed from the Possessive Adjectives: the forms nostrōrum, nostrārum, vestrōrum, vestrārum are also found in older writers, as Plautus. The Possessive sense is regularly expressed by the Adjectives noster, vester; but **nostrum, vestrum,** occur as Possessive Genitives. **Nostrī, vestrī,** are used as Objective Genitives. **Nostrum, vestrum,** are also used as Partitive Genitives.

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Personal Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it*, the Determinative Pronoun ĭs, eă, ĭd, is usually employed.

§ 78. II.—Reflexive Pronouns.

The Reflexive Pronouns refer back to the Subject of the sentence, and therefore cannot have a Nominative or Vocative case. For the First and Second Persons, the First and Second Personal Pronouns are used reflexively in the oblique Cases. The Reflexive Pronoun of the Third Person is thus declined:

Sing. and Plur.

Gen.	sŭī	*of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Dat.	sĭbi	*to* or *for himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Acc.	sē	*himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Abl.	sē	*by himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*

Obs. 1. Sē is frequently doubled: sēsē.

Obs. 2. Sibi and sē are strengthened by the addition of **mĕt**: as sībimĕt, sēmĕt.

Obs. 3. When the Cases of *ĕjŏ* and *tū* are used reflexively, they ar generally strengthened by the use of *ipse*, often with *met:* e.g nosmĕt ipsōs (or as one word, nosmĕtipsōs), tē ipsum or tēmĕt ipsum, etc.

§ 79. III.—Possessive Pronouns.

These are properly Adjectives, formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflexive Pronouns.

meŭs	**meă**	**meum**	*my, mine*
tuŭs	**tuă**	**tuum**	*thy, thine*
nostĕr	**nostră**	**nostrum**	*our, ours*
vestĕr	**vestră**	**vestrum**	*your, yours*
suŭs	**suă**	**suum**	*his, her, its, their, theirs*

Obs. 1. The Voc. *Sing. Masc.* of meŭs is mi (Fem. and Neut. regular).

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* of the Possessive Adjectives is sometimes strengthened by the syllable *ptĕ*: as, meoptĕ, suoptĕ. Mĕt is added to suŭs: as, suosmĕt, suămĕt.

Obs. 3. Suus is a reflexive adjective, and can therefore only refer back to the Subject, like the reflexive pronoun (§ 78). In other cases, *his, her, its, their,* are expressed by the genitive Sing. or Plur. of is, ea, id.

Obs. 4. A Possessive Adjective is also formed from the Relative: as, cūjŭs, cūjă, cūjum, *whose?* (Virg. E. 3, 1.)

Obs. 5. From nostĕr, vestĕr, cūjŭs (ā, um), are formed Adjectives ending in ās (Gen. ātĭs), which signify *belonging to a country* namely, nostrās, -ātĭs, *of our country*; vestrās, -ātĭs, *of your country*; cūjās, -ātĭs, *of what country?*

§ 80. IV.—Demonstrative Pronouns.

These correspond to the *First*, *Second*, and *Third* Persons: namely, hic (hi-cĕ), haec, hoc, *this near me*; istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that near you*; illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that near him*, or *that yonder.*

1. **Hic, haec, hoc,** *this near me.* Stem **ho**, with suffix **-ce**, which drops the vowel.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**hūjŭs**			**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huīc**			**hīs**		
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**		

2. **istĕ, istă, istŭd,** *that near you.* Stem **isto.**

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**istĕ**	**istă**	**istŭd**	**istī**	**istae**	**istă**
Gen.	**istīŭs (-īus)**			**istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
Dat.	**istī**			**istīs**		
Acc.	**istum**	**istam**	**istŭd**	**istōs**	**istās**	**istă**
Abl.	**istō**	**istā**	**istō**	**istīs**		

3. **illĕ, illă, illŭd,** *that near him, that yonder.* Stem **illo.**

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N
Nom.	**illĕ**	**illă**	**illŭd**	**illī**	**illae**	**illă**
Gen.	**illīŭs (-ĭus)**			**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**illī**			**illīs**		
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illŭd**	**illōs**	**illās**	**illă**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**illīs**		

Obs. 1. There was an older form of ille: ollus (olle), ollă, etc., which occurs frequently in Lucr. and Virg.; especially in *Dat. Sing.* olli, and *Dat. Pl.* ollis. The same root occurs in the adverb ōl-im originally a Locative form.

Obs. 2. Istae, illae, occur as *Dat. Sing. fem.* in older writers: cf. § 57, *Obs.* 1.

The three Demonstrative Pronouns are strengthened by the particle *cĕ*, which serves to point out anything more exactly: *this here, that there.* This particle is inseparable from several of the cases of hic (= hi-ce), but may be added to others also: as, hūjusce, hosce, etc.

Istĕ with the particle *ce* (which drops the vowel) is thus declined:

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	istĭc	istaec	istūc	istīcĕ	istaec	istaec
Gen.	istiuscĕ			istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc
Dat.	istī			istiscĕ		
Acc.	istunc	istanc	istūc	istoscĕ	istascĕ	istaec
Abl.	istōc	istāc	istōc	istiscĕ		

So also, illĭc illaec illūc, etc.

Obs. 3. The adverbs hī-c, istī-c, illī-c, are properly Locatives Sing. of hi-c, iste, ille, with suffix ce (abbreviated). See Chap. XXXIII.

Obs. 4. Ecce or ĕn, *behold*, sometimes prefixed to ille and iste with euphonic change; as, eccillum or ellum; eccistam. These expressions were of frequent use in the language of ordinary life.

§ 81. V.—Determinative Pronouns.

These are: ĭs, ĕă, ĭd, *this, the aforesaid; he, she, that,* referring to the context; its compound, īdem (for is-dem), ĕădem, ĭdem, *the same;* and ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, same.*

1. ĭs, eă, ĭd, *this*, and *he, she, it.* Stems i and eo.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ĭs	ĕă	ĭd	iī (ī) or ĕī	ĕae	ĕă
Gen.	ējŭs			ĕōrum	ĕārum	ĕōrum
Dat.	eī (ēī, Lucr.)			iīs (īs) or ĕīs		
Acc.	ĕum	ĕam	ĭd	ĕōs	ĕās	ĕă
Abl.	ĕō	ĕā	ĕō	iīs or ĕīs		

Obs. 1. The *Dat. Sing.* of ĭs is usually ēi, with the e long, in the earlier writers; or as one syllable ēi, rarely ēī.

Obs. 2. Old forms of ĭs are: *Sing. Dat. Fem.* eae; *Acc.* im or em; *Plur. Nom.* ī for ii, Plaut.; *Dat.* īs for iis, also ībus and ĕābūs (*Fem.*)

Obs. 3. The adverb ĭ-bi is properly a Locative case of is.

Obs. 4. Ecce is frequently prefixed to forms of is: as, *Nom.* ecca (=ecce ea); *Acc.* eccum, eccam, eccos, eccas (=ecce eum, eam, eos, eas). See § 80, Obs. 5.

2. īdem (for is-dem), ĕădem, ĭdem, *the same.* Stems i and eo with determinative suffix dem.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	ĕădem	ĭdem	iīdem (īdem)	ĕaedem	ĕădem
Gen.	ējusdem			eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem			iīsdem (īsdem) or eīsdem		
Acc.	ĕundem	ĕandem	ĭdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	ĕădem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	iīsdem (īsdem) or eīsdem		

3. ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, same.* Stem ipso.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
Gen.	ipsĭŭs (-ĭus)			ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī			ipsīs		
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs		

Obs. For ipse we frequently find ipsus in old writers. The suffix pse derived from ipse is frequently appended to forms of *is* in Plautus: as, eumpsĕ, eampsĕ, eopsĕ, eapsĕ. In Cicero we find reapsĕ for rē eapse.

§ 82. VI.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

(i.) *Relative.*

Quī, quae, quŏd, *who, which, what;* with its derivatives (§ 85). Stems qui and quo.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī (quĭs)	quae	quŏd	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjŭs			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cuī or cŏĭ			quĭbŭs (queis, quīs)		
Acc.	quem	quam	quŏd	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quĭbŭs (queis, quīs)		
	(quī, all Genders)					

(ii.) *Interrogative.*

	Sing.			Plur		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quĭs (quī)	quae	quĭd (quŏd)	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūjŭs			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cuī or cŏĭ			quĭbŭs (queis, quīs)		
Acc.	quem	quam	quĭd (quŏd)	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quĭbŭs (queis, quīs)		
	(quī, all Genders)					

Obs. Old forms are: *Gen. Sing.* quōiŭs; *Dat. Sing.* quoī; *Abl. Sing.* quī; *Dat.* and *Abl. Pl.* quīs, queīs. The *Abl.* quī is only found in

later writers in combination with cum: as, quīcum = quōcum: and also as interrogative adverb *how?* On the old *Gen.* cuī-cuīmŏdī, see § 83, under quisque.

In place of quĭs and quĭd, quī and quŏd are frequently used as Interrogatives. Of these forms, quī and quŏd are adjectives; quĭs usually a substantive, rarely an adjective: quĭd and its compounds are always substantives: as,

Quĭs ĕs, *who art thou?*
Quī hŏmo ĕs, *what (kind of a) man art thou?*
Quĭd commīsīt, *what has he done?*
Quŏd fācĭnŭs commīsīt, *what deed has he done?*

NOTE.—On the compounds of quī and quĭs, see § 83.

§ 83. VII.—INDEFINITE AND OTHER PRONOUNS.

Quĭs is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (= *any*), especially after the Conjunctions sī, *if*, nē, *lest*, nīsī, *unless*, num, *whether*. Thus, si quĭs is "*if any one*"; nē quĭs, "*lest any one*," "*that no one.*"

When quĭs is so used, it usually changes quae to quă in *Nom. Sing. fem.*, and *Nom.* and *Acc. Pl. neut.*; but quae is also used.

1. COMPOUNDS of quī, quĭs.— The following Pronouns and Adjectives are formed from qui, quis, and are declined for the most part in the same way. They always have quĭd when used as Substantives, and quŏd when used as Adjectives.

A. quī (*sometimes* quĭs) *in Nominative.*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain one.*
quīnam (quisnam), quaenam, quodnam (quidnam), *what? which?* (emphatic).
quĭcunquē, quaecunquĕ, quodcunquĕ, *whosoever, whatsoever. Gen.* cūjuscunquo, etc. The cunque is sometimes separated from qui.
quīlĭbĕt, quaelĭbĕt, quodlĭbĕt, *who* or *which you please.*
quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs, *who* or *which you will.* Also with cunque added: quīviscunque, &c.

B. quĭs *in Nominative.*

quisquĭs, quidquĭd or quicquĭd, *whoever, whatever.*

Obs. No form for the Feminine. The only other forms in use are: *Gen.* cuīcuī in cuīcuīmŏdī (=cūjuscūjūs mŏdī by elision of *s*); *Acc.* quemquem; *Abl.* quōquō, quā-quā; *Nom. Pl.* quīquī; *Dat. Pl.* quibusquibŭs.

quisquam, quicquam, *anyone* or *anything at all.*

Obs. Usually a Substantive. There is no feminine form, but quisquam is also used adjectively of females. *Abl.* quīquam in Plautus. Plural does not occur.

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam or **quidpiam,** *some one, something.*

Abl. quīpiam occurs in Plaut.

quisquĕ, quaequĕ, quodquĕ, *each, everyone.* Also Neut. **quidquĕ** or **quicquĕ** as Substantive.

NOTE.—The compound **ūnusquisquĕ, ūnăquaequĕ, ūnumquodquĕ,** *each one,* is declined in like manner.

ecquĭs (ecquī), **ecquă** (ecquae), **ecquĭd** (ecquŏd), *is there any?* ecquis is sometimes used as Adjective.

Obs. The only cases in use besides the Nominative are *Dat.* eccui; *Acc.* ecquem, ecquam; *Abl.* ecquī. *Pl. Nom.* ecquī; *Acc.* ecquōs, ecquās, but the Plural forms are rare.

ălĭquĭs (ălĭquī), **ălĭquă, ălĭquĭd** (ălĭquŏd), *some one, some.*

Obs. Ălĭquĭs is more usual than ălĭquī: it is both Subst. and Adject. in masc. Ălĭquae as *Nom. Sing. fem.* occurs in Lucretius; but ălĭquă is the regular form in *Nom. Sing. fem.* and in *Plural neut.* *Abl.* ălĭquī occurs in Plautus.

2. OTHER PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.—The following words usually have *Gen.* in **iŭs,** and *Dat.* in **ī.** For their Declension, see § 57.

tōtus, tōtă, tōtum, *whole.*
sōlŭs, sōlă, sōlum, *alone.*
ūnŭs, ūnă, ūnum, *one.*
ullŭs (= ūnŭlŭs), **ullă, ullum,** *any at all.*

NOTE.—**Ullus** is chiefly used in negative sentences, corresponding to ălĭquis in affirmative sentences. It corresponds as Adj. to quisquam, which is almost always Subst.

nullŭs, nullă, nullum, *none.*
ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd, *one, another; Gen.* ălĭŭs, *Dat.* ălĭī.

Obs. The form **ălĭs** (*Nom. Sing. masc.*) occurs in Catullus; and **ălĭd** (*Nom. Sing. neut.*) in Lucretius; **ălī** (*Dat. Sing.*) in Catull. and Lucret.; **ălĭae** (*Gen. Sing. fem.*) in Cicero and elsewhere.

altĕr, altĕră, altĕrum, *one of two, the other; Gen.* altĕrĭŭs (in poetry rarely altĕrīus), *Dat.* altĕrī.

ŭtĕr, utrā, utrum, *which of two* (usually interrog., but sometimes relat.).

Obs. Utĕr is probably derived from the relative: the original form being cu-ter: comp. ū-bi and nē-cūbi, ālī-cūbi. Some assume a distinct Stem *-u*. The loss of initial *g* or *c* is extremely rare.

neutĕr, neutrā, neutrum, *neither of two.*
ŭterquĕ, utrāquĕ, utrumque, *each of two, both.*

NOTE.—The compound **altĕrŭtĕr, altĕrutrā, altĕrutrum** (also written as two separate words), *one or other* (*of two*), may be declined in both words: as, *Gen.* altĕrĭusutrĭŭs; or only in alter: as, altĕrutrĭŭs, etc.

ŭtercunquĕ, utrācunquĕ, utrumcunquĕ, *whichsoever* (*of two*).
ŭtervīs, utrāvīs, utrumvīs, *which* (*of two*) *you please.*
ŭterlĭbĕt, utrālĭbĕt, utrumlĭbĕt, *which* (*of two*) *you like.*

There are two ways of giving universality to the application of the Interrogative or Indefinite Pronouns; viz., by means of the suffix **cunquĕ** or by doubling the Pronoun: as,

quĭs, quī	*who*	{quīcunquĕ / quisquĭs}	*whosoever*
quālis	*of what kind*	{quālĭscunquĕ / quālĭsquālis}	*of what kind soever*
quantus	*how great*	{quantuscunque / quantusquantŭs}	*how great soever*
quŏt	*how many*	{quotcunque / quotquŏt}	*how many soever*

§ 84. Conspectus of Determinative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

Determinative.	Relative. Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
ĭs, *that, he*	quī, quĭs *who, which*	quisquĭs quīcunquĕ *whosoever*	ălĭquĭs, *some* quĭs, *any* quīlĭbĕt quīvīs *any you please*
...	ŭtĕr *which of two*	ăltĕrŭtĕr *one or other of two* ŭterquisquo *whichever of the two*	ŭterlĭbĕt ŭtervīs *whichever (of the two) you please*
tālĭs *of such a kind*	quālĭs *of such a kind as* (rel.); *of what kind?* (interr.)	quāliscunquĕ quālisquālis *of what kind so ever*	quālislĭbĕt *of any kind you please*
tantŭs *so great*	quantŭs *as great as* (rel.); *how great?* (interr.)	quantuscunquĕ quantusquantus *how great soever*	ălĭquantŭs *of a certain, considerable size* quantuslĭbĕt quantusvīs *of any size you please*
tantŭlŭs *so small*	quantŭlŭs *as small as* (rel.); *how small?* (interr.)	quantŭluscunquĕ *how small soever*	ălĭquantŭlŭs, *little*
tŏt (indecl.) *so many* tŏtĭdem (indecl.) *just so many*	quŏt (indecl.) *as many as* (rel.); *how many?* (interr.)	quotcunquĕ quotquŏt (indecl.) *how many soever*	ălĭquŏt (indecl.) *some number* quotlĭbĕt (indecl.) *any number you please*
tŏtŭs *one of so many* (Ordinal Numeral)	quŏtŭs *one of how many?* (Interrog. Ordinal)		

CHAPTER XVI.—THE VERB.

§ 85. VERBS are of two kinds:

1. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which govern an Accusative Case, representing the Direct Object of the action: as, ămo puĕrum, *I love the boy;* sĕquor dŭcem, *I follow the leader.*

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which are either not followed by an Object, as dormĭo, *I sleep,* or by an Indirect Object not in the Accusative Case: as, plăceo tĭbi, *I please thee* [*am pleasing to thee*]; invĭdet nēmĭnī, *he envies no one* [*looks enviously on no one*].

Active Transitive Verbs have TWO VOICES:

(i.) The ACTIVE VOICE (from ăgo, actum *to act*), before which the Nominative represents the *agent:* as pătĕr ămăt, *the father loves.*

(ii.) The PASSIVE VOICE (from pătĭor, passŭs, *to suffer*), before which the Nominative represents the Object of the action: as, pătĕr ămātŭr, *the father is loved.*

Obs. 1. The primary sense of the Passive was reflexive; and this meaning frequently occurs.

Obs. 2. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except when used impersonally; see § 291, *Obs.* 1.

§ 86. DEPONENT VERBS are such as have a Passive form (usually without any Active to which they can be referred), and an Active meaning. See Chap. XIX. Some of them are Transitive, but the greater number are either Intransitive or Reflexive.

§ 87. Verbs have FOUR MOODS.

I. The INDICATIVE MOOD states a thing positively or conditionally: as, ămo, *I love;* scrībĭt, *he writes.*

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (sometimes called CONJUNCTIVE) states a thing conditionally: as, si ĭta dīcam, mentiar, *I were to say so, I should lie;* vĕlim, *I could fain wish.*

Obs. The translation of the Subjunctive Mood given in the paradigms must be regarded as approximate only. Sometimes the Indicative must be used in English where the Latin requires the subjunctive: as, rogavi quis *esset, I asked who he* WAS: see § 434.

III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands or entreats: as, ā, *love;* nĕ occīdĭto, *thou shalt not kill.*

IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD denotes an action or stat without immediate reference to a person: as, ămāre, *t love;* dĭdĭcisse, *to have learned.* It is strictly an indc clinable Verbal Noun.

§ 88. Besides these four Moods, three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs:—

1. PARTICIPLES; which are Verbal Adjectives.

There are four Participles, two Active and two Passive.

Active	*Present*	ămans	*loving*
	Future	ămātūrus	*about to love*
Passive	*Perfect*	ămātus	*loved*
	Gerundive	ămandus	*fit to be loved*

Obs. The Latin language is deficient in Participles, the Active Voice having no Past Participle corresponding to our '*having loved*,' and the Passive no Present or Future Participle. Only Deponent Verbs have regularly a Past Part. in Active sense: ūsus, *having used;* sĕcūtus, *having followed.*

2. The SUPINE; which is strictly a Verbal Noun of the Fourth declension, having two Cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative: as,

ămātum	*to love*
ămātū	*in loving, to be loved*

3. The GERUND; which is also a Verbal Noun, having four Cases, as:

Gen. ămandī	*of loving*
Dat. ămando (usu. -ō)	*for loving*
Acc. ămandum	*loving*
Abl. ămando (usu. -ō)	*by loving*

Obs. The want of a Nominative Case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.

N.B.—The Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative Moods, constitute what is called the FINITE VERB [limited by Mood Person]; the Infinitive, Supines, Gerunds, and Participles, stitute what is called the INFINITE VERB.

§ 89. TENSE.—A verb is the only kind of word wl has distinct forms indicating time. (Hence its Ger name, Zeitwort, *time-word.*) There are three nat divisions of time: PRESENT, PAST, FUTURE; and eacl these again has two natural divisions, Incomplete or PERFECT and Complete or PERFECT. The full set of Tenses is found only in the Indicative Mood: namely,

		Incomplete or *Imperfect.*		*Complete* or *Perfect.*	
1.	PRESENT	ămo	*I love* or *am loving*	ămāvī	*I have loved*
2.	PAST	ămābam	*I was loving*	ămāvĕram	*I had loved*
3.	FUTURE	ămābo	*I shall love*	ămāvĕro	*I shall have loved*

Obs. 1. The Present-Imperfect, Past-Imperfect, and Future-Imperfect, are usually called simply, PRESENT, IMPERFECT, and FUTURE.

Obs. 2. The Present-Perfect is also used as Past-Indefinite (corresponding to the Aorist in Greek): as, ămāvi, *I (have loved*, or *I) loved.* This tense is usually called simply PERFECT, and the PAST-PERFECT is usually called PLUPERFECT.

NOTE 1.—The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD has only four tenses: namely, Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect. A special Future tense is not needed, since this Mood itself has a future sense: thus, vĕreor nē ĭta sit, *I am afraid it will be so.*

NOTE 2.—The IMPERATIVE MOOD has only two tenses: namely, Present, Future. The INFINITIVE MOOD has only two tenses: namely, Present (also used as Past-Imperfect), and Perfect (also used as Past-Perfect or Pluperfect).

NOTE 3.—The PASSIVE VOICE has only three distinct tense-forms in the Indicative Mood namely, Present, Imperfect, Future; and only two in the Subjunctive Mood; namely, Present, Imperfect. The Perfect Tenses are formed by the combination of the Past Participle with the tenses of the Verb sum.

§ 90. The Moods of the Finite Verb have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and (excepting the Imperative) three PERSONS in each Number: as,

1. ămo	*I love*	ămāmŭs	*We love*
2. ămās	*thou lovest*	ămātĭs	*ye love*
3. ămăt	*he loves*	ămant	*they love*

§ 91. CONJUGATION.—Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final vowel of the Stem, which is seen in the Present Infinitive Active.

	Stem.	*Infinitive.*	
1st or **A** Conjugation	ama-	amā-rĕ	*to love*
2nd or **E** „	mone-	monē-rĕ	*to advise*
3rd or **Consonant**	rĕg-	rĕgĕ-rĕ	*to rule*
and **U** Conjugation	ru-	rŭ-ĕ-rĕ	*to rush*
4th or **I** „	audi-	audī-re	*to hear*

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Present Infinitive, and the Supine, are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb, because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

CHAPTER XVII.—THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

(N.B.—It is convenient to take the Verb **sum** first, since some of its Tenses are used in both Active and Passive Verb-formations.)

§ 92. The Verb **sum**, *I am*, is irregular. It has two Stems, ĕs- and fu-; from the former of which come the Imperfect Tenses, and from the latter, the Perfect Tenses and Future Participle. The Pres. *sum* is shortened from *esum*. The Stem fu- is the same as in fĭo (§ 111), and Gr. φύ, πέ-φῡ-κα.

Principal Parts:—**sum fŭī fūtūrŭs essĕ.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.	**sum**	*I am*	*Plur.*	**sŭmŭs**	*We are*
	ĕs	*thou art*		**estĭs**	*ye are*
	est	*he is*		**sunt**	*they are*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	**ĕram**	*I was*	*Plur.*	**ĕrāmŭs**	*We were*
	ĕrās	*thou wast*		**ĕrātĭs**	*ye were*
	ĕrăt	*he was*		**ĕrant**	*they were*

3. FUTURE TENSE [FUTURE-SIMPLE].

Sing.	**ĕro**	*I shall be*	*Plur.*	**ĕrĭmŭs**	*We shall be*
	ĕrĭs	*thou wilt be*		**ĕrĭtĭs**	*ye will be*
	ĕrĭt	*he will be*		**ĕrunt**	*they will be*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	**fuī**	*I have been*, or *I was*	*Plur.*	**fuĭmŭs**	*We have been*, or *we were*
	fuistī	*thou hast been*, or *thou wast*		**fuistĭs**	*ye have been*, or *ye were*
	fuĭt	*he has been*, or *he was*		**fuērunt** or **fuērĕ**	*they have been*, or *they were*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	**fuĕram**	*I had been*	*Plur.*	**fuĕrāmŭs**	*We had been*
	fuĕrās	*thou hadst been*		**fuĕrātĭs**	*ye had been*
	fuĕrăt	*he had been*		**fuĕrant**	*they had been*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Sing.	**fuĕro**	*I shall have been*	*Plur.*	**fuĕrimŭs**	*We shall have been*
	fuĕris	*thou wilt have been*		**fuĕritĭs**	*ye will have been*
	fuĕrĭt	*he will have been*		**fuĕrint**	*they will have been*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing.	**ĕs**	*Be thou*	*Plur.*	**estĕ**	*Be ye*

2. FUTURE TENSE.

Sing.	**esto**	*Thou shalt be*	*Plur.*	**estōtĕ**	*Ye shall be*
	esto	*he shall be*, or *he must be*		**sunto**	*they shall be*, or *they must be*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

I may be		P. sīmŭs	*we may be*
thou mayst be		sītĭs	*ye may be*
he may be		sint (sĭent)	*they may be*

2. Imperfect Tense.

ssem or fŏrem	*I might* or *should be*	P. essēmŭs or fŏrēmŭs	*we might* or *should be*
essēs or fŏrēs	*thou mightst* or *wouldst be*	essētĭs or fŏrētĭs	*ye might* or *would be*
essĕt or fŏrĕt	*he might* or *would be*	essent or fŏrent	*they might* or *would be*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. fŭĕrim	*I may have been*	P. fŭĕrimŭs	*we may have been*
fŭĕris	*thou mayst have been*	fŭĕritĭs	*ye may have been*
fŭĕrĭt	*he may have been*	fŭĕrint	*they may have been*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. fuissem	*I might* or *should have been*	P. fuissēmŭs	*we might* or *should have been*
fuissēs	*thou mightst* or *wouldst have been*	fuissētĭs	*ye might* or *would have been*
fuissĕt	*he might* or *would have been*	fuissent	*they might* or *would have been*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	essĕ	*to be*
Perfect.	fuissĕ	*to have been*
Future.	fūtūrus esse or fŏrĕ	*to be about to be*

PARTICIPLE.

Future.	fūtūrŭs ă um	*about to be*

Obs. 1. The Supines and Gerund are wanting. The Present Participle is found only in compounds: as, absens from absum, and praesens from praesum.

Obs. 2. The old form of the Present Subjunctive, sīem, sīēs, sīĕt, sient, is frequent in Plautus and Terence; besides which there exists another Pres. Subj. from Stem *fu-*: fuam, ās, āt: see Virg. Aen. 10, 108. There is also found a Perfect Indic. fūvit, etc., in Plautus, etc.

Obs. 3. Like sum are declined its compounds: absum, *I am absent;* adsum, *I am present;* etc. Prōsum, *I am for, I do good to,* however, has the full form of the prefix [prōd] before e: as, prodĕs, prōdest, prōdĕram, prōdĕro, prōdessĕ. Possum, *I am able,* (from pŏtis and sum), has some irregularities. See § 104.

Obs. 4. When est and es follow a vowel or *m*, the *e* is frequently dropped: as, bona'st, bonum'st, for bona est, bonum est; nacta's for nacta es. In the comic writers, est and es coalesce with a preceding s: as, factu'st for factus est; nactu's for nactus es.

§ 93. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—

ămo ămāvi ămātum ămārĕ—*to love.* Ste

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. ămo	*I am loving* or *I love*	*P.* ăm-āmŭs	*we a… we lo…*
ăm-ās	*thou art loving* or *thou lovest*	ăm-ātĭs	*ye are lov… ye love*
ăm-ăt	*he is loving* or *he loves*	ăm-ant	*they are loving* or *they love*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. ăm-ābam	*I was loving* or *I loved*	*P.* ăm-ābāmŭs	*we were loving* or *we loved*
ăm-ābās	*thou wast loving* or *thou lovedst*	ăm-ābătĭs	*ye were loving* or *ye loved*
ăm-ābăt	*he was loving* or *he loved*	ăm-ābant	*they were loving* or *they loved*

3. Future Tense [Future Simple].

S. ăm-ābo	*I shall love*	*P.* ăm-ābĭmŭs	*we shall love*
ăm-ābĭs	*thou wilt love*	ăm-ābĭtĭs	*ye will love*
ăm-ābĭt	*he will love*	ăm-ābunt	*they will love*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. ăm-āvī	*I have loved* or *I loved*	*P.* ăm-āvĭmŭs	*we have loved* or *we loved*
ăm-āvistī	*thou hast loved* or *thou lovedst*	ăm-āvistĭs	*ye have loved* or *ye loved*
ăm-āvĭt	*he has loved* or *he loved*	am-āvērunt or ăm-āvērĕ	*they have loved* or *they loved*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S. ăm-āvĕram	*I had loved*	*P.* ăm-āvĕrāmŭs	*we had loved*
ăm-āvĕrās	*thou hadst loved*	ăm-āvĕrātĭs	*ye had loved*
ăm-āvĕrăt	*he had loved*	ăm-āvĕrant	*they had loved*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. ăm-āvĕro	*I shall*	*P.* ăm-āvĕrimŭs	*we shall*
ăm-āvĕris	*thou wilt*	ăm-āvĕritĭs	*ye will*
ăm-āvĕrĭt	*he will*	ăm-āvĕrint	*they will*

have loved

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. ăm-ā	*love thou*	*P.* ăm-ātĕ	*love ye*

Future Tense.

S. ăm-āto	*thou shalt love*	*P.* ăm-ātōtĕ	*ye shall love*
ăm-āto	*he shall* or *must love*	ăm-anto	*they shall* or *must love*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

	I may love	P.	ăm-ēmŭs	*we may love*
	thou mayst love		ăm-ētĭs	*ye may love*
ăm-ĕt	*he may love*		ăm-ent	*they may love*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. ăm-ārem	*I might or should love*	P.	ăm-ārēmŭs	*we might or should love*
ăm-ārēs	*thou mightst or wouldst love*		ăm-ārētĭs	*ye might or would love*
ăm-ārĕt	*he might or would love*		ăm-ārent	*they might or would love*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. ăm-āvĕrim	*I may*	P.	ăm-āvĕrimŭs	*we may*
ăm-āvĕris	*thou mayst* } *have loved*		ăm-āvĕritĭs	*ye may* } *have loved*
ăm-āvĕrĭt	*he may*		ăm-āvĕrint	*they may*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. ăm-āvissem	*I should*	P.	ăm-āvissēmŭs	*we should*
ăm-āvissēs	*thou wouldst* } *have loved*		ăm-āvissētĭs	*ye would* } *have loved*
ăm-āvissĕt	*he would*		ăm-āvissent	*they would*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	ăm-ārĕ	*to love*
Perfect.	ăm-āvissĕ	*to have loved*
Future.	ăm-ātūrŭs (ă um) essĕ	*to be about to love*

GERUND.

Gen.	ăm-andī	*of loving*
Dat.	ăm-andō	*for loving*
Acc.	ăm-andum	*loving*
Abl.	ăm-andō	*by loving*

SUPINES.

ăm-ātum	*to love*
ăm-ātū	*to be loved*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	ăm-ans antĭs [*one*] *loving*
Future.	ăm-ātūrŭs ă um *about to love*

Obs. 1. In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r*: as,

āmāvistī becomes āmastī	āmāvēram becomes āmāram
āmāvistīs „ āmastīs	āmāvēro „ āmāro
āmāvērunt „ āmārunt	āmāvērim „ āmārim
(but āmāvērĕ does not become āmārĕ, which would be confounded with the Imperf. Infin.).	āmāvissem „ āmassem
	āmāvisse „ āmassĕ

Obs. 2. Final *is* of 2 pers. sing. in both Future-Perfect Indicative and Perfect Subjunctive has the i sometimes short and sometimes long. The penultimate *i* of the Future-Perfect Indicative Plural appears to have been originally short; and that of the Perfect Subjunctive, long. (See Neue, ii. p. 510.) Virg. Aen. 6. 314, has egerī (Perf. Subj.), but according to Servius the penultima is shortened for the sake of the metre. Usage however [illegible] Compare Ov. Met. 6. 357, dederītis, and Pont. 4, 5, 45, both Fut. Perf.

§ 94. SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—Acti

mŏnĕo mŏnŭī mŏnĭtum mŏnērĕ—*to advise.* Stem: [illegible]

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**mŏn-ĕo**	*I am advising* or *I advise*	*P.*	**mŏn-ēmŭs**	*e are advising* or *we advise*
	mŏn-ēs	*thou art advising* or *thou advisest*		**mŏn-ētĭs**	*ye are advising* or *ye advise*
	mŏn-ĕt	*he is advising* or *he advises*		**mŏn-ent**	*they are advising* or *they advise*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S.	**mŏn-ēbam**	*I was advising* or *I advised*	*P.*	**mŏn-ēbāmŭs**	*we were advising* or *we advised*
	mŏn-ēbās	*thou wast advising* or *thou advisedst*		**mŏn-ēbātĭs**	*ye were advising* or *ye advised*
	mŏn-ēbăt	*he was advising* or *he advised*		**mŏn-ēbant**	*they were advising* or *they advised*

3. Future Tense [Future-Simple].

S.	**mŏn-ēbo**	*I shall advise*	*P.*	**mŏn-ēbĭmŭs**	*we shall advise*
	mŏn-ēbĭs	*thou wilt advise*		**mŏn-ēbĭtĭs**	*ye will advise*
	mŏn-ēbĭt	*he will advise*		**mŏn-ēbunt**	*they will advise*

4. Perfect Tense.

S.	**mŏn-uī**	*I have advised* or *I advised*	*P.*	**mŏn-uĭmŭs**	*we have advised* or *we advised*
	mŏn-uistī	*thou hast advised* or *thou advisedst*		**mŏn-uistĭs**	*ye have advised* or *ye advised*
	mŏn-uĭt	*he has advised* or *he advised*		**mŏn-uērunt** or **-ŭērĕ**	*they have advised* or *they advised*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S.	**mŏn-uĕram**	*I had advised*	*P.*	**mŏn-uĕrāmŭs**	*we had advised*
	mŏn-uĕrās	*thou hadst advised*		**mŏn-uĕrātĭs**	*ye had advised*
	mŏn-uĕrăt	*he had advised*		**mŏn-uĕrant**	*they had advised*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S	**mŏn-uĕro**	*I shall*	*have advised*	*P.* **mŏn-uĕrimŭs**	*we shall*
	mŏn-uĕris	*thou wilt*		**mŏn-uĕrĭtĭs**	*ye will*
	mŏn-uĕrĭt	*he will*		**mŏn-uĕrint**	*they will*

have advised

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

mŏn-e	*advise thou*	**mŏn-ētĕ**	*advise ye*

Future Tense.

[illegible]ēto	*thou shalt advise*	*P.* **mŏn-ētōtĕ**	*ye shall advise*
[illegible]to	*he shall* or *must advise*	**mŏn-ento**	*they shall* or *must advise*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

[redacted]m	*I may advise*	P. mŏn-eāmŭs	*we may advise*
mŏn-eās	*thou mayst advise*	mŏn-eātĭs	*ye may advise*
mŏn-eăt	*he may advise*	mŏn-eant	*they may advise*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. mŏn-ērem	*I might* or *should advise*	P. mŏn-ērēmŭs	*we might* or *should advise*
mŏn-ērēs	*thou mightst* or *wouldst advise*	mŏn-ērētĭs	*ye might* or *would advise*
mŏn-ērĕt	*he might* or *would advise*	mŏn-ērent	*they might* or *would advise*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. mŏn-uĕrim	*I may*	P. mŏn-uĕrimŭs	*we may*
mŏn-uĕris	*thou mayst* } *have*	mŏn-uĕritĭs	*ye may* } *have*
mŏn-uĕrĭt	*he may* *advised*	mŏn-uĕrint	*they may* *advised*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. mŏn-uissem	*I should*	P. mŏn-uissēmŭs	*we should*
mŏn-uissēs	*thou wouldst* } *have advised*	mŏn-uissētĭs	*ye would* } *have advised*
mŏn-uissĕt	*he would*	mŏn-uissent	*they would*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	mŏn-ērĕ	*to advise*
Perfect.	mŏn-uisse	*to have advised*
Future.	mŏn-ĭtūrŭs (ă um) esse	*to be about to advise*

GERUND.

Gen.	mŏn-endī	*of advising*
Dat.	mŏn-endo	*for advising*
Acc.	mŏn-endum	*advising*
Abl.	mŏn-endo	*by advising*

SUPINES.

mŏn-ĭtum	*to advise*
mŏn-ĭtū	*to be advised*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	mŏn-ens entis [*one*]	*advising*
Future.	mŏn-ĭtūrŭs ă um	*about to advise*

Obs. The original form of the Perfect Stem in the 2nd Conjugation was in *v* preceded by the long vowel of the Verbal Stem, as in the 1st and 4th Conjugations; and this form remains in some verbs: e.g. fleo, flēvi, flētum, *to weep;* dēleo, delēvi, delētum, *to destroy;* neo, nēvi, nētum, *to spin.* In the case of these Verbs the *v* often suffers elision in the Perfect Tense: e.g. flesset for flēvisset; dēlērāt for dēlēvĕrat; nērunt for nēvērunt, etc. Similarly, Hor. has summosses for summōvisses, and commōrit for commōvĕrit; where the *v* belongs to the Verbal Stem.

§ 95. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

rĕgo rexī rectum rĕgĕrĕ—*to rule.* Stem: rĕg-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	rĕg-o	*I am ruling* or *I rule*	*P.*	rĕg-ĭmŭs	*we are ruling* or *we rule*
	rĕg-ĭs	*thou art ruling* or *thou rulest*		rĕg-ĭtĭs	*ye are ruling* or *ye rule*
	rĕg-ĭt	*he is ruling* or *he rules*		rĕg-unt	*they are ruling* or *they rule*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	rĕg-ēbam	*I was ruling* or *I ruled*	*P.*	rĕg-ēbāmŭs	*we were ruling* or *we ruled*
	rĕg-ēbās	*thou wast ruling* or *thou ruledst*		rĕg-ēbātĭs	*ye were ruling* or *ye ruled*
	rĕg-ēbăt	*he was ruling* or *he ruled*		rĕg-ēbant	*they were ruling* or *they ruled*

3. FUTURE TENSE [FUTURE-SIMPLE].

S.	rĕg-am	*I shall rule*	*P.*	rĕg-ēmŭs	*we shall rule*
	rĕg-ēs	*thou wilt rule*		rĕg-ētĭs	*ye will rule*
	rĕg-ĕt	*he will rule*		rĕg-ent	*they will rule*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.	rex-ī	*I have ruled* or *I ruled*	*P.*	rex-ĭmŭs	*we have ruled* or *we ruled*
	rex-istī	*thou hast ruled* or *thou ruledst*		rex-istĭs	*ye have ruled* or *ye ruled*
	rex-ĭt	*he has ruled* or *he ruled*		rex-ērunt or -ērĕ	*they have ruled* or *they ruled*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S.	rex-ĕram	*I had ruled*	*P.*	rex-ĕrāmus	*we had ruled*
	rex-ĕrās	*thou hadst ruled*		rex-ĕrātĭs	*ye had ruled*
	rex-ĕrăt	*he had ruled*		rex-ĕrant	*they had ruled*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	rex-ĕro	*I shall have ruled*	*P.*	rex-ĕrimŭs	*we shall have ruled*
	rex-ĕris	*thou wilt have ruled*		rex-ĕritĭs	*ye will have ruled*
	rex-ĕrĭt	*he will have ruled*		rex-ĕrint	*they will have ruled*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S.	rĕg-ĕ	*rule thou*	*P.*	rĕg-ĭtĕ	*rule ye*

FUTURE TENSE.

S.	rĕg-ĭto	*thou shalt rule*	*P.*	rĕg-ĭtōtŏ	*ye shall rule*
				rĕg-unto	*they shall* or *must rule*
	rĕg-ĭto	*he shall* or *must rule*			

Obs. The *e* of the Present Imperative is dropped in dīc, *speak*, from dīco; dūc, *lead*, from dūco; fāc, *make*, from fācio; fĕr, *bring*, from fĕro.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

[redacted]g-ăt	*I may rule* *thou mayst rule* *he may rule*	*P.* rĕg-āmŭs rĕg-ātĭs rĕg-ant	*we may rule* *ye may rule* *they may rule*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S.	rĕg-ĕrem	*I might* or *should rule*	*P.*	rĕg-ĕrēmŭs	*we might* or *should rule*
	rĕg-ĕrēs	*thou mightst* or *wouldst rule*		rĕg-ĕrētĭs	*ye might* or *would rule*
	rĕg-ĕrĕt	*he might* or *would rule*		rĕg-ĕrent	*they might* or *would rule*

3. Perfect Tense.

S.	rex-ĕrim	*I may*	*P.*	rex-ĕrimŭs	*we may*	*have ruled*
	rex-ĕris	*thou mayst* *have ruled*		rex-ĕritĭs	*ye may*	
	rex-ĕrĭt	*he may*		rex-ĕrint	*they may*	

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S.	rex-issem	*I should*	*P.*	rex-issēmŭs	*we should*	*have ruled*
	rex-issēs	*thou wouldst* *have ruled*		rex-issētĭs	*ye would*	
	rex-issĕt	*he would*		rex-issent	*they would*	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	rĕg-ĕrĕ	*to rule*
Perfect.	rex-issĕ	*to have ruled*
Future.	rect-ūrus (ă um) essĕ	*to be about to rule*

GERUND.

Gen.	rĕg-endī	*of ruling*
Dat.	rĕg-endo	*for ruling*
Acc.	rĕg-endum	*ruling*
Abl.	rĕg-endo	*by ruling*

SUPINES.

rectum	*to rule*
rec-tū	*to be ruled*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	rĕg-ens entis [*one*] *ruling*
Future.	rec-tūrŭs a um *about to rule*

Obs. 1. In the case of Consonant Verbs, the Perfect Stem is usually formed by the addition of *s* to the Verbal Stem: as, reg + s (i) = *rex-i*.

In the *u*-stems, the characteristic *v* or *u* of the Perfect is lost in the *u* of the Verbal Stem: as, rŭ-o, *I rush;* Perf. rŭ-ī: tribŭ[redacted] *I assign;* Perf. tribŭ-i.

Obs. 2. The Perfect Tense of Consonant Verbs sometimes s[redacted] elision, especially in 2nd pers. sing. Indic.: e.g. dīrextī for d[redacted] Virg. Aen. 6, 57; also in Infin., as, surrexe for surrex[redacted] S. 1, 9, 73; and occasionally in other forms.

§ 96. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE.

audĭo audīvī audītum audīrĕ—*to hear.* Stem: aud

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	aud-io	*I am hearing* or *I hear*	*P.*	aud-īmŭs	*we are hearing* or *we hear*
	aud-īs	*thou art hearing* or *thou hearest*		aud-ītĭs	*ye are hearing* or *ye hear*
	aud-ĭt	*he is hearing* or *he hears*		aud-iunt	*they are hearing* or *they heard*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	aud-iēbam	*I was hearing* or *I heard*	*P.*	aud-iēbāmŭs	*we were hearing* or *we heard*
	aud-iēbās	*thou wast hearing* or *thou heardest*		aud-iēbātĭs	*ye were hearing* or *ye heard*
	aud-iēbăt	*he was hearing* or *he heard*		aud-iēbant	*they were hearing* or *they heard*

3. FUTURE TENSE [FUTURE SIMPLE].

S.	aud-iam	*I shall hear*	*P.*	aud-iēmŭs	*we shall hear*
	aud-iēs	*thou wilt hear*		aud-iētĭs	*ye will hear*
	aud-iĕt	*he will hear*		aud-ient	*they will hear*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.	aud-īvī	*I have heard* or *I heard*	*P.*	aud-īvĭmŭs	*we have heard* or *we heard*
	aud-īvistī	*thou hast heard* or *thou heardest*		aud-īvistĭs	*ye have heard* or *ye heard*
	aud-īvĭt	*he has heard* or *he heard*		aud-īvērunt or īvērĕ	*they have heard* or *they heard*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S.	aud-īvĕram	*I had heard*	*P.*	aud-īvĕrāmŭs	*we had heard*
	aud-īvĕrās	*thou hadst heard*		aud-īvĕrātĭs	*ye had heard*
	aud-īvĕrăt	*he had heard*		aud-īvĕrant	*they had heard*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S.	aud-īvĕro	*I shall have heard*	*P.*	aud-īvĕrimŭs	*we shall have heard*
	aud-īvĕris	*thou wilt have heard*		aud-īvĕritĭs	*ye will have heard*
	aud-īvĕrĭt	*he will have heard*		aud-īvĕrint	*they will have heard*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S.	aud-ī	*hear thou*	*P.*	aud-ītĕ	*hear ye*

FUTURE TENSE.

S.	aud-īto	*thou shalt hear*	*P.*	aud-ītōtĕ	*ye shall hear*
	aud-īto	*he shall* or *must hear*		aud-iunt	*they shall* or *must hear*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

	[illegible]iam	*I may hear*	*P.*	aud-iāmŭs	*we may hear*
	[illegible]s	*thou mayst hear*		aud-iātĭs	*ye may hear*
		he may hear		aud-iant	*they may hear*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. aud-īrem	*I might* or *should hear*	*P.* aud-īrēmŭs	*we might* or *should hear*
aud-īrēs	*thou mightst* or *wouldst hear*	aud-īrētĭs	*ye might* or *would hear*
aud-īrĕt	*he might* or *would hear*	aud-īrent	*they might* or *would hear*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. aud-īvĕrim	*I may*	*have heard*	*P.* aud-īvĕrimŭs	*We may*	*have heard*
aud-īvĕris	*thou mayst*		aud-īvĕritĭs	*they may*	
aud-īvĕrĭt	*he may*		aud-īvĕrint	*ye may*	

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. aud-īvissem	*I should*	*have heard*	*P.* aud-īvissēmŭs	*we should*	*have heard*
aud-īvissēs	*thou wouldst*		aud-īvissētĭs	*ye would*	
aud-īvissĕt	*he would*		aud-īvissent	*they would*	

INFINITIVE MOOD.		GERUND.	
Present. aud-īrĕ	*to hear*	*Gen.* aud-iendī	*of hearing*
Perfect. aud-īvissĕ	*to have heard*	*Dat.* aud-iendo	*for hearing*
Future. aud-ītūrus (ă um) essĕ	*to be about to hear*	*Acc.* aud-iendum	*hearing*
		Abl. aud-iendo	*by hearing*

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.	
aud-ītum	*to hear*	Present. aud-iens, ientis	[*one*] *hearing*
aud-ītū	*to be heard*	Future. aud-ītūrŭs ă um	*about to hear*

Obs. 1. The future in *ībo* is common in the earlier writers; especially in Plautus and Terence. (In Hor. Od. 3, 23, 19, mollībit is the reading of some of the best MSS.; and Prop. has lenībunt, 3, 20, 32.) Similarly in the Passive Voice *-ībor*.

Obs. 2. In the Perfect Tenses *v* is often omitted before *e* and *i*: thus audivisti becomes audiisti or audisti; audīverat, audierat; audīvisse, audiisse or audisse, etc.

Obs. 3. The greater number of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are regular. A few only form the Perfect Stem after the manner of Consonant Verbs, dropping the *i* before *s*: e.g. vincī-o, *I bind*; Perf. vinx-i (=vinc-si); saepio, *I fence in*; Perf. saep-si. The Supine then follows the formation of the Perfect; vinc-tum, saep-tum, etc. See § 147.

Note.—The Future Participle may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, ămātūrus sum, *I am about to love*; audītūrus ĕram, *I was about to hear*, &c. This is sometimes called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation*, but it is in reality no separate Conjugation. In the same way in the Passive Voice the participle in -ndus may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum, and is sometimes called the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation*: as, dŏcendus sum, *I am to be taught* or *must be taught*.

§ 97. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

ămŏr ămātŭs sum or fuī ămārī—*to be loved.* Stem: **ămā-**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S **ăm-ŏr**	*I am being loved* or *I am loved*	*P.* **ăm-āmŭr**	*we are being loved* or *we are loved*
ăm-ārĭs or **ăm-ārĕ**	*thou art being loved* or *thou art loved*	**ăm-āmĭnī**	*ye are being loved* or *ye are loved*
ămātŭr	*he is being loved* or *he is loved*	**ăm-antŭr**	*they are being loved* or *they are loved*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **ăm-ābăr**	*I was being loved* or *I was loved*	*P.* **ăm-ābāmŭr**	*we were being loved* or *we were loved*
ăm-ābārĭs or **ăm-ābārĕ**	*thou wast being loved* or *thou wast loved*	**ăm-ābāmĭnī**	*ye were being loved* or *ye were loved*
ăm-ābātŭr	*he was being loved* or *he was loved*	**ăm-ābantŭr**	*they were being loved* or *they were loved*

3. FUTURE TENSE [FUTURE SIMPLE].

S. **ăm-ābŏr**	*I shall be loved*	*P.* **ăm-ābĭmŭr**	*we shall be loved*
ăm-ābĕrĭs or **ăm-ābĕrĕ**	*thou wilt be loved*	**ăm-ābĭmĭnī**	*ye will be loved*
ăm-ābĭtŭr	*he will be loved*	**ăm-ābuntŭr**	*they will be loved*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S **ăm-ātŭs (ă, um)* sum or fuī**	*I have been loved* or *was loved*	*P.* **ăm-ātī (ae ă) sŭmŭs or fuĭmŭs**	*we have been loved* or *we were loved*
ăm-ātŭs ĕs or **fuistī**	*thou hast been loved* or *wast loved*	**ăm-ātī estĭs or fuistĭs**	*ye have been loved* or *ye were loved*
ăm-ātŭs est or fuĭt	*he has been loved* or *was loved*	**ăm-ātī sunt, fuērunt or fuērĕ**	*they have been loved* or *they were loved*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **ăm-ātŭs ĕram or fuĕram**	*I had been loved*	*P.* **ăm-ātī ĕrāmŭs or fuĕrāmŭs**	*we had been loved*
ăm-ātŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās	*thou hadst been loved*	**ăm-ātī ĕrātĭs or fuĕrātĭs**	*ye had been loved*
ăm-ātŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt	*he had been loved*	**ăm-ātī ĕrant or fuĕrant**	*they had been loved*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. **ăm-ātŭs ĕro or fuĕro**	*I shall have been loved*	*P.* **ăm-ātī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrimŭs**	*we shall have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕris	*thou wilt have been loved*	**ăm-ātī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕritĭs**	*ye will have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt	*he will have been loved*	**ăm-ātī ĕrunt or fuĕrint**	*they will have been loved*

* The Participle used in forming all the Perfect Tenses follows the Gender and Number of the Subject. See § 223.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. ăm-ārĕ [ămāmĭno, see § 122, 3]	*be thou loved*	*P.* ăm-āmĭnī	*ye loved*

Future Tense.

S. ăm-ātŏr	*thou shalt be loved*		
ăm-ātŏr	*he shall* or *must be loved*	*P.* ăm-antŏr	*they shall* or *must be loved*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. ăm-ĕr	*I may be loved*	*P.* ăm-ēmŭr	*we may be loved*
ăm-ērĭs or ăm-ērĕ	*thou mayst be loved*	ăm-ēmĭnī	*ye may be loved*
ăm-ētŭr	*he may be loved*	ăm-entŭr	*they may be love*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. ăm-ārĕr	*I might* or *should be loved*	*P.* ăm-ārēmŭr	*we might* or *should be loved*
ăm-ārērĭs or ăm-ārērĕ	*thou mightst* or *wouldst be loved*	ăm-ārēmĭnī	*ye might* or *would be loved*
ăm-ārētŭr	*he might* or *would be loved*	ăm-ārentŭr	*they might* or *would be loved*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. ăm-ātŭs sim or fuĕrim	*I may have been loved*	*P.* ăm-ātī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs	*we may have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs sīs or fuĕris	*thou mayst have been loved*	ăm-ātī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs	*ye may have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs sĭt or fuĕrĭt	*he may have been loved*	ăm-ātī sint or fuĕrint	*they may have been loved*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. ăm-ātŭs essem or fuissem	*I should have been loved*	*P.* ăm-ātī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs	*we should have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs essēs or fuissēs	*thou wouldst have been loved*	ăm-ātī essētĭs or fuissētis	*ye would have been loved*
ăm-ātŭs essĕt or fuissĕt	*he would have been loved*	ăm-ātī essent or fuissent	*they would have been loved*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. ăm-ārī [ămārĭĕr, see § 123]	*to be loved*
Perfect. ăm-ātŭs (ă um) essĕ or fuissĕ	*to have been loved*
Future. ăm-ātum īrī [see § 128, 3.]	*to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. ăm-ātŭs ă um	*loved* or *having been loved*
Gerundive. ăm-andŭs ă um	*fit to be loved*

§ 98. SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

mŏnĕŏr mŏnĭtŭs sum or **fuī mŏnērī**—*to be advised.* (Stem: **mŏne-**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **mŏn-eŏr**	*I am being advised* or *I am advised*	*P.* **mŏn-ēmŭr**	*we are being advised* or *we are advised*
mŏn-ērĭs or **mŏn-ērĕ**	*thou art being advised* or *thou art advised*	**mŏn-ēmĭnī**	*ye are being advised* or *ye are advised*
mŏn-ētŭr	*he is being advised* or *he is advised*	**mŏn-entŭr**	*they are being advised* or *they are advised*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **mŏn-ēbăr**	*I was being advised* or *I was advised*	*P.* **mŏn-ēbāmŭr**	*we were being advised* or *we were advised*
mŏn-ēbārĭs or **mŏn-ēbārĕ**	*thou wast being advised* or *thou wast advised*	**mŏn-ēbāmĭnī**	*ye were being advised* or *ye were advised*
mŏn-ēbātŭr	*he was being advised* or *he was advised*	**mŏn-ēbantŭr**	*they were being advised* or *they were advised*

3. FUTURE TENSE [FUTURE SIMPLE].

S. **mŏn-ēbŏr**	*I shall be advised*	*P.* **mŏn-ēbĭmŭr**	*we shall be advised*
mŏn-ēbĕrĭs or **mŏn-ēbĕrĕ**	*thou wilt be advised*	**mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī**	*ye will be advised*
mŏn-ēbĭtŭr	*he will be advised*	**mŏn-ēbuntŭr**	*they will be advised*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **mŏn-ĭtŭs sum** or **fuī**	*I have been advised* or *I was advised*	*P.* **mŏn-ĭtī sŭmŭs** or **fuĭmŭs**	*we have been advised* or *we were advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕs or **fuistī**	*thou hast been advised* or *thou wast advised*	**mŏn-ĭtī estĭs** or **fuistĭs**	*ye have been advised* or *ye were advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs est or **fuĭt**	*he has been advised* or *he was advised*	**mŏn-ĭtī sunt** **fuērunt** or **fuērĕ**	*they have been advised* or *they were advised*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕram** or **fuĕram**	*I had been advised*	*P.* **mŏnĭtī ĕrāmŭs** or **fuĕrāmŭs**	*we had been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrās or **fuĕrās**	*thou hadst been advised*	**mŏn-ĭtī ĕrātĭs** or **fuĕrātĭs**	*ye had been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrăt or **fuĕrăt**	*he had been advised*	**mŏn-ĭtī ĕrant** or **fuĕrant**	*they had been advised*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. **mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕro** or **fuĕro**	*I shall have been advised*	*P.* **mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭmŭs** or **fuĕrimŭs**	*we shall have been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭs or **fuĕris**	*thou wilt have been advised*	**mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭtĭs** or **fuĕritĭs**	*ye will have been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭt or **fuĕrĭt**	*he will have been advised*	**mŏn-ĭtī ĕrunt** or **fuĕrint**	*they will have been advised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. mŏn-ērĕ	*be thou advised*	*P.* mŏn-ēmĭnī	*be ye advised*

Future Tense.

S. mŏn-ētŏr	*thou shalt be advised*		
mŏn-ētŏr	*he shall* or *must be advised*	*P.* mŏn-entŏr	*they shall* or *must be advised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. mŏn-eăr	*I may be advised*	*P.* mŏn-eāmŭr	*we may be advised*
mŏn-eārĭs or mŏn-eārĕ	*thou mayst be advised*	mŏn-eāmĭnī	*ye may be advised*
mŏn-eātŭr	*he may be advised*	mŏn-eantŭr	*they may be advised*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. mŏn-ērĕr	*I might* or *should be advised*	*P.* mŏn-ērēmŭr	*we might* or *should be advised*
mŏn-ērērĭs or mŏn-ērērĕ	*thou mightst* or *wouldst be advised*	mŏn-ērēmĭnī	*ye might* or *would be advised*
mŏn-ērētŭr	*he might* or *would be advised*	mŏn-ērentŭr	*they might* or *would be advised*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. mŏn-ĭtŭs sim or fuĕrim	*I may have been advised*	*P.* mŏn-ĭtī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs	*we may have been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs sīs or fuĕris	*thou mayst have been advised*	mŏn-ĭtī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs	*ye may have been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭt or fuĕrĭt	*he may have been advised*	mŏn-ĭtī sint or fuĕrint	*they may have been advised*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. mŏn-ĭtŭs essem or fuissem	*I should have been advised*	*P.* mŏn-ĭtī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs	*we should have been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs essēs or fuissēs	*thou wouldst have been advised*	mŏn-ĭtī essētĭs or fuissētĭs	*ye would have been advised*
mŏn-ĭtŭs essĕt or fuissĕt	*he would have been advised*	mŏn-ĭtī essent or fuissent	*they would have been advised*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	mŏn-ērī [mŏnērĭĕr]	*to be advised*
Perfect.	mŏn-ĭtŭs (ă um) essĕ or fuissĕ	*to have been advised*
Future.	mŏn-ĭtum īrī	*to be about to be advised*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	mŏn-ĭtŭs a um	*advised* or *having been advised*
Gerundive.	mŏn-endŭs a um	*fit to be advised*

§ 99. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

rĕgŏr rectŭs sum or fuī rēgī—*to be ruled.* Stem: **rĕg-**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **rĕg-or**	*I am being ruled* or *I am ruled*	*P.* **rĕg-ĭmŭr**	*we are being ruled* or *we are ruled*
rĕg-ĕrĭs or **rĕg-ĕrĕ**	*thou art being ruled* or *thou art ruled*	**rĕg-ĭmĭnī**	*ye are being ruled* or *ye are ruled*
rĕg-ĭtŭr	*he is being ruled* or *he is ruled*	**rĕg-untŭr**	*they are being ruled* or *they are ruled*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **rĕg-ēbăr**	*I was being ruled* or *I was ruled*	*P.* **rĕg-ēbāmŭr**	*we were being ruled* or *we were ruled*
rĕg-ēbārĭs or **rĕg-ēbārĕ**	*thou wast being ruled* or *thou wast ruled*	**rĕg-ēbāmĭnī**	*ye were being ruled* or *ye were ruled*
rĕg-ēbātŭr	*he was being ruled* or *he was ruled*	**rĕg-ēbantŭr**	*they were being ruled* or *they were ruled*

3. FUTURE TENSE [FUTURE SIMPLE].

S. **rĕg-ăr**	*I shall be ruled*	*P.* **rĕg-ēmŭr**	*we shall be ruled*
rĕg-ērĭs or **rĕg-ērĕ**	*thou wilt be ruled*	**rĕg-ēmĭnī**	*ye will be ruled*
rĕg-ētŭr	*he will be ruled*	**rĕg-entŭr**	*they will be ruled*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **rec-tŭs sum** or **fuī**	*I have been ruled* or *was ruled*	*P.* **rec-tī sŭmŭs** or **fuĭmŭs**	*we have been ruled* or *we were ruled*
rec-tŭs ĕs or **fuistī**	*thou hast been ruled* or *wast ruled*	**rec-tī estĭs** or **fuistĭs**	*ye have been ruled* or *ye were ruled*
rectŭs est or **fuĭt**	*he has been ruled* or *was ruled*	**rec-tī sunt fuērunt** or **fuērĕ**	*they have been ruled* or *they were ruled*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **rec-tŭs ĕram** or **fuĕram**	*I had been ruled*	*P.* **rec-tī ĕrāmŭs** or **fuĕrāmŭs**	*we had been ruled*
rec-tŭs ĕrās or **fuĕrās**	*thou hadst been ruled*	**rec-tī ĕrātĭs** or **fuĕrātĭs**	*ye had been ruled*
rec-tŭs ĕrăt or **fuĕrăt**	*he had been ruled*	**rec-tī ĕrant** or **fuĕrant**	*they had been ruled*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. rec-tŭs ĕro or fuĕro	*I shall have been ruled*	*P.* rec-tī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrimŭs	*we shall have been ruled*
rec-tŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs	*thou wilt have been ruled*	rec-tī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕritĭs	*ye will have been ruled*
rec-tŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrĭt	*he will have been ruled*	rec-tī ĕrunt or fuĕrint	*they will have been ruled*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. rĕg-ĕrĕ	*be thou ruled*	*P.* rĕg-ĭmĭnī	*be ye ruled*

Future Tense.

S. rĕg-ĭtŏr	*thou shalt be ruled*	*P.* rĕg-untŏr	*they shall or must be ruled*
ĕg-ĭtŏr	*he shall or must be ruled*		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

	I may be ruled	*P.* rĕg-āmŭr	*we may be ruled*
3 or rĕ	*thou mayst be ruled*	rĕg-āmĭnī	*ye may be ruled*
	he may be ruled	rĕg-antŭr	*they may be ruled*

2. Imperfect Tense.

	I might or should be ruled	*P.* rĕg-ĕrēmŭr	*we might or should be ruled*
or	*thou mightst or wouldst be ruled*	rĕg-ĕrēmĭnī	*ye might or would be ruled*
	he might or would be ruled	rĕg-ĕrentŭr	*they might or would be ruled*

3. Perfect Tense.

	I may have been ruled	*P.* rec-tī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs	*we may have been ruled*
	thou mayst have been ruled	rec-tī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs	*ye may have been ruled*
	he may have been ruled	rec-tī sint or fuĕrint	*they may have been ruled*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

	should have n ruled	*P.* rec-tī essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs	*we should have been ruled*
	ouldst have ruled	rectī essētĭs or fuissētĭs	*ye would have been ruled*
	uld have ruled	rec-tī essent or fuissent	*they would have been ruled*

NFINITIVE MOOD.

	to be ruled
ssĕ or fuissĕ	*to have been ruled*
	to be about to be ruled

PARTICIPLES.

ruled or having been ruled
fit to be ruled

§ 100. FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

audĭŏr audītŭs sum or fuī audīrī—*to be heard.* Stem: audī-

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S.	aud-iŏr	*I am being heard* or *I am heard*	*P.*	aud-īmŭr	*we are being heard* or *we are heard*
	aud-īrĭs or aud-īrĕ	*thou art being heard* or *thou art heard*		aud-īmĭnī	*ye are being heard* or *ye are heard*
	aud-ītŭr	*he is being heard* or *he is heard*		aud-iuntŭr	*they are being heard* or *are hea*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S.	aud-iēbăr	*I was being heard* or *I was heard*	*P.*	aud-iēbāmŭr	*we we hear wer*
	aud-iēbārĭs or aud-iēbārĕ	*thou wast being heard* or *thou wast heard*		aud-iēbāmĭnī	*ye w he w*
	aud-iēbātŭr	*he was being heard* or *he was heard*		aud-iēbantŭr	*the*

3. FUTURE TENSE [FUTURE-SIMPLE].

S.	aud-iăr [audībŏr]*	*I shall be heard*	*P.*	aud-iēmŭr	
	aud-iērĭs or aud-iērĕ	*thou will be heard*		aud-iēmĭnī	
	aud-iētŭr	*he will be heard*		aud-ientŭr	

* Concerning the Future Indicative in *ībor* see §

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S.	aud-ītŭs sum or fuī	*I have been heard* or *I was heard*	*P.*	aud-ītī sŭ or fuĭmŭ	
	aud-ītŭs ĕs or fuistī	*thou hast been heard* or *thou wast heard*		aud-ītī es fuistĭs	
	aud-ītŭs est or fuĭt	*he has been heard* or *he was heard*		aud-ītī fuĕru fuĕrĕ	

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE

S.	aud-ītŭs ĕram or fuĕram	*I had been heard*	*P.*	aud-ī or	
	aud-ītŭs ĕrās or fuĕrās	*thou hadst been heard*		aud-ī or	
	aud-ītŭs ĕrăt or fuĕrăt	*he had been heard*		aud	

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. aud-ītŭs ŏ.o or fuĕro	*I shall have been heard*	*P.* aud-ītī ĕrĭmŭs or fuĕrimŭs	*we shall have been heard*
aud-ītŭs ĕrĭs or fuĕrĭs	*thou wilt have been heard*	aud-ītī ĕrĭtĭs or fuĕrītĭs	*ye will have been heard*
aud-ītŭs ĕrĭt or fuĕrit	*he will have been heard*	aud-ītī ĕrunt or fuĕrint	*they will have been heard*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. aud-īrĕ	*be thou heard*	*P.* aud-īmĭnī	*be ye heard*

Future Tense.

S. aud-ītŏr	*thou shalt be heard*		
aud-ītŏr	*he shall or must be heard*	*P.* aud-iuntŏr	*they shall or must be heard*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. aud-iăr	*I may be heard*	*P.* aud-iāmŭr	*we may be heard*
aud-iārĭs or aud-iārĕ	*thou mayst be heard*	aud-iāmĭnī	*ye may be heard*
aud-iātŭr	*he may be heard*	aud-iantŭr	*they may be heard*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. aud-īrĕr	*I might or should be heard*	*P.* aud-īrēmŭr	*we might or should be heard*
aud-īrērĭs or aud-īrērĕ	*thou mightst or wouldst be heard*	aud-īrēmĭnī	*ye might or would be heard*
aud-īrētŭr	*he might or would be heard*	aud-īrentŭr	*they might or would be heard*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. aud-ītŭs sim or fuĕrim	*I may have been heard*	*P.* aud-ītī sīmŭs or fuĕrimŭs	*we may have been heard*
aud-ītŭs sīs or fuĕris	*thou mayst have been heard*	aud-ītī sītĭs or fuĕritĭs	*ye may have been heard*
aud-ītŭs sĭt or fuĕrĭt	*he may have been heard*	aud-ītī sint or fuĕrint	*they may have been heard*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. aud-ītŭs essem or fuissem	*I should have been heard*	*P.* aud-ītĭ essēmŭs or fuissēmŭs	*we should have been heard*
aud-ītŭs essēs or fuissēs	*thou wouldst have been heard*	aud-ītī essētĭs or fuissētĭs	*ye would have been heard*
aud-ītŭs essĕt or fuissĕt	*he would have been heard*	aud-ītī essent or fuissent	*they would have been heard*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	aud-īrī [audīrĭĕr]	*to be heard*
Perfect.	aud-ītus (ă um) essĕ or fuissĕ	*to have been heard*
Future.	aud-ītum īrī	*to be about to be heard*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.	aud-ītŭs ă um	*heard or having been heard*
Gerundive.	aud-iendŭs ă um	*fit to be heard*

§ 101. THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I (in the Imperfect Tenses).

căpio cēpī captum căpĕrĕ—*to take.* Stems: **căpi- căp-**

I. ACTIVE VOICE.—Indicative Mood.

Present.	**căp-io**	**căp-ĭs**	**căp-ĭt** | **căp-ĭmŭs**	**căp-ĭtĭs**	**căp-iunt**
Imperf.	**căp-iēbam**	*I was taking*		like	**aud-iēbat**
Future.	**căp-iam**	*I shall take*		„	**aud-iam**

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	**căp-iam**	*I may take*	like	**aud-iam**
Imperf.	**căp-ĕrem**	*I might take*	„	**rĕg-ĕrem**

Imperative Mood.

Present.	**căp-ĕ**	*take thou*	like	**rĕg-ĕ**
Future.	**căp-ĭto**	*thou shalt take*	„	**rĕg-ĭto**
	căp-iunto	*they shall take*	„	**aud-iunto**

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	**căp-ĕrĕ**	*to take*	like	**rĕg-ĕrĕ**

Participle.

Present.	**căp-iens**	[*one*] *taking*	like	**aud-iens**

Gerund.

	căp-iendi	*of taking*	like	**aud-iendī**

II. PASSIVE VOICE.—Indicative Mood.

Present.	**căp-ĭŏr căp-ĕrĭs** or **ĕrĕ căpĭtur** | **căp-ĭmŭr**		**căp-ĭmĭnī**	**căp-iuntŭr**
Imperf.	**căp-iēbăr**	*I was being taken*	like	**aud-iēbăr**
Future.	**căp-iăr**	*I shall be taken*	„	**aud-iăr**

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	**căp-iăr**	*I may be taken*	like	**aud-iăr**
Imperf.	**căp-ĕrĕr**	*I might be taken*	„	**rĕg-ĕrĕr**

Imperative Mood.

Present.	**căp-ĕrĕ**	*be thou taken*	like	**rĕg-ĕrĕ**
Future.	**căp-ĭtŏr**	*thou shalt be taken*	„	**rĕg-ĭtŏr**
	căp-iuntŏr	*they shall be taken*	„	**aud-iuntŏr**

Infinitive Mood.

căp-ī [**căpiĕr**]	*to be taken*	like	**rĕg-ī**

Obs. 1. The Tenses derived from Perfect and Supine are regular: cēp-ī, cēp-ĕram, cēp-ĕro, &c.; captūrus esse, captus sum, &c.

Obs. 2. The Verbs conjugated like **căpio** are:

făcio	fēcī	factum	făcĕrĕ	*make*
jăcio	jēcī	jactum	jăcĕrĕ	*throw*
fŭgio	fūgī	fŭgĭtum	fŭgĕrĕ	*flee*
fŏdio	fōdī	fossum	fŏdĕrĕ	*dig*
răpio	răpuī	raptum	răpĕrĕ	*seize*
părio	pĕpĕrī	partum	părĕrĕ	*bring forth*
quătio	(no perfect)	quassum	quătĕrĕ	*shake*
cŭpio	cŭpīvī	cŭpītum	cŭpĕrĕ	*desire*
săpio	săpīvī		săpĕrĕ	*taste (of)*
lăcio			lăcĕrĕ	*draw* } rare, except in
spĕcio			spĕcĕrĕ	*look* } composition

Also the Deponent Verbs:

grădĭŏr	gressŭs sum	grădī	*walk*
mŏrĭŏr	mortŭŭs sum	mŏrī	*die*
pătĭŏr	passŭs sum	pătī	*suffer*

Obs. 3. Ŏrior, ortus sum, ŏrīrī, *to rise*, follows the Fourth Conjugation in the Infinitive Mood ŏrīri, Imperf. Subj. ŏrīrer, less frequently ŏrĕrer, Future Part. ŏrītūrus. So also, mŏrītūrus, from mŏrior.

CHAPTER XVIII.—DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 102. Deponent Verbs have a Passive form, but an Active meaning (§ 86).

The name Deponent was given to them because they were supposed to have been originally Passive, but to have dropped (depōno, *I lay aside*) their Passive meaning. The greater part of them, however, are true Reflexive Verbs: e.g. expergiscor, *I arouse myself, awake;* prŏficiscor, *I make myself forth, set out;* vescor, *I feed myself;* nītor, *I prop myself, lean upon, exert myself.*

In some the sense is not strictly Reflexive, but Reciprocal: e.g. proeliāri, *to fight with each other* (comp. Fr. se battre: Key, Lang. p. 209), luctāri, *to wrestle together;* lŏqui, *to converse, talk together.*

In others, the sense is to do something *for oneself:* as in the military terms, ăquāri, *to get water;* pābŭlāri, *to get fodder;* etc.

Deponent Verbs are inflected like Passives in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative Moods. In the remaining part ['Infinite Verb'] they have some peculiarities.

1. The Fut. Infin. follows the form of the Active Voice: e.g. hortātūrus esse, *to be about to exhort;* not hortātum īri. [The latter form, if used, would have a Passive sense: see § 128, 3.]

2. Deponents have the Participial forms of both Act. and Passive Voice: as, hortans, hortātūrus, hortātus, hortandus. [Concerning the Passive use of the Perfect Participle, see § 525.]

3. They have also Gerunds and Supines like Active Verbs.

4. The Gerundive Participle has always a Passive meaning: hortandus, *needing to be exhorted.*

Many Verbs have both an Active and a Deponent form, without difference of meaning: as, fabrĭco and fabrĭcor, *I fashion;* mĕdĭco and mĕdĭcor, *I heal.* See § 149.

§ 103. CONJUGATION OF DEPONENT VERBS.

I. hortŏr hortātŭs sum hortārī *to exhort* like ămŏr

II. vĕrĕŏr vĕrĭtŭs sum vĕrērī *to fear* „ mŏnĕŏr

		I.		II.	
Indicative Mood.	*Present.*	hortŏr	*I exhort*	vĕr-ĕor	*I fear*
		hort-ārĭs or ārĕ	*thou exhortest*	vĕr-ērĭs or ērĕ	*thou fearest*
		&c.	*&c.*	&c.	*&c.*
	Imperf.	hort-ābăr	*I was exhorting*	vĕr-ēbăr	*I was fearing*
	Future.	hort-ābŏr	*I shall exhort*	vĕr-ēbŏr	*I shall fear*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs sum	*I have exhorted or I exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs sum	*I have feared or I feared*
	Pluperf.	hort-ātŭs ĕram	*I had exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕram	*I had feared*
	Fut.-Perf.	hort-ātŭs ĕro	*I shall have exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕro	*I shall have feared*
Subjunctive Mood.	*Present.*	hort-ĕr	*I may exhort*	vĕr-ĕăr	*I may fear*
	Imperf.	hort-ārĕr	*I might exhort*	vĕr-ērĕr	*I might fear*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs sim	*I may have exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs sim	*I may have feared*
	Pluperf.	hort-ātŭs essem	*I should have exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs essem	*I should have feared*
Imperative.	*Present.*	hort-ārĕ	*exhort thou*	vĕr-ērĕ	*fear thou*
	Future.	hort-ātŏr	*thou shalt exhort*	vĕr-ētŏr	*thou shalt fear*
Infinitive.	*Present.*	hort-ārī (-ĭĕr)	*to exhort*	vĕr-ērī (-ĭĕr)	*to fear*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs essĕ	*to have exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs essĕ	*to have feared*
	Future.	hort-ātūrŭs essĕ	*to be about to exhort*	vĕr-ĭtūrŭs essĕ	*to be about to fear*
Participles.	*Present.*	hort-ans	*exhorting*	vĕr-ens	*fearing*
	Future.	hort-ātūrŭs	*about to exhort*	vĕr-ĭtūrŭs	*about to fear*
	Perfect.	hort-ātŭs	*having exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtŭs	*having feared*
	Gerundive.	hort-andŭs	*fit to be exhorted*	vĕr-endŭs	*fit to be feared*
Supines.		hort-ātum	*to exhort*	vĕr-ĭtum	*to fear*
		hort-ātū	*to be exhorted*	vĕr-ĭtū	*to be feared*
Gerund.		hort-andi	*of exhorting*	vĕr-endi	*of fearing*

Examples for Conjugation.

I.			II.		
	cōnŏr	*I endeavour*		intuĕŏr	*I behold*
	consōlŏr	*I console*		mĕrĕŏr	*I deserve*
	mīrŏr	*I wonder*		pollĭcĕŏr	*I promise*

III. lŏquŏr lŏcūtŭs sum lŏquī *to speak* like rĕgŏr.
IV. partiŏr partītŭs sum partīrī *to divide* like audiŏr.

	III.		IV.		
Present.	lŏquŏr	*I speak*	partiŏr	*I divide*	Indicative Mood
	lŏqu-ĕrĭs or ĕrĕ	*thou speakest*	part-īrĭs or īrĕ	*thou dividest*	
	&c.	*&c.*	&c.	*&c.*	
Imperf.	lŏqu-ēbăr	*I was speaking*	part-iēbăr	*I was dividing*	
Future.	lŏqu-ăr	*I shall speak*	part-iăr	*I shall divide*	
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs sum	*I have spoken* or *I spoke*	part-ītŭs sum	*I have divided* or *I divided*	
Pluperf.	lŏcū-tŭs ĕram	*I had spoken*	part-ītŭs ĕram	*I had divided*	
Ful.-Perf.	lŏcū-tŭs ĕro	*I shall have spoken*	part-ītŭs ĕro	*I shall have divided*	
Present.	lŏqu-ăr	*I may speak*	part-iăr	*I may divide*	Subjunctive
Imperf.	lŏqu-ĕrĕr	*I might speak*	part-īrĕr	*I might divide*	
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs sim	*I may have spoken*	part-ītŭs sim	*I may have divided*	
Pluperf.	lŏcū-tŭs essem	*I should have spoken*	part-ītŭs essem	*I should have divided*	
Present.	lŏqu-ĕrĕ	*speak thou*	part-īrĕ	*divide thou*	Imperative
Future.	lŏqu-ĭtŏr	*thou shalt speak*	part-ītŏr	*thou shalt divide*	
Imperf.	lŏqu-ī (-ĭĕr)	*to speak*	part-īrī (-ĭĕr)	*to divide*	Infinitive
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs essĕ	*to have spoken*	part-ītŭs esse	*to have divided*	
Future.	lŏcū-tūrŭs essĕ	*to be about to speak*	part-ītūrŭs essĕ	*to be about to divide*	
Imperf.	lŏqu-ens	*speaking*	part-iens	*dividing*	Participles
Future.	lŏcū-tūrŭs	*about to speak*	part-ītūrŭs	*about to divide*	
Perfect.	lŏcū-tŭs	*having spoken*	part-ītŭs	*having divided*	
Gerundive.	lŏqu-endŭs	*fit to be spoken*	part-iendŭs	*fit to be divided*	
Supines.	lŏcū-tum	*to speak*	part-ītum	*to divide*	
	lŏcū-tū	*to be spoken*	part-ītū	*to be divided*	
Gerund.	lŏqu-endi	*of speaking*	part-iendi	*of dividing*	

Examples for Conjugation.

III.			IV.	
fruŏr	fruĭtŭs sum	*I enjoy*	blandiŏr	*I flatter*
fungŏr	functŭs sum	*I perform*	largiŏr	*I give freely*
lābŏr	lapsŭs sum	*I slip*	mentiŏr	*I lie*

12.3.05

CHAPTER XIX.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 104. IRREGULAR VERBS are such as are not conjugated according to the common Rules. The Conjugation of one Irregular Verb, *sum*, has been already seen (§ 92). The rest are here given:

I. possum (for **pŏtis sum**: v. *Obs.* 1.) **pŏtuī posse** *to be able, can*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	1. *Present.*	
S.	pos-sum	pos-sim
	pŏt-ēs	pos-sīs
	pŏt-est	pos-sīt
P.	pos-sŭmŭs	pos-sīmŭs
	pŏt-estĭs	pos-sītĭs
	pos-sunt	pos-sint
	2. *Imperfect.*	
S.	pŏt-ĕram	pos-sem
	pŏt-ĕrās	pos-sēs
	pŏt-ĕrăt	pos-sĕt
P.	pŏt-ĕrāmŭs	pos-sēmŭs
	pŏt-ĕrātĭs	pos-sētĭs
	pŏt-ĕrant	pos-sent
	3. *Future.*	
S.	pŏt-ĕro	
	pŏt-ĕrĭs	
	pŏt-ĕrĭt	
P.	pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs	
	pŏt-ĕrĭtĭs	
	pŏt-ĕrunt	

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	4. *Perfect.*	
S.	pŏt-uī	pŏt-uĕrim
	pŏt-uistī	pŏt-uĕris
	pŏt-uĭt	pŏt-uĕrĭt
P.	pŏt-uĭmŭs	pŏt-uĕrimŭs
	pŏt-uistĭs	pŏt-uĕritĭs
	pŏt-uērunt (ērĕ)	pŏt-uĕrint
	5. *Pluperfect.*	
S.	pŏt-uĕram	pŏt-uissem
	pŏt-uĕrās	pŏt-uissēs
	pŏt-uĕrăt	pŏt-uissĕt
P.	pŏt-uĕrāmŭs	pŏt-uissēmŭs
	pŏt-uĕrātĭs	pŏt-uissētĭs
	pŏt-uĕrant	pŏt-uissent
	6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	pŏt-uĕro	
	pŏt-uĕrĭs	
	pŏt-uĕrĭt	
P.	pŏt-uĕrimŭs	
	pŏt-uĕritĭs	
	pŏt-uĕrint	

INFINITIVE.

Present.—**possĕ.** *Perfect*—**pŏtuissĕ.** *Future*—wanting.

Imperative, Gerund, and *Supine* wanting.

The *Present Participle* **pŏtens** is used only as an Adjective, *powerful.*

Obs. 1. Possum is compounded of **pŏtis, pŏtĕ,** *able* and **sum.** The **t** of the root **pot** is retained before a vowel, but assimilated to *s* before another s. The full forms (pŏtis sum, pŏtis est, pŏtĕ fŭĕrat, &c.), are found in early writers.

Obs. 2. Old forms are: *Pres. Inf.* pŏtessĕ; *Pres. Subj.* possiem, possiēs, &c.: frequent in Plautus and Terence. *Pass.* pŏtestŭr once in Lucr. (3, 1010): poteratur, possitur, in old writers quoted by grammarians.

§ 105. II. vŏlo vŏluī vellĕ — *to be willing.* Stem vŏl or vĕl.
III. nōlo (ne-vŏlo) nōluī nollĕ — *to be unwilling.* Stem nōl.
IV. mālo (mā-vŏlo for mag-vŏlo) māluī mallĕ—*to be more willing.* Stem māl.

INDICATIVE.

1. *Present.*

S.	vŏlo	nōlo	mālo
	vīs	non vīs	māvīs
	vult	non vult	māvult
P.	vŏlŭmŭs	nōlŭmŭs	mālŭmŭs
	vultĭs	non vultĭs	māvultĭs
	vŏlunt	nōlunt	mālunt

2. *Imperfect.*

S.	vŏl-ēbam	nōl-ēbam	māl-ēbam
	vŏl-ēbās	nōl-ēbās	māl-ēbās
	&c.	&c.	&c.

3. *Future.*

S.	vŏl-am	nōl-am	māl-am
	vŏl-ēs	nōl-ēs	māl-ēs
	&c.	&c.	&c.

4. *Perfect.*

S.	vŏl-uī	nōl-uī	māl-uī
	vŏl-uistī	nōl-uistī	māl-uistī
	&c.	&c.	&c.

5. *Pluperfect.*

	vŏl-uĕram	nōl-uĕram	māl-uĕram
	vŏl-uĕrās	nōl-uĕrās	māl-uĕrās
	&c.	&c.	&c.

6 *Future-Perfect.*

	vŏl-uĕro	nōl-uĕro	māl-uĕro
	vŏl-uĕris	nōl-uĕris	māl-uĕris
	&c.	&c.	&c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

	vĕl-im	nōl-im	māl-im
	vĕl-īs	nōl-īs	māl-īs
	vĕl-ĭt	nōl-ĭt	māl-ĭt
	vĕl-īmŭs	nōl-īmŭs	māl-īmŭs
	vĕl-ītĭs	nōl-ītĭs	māl-ītĭs
	vĕl-int	nōl-int	māl-int

2. *Past.*

	ellem	nol-lem	mal-lem
	el-lēs	nol-lēs	mal-lēs
	&c.	&c.	&c.

3. *Perfect.*

S. vŏl-uĕrim	nōl-uĕrim	māl-uĕrim
vŏl-uĕris	nōl-uĕris	māl-uĕrĭs
&c.	&c.	&c.

4. *Pluperfect.*

S. vŏl-uissem	nōl-uissem	māl-uisse...
vŏl-uissēs	nōl-uissēs	māl-uissēs
&c.	&c.	&c.

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting)	*S.* nōl-ī	(wanting)
	P. nōl-ītĕ	

Future.

S. nōl-īto
nōl-īto
P. nōl-ītōtĕ
[nōl-unto]

INFINITIVE.

Imperfect.

vel-lĕ	nol-lĕ	mal-lĕ

Perfect.

vŏl-uissĕ	nōl-uissĕ	māl-uissĕ

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

vŏlens	nōlens	(wanting

NOTE.—Nōlunto is doubtful. The Gerunds vŏlendo, nōlendo occur in late Latin.

Obs. 1. In consequence of the tendency of liquids to assimilate, the of the terminations is changed into *l*: thus, vel-lem, nol-lem, mal-lem, are contractions of vĕl-ĕrem, nōl-ĕrem, māl-ĕrem; and vel-lē, nol-lĕ, mal-lĕ, of vĕl-ĕre, nōl-ĕrĕ, māl-ĕrĕ.

Obs. 2. OLD FORMS—(i) Of **vŏlo**. *Pres. Ind.* volt, voltis, for vult, vultis. Vin contr. of visne, in Pl. and Ter., also in Hor. Si sī vultīs, were contracted into sīs, sultīs (Ter.). *Pres. Subj.* vŏlim, vŏlint, for vĕlim, vĕlint.

(ii) Of **nōlo**. *Pres. Ind.* nĕvīs, nĕvult, for non vīs, non vult. Also the longer forms non vĕlīs for nōlīs, &c.

(iii) Of **mālo**. The longer forms māvĕlo for mālo; māvŏlunt, mālunt; māvŏluit for māluit; māvĕlim for mālim; māvĕlīs, mālīs; māvĕlit for mālit; māvellem for mallem, &c. All these forms are common in Plautus.

§ 106. V. do dĕdi dătum dăre *to give.* Stem da.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. *Present.*		4. *Perfect.*	
S. do	dem	dĕdī	dĕdĕrim
dās	dēs	&c.	&c.
dăt	dĕt		
P. dămŭs	dēmŭs		
dătĭs	dētĭs		
dant	dent		
2. *Imperfect.*		5. *Pluperfect.*	
dăbam	dărem	dĕdĕram	dĕdissem
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.
3. *Future.*		6. *Future-Perfect.*	
dăbo		dĕdĕro	
&c.		&c.	

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.		
Present.	*Future.*	*Present.*	*Future.*	*Perfect.*
S. dā	*S.* dăto	dărĕ	dătūrŭs essĕ	dĕdissĕ
P. dătĕ	dăto			
	P. dătōtĕ		*Participles.*	
	danto	*Present.*	*Future.*	
		dans	dătūrŭs	
			Gerund.	
			dandī	
			&c.	

Do has a Passive Voice; but the 1st Pers. Sing. Present Indic. and Subj. do not occur.

Obs. A *Pres. Subj.* duim, duīs, duĭt, &c., is frequent in Plautus. *Pres. Ind.* dănĭt, dănunt for dat, dant (implying a Verb dăno), also occur in Plaut.

§ 107. VI. Fĕro tŭlī ferrĕ lātum—*to bear.* Stem fĕr.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. *Present.*		1. *Present.*	
S. fĕro	fĕr-am	fĕr-ŏr	fĕr-ăr
fer-s	fĕr-ās	fer-rĭs	fĕr-ārĭs
fer-t	fĕr-ăt	fer-tŭr	fĕr-ātŭr
P. fĕr-ĭmŭs	fĕr-āmŭs	fĕr-ĭmŭr	fĕr-āmŭr
fer-tĭs	fĕr-ātĭs	fĕr-ĭmĭnī	fĕr-āmĭnī
fĕr-unt	fĕr-ant	fĕr-untŭr	fĕr-antŭr

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
2. *Imperfect.*		2. *Imperfect.*	
S. fĕr-ēbam	fer-rem	fĕr-ēbăr	fer-rer
fĕr-ēbās	fer-rēs	fĕr-ēbārĭs -ĕ	fer-rērĭs -ĕ
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.
3. *Futurè.*		3. *Future.*	
S. fĕr-am		fĕr-ăr	
fĕr-ēs	(none)	fĕr-ērĭs -ĕ	
&c.		&c.	

Perfect Tenses, both Act. and Pass. regular: tŭlī, tŭlĕram, etc.; lātŭs sum, lātŭs ĕram, etc.

IMPERATIVE.		IMPERATIVE.	
Present.	fĕr	*Present.*	fer-rĕ
	fer-tĕ		fĕr-ĭmĭnĭ
Future.	fer-to	*Future.*	fer-tŏr
	fer-to		fer-tŏr
	fer-tōtĕ		fĕr-untŏr
	fĕr-unto		
INFINITIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Imperfect.	fer-rĕ	*Imperfect.*	fer-rī (-ĭĕr)
Perfect.	tŭl-issĕ	*Perfect.*	lātus essĕ
Future.	lātūrus essĕ	*Future.*	lātum īrī
PARTICIPLES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Imperfect.	fĕrens	*Perfect.*	lātŭs
Future.	lātūrŭs	*Gerundive.*	fĕr-endŭs
SUPINES.		GERUND.	
	lātum -u	*Gen.*	fĕr-endī
			&c.

Obs. 1. In the Imperfect Tenses of fĕro, the only irregularity is the omission of a connecting vowel in some of the terminations: thus, fer-s = fer-is; fer-t = fĕr-it; fer-rem = fĕr-ĕrem; fer-rĕ = fĕr-ĕrĕ, &c. The Perfect tŭli (old form tĕtŭli: cf. rettŭli, from rĕfĕro) is from same root as tollo: the supine lātum from another form of same root: tălātum, contr. tlātum and lātum.

Obs. 2. The compounds of fĕro are conjugated in the same way:—

affĕro (ad fero)	attŭlī	afferrĕ	allātum	*bring to*
aufĕro (ab fero)	abstŭlī	auferrĕ	ablātum	*carry away*
effĕro (ex fero)	extŭlī	efferrĕ	ēlātum	*carry out*
infĕro (in fero)	intŭlī	inferrĕ	illātum	*carry into*
offĕro (ob fero)	obtŭlī	offerrĕ	oblātum	*present*
prōfĕro (pro fero)	prōtŭlī	prōferrĕ	prōlātum	*carry forward*
rĕfĕro (re fero)	{rĕtŭlī / rettŭlī}	rĕferrĕ	rĕlatum	*bring back*

§ 108. VII. ĕdo ēdī ēsum ĕdĕrĕ or essĕ—*to eat.* Stem ĕd.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
1. *Present.*		3. *Future.*	
ĕdo	ĕd-am *or* ĕd-im	ĕd-am	
ĕd-ĭs *or* ēs	ĕd-ās *or* ĕd-īs	ĕd-ēs	
ĕd-ĭt *or* est	ĕd-ăt *or* ĕd-ĭt	ĕd-ĕt	(none)
ĕd-ĭmŭs	ĕd-āmŭs *or* ĕd-īmŭs	ĕd-ēmŭs	
ĕd-ĭtĭs *or* estĭs	ĕd-ātĭs *or* ĕd-ītĭs	ĕd-ētĭs	
ĕd-unt	ĕd-ant *or* ĕdint	ĕd-ent	
2. *Imperfect.*			
ĕd-ēbam	ĕd-ĕrem *or* essem		
ĕd-ēbās	ĕd-ĕrēs *or* essēs		
ĕd-ēbăt	ĕd-ĕrĕt *or* essĕt	(The Perfect Tenses are regular: ēdī, ēdĕram, ēdĕro, etc.)	
ĕd-ēbāmŭs	ĕd-ĕrēmŭs *or* essēmŭs		
ĕd-ēbātĭs	ĕd-ērētĭs *or* essētĭs		
ĕd-ēbant	ĕd-ĕrent *or* essent		

Imperative.		Participles.	
Present.	ĕd-ĕ *or* ēs	*Present.*	ĕd-ens
	ĕd-ĭtĕ *or* estĕ	*Future.*	ēsūrŭs
Future.	ĕd-ĭto *or* esto		
	ĕd-ĭto *or* esto	Supines.	
	ĕd-ĭtōtĕ *or* estōtĕ		ēsum
	ĕd-unto		ēsū
Infinitive.		Gerund.	
Present.	ĕd-ĕrĕ *or* essĕ	*Gen.*	ĕd-endī, &c.
Perfect.	ēd-issĕ		
Future.	ēsūrus esse		

The Passive Voice is regular: only ēstŭr may be used instead of ĕdĭtŭr, and essētŭr instead of ēdĕrētŭr. The Perfect Participle is ēsus.

The compound cŏmĕdo, *eat up*, is conjugated in the same way: as, cŏmĕdĭs or cŏmēs; cŏmĕdĭt or cŏmest, &c.

§ 109. VIII. ĕo īvī or ĭī ĭtum īrĕ—*to go.* Stem i.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	1. *Present.*		3. *Future.*	
S.	ĕ-o	ĕ-am	*S.* ĭ-bo	
	ĭ-s	ĕ-ās	ĭ-bĭs	
	ĭ-t	ĕ-ăt	ĭ-bĭt	(none)
P.	ĭ-mŭs	ĕ-āmŭs	*P.* ĭ-bĭmŭs	
	ĭ-tĭs	ĕ-ātĭs	ĭ-bĭtĭs	
	ĕ-unt	ĕ-ant	ĭ-bunt	

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	2. *Imperfect.*		
S. ī-bam	ī-rem		
ī-bās	ī-rēs	(The Perfect Tenses are regular: īvī or iī, īvistī or īistī, etc.; īvēram or īĕram, etc.)	
ī-băt	ī-rĕt		
P. ī-bāmŭs	ī-rēmŭs		
ī-bātĭs	ī-rētĭs		
ī-bant	ī-rent		

	Imperative.		Participles.
Present.	ī		ī-ens (*Gen.* ĕ-untĭs)
	ī-tĕ	*Future*	ī-tūrŭs (ă um)
Future.	ī-to		
	ī-to		
	ī-tōtĕ		
	ĕ-unto		
	Infinitive.		**Gerund.**
Imperfect.	ī-rĕ	*Gen.*	ĕ-undī, &c.
Perfect.	ī-vissĕ īissĕ *or* issĕ		
Future.	ī-tūrŭs essĕ		

Obs. 1. The ī of the Stem becomes *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*: as, eam, eo, eunt, &c.

Obs. 2. The Passive is used impersonally: ītŭr, ībātŭr, ībĭtŭr, ītum est, &c.; but compounds of eo, which have a transitive meaning, are conjugated throughout in the Passive: as, ădeo, *I approach*; Pass.: ădeor, ădīrīs, ăditŭr, &c. So, praetĕrītus est, from praetĕreo (Ter. ad prol. 14.)

Obs. 3. The compounds of eo usually take *ii*, rarely *ivi*, in the Perfect Tenses: thus ădeo, *I approach*, makes ădii, ădiĕram, ădiissem, &c.

Obs. 4. Ambīo, *I go about*, retains the *i* throughout and is conjugated regularly like a verb of the Fourth Conjugation. Hence we find ambiēbam, but occasionally ambībam (Ov. Met. v. 361); Ger. ambiendi, &c. The Perf. Participle is ambītus (Ov. Met. i. 37), but the Verbal Nouns are ambītus, ambītio.

Obs. 5. Besides the Prepositional Compounds of ĕo (ābĕo, exĕo, intĕrĕo, etc.), also vĕneo (vaen-), *to be sold* (contr. for vĕnum eo), is inflected as the simple Verb. Such forms as transiĕbat, vĕniĕbat [vaen-], are occasionally met with.

§ 110. Quĕo, *I am able;* and nĕquĕo, *I am not able*, are also inflected like eo; but have no Imperative, Participles, or Gerunds.

Obs. Instead of nĕqueo, nĕquīs, nĕquīt, we frequently find non quĕo, non quīs, non quīt. In old writers the Passive is used, followed by an *Inf. Pass.*: as, quītur, quīta est, nĕquītur, nĕquītum est, Quĕātur in Lucr. i. 1045.

§ 111. IX. Fĭo factus sum fĭĕrī, &c.

fĭo factŭs sum fĭĕrī—*to become* or *be made.* Stem **fi**

(Used as Passive of **făcĭo.**)

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
1. *Present.*		3. *Future.*	
S. fī-o	fīam	*S.* fī-am	
fī-s	fī-ās	fī-ēs	
fīt *or* flt	fī-ăt	fī-ēt	
P. [fī-mŭs]	fī-āmŭs	*P.* fī-ēmŭs	(none)
[fī-tĭs]	fī-ātĭs	fī-ētĭs	
fī-unt	fī-ant	fī-ent	
2. *Imperfect.*			
S. fī-ēbam	fī-ĕrem		
fī-ēbās	fī-ērēs		
fī-ēbăt	fī-ērĕt	(The Perfect Tenses are regular: **factŭs sum, factus ĕram,** etc.)	
P. fī-ēbāmŭs	fī-ērēmŭs		
fī-ēbātĭs	fī-ērētĭs		
fī-ēbant	fī-ĕrent		

Imperative.		Participles.	
Present.	fī fī-tĕ	*Perfect.*	**factŭs (ă um)**
Infinitive.		*Gerundive.*	**făciendŭs (a um)**
Present.	fī-ĕrī		
Perfect.	**factŭs essĕ**		
Future.	**factum īrī**		

Obs. 1. Fĭo contains the root **fu,** *to become,* from which the Perfect tenses of sum are formed (§ 92). So also in the Passive of some compounds: e.g. calefăcio, *Pass.* calefĭo; satisfăcio, *Pass.* satisfĭo; conficio, *Pass.* confĭo as well as confĭcior.

Obs. 2. The **i** is sometimes long in fiĕrī and fiĕrem in Terence and Plautus.

Obs. 3. The forms fīmŭs and fītis are doubtful.

§ 112. **Fĭo, vēneo (vaen-),** *to be sold,* and **vāpŭlo (-āvī),** *to be beaten,* are sometimes called *Neuter-Passives,* because they are Passive in their signification and meaning. On vēneo, see § 109, *Obs.* 5.

II. The following are *Semi-Deponent* Verbs, **audeo, gaudeo, fīdo, sŏleo.** Their Principal Tenses are as follows:—

audeo	ausus sum	audēre	*to dare.*
gaudeo	gāvīsus sum	gaudēre	*to rejoice.*
fīdo	fīsus sum	fīdĕre	*to trust.*
sŏleo	sŏlĭtus sum	sŏlēre	*to be accustomed.*

CHAPTER XX.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 113. Defective Verbs are such as want certain Tenses and Persons. The following are the principal:—

I. Coepī	*I have begun, I began*
II. Mĕmĭnī	*I have called to mind, I remember*
III. Ōdī, less freq. ōsus sum	*I hate*
IV. Nōvi	*I have learned, I know*

These Verbs are used only in the Perfect Tenses; the three latter have a present signification.

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.	coepī	mĕmĭnī	ōdī	nōvī
Pluperfect.	coepĕram	mĕmĭnĕram	ōdĕram	nōvĕram
Future-Perfect.	coepĕro	mĕmĭnĕro	ōdĕro	nōvĕro

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.	coepĕrim	mĕmĭnĕrim	ōdĕrim	nōvĕrim
Pluperfect.	coepissem	mĕmĭnissem	ōdissem	nōvissem

IMPERATIVE.

Future.	(wanting)	mĕmento mĕmentōtō		(wanting)

INFINITIVE.

Perfect.	coepissĕ	mĕmĭnissĕ	ōdissĕ	nōvissĕ

PARTICIPLE.

Future.	coeptūrŭs	ōsūrŭs
Perfect.	coeptŭs (passive), *begun*	ōsŭs (exōsŭs, pĕrōsŭs), in active sense, *hating, detesting.*

Obs. 1. Instead of coepi, the Passive coeptus sum, &c., is used before an Infinitive Passive: as, urbs aedificārī coepta est, *the city began to be built:* cf. § 110, *Obs.*

Obs. 2. The Pluperfects of mĕmĭni, ōdi, nōvi, may be translated by the English Past-Indef., *I remembered, I hated, I knew;* and the Fut. Perf. by the Fut.-Simple, *I shall remember, &c.*

V. Aio, *I say*, has only the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Present.		*Imperfect.*	
S. āio	—	*S.* āiēbam [aibam, Pl.]	
āĭs	āiās	āiēbās	
āĭt	āiăt	āiēbăt	
P. —	—	*P.* āiēbām	
—	—	āiēbātĭs	
āiunt	āiant	āiēbant	

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

āiens.

Obs. The form aisnĕ, *sayest thou?* is often contracted into ain'.

VI. Inquam, *say I*, has only the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.

Present.	**inquam**	*Imperfect.*	**inquiēbam**
	inquĭs		**inquiēbās**
	inquĭt		**inquiēbăt**
	inquĭmŭs		**inquiēbāmŭs**
	inquĭtĭs		**inquiēbātĭs**
	inquĭunt		**inquiēbant**
Future.	—	*Perfect.*	—
	inquiēs		**inquistī**
	inquiĕt		**inquĭt**

IMPERATIVE.

Present. **inquĕ** | *Future.* 2 *Pers.* **inquĭto**

Obs. Inquam, like the English *quoth I, says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

VII. Fāri, *to speak*, a Deponent, is used only in the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.

Present.

fātŭr

Future.

fābŏr, fābĭtŭr

Perfect Tenses.

fātus sum, ĕram, &c.

IMPERATIVE. INFINITIVE.

Present. S. **fārĕ** **fārī**

PARTICIPLES.

Present. **fantĭs &c.** (without *Nom.*)

Perfect. **fātŭs**

Gerundive. **fandŭs**

SUPINE — **fātū**

GERUND—**fandī &c.**

'The Compounds affāri, effāri, prŏfāri, praefāri can use the same forms and a few more: affamur, Ov.; affamini, Curt.; affabar, Virg.; effabere, Lucan.; effabimur, Cic.; praefantes, Catull.; praefarer, etc.' (K.)

VIII. Salvē, *hail!* is found in *Imperat.* salvĕ, salvētĕ, salvēto; *Infin.* salvērĕ; and *Future* salvēbĭs.

IX. Ăvē (hăvē), *hail!* is found in *Imperat.* ăvĕ, ăvētĕ, ăvēto; and *Infin.* ăvērĕ.

X. Ăpăgĕ, *begone!* (the only form).

XI. Cĕdŏ; *pl.* cĕdĭtĕ, cettĕ, *give me, tell me*, are Imperatives of an obsolete Verb. (The etymology appears to be, cĕ-da, cĕ-dăte, '*give here*': same *ce* as in hic-*ce*.)

XII. Quaeso, *I entreat*, quaesŭmŭs, *we entreat*, are the only forms used in this sense.

XIII. Ŏvans, ŏvantĭs, *triumphing* (*in an* ŏvātio), rare except in *Pres. Part.* The forms ŏvās, ŏvăt, were also used.

Chapter XXI.—Impersonal Verbs.

§ 114. Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

§ 115. The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs:—

I. Verbs denoting Mental and Moral relations (all of 2nd Conj.).

lĭbĕt, lĭbuĭt & lĭbĭtum est, lĭbērĕ	*it pleases*
lĭcĕt, lĭcuit & lĭcĭtŭm est, lĭcērĕ	*it is lawful*
lĭquĕt, lĭquērĕ	*it is clear*
dĕcĕt, dĕcuĭt, dĕcērĕ	*it is seemly*
dēdĕcĕt, dēdĕcuĭt, dēdĕcērĕ	*it is unseemly*
mĭsĕrĕt *or* **mĭsĕrētur, mĭsĕrĭtum est, mĭsĕrērĕ**	*it excites pity*
ŏportĕt, ŏportuĭt, ŏportērĕ	*it behoves*
pĭgĕt, pĭguĭt & pĭgĭtum est, pĭgērĕ	*it vexes*
paenĭtĕt (poe-), paenĭtuĭt, paenĭtērĕ	*it causes sorrow*
pŭdĕt, pŭduĭt *or* **pŭdĭtum est, pŭdērĕ**	*it shames*
taedĕt (pertaesum est), taedērĕ	*it disgusts*

§ 116. The above Verbs are inflected in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive Moods. The Imperative is expressed by means of the *Pres. Subj.*, lĭceat, *let it be lawful*, etc. They are without Supines; and the Participial forms are exceptional—

lĭbet: *Pres. Part.* only as Adj.: lĭbens, *willing, with good will.*
lĭcet: *Perf. Part.* only as Adj.: lĭcĭtus, *lawful.*
dĕcet: *Pres. Part.* only as Adj.: dĕcens, *becoming.*
pĭget: *Gerundive* pĭgendus, *to be regretted;* also *Gerund*, [ad] pĭgendum (Cic. Br. 188).
paenĭtet: *Pres. Part.* as Adj.: paenĭtens, *penitent;* also *Gerundive* paenĭtendus, *to be repented of;* and *Gerund* paenĭtendum.
pŭdet: *Pres. Part.* only as Adj.: pŭdens, *modest; Gerundive*, pŭdendus, *fit to be ashamed of; Gerund*, pŭdendum.
taedet: *Perf. Part.* pertaesus, *thoroughly sick of.*

§ 117. Lĭbet, lĭcet, lĭquet, are followed by the Dat.: e.g. libet mihi, *it pleases me, I like to ...*; the remainder take the virtual subject in the Accusative Case. They are conjugated thus—

pŭdĕt mē	*it shames me*, or *I am ashamed*
pŭdĕt tē	*it shames thee*, or *thou art ashamed*
pŭdĕt eum	*it shames him*, or *he is ashamed*
pŭdĕt nōs	*it shames us*, or *we are ashamed*
pŭdĕt vōs	*it shames you*, or *you are ashamed*
pŭdĕt eōs	*it shames them*, or *they are ashamed*

(Similarly in other Tenses.)

§ 118. II. Verbs which denote Meteorological Phenomena.

grandĭnăt, grandĭnārĕ	*it hails*
gĕlăt, gĕlārĕ	*it freezes*
ningĭt, ninxĭt, ningĕrĕ	*it snows*
plŭĭt, plŭĭt *or* **plūvĭt, pluĕrĕ**	*it rains*
rōrăt, rōrārĕ	*the dew is falling*
fulgŭrăt, fulgŭrārĕ / **fulmĭnăt, fulmĭnārĕ**	*it lightens*
lăpĭdăt, lăpĭdāvĭt & lăpĭdātum est, lăpĭdārĕ	*it rains stones*
tŏnăt, tŏnŭĭt, tŏnārĕ	*it thunders*
lūcescĭt, (illuxĭt), lūcescĕrĕ	*it becomes light*
vespĕrascĭt, vespĕrāvĭt, vespĕrascĕrĕ / **(tĕnebrascĭt), contĕnebrāvit**	*evening approaches* / *it is getting late or dark*

Obs. Some of these are also used personally: as, tonare, fulminare, fulgurare, rorare, pluere, etc. (tonat Jupiter, caelum, dies, &c.).

§ 119. III. Impersonal Verbs not comprised in either of the foregoing Classes.

accĭdĭt, accĭdĭt, accĭdĕre	*it happens*
contingĭt, contĭgĭt, contingĕre	*it falls to the (happy) lot of*
constăt, constābăt, constāre	*it is agreed*
convĕnĭt, convĕnĭēbăt, convĕnīre	*it suits*
expĕdĭt, expĕdiēbat, expĕdīre	*it is expedient*
intĕrest, interfuĭt, intĕresse	*it makes a difference to*
rĕfert, rĕferre	*it is of importance to*
jŭvăt, (usu. in Pres. Ind.)	*it delights*
praestăt, praestĭtĭt, praestāre	*it is better*

Obs. Of these, all excepting *rĕfert* are common Personal Verbs used in a special sense as Impersonals.

§ 120. The Passive of Intransitive Verbs is used impersonally: as,

currĭtur, *it is run*, i.e. *the action of running is performed (by people), people run.*

ĭtur, *it is gone*, i.e. *the action of going is performed (by people), they go.* See also § 128, 3 (iii).

So, **pugnātur**, *they fight*; **ventum est**, *they* (or *we*) *arrived.*

CHAPTER XXII.—ANALYSIS OF VERBAL FORMS; FORMATION OF TENSES; PECULIAR INFLEXIONS.

§ 121. UNCONTRACTED AND CONTRACTED VERBS.

In the Third Conjugation the Terminations of the Persons and of the Tenses are affixed without any change in the Stem; but in the First, Second and Fourth Conjugations the Vowel of the Stem is frequently contracted with the Vowels of the Terminations. Hence the Third Conjugation is *Uncontracted*, the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are *Contracted*. This will be seen from the Present Indicative Active.

III CONJUGATION.

Sing. 1.	rĕg-o	ru-o
2.	rĕg-ĭs	ru-ĭs
3.	rĕg-ĭt	ru-ĭt
Plur. 1.	rĕg-ĭmŭs	ru-ĭmŭs
2.	rĕg-ĭtĭs	ru-ĭtĭs
3.	rĕg-unt	ru-unt

	I CONJUGATION.	II CONJUGATION.	IV CONJUGATION.
Sing. 1.	ăma-o =ămo	mŏne-o	audi-o
2.	ăma-*is* =ămās	mŏne-is =mŏnēs	audi-ĭs =audīs
3.	ăma-ĭt =ămăt	mŏne-ĭt =mŏnĕt	audi-ĭt =audĭt
Plur. 1.	ăma-ĭmŭs=ămāmŭs	mŏne-ĭmŭs=mŏnēmŭs	audi-ĭmŭs=audīmŭ
2.	ăma-ĭtĭs =ămātĭs	mŏne-ĭtĭs =mŏnētĭs	audi-ĭtĭs =audītĭs
3.	ăma-unt =ămant	mŏne-unt =mŏnent	audi-unt

Forms like ămat, mŏnet, audit, are found with the final syllable long in the older writers.

§ 122. PERSONAL ENDINGS.

1. The Personal Endings are the personal pronouns more or less corrupted. (See p. 101, 'Remarks.') The regular terminations in the *Active Voice* in their simplest form are:

	Sing.	*Plur.*		*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1.	-m	-m-us	as in	rĕgēba-m	rĕgēbā-m-ŭs
2.	-s	-t-is	„	rĕgēbā-s	rĕgēbā-t-ĭs
3.	-t	-nt	„	rĕgēbă-t	rĕgēba-nt

Or with a ('thematic') vowel prefixed:

	Sing.	*Plur.*		*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1.	-o-(m)	-ĭ-m-ŭs	as in	rĕg-o	rĕg-ĭ-m-ŭ
2.	-ĭ-s	-ĭ-t-is	„	rĕg-ĭ-s	rĕg-ĭ-t-ĭs
3.	-ĭ-t	-u-nt	„	rĕg-ĭ-t	rĕg-u-nt

2. The sign of the *Passive Voice* is **r**, which is added to the personal terminations of the Active Voice, the **r** either absorbing the preceding consonant, or being added by means of a connecting vowel: thus—

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
1. -ŏ-r	-ĭm-ŭr as in	rĕg-ŏ-r	rĕg-ĭm-ŭr
2. -ĕr-ĭs for ĭs-ĭs		rĕg-ĕr-ĭs for rĕg-ĭs-ĭs	
3. -ĭt-ŭr	-unt-ŭr ,,	rĕg-ĭt-ur	rĕg-unt-ur

NOTE.—The **r**, the sign of the Passive, perhaps represents **s**, i.e. the Reflexive pronoun sui, se. The use of the Reflexive pronoun to form the Passive is seen in many modern languages.

3. Remarks on the Personal Terminations.

First Person.—The **-m** is the 1st personal pronoun, which appears in mē. It is lost in the 1st person singular of the present indicative of all verbs except sum, *I am*, and inquam, *quoth I*. In the plural **-m-us**, the letter **s** is the sign of plurality. In the *Passive* the **m** disappears before **r**, the sign of the passive: as, rĕgēbă-r from rĕgēba-m; rĕgă-r from rĕga-m; rĕgĕrĕ-r from rĕgĕre-m; &c. In the plural, **s** the sign of plurality, also disappears before **r**: as, rĕgēbāmu-r from rĕgēbāmus; rĕgāmu-r from rĕgāmŭs; rĕgĕrēmŭ-r from rĕgĕrēmŭs.

Second Person.—The **-s** is the 2nd personal pronoun, and represents the *t* in tu (Gr. σύ). In the 2nd person of the perfect indicative (rexis-ti) the *t* appears. Also in the plural **-t-is**, the *t* represents the 2nd person, the *s* being the sign of plurality, as in the 1st person. In the *Passive*, the termination in the singular is **-ĕrĭs** or **-rĭs** (also **-rĕ**), in which *r* represents the *s* of the Active, and **is** is the sign of the Passive, the *s* not being changed into *r*, in order to avoid the repetition of *r*: as, rĕgĕr-ĭs from rĕgĭs, where *ĕr* represents the *ĭs* of rĕgĭs. (See Note, *infr.*)

The plural **-ĭmĭnī** or **-mĭnī** of the Passive (as rĕg-ĭmĭnī, ămā-mĭnī) has no connexion with the singular termination. It appears to be a participial termination (Gr. μενοι). An old Imperative sing. form in -mĭno (for -mĭnos) is attested by the Grammarians, and is now read in Plautus in several places (Epid. 5, 2, 30, arbitrāmĭno; Pseud. 3, 2, 70, prōgrĕdimĭno). But no plural form in **-mĭnor** exists, or indeed could well do so.

Third Person.—The **-t** is the 3rd personal pronoun, and is the same root as appears in the Greek article, and in the English pronouns *this* and *that*. In the plural **-nt**, the letter *n* is the sign of plurality. (The letter *n*, as well as *s*, is a sign of plurality in other languages akin to the Latin. Thus in Old English many plural forms ended in *n*; as they do still in German.) In the *Passive* the singular and plural are formed from the Active by adding **-ur**: as, rĕgĭt-ŭr, rĕgunt-ŭr, from rĕgĭt, rĕgunt; rĕgēbāt-ŭr, rĕgēbant-ŭr, from rĕgēbăt, rĕgēbant.

NOTE.—In the 2nd Person Sing. Passive **-ĕrĭs**, it would appear at first sight as if the personal termination were placed after the

54499

sign of the Passive; but it is more probable that **er** represents the *is* of the Active, the *is* being changed into *er*, like pulv*is*, pulvĕr-*is*. (On the change of *s* into *r* see § 30, *Obs.* 2.) The final *s* was frequently dropped, the terminations becoming **-ere** or **-re**. This however rarely occurs in the Present Tense, as the form in *e* might be confounded with the Infinitive Active. (On the omission of *s* at the end of Latin words, see Part iv.)

§ 123. Formation of the Imperfect Tenses.

1. *Present Tenses.*—*The Indicative* and *Imperative* are formed by adding the personal terminations to the stem without any tense suffix. In the Imperative, the *s*, the termination of the 2nd person, is dropped, and *e* alone remains: as, rĕg-ĕ, rĕg-ītĕ: in the contracted conjugations, ămā = ăma-ĕ; mŏnō = mŏne-ĕ; audī = audi-ĕ.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix **-a**: as, rĕg-a-m, mŏne-a-m, aud-i-am. In the first conjugation the *a* of the stem is contracted with the **a** of the tense suffix into *e:* as, ăma-a-m = ăme-m.

The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix **-ĕrĕ** (for **-ĕsĕ**): as rĕg-ĕrĕ: in the contracted conjugations, ămā-rĕ = ăma-ĕrĕ; mŏnē-re = mŏne-ĕrĕ; audī-rĕ = audi-ĕrĕ. It is strictly a verbal Noun in the Dative Case, the final *e* having become short.

The *Participle* has the suffix **-enti** (*Nom.* **-ens**): as rĕg-ens, audi-ens: in 1st and 2nd Conj., ăma-ns = ăma-ens; mŏne-ns = mŏne-ens.

Obs. 1. *Subjunctive.*—In some verbs the tense-suffix is **-i**: as, vĕl-im nōl-im, māl-im, sim, ĕd-im, also in the forms duim from do, crĕduim from crĕdo. It is supposed by some that this is the case in the First Conjugation, ămem being thus a contraction of ăma-im, not of ăma-am.

Obs. 2. *Infinitive.*—The *s* in the original form **-ĕsĕ** becomes *r*, according to the general rule, that *s* is changed into *r* between two vowels. The original *s* appears in es-se, *to be*. In vel-lĕ, nol-lĕ, mal-lĕ, for vĕl-ĕrĕ, nōl-ĕrĕ, māl-ĕrĕ, the *e* is dropped, and *r* becomes *l* by assimilation. In the Passive Voice, the ancient termination of the Imperfect Infinitive was **-ier**: as, ămāriĕr, later ămāri; mŏnĕr-iĕr, later mŏnēri. Virg. has accingier, Aen. 4, 493.

2. *Imperfect Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **-ēba(m)** or **-ba(m)**: as, rĕg-ēba-m, audi-ēba-m: in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, ămā-ba-m = ăma-ēba-m: mŏnē-ba-m = mŏne-ēba-m.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix **-ĕre(m)** or **-re(m)** (for **-ĕse(m)** or **-sem**): as, rĕg-ĕre-m: in the contracted conjugations, ămā-re-m = ăma-ĕre-m; mŏnē-re-m = mŏne-ĕre-m; audī-re-m = audi-ĕr-em.

Obs. 1. *Indicative.*—The suffix **-ēba**, or **-ba**, contains the root **FU** in *fu-i* (Gr. *φύ-ω*). In the Fourth Conjugation, many verbs in the older writers, and also in the poets of the Augustan age, have **bam**, not *ēbam:* as, scī-bam, nescī-bam, aī-bam, etc.: ī-bam is the regular form from ĕo.

Obs. 2. *Subjunctive.*—The old form **-sem** is seen in es-sem. In vel-lem, nol-lem, mal-lem, the *s* or *r* becomes *l* by assimilation as in the Infinitive.

3. *Future Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **-b(o)** in the 1st and 2nd conjugations: as, ămā-b-o; mŏn-ē-b-o: and the tense suffix **-a** in the 3rd and 4th conjugations, **a** being used in the first person, and becoming **e** in all the other persons: as, rĕg-a-m, rĕg-ē-s, rĕg-ĕ-t, &c.; audi-a-m, audi-ē-s, audi-ĕ-t, &c.

Obs. 1.—The suffix **bo** is probably a shortened form of fuo, the future of the stem FU, like ĕro from the stem ES (sum), containing the root FU, which has a future meaning in fŏre. The futures in the 3rd and 4th conjugations are allied to the Subjunctive; but these conjugations, in all probability, originally formed their futures in **bo**: ibo is the regular future of eo. The forms scī-bo, nesci-bo, ăpĕrī-bo, and others also occur.

The *Imperative Future* is strengthened by the addition of the suffix **-to**, old form **-tod**, of which an example occurs in a fragment of a law ascribed to Romulus, estod (3 pers. sing.): compare also the provincial (Oscan) forms *estud*, *licitud* (=esto, lĭcēto), and the Vedic Sanskrit Imperative in *-tāt* (2 and 3 pers.). The **d** appears as *t* in 2 pers. plur., as rĕgī-tō-te.

Obs. The *d* of the suffix *-tod* is dropped as in the Ablative Sing. of Nouns: see Part iv. In the 2nd pers. sing., the suffix represents a double second Personal Pronoun, and in the 3rd pers. sing. a doubled third Personal Pronoun.

The annexed Table exhibits the above Tense Terminations with the Contractions:

ACTIVE VOICE.

	III.	I.	II.	IV.
INDICATIVE.				
Present.	rĕg-o	ămā-o = ămo	mŏne-o	audi-o
Imperf.	rĕg-ēbam	ămā-ēbam = ămābam	mŏne-ēbam = mŏnēbam	audi-ēbam
Future.	rĕg-am	ămā-bo	mŏnē-bo	audi-am
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
Present.	rĕg-am	ămā-am or ămā-im = ămem	mŏne-am	audi-am
Imperf.	rĕg-ĕrem	ămā-ĕrem = ămārem	mŏne-ĕrem = mŏnērem	audi-ĕrem = audīrem
IMPERATIVE.				
Present.	rĕg-ĕ	ămā-ĕ = ăma	mŏne-ĕ = mŏnē	audi-ĕ = audī
Future.	rĕg-ĭto	ămā-ĭto = ămāto	mŏne-ĭto = mŏnēto	audi-ĭto = audīto
INFINITIVE.	rĕg-ĕrĕ	ămā-ĕrĕ = ămārĕ	mŏne-ĕrĕ = mŏnērĕ	audi-ĕrĕ = audīrĕ
PARTICIPLE.	rĕg-ens	ămā-ens = ămans	mŏne-ens = mŏnens	audi ens

PASSIVE VOICE.

	III.	I.	II.	IV.
INDICATIVE.				
Present.	rĕg-ŏr	ăma-ŏr = ămŏr	mŏne-ŏr	audi-ŏr
Imperf.	rĕg-ēbăr	ăma-ēbăr = ămābăr	mŏne-ēbăr = mŏnēbar	audi-ēbăr
Future.	rĕg-ăr	ămā-bŏr	mŏnē-bŏr	audi-ăr
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
Present.	rĕg-ăr	ăma-ăr or ăma-ĭr = ămĕr	mŏne-ăr	audi-ăr
Imperf.	rĕg-ĕrĕr	ăma-ĕrĕr = ămārĕr	mŏne-ĕrĕr = mŏnērĕr	audi-ĕrĕr = audīrĕr
IMPERATIVE.				
Present.	rĕg-ĕrĕ	ăma-ĕrĕ = ămārĕ	mŏne-ĕrĕ = mŏnērĕ	audi-ĕrĕ = audīrĕ
Future.	rĕg-ĭtŏr	ăma-ĭtŏr = ămātŏr	mŏne-ĭtŏr = mŏnētŏr	audi-ĭtŏr = audītŏr
INFINITIVE.	rĕg-ī	ăma-ĕrī = ămārī	mŏne-ĕrī = mŏnērī	audi-ĕrī = audīrī
GERUNDIVE.	rĕg-endŭs	ăma-endŭs = ămandŭs	mŏne-endŭs = mŏnendus	audi-endŭs

§ 124. *Strengthening of the Present Stem.*—The Stems of some Verbs are strengthened in the Present and Tenses formed from it in the following ways:—

1. By the insertion of **n** or **m** *before* the final consonant: as,

Stem.	*Present Tense.*	*Perfect Tense.*	
scĭd-	scindo	scĭdī	*tear*
tăg-	tango	tĕ-tĭgī	*touch*
rŭp-	rumpo	rūpī	*burst*

In accordance with the law of affinity, *n* is inserted before the dental and guttural letters; as, scindo, frango; *m* before the labial letters; as, cumbo.

2. By the insertion of **n** *after* the final vowel or consonant: as,

Stem.	*Present Tense.*	*Perfect Tense.*	
lĭ-	lĭno	lī-vi, lē-vi	*smear*
spĕr-	sperno	sprē-vī	*despise*
cĕr-	cerno	crē-vī	*distinguish*
pŏs-	pōno	pŏs-uī	*place*

Pōno is instead of po-sĭ-no, the *s* being dropped for euphony.

3. By adding **t** or doubling the final consonant: as,

Stem.	*Present Tense.*	*Perfect Tense.*	
flĕc-	flecto	flexī	*bend*
pĕl-	pello	pĕ-pŭlī	*drive*

4. By reduplication, that is, by prefixing the initial consonant with the connecting vowel *i*, the syllable so formed representing the root syllable of which it is a contraction: as,

Stem.	*Present Tense.*	*Perfect Tense.*	
gĕn-	gi-gno (=gen-gen-o)	gĕn-uī	*produce*
sta-	si-sto (=sta-sto)	stĭ-tī	*cause to stand*

5. By lengthening the root vowel: as,

Root Stem.	*Present Tense.*			
dŭc-	dūc-o	*lead*	cf.	dux, dŭc-is
fĭd-	fīd-o	*trust*	„	fĭd-es
dĭc-	dīc-o	*speak*	„	mălĕ-dĭc-us in-dĭc-o

6. By adding **sc**, which is the suffix of inceptive verbs. See § 145.

§ 125. Formation of the Perfect Stem.

The Perfect Stem is formed:

1. By adding **v** to the Verbal Stem: as, ămā, ămā-v-ī: audi, audī-v-ī. This is the regular formation in the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding **u** to the Verbal Stem: as, mŏnĕ, mŏn-u-ī. The final vowel of the Verbal Stem is dropped. This is the regular formation of the Second Conjugation.

Obs. The formative elements **v** and **u** are the same, and are identical with the root fu-, seen in the Perfect of the verb *sum*.

3. By adding **s** to the Verbal Stem: as, rĕg (rĕgŏ), rexi = reg-s-i.

Obs. 1. The euphonic changes of letters must be noted.

(i) *cs, gs, qus, hs* are contracted into *x*: as, dūco, duxi, *lead*; cŏquo, coxi, *cook*; trăho, traxi, *drag*.

(ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s*: as, scrībo, scripsī, *write*; nūbo, nupsī, *marry* (of women).

(iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s*: as, mitto, mīsī, *send*; laedo, laesī, *injure*.

Obs. 2. Some verbs drop the sign of the Perfect; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u* or *v*: as mĭnu-o, mĭnu-ī, *lessen*; volv-o, volv-ī, *roll*; vert-o, vert-ī, *turn*.

4. By reduplication, as,

tend-	(tendo)	tĕ-tendī	(For ten-tendi)	*stretch*
căd-	(cădo)	cĕ-cĭdī	(„ cad-cădi)	*fall*
mordc-	(mordeo)	mŏ-mordī	(„ mord-mordi)	*bite*

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem: as,

jăc- or jăci-	(jăcio)	jēcī	*throw*
vĕni-	(vĕnio)	vēnī	*come*
mŏvc-	(mŏvco)	mōvī	*move*

Obs. In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted: as, **tundo, tŭtŭdī, *beat*,** but contundo, con-tŭdī, *beat small, bruise;* **pello, pĕpŭlī, *drive*,** but com-pello, compŭlī, *drive together*.

§ 126. The *Perfect, Pluperfect,* and *Future-Perfect Tenses* are formed from the Perfect Stem, apparently by the addition of parts of the verb **sum,** in the following manner:—

1. *Perfect Tense.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **-is** for ĕs (root of 'sum): as, *2nd pers.* ămā-v-is-tī, ămā-v-is-tis; *3rd pers.* ămā-v-ēr-unt: the *s* disappears in the other persons.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense-suffix **-ĕri** for **ĕsi,** the same as ĕsi-m or 'si-m, Pres. Subj. of sum: as, ămā-v-ĕri-m.

The *Infinitive* has the tense-suffix **-issĕ,** the same as essĕ, the Pres. Inf. of sum: as, ămā-v-isse.

Obs. On the change of *is* into *er* in the 3rd person plural Indic. (ămāv-ĕr-unt for ămāv-is-unt), see § 122, 3, Note.

2. The *Pluperfect Tenses.*—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix **ĕ-ra,** the same as ĕra-m from sum: as, ămā-v-ĕra-m.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix **-isse,** the same as esse-m from sum: as, ămā-v-isse-m.

The *Future-Perfect Tense* has the suffix **-ĕr,** the same as ĕr-o from sum: as, ămā-v-ĕr-o.

§ 127. Formation of the Supine Stem.

The *Supine-stem* is formed by adding **tu** to the Verbal Stem: as,

I. ămā-tu-m ămā-tū	IV. rec-tu-m, rec-tū
II. mŏnĭ-tu-m, mŏnĭ-tū	III. audī-tu-m, audī-tū

Obs. 1. In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i*.

Obs. 2. The euphonic changes of letters must be noted:

(i) *g, qu, h,* become *c* before *t*: as, rĕg-o, rec-tum; cŏqu-o, coc-tum; trăh-o, trac-tum.

(ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t*: as scrīb-o, scrip-tum; nūbo, nup-tum.

(iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s*: as, laed-o, laesum, *injure;* claudo, clausum, *shut*. In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem also becomes *s*: as, cēdo, ces-sum, *yield;* mitto, mis-sum, *send*.

The *Future Participle* is formed by adding **-rŭs** to the Supine Stem: as,

mā-tū-rŭs; mŏnĭ-tū-rŭs; rec-tū-rŭs; audī-tū-rŭs

Obs. In a few Verbs the Supines of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participles are formed direct from the Verbal Stem: as,

	Supine.	*Verbal Stem.*	*Fut. Part.*	
jŭvo	jūtum	jūvā-	jūvā-tūrŭs	*help*
sĕco	sectum	sĕcā-	sĕcā-tūrŭs	*cut*
sŏno	sŏnĭtum	sŏnā-	sŏnā-tūrŭs	*sound*
mŏrĭŏr	mortuŭs (*part.*)	mŏrĭ-	mŏrĭ-tūrŭs	*die*
ŏrior	ortus „	ŏrĭ-	ŏrĭ-tūrus	*rise*

§ 128. Remarks upon certain Forms.

1. *Perfect Indicative Active.*—(i.) On the contractions of the Perfect Tenses, see § 93, *Obs.* 1; and § 96, *Obs.* 2.

Note.—Sometimes *iit* in the Third Person Singular is contracted into *it*: as, pĕtĭt = pĕtīvit, Virg. Aen. ix. 9. Even *ii* in the First Person is sometimes contracted into *i*: as, sĕpĕlī = sĕpĕlii, Pers. iii. 97. Also Lucr. has irritât = irritavit, i, 79.

(ii.) The suffix *-ērunt* in the Perfect Indicative Active is sometimes shortened by the poets, especially in the words dĕdĕrunt (shortened into dedrot in early Inscr.: Words. *Early Lat.*, p. 167), stĕtĕrunt (Virg.). The suffix *-ēre* instead of *-ērunt* is rarely used by Cicero, frequently by Sallust and later writers. (Comp. Cic. Or. 157: *scripsere ... scripserunt* esse verius sentio.)

2. *Future-Perfect Indicative* and *Perfect Subjunctive Active.*—In older writers, instead of the tense-suffixes *-ĕro* and *ĕrim*, we find **-so** and **-sim.** These forms are preserved in the ordinary language of the classical writers only in faxo, faxim, equivalent to fēcĕro, fēcĕrim, and in ausim from audeo; but they occur in many other words in the older writers. In verbs of the first and second conjugations the *s* is doubled: as, ămasso = ămāvĕro; appellassis = appellāvĕris; lĕvasso = lĕvāvĕro, &c. Virgil (Aen. 11, 467), has jusso for jussĕro.

Note.—There are two explanations of these forms: (i) the tense suffixes may have been originally *eso* and *esim* instead of *ero* and *erim:* hence the forms faxo, faxim, ămasso, would be contractions of făcĕso, făcĕsim, ămāvĕso: or (ii) we may suppose the future formed by adding *s*, and the short *i* or *e* omitted: thus făc(I)-so = faxo. Ausim is probably formed from the old perfect ausi, which had become obsolete.

3. The so-called *Future Infinitive Passive* is formed by combining the Infin. Pass. of the verb **eo,** *I go* (used impersonally), with the 1st Supine of the Active Voice. Each word may be translated literally into English: e.g.—

Audio te *caesum īri* a lictoribus, *I hear* THAT-IT-IS-BEING-GONE-ABOUT *by the lictors to beat you;* i.e. *that they are going to beat you,* or, *that you are going to be beaten.*

Hence the forms with **iri** cannot be used for the Future of Deponent Verbs, which have an Active signification.

4. The Gerundive Participle and Gerund in the Third and Fourth Conjugations originally ended in *undus* and *undum* (except after *u* or *v*): as, făciundus from făcio, *make* or *do*; pŏtiundus from pŏtiŏr, *obtain possession of*; and the forms in *u* are sometimes found in later writers, especially in legal terms, as, de rĕpetundis; also commonly in Sallust.

5. From some Verbs is derived a Participle, or Participial Adjective, in *bundus*, with an intensive signification: as, laetābundus, *rejoicing greatly, full of joy*; lacrīmābundus, *weeping profusely*; fūrībundus, *full of rage*; mŏrĭbundus, *in the very article of death.*

Obs. Forms in *bundus* come chiefly from verbs of the First Conjugation. Pūdĭbundus, *full of modesty*, is the only one from a verb of the Second Conjugation; and lascīvibundus, *full of wantonness*, the only one from a verb of the Fourth Conjugation. When derived from Transitive Verbs, they may take an Accusative Case: thus we find in Livy vītābundus castra, *avoiding the camp* (25, 13), and similar expressions.

Chapter XXIII.—List of Verbs with their Perfects and Supines.

I. First Conjugation.

§ 129. The Perfect and Supine of the First Conjugation end regularly in āvi, ātum: as, ămo, ămāvi, ămātum, ămāre, *to love*. The following are exceptions:—

		Perfect—ui.	*Supine*—tum.		
1.	crĕpo	crĕpui	crĕpĭtum	crĕpāre	*to creak*
2.	cŭbo	cŭbui	cŭbĭtum	cŭbāre	*to lie*
3.	dŏmo	dŏmui	dŏmĭtum	dŏmāre	*to tame*
4.	sŏno	sŏnui	sŏnĭtum	sŏnāre	*to sound*
5.	vĕto	vĕtui	vĕtĭtum	vĕtāre	*to forbid*
6.	tŏno	tŏnui	—	tŏnāre	*to thunder*
7.	mĭco	mĭcŭi	—	mĭcāre	*to glitter*
8.	plĭco	plĭcui plĭcāvi	plĭcĭtum plĭcātum	plĭcāre	*to fold*
9.	frĭco	frĭcui	frĭcātum frictum	frĭcāre	*to rub*
10.	sĕco	sĕcui	sectum	sĕcāre	*to cut*
11.	nĕco (regular) ĕnĕco	ēnĕcui ēnĕcāvi	ēnectum ēnĕcātum	ēnĕcāre	*to kill*

N.B.—Those Compounds only which differ from the Simple Verbs are noticed below.

1. *Crĕpo.—Perf.* sometimes -ŭvi. So also in comps. discrĕpo, *to differ;* increpo, *to chide.* (Late *p. part.* increpātus for increpĭtus.)
2. *Cŭbo.—Perf.* rarely -āvi. Comps. mostly of 3 Conj., with euphonic *m*: as, accumbo (also, accŭbo, 1), discumbo, rĕcumbo (rĕcŭbo, 1), occumbo (occŭbo, 1, rare); -cŭbui, -ĭtum, -cumbĕre.
4. *Sŏno.—Fut. part.* sŏnātūrus.
6. *Tŏno.*—Intŏno, ui, has *p. part.* intŏnātus (Hor.); and attŏno, attŏnĭtus (freq.)
7. *Mico.*—Dīmĭco, *to give battle,* quite reg. (Dīmĭcuisse, Ovid, figuratively.)
8. *Plĭco:* rare except in comps. applĭco, implĭco, etc., which take both forms of *perf.* and *sup.*
10. *Sĕco.—Fut. part.* sĕcātūrus.

2. *Perfect*—i (vi). *Supine*—tum.

1.	jŭvo	jūvi	jūtum	jŭvāre	*to assist*
2.	lăvo	lāvi	lăvātum, lautum, lōtum	lăvāre	*to wash*

1. *Jŭvo.—Fut. part.* jŭvātūrus. (*Perf.* adjŭvāvi is without good authority.)
2. *Lăvo.*—There is also an Infinitive lăvĕre 3 Conj. In comp., lŭo, 3 Conj. is used: as,

abluo ablui ablūtum ablŭere *to wash away*

3. *Perfect with Reduplication. Supine*—tum.

1.	do	dĕdi	dătum	dăre	*to give*
2.	sto	stĕti	stătum	stāre	*to stand*

In comp. with a prep. of *one* syllable, do is 3 Conj.: as,

addo addĭdi addĭtum addĕre *to put to, to add*

See however § 140, No. 18. [But circumdo, -dĕdi, -dătum, -dăre.]

In comp. with a prep. of *one* syllable the perfect of sto is *stĭti:*

adsto adstĭti adstāre *to stand near*

[But circumsto, -stĕti, etc.]

II. Second Conjugation.

§ 130. The Perfect and Supine of the Second Conjugation end regularly in ŭi and ĭtum: as, mŏneo, mŏnŭi, mŏnĭtum, mŏnēre, *to advise.* The following are exceptions:

1. *Perfect*—ui. *Supine*—tum.

1.	dŏceo	dŏcui	doctum	dŏcēre	*to teach*
2.	tĕneo	tĕnui	tentum	tĕnēre	*to hold*

1. *Perfect*—ui. *Supine*—tum.

3.	misceo	miscui	{mixtum / mistum	miscēre	*to mix*
4.	torreo	torrui	tostum	torrēre	*to roast*
5.	sorbeo	{sorbui / sorpsi	—	sorbēre	*to suck up*
6.	censeo	censui	censum	censēre	*to assess, think*

2. The comps. of *ten-eo* change *e* to *i:* attĭneo, contĭneo, etc. See Chap. XXXIII.

6. *Censeo.*—Rĕcenseo has *p. part.* recensus or recensĭtus.

§ 131.—2. *Perfect*—ēvi. *Supine*—ētum.

1.	dēleo	dēlēvi	dēlētum	dēlēre	*to blot out, destroy*
2.	fleo	flēvi	flētum	flēre	*to weep*
3.	neo	nēvi	nētum	nēre	*to spin*
4.	{pleo only in composition. / compleo,	complēvi	complētum	complēre	*to fill up*
5.	{ŏleo only in composition. / ăbŏleo	ăbŏlēvi	ăbŏlĭtum	ăbŏlēre	*to abolish*
	ădŏleo	ădŏlēvi	ădultum	ădŏlēre	*to grow up*
	exŏleo	exŏlēvi	exŏlētum	exŏlēre	*to grow too old*
6.	obsŏleo	obsŏlēvi	obsŏlētum	obsŏlēre	*to be out of use*
7.	sueo	suēvi	suētum	suēre	*to be accustomed*

To this class may be added:

8.	cieo	cīvi	cītum	ciēre	*to stir*

5. *Ŏleo:* of totally different root from ŏleo, *to emit a smell.* Adŏleo has also *Perf.* adŏlui. This Verb is sometimes used in trans. sense, *to burn sacrificially, to sacrifice to* (perh. = *to magnify, honour*). In sense of *to grow*, the inceptive ădŏlesco is most used. So exŏlesco, *to grow (too old), become worn out.*

(N.B.—All inceptive verbs are of 3 Conj., and take the same Perf. and Sup. as the verbs from which they are formed: see § 145.)

6. *Obsŏleo.*—Usually as inceptive, obsŏlesco, *to go out of use:* cf. § 135. (Some derive obsoleo also from oleo, taking *obs* as old form of ob, making it mean, *to grow old, wear out.*)

7. *Sŭeo,* Lucr. Chiefly in comps. and as inceptive: assuesco, consuesco, dēsuesco (all trisyll.).

8. *Cieo.*—*P. part.* cītus used as Adj. Comps. excieo, concieo, have duplicate forms of the 4 Conj., regular. Accio, *to summon,* wholly 4th.

§ 132.—3. *Perfect*—i (di). *Supine*—sum.

1.	prandeo	prandi	pransum	prandēre	*to breakfast*
2.	sĕdeo	sēdi	sessum	sĕdēre	*to sit*
3.	vĭdeo	vīdi	vīsum	vĭdēre	*to see*
4.	strīdeo	strīdi	—	strīdēre	*to creak*

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

5.	mordeo	mŏmordi	morsum	mordēre	*to bite*
6.	pendeo	pĕpendi	pensum	pendēre	*to hang*
7.	spondeo	spŏpondi	sponsum	spondēre	*to promise*
8.	tondeo	tŏtondi	tonsum	tondēre	*to shear*

1. *Prandeo.*—*P. part.* prānsus in active sense: *having breakfasted.*
2. The Comps. of sĕdeo change *e* into *i*: assĭdeo, consĭdeo, etc. (except circumsĕdeo).
4. *Strĭdeo.*—There is also Infin. strīdĕre, 3 Conj.
5, 6, 7, 8. In composition the reduplication is dropped: as,

admordeo	admordi	admorsum	admordēre	*to bite at*
prōpendeo	prōpendi	(prōpensum)	prōpendēre	*to hang down*
respondeo	respondi	responsum	respondēre	*to answer*
attondeo	attondi	attonsum	attondēre	*to shear closely*

§ 133.—4. *Perfect*—**i (vi).** *Supine*—**tum.**

1.	căveo	cāvi	cautum	căvēre	*to be on one's guard*
2.	făveo	fāvi	fautum	făvēre	*to favour*
3	fŏveo	fōvi	fōtum	fŏvēre	*to cherish*
4.	mŏveo	mōvi	mōtum	mŏvēre	*to move*
5.	vŏveo	vōvi	vōtum	vŏvēre	*to vow*

Without Supine.

6.	păveo	pāvi	—	păvēre	*to fear*
7.	ferveo	fervi ferbui	—	fervēre	*to boil*
8.	connīveo	connīvi connixi	—	connīvēre	*to wink*

6. *Paveo.*—Incept. păvesco, and oftener, expăvesco, *to become afraid, yield to fear* or *panic.*
7. *Ferveo.*—Incep. fervesco, *to glow;* effervesco, *to boil up.*

§ 134.—5. *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum** and **sum.**

1.	augeo	auxi	auctum	augēre	*to increase*
2.	indulgeo	indulsi	indultum	indulgēre	*to indulge*
3.	torqueo	torsi	tortum	torquēre	*to twist*
4.	ardeo	arsi	arsum	ardēre	*to be on fire*
5.	haereo	haesi	haesum	haerēre	*to stick*
6.	jŭbeo	jussi	jussum	jŭbēre	*to order*
7.	măneo	mansi	mansum	mănēre	*to remain*
8.	mulceo	mulsi	mulsum	mulcēre	*to stroke*
9.	mulgeo	mulsi	mulctum	mulgēre	*to milk*
10.	rīdeo	rīsi	rīsum	rīdēre	*to laugh*
11.	suādeo	suāsi	suāsum	suādēre	*to advise*
12.	tergeo	tersi	tersum	tergēre	*to wipe*
13.	algeo	alsi	—	algēre	*to be cold*
14.	frīgeo	frixi	—	frīgēre	*to be cold*
15.	fulgeo	fulsi	—	fulgēre	*to shine*
16.	lūceo	luxi	—	lūcēre	*to be light*
17.	lūgeo	luxi	—	lūgēre	*to grieve*
18.	turgeo	(tursi)	—	turgēre	*to swell*
19.	urgeo	ursi	—	urgēre	*to press*

4. *Ardeo.*—Incept. ardesco, exardesco, *to take fire.*
13. *Algeo.*—Incept. algesco, *to take cold.*
14. *Frigeo.*—Incept. frīgesco, *to become cold.*
15. *Fulgeo.*—Incept. fulgesco, *to shine forth.* There exists also Infin. fulgĕre, 3 Conj.

16. *Lūceo.* — Incept. lūcesco or lūcisco; esp. in impers. sense, lūcescit, *it grows light.*

§ 135. *Semi-Deponents:* see § 112.

1. audeo	ausus sum	—	audēre	*to dare*
2. gaudeo	gāvīsus sum	—	gaudēre	*to rejoice*
3. sŏleo	sŏlĭtus sum	—	sŏlēre	*to be accustomed*

3. *Sŏleo.*—Incept. comps. insŏlesco (*to grow insolent*), without Perf.; obsŏlesco, *to go out of use:* see § 131, *Obs.* 6.

§ 136. Many Verbs of the Second Conjugation, intransitive in sense, have the Perf. Tense regular, but no Supine: as,

1.	ăceo	ăcui	ăcēre	*to be sour*
2.	āreo	ārui	ārēre	*to be dry*
3.	căleo	călui	călēre	*to be hot*
4.	calleo	callui	callēre	*to be hard-skinned;* hence, *to be skilful*
5.	candeo	candui	candēre	*to be shining white*
6.	[dūreo]	dūrui	[dūrēre]	*to be hard*
7.	horreo	horrui	horrēre	*to be rough, shudder*
8.	langueo	langui	languēre	*to droop, be faint*
9.	lăteo	lătui	lătēre	*to lie hid*
10.	lĭqueo	lĭcui	lĭquēre	*to be clear, melt*
11.	mădeo	mădui	mădēre	*to be soaked*
12.	marceo	—	marcēre	*to fade, wither*
13.	nĭteo	nĭtui	nĭtēre	*to glisten*
14.	ŏleo	ŏlui	ŏlēre	*to emit a smell*
15.	palleo	pallui	pallēre	*to be pale*
16.	păteo	pătui	pătēre	*to lie open*
17.	păteo / putreo	pătui / putrui	pătēre / putrēre	*to be rotten*
18.	rĭgeo	rĭgui	rĭgēre	*to be stiff*
19.	rŭbeo	rŭbui	rŭbēre	*to be red*
20.	sĭleo	sĭlui	sĭlēre	*to be silent*
21.	sordeo	sordui	sordēre	*to be foul*
22.	stŭdeo	stŭdui	stŭdēre	*to be devoted to*
23.	stŭpeo	stŭpui	stŭpēre	*to be amazed*
24.	tĭmeo	tĭmui	tĭmēre	*to fear*
25.	torpeo	torpui	torpēre	*to be numbed*
26.	tŭmeo	tŭmui	tŭmēre	*to be swollen*
27.	vĭgeo	vĭgui	vĭgēre	*to be strong, thrive*

All the above Verbs except ŏleo and stŭdeo have inceptive forms; and some, as ăceo, dūreo, are rare as simple Verbs. The Perfects assigned often belong rather to the Inceptive than the simple Verb; the Imperfect being used in preference to the Perfect to denote a past state: e.g. călēbat ăqua, *the water was hot* (rather than călŭit); vīnum ăcēbat, *the wine was sour;* vīnum ăcuit, *has turned sour.*

§ 137. Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have neither Perfect Tense nor Supine. The following are some of the more common of these:—

1.	ăveō	ăvērе	*to desire*
2.	calveo	calvērе	*to be bald*
3.	cāneo	cānērе	*to be grey*
4.	flāveo	flāvērе	*to be yellow*
5.	foeteo	foetērе	*to stink*
6.	hĕbeo	hĕbērе	*to be blunt*
7.	(h)ūmeo	(h)ūmērе	*to be damp*
8.	līveo	līvērе	*to be black and blue*
9.	maereo	maerērе	*to mourn*
10.	polleo	pollērе	*to be powerful*
11.	rĕnīdeo	rĕnīdērе	*to shine (with a polish)*
12.	scăteo	scătērе	*to gush forth*
13.	splendeo	splendērе	*to be bright*
14.	squālco	squālērе	*to be dirty*

Of these, calveo, cāneo, flāveo, hĕbeo, (h)ūmeo, līveo, rĕnīdeo, scăteo, splendeo, have inceptive forms.

III. The Third Conjugation.

§ 138. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are classified according to the final consonant of the Stem.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials* **B, P.**

(*a*) *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Note.—*b* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

1.	carpo	carpsi	carptum	carpĕre	*to pluck*
2.	glūbo	glupsi	gluptum	glūbĕre	*to peel*
3.	nūbo	nupsi	nuptum	nūbĕre	*to marry* (of the wife only)
4.	rēpo	repsi	reptum	rēpĕre	*to creep*
5.	scalpo, sculpo	scalpsi, sculpsi	scalptum, sculptum	scalpĕre, —	*to scratch, to carve*
6.	scrībo	scripsi	scriptum	scrībĕre	*to write*
7.	serpo	serpsi	—	serpĕre	*to crawl*

(*b*) *Perfect*—**ui.** *Supine*—**tum** or **ĭtum.**

8.	răpio	răpui	raptum	răpĕre	*to seize*
9.	cumbo in comps.	-cŭbui	-cŭbĭtum	-cumbĕre	*to lie*
10.	strĕpo	strĕpui	strĕpĭtum	strĕpĕre	*to make a noise*

(*c*) *Perfect*—**i.** *Supine*—**tum**, or wanting.

11.	căp-io	cēpi	captum	căpĕre	*to take*
12.	rumpo	rūpi	ruptum	rumpĕre	*to burst*
13.	bĭbo	bĭbi	—	bĭbĕre	*to drink*
14.	lambo	lambi	—	lambĕre	*to lick*
15.	scăbo	scăbi	—	scăbĕre	*to scratch*

(*d*) *Perfect*—īvi. *Supine*—ītum, or wanting.

16.	căp-io	cēpī	cēptum	cĭpĕre	*to desire*
17.	săp-io	săpīvi, săpii *or* săpui	—	săpĕre	*to taste, be wise*

1. *Carpo.*—In comps. -cerpo: dēcerpo, *to gather;* discerpo, *to tear in pieces;* excerpo, *to pick out.*
3. *Nūbo.*—Lit. *to veil;* perf. also nupta sum.
7. According to K. 'serpsi is not found in Classical Lat.'
8, 11, 17. *Răpio, căpio, săpio,* change *ă* to *ĭ* in comps., arrĭpio, corrĭpio, accĭpio, concĭpio, dēsĭpio, rēsĭpio, etc. See Chap. XXXIII.
9. *Cumbo:* see § 129, No. 2, Note.
17. *Săpio.*—Comp. incept. resĭpisco, *to recover one's senses.*

§ 139.—2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the gutturals* C, G, H, Q, X.

(*a*) *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

NOTE.—*cs, hs,* and *gs* become *x*. *G* becomes *c* before *t*.

1.	dīco	dixi	dictum	dīcĕre	*to say*
2.	dūco	duxi	ductum	dūcĕre	*to lead*
3.	cŏquo	coxi	coctum	cŏquĕre	*to cook*
4.	cingo	cinxi	cinctum	cingĕre	*to surround*
5.	(flīgo only in comps.)	-flixi	-flictum	-flīgĕre	*to dash*
6.	frīgo	frixi	frictum, frixum	frīgĕre	*to parch, to fry*
7.	jungo	junxi	junctum	jungĕre	*to join*
8.	lingo	linxi	linctum	lingĕre	*to lick*
9.	(mungo only in comp.) ēmungo	ēmunxi	ēmunctum	ēmungĕre	*to blow the nose*
10.	plango	planxi	planctum	plangĕre	*to beat*
11.	rĕgo	rexi	rectum	rĕgĕre	*to direct, rule*
12.	(spĕcio) in comps. -spĭc-io	-spexi	-spectum	-spĭcĕre	*to look*
13.	sūgo	suxi	suctum	sūgĕre	*to suck*
14.	tĕgo	texi	tectum	tĕgĕre	*to cover*
15.	tingo, tinguo	tinxi	tinctum	tingĕre, tinguĕre	*to dip*
16.	ungo, unguo	unxi	unctum	ungĕre, unguĕre	*to anoint*
17.	(stinguo only in comps.)	-stinxi	-stinctum	-stinguĕre	*to extinguish*
18.	trăho	traxi	tractum	trăhĕre	*to drag*
19.	vĕho	vexi	vectum	vĕhĕre	*to carry*
20.	(lăc-io), in comps. -lĭc-io	-lexi	-lectum	-lĭcĕre	*to entice*
21.	ango	anxi	—	angĕre	*to vex*
22.	ningit	ninxit	—	ningĕre	*to snow*
	ninguit	—	—	ninguĕre	
23.	fingo	finxi	fictum	fingĕre	*to mould, to invent*

24.	{mējo {mingo (later)	minxi	mictum	mingĕre	*to pass water*
25.	pingo	pinxi	pictum	pingĕre	*to paint*
26.	stringo	strinxi	strictum	stringĕre	*to press, bind*

(*b*) *Perfect*—**si**. *Supine*—**sum** and **xum**

27.	mergo	mersi	mersum	mergĕre	*to plunge*
28.	spargo	sparsi	sparsum	spargĕre	*to scatter*
29.	tergo	tersi	tersum	tergĕre	*to wipe*
30.	fīgo	fixi	fixum	fīgĕre	*to fix*
31.	flecto	flexi	flexum	flectĕre	*to bend*
32.	necto	nexi (*and* -ui)	nexum	nectĕre	*to bind*
33.	pecto	pexi	pexum	pectĕre	*to comb*
34.	plecto	plexi	plexum	plectĕre	*to plait*

(*c*) *Perfect*—**i** (*with Reduplication*). *Supine*—**sum** and **tum**.

35.	pango	pĕpĭgi	pactum	pangĕre	*to fix*
36.	parco	{pĕperci {parsi	{parcĭtum {parsum	parcĕre	*to spare*
37.	pungo	pŭpŭgi	punctum	pungĕre	*to prick*
38.	tango	tĕtĭgi	tactum	tangĕre	*to touch*
39.	disco	dĭdĭci	—	discĕre	*to learn*
40.	posco	pŏposci	—	poscĕre	*to demand*

(*d*) *Perfect*—**i** (*with vowel of Stem lengthened when short*).

41.	ăgo	ēgi	actum	ăgĕre	*to do*
42.	făc-io	fēci	factum	făcĕre	*to make, to do*
43.	frango	frēgi	fractum	frangĕre	*to break*
44.	fŭg-io	fūgi	fŭgĭtum	fŭgĕre	*to flee*
45.	īco	īci	ictum	īcĕre	*to strike*
46.	jăc-io	jēci	jactum	jăcĕre	*to throw*
47.	lĕgo	lēgi	lectum	lĕgĕre	*to gather, read*
48.	linquo	līqui	(lictum)	linquĕre	*to leave*
49.	vinco	vīci	victum	vincĕre	*to conquer*

(*e*) *Perfect*—**ui**. *Supine*—**tum**.

50.	texo	texui	textum	texĕre	*to weave*

(*f*) *Guttural Stem disguised.*

51.	fluo	fluxi	fluxum	fluĕre	*to flow*
52.	struo	struxi	structum	struĕre	*to pile up*
53.	vīvo	vixi	victum	vīvĕre	*to live*

5. *Fligo.*—Comps. affligo, *to dash to the ground*; confligo, *to dash together*; both 3 Conj. But profligo, *to dash down, deal a crushing blow to*, is 1 Conj. regular.

11. *Rĕgo.*—Comps. change *e* to *i*: arrigo, corrigo. Pergo, surgo, are short for per-rigo, sur-rigo: Perf. and Sup. as rego.

12. *Spĕcio.*—Comps. aspicio, despicio, etc.

17. *Stinguo.*—Same rt. as stig-o (in instigo).

20. Allicio, illicio, pellicio, have -lexi, -ctum. But ēlicio (*to tempt out*), has ēlicui, ēlicĭtum.

58. *Spargo.*—In comps. -spergo: aspergo, conspergo, etc.

31–34. In *flecto, necto, pecto, plecto,* the *t* is a strengthening letter and not a part of the root.

34. Plecto, *to plait;* not to be confounded with plecto, *to beat,* usu. as Dep. plector, *to be beaten, suffer, smart (for an offence).*

36. *Parco.*—In comps. -perco: comperco.

35–40. The comps. omit the reduplication. The following need to be specially noted:

compingo	compēgi	compactum	compingĕre	*to fix together*
{comparco	comparsi	comparsum	comparcĕre	*to save up*
{(comperco)				
compungo	compunxi	compunctum	compungĕre	*to prick*
attingo	attĭgi	attactum	attingĕre	*to touch*

with the other comps. of tango.

41. *Ago* in composition changes the *a* into *i* in *ābĭgo, ădĭgo, exĭgo, sŭbĭgo, transĭgo:*

ăbĭgo ăbēgi ăbactum ăbĭgĕre *to drive away*

It preserves the *a* in *perăgo, circumăgo.* In *cōgo* (a contraction of con and ăgo) we have—

cōgo cōēgi cōactum cōgĕre, *to drive together, to force*

dēgo, *to spend (life)*, has Perf. dēgi, but no Sup.

42. Făcio in comp. with other verbs and with adverbs remains unaltered:

călĕfăcio	-fēci	-factum	-făcĕre	*to make warm*
sătisfăcio	-fēci	-factum	-făcĕre	*to give satisfaction*

But in comp. with prepositions *ă* becomes *ĭ*: as,

perfĭcio	perfēci	perfectum	perfĭcĕre	*to complete*

(Mellĭfĭco, *I make honey;* and nīdĭfĭco, *I build a nest,* are derived Verbs, not compounds, and of the First Conjugation: v. § 201.)

43. Perfringo, refringo, etc., frēgi, fractum, etc.

46. Abjĭcĭo (ăbĭcio), conjĭcio, dējĭcio (dĕĭcio), etc.; v. § 207, 1.

47. *Lĕgo* preserves the *e* in *allĕgo, pĕrlego, praelĕgo, rĕlĕgo:* as,

allĕgo allēgi allectum allĕgĕre *to choose in addition*

It changes the *e* into *i* in *collĭgo, dēlĭgo, ēlĭgo, sēlĭgo:* as,

collĭgo collēgi collectum collĭgĕre *to collect*

The Perfect takes *x* in

dīlĭgo	dīlexi	dīlectum	dīlĭgĕre	*to esteem*
intellĭgo	intellexi	intellectum	intellĭgĕre	*to understand*
neglĭgo	neglexi	neglectum	neglĭgĕre	*to neglect*

51–53. In *fluo* and *struo* the roots are guttural, the consonant being dropped in the Imperfect Tenses. In *vivo* the second *v* represents a guttural.

§ 140.—3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals* D, T.

(*a*) *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

NOTE.—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

1.	claudo	clausi	clausum	claudĕre	*to shut*
2.	dīvĭdo	dīvīsi	dīvīsum	dīvĭdĕre	*to divide*

3.	laedo	laesi	laesum	laedĕre	*to wound, to injure*
4.	lūdo	lūsi	lūsum	lūdĕre	*to play*
5.	plaudo	plausi	plausum	plaudĕre	*to clap the hands*
6.	rādo	rāsi	rāsum	rādĕre	*to scrape*
7.	rōdo	rōsi	rōsum	rōdĕre	*to gnaw*
8.	trūdo	trūsi	trūsum	trūdĕre	*to thrust*
9.	vādo	—	—	vādĕre	*to go*
	invādo	invāsi	invāsum	invādĕre	*to go against*
10.	cēdo	cessi	cessum	cēdĕre	*to yield*
11.	mitto	mīsi	missum	mittĕre	*to send*
12.	quăt-io	—	quassum	quătĕre	*to shake*

(b) Perfect with Reduplication.

13.	căddo	cĕcĭdi	cāsum	căděre	*to fall*
14.	caedo	cĕcīdi	caesum	caedĕre	*to cut, strike*
15.	pendo	pĕpendi	pensum	pendĕre	*to hang, to weigh*
16.	tendo	tĕtendi	tensum, tentum	tendĕre	*to stretch*
17.	tundo	tŭtŭdi	tunsum, tūsum	tundĕre	*to beat*

18. do in composition with preps. (cf. § 129, *fin.*):—

abdo	abdĭdi	abdĭtum	abdĕre	*to put away, to hide*
addo	addĭdi	addĭtum	addĕre	*to put to, to add*
condo	condĭdi	condĭtum	condĕre	*to put together, to build, hide*
dēdo	dēdĭdi	dēdĭtum	dēdĕre	*to put down, to surrender*
ēdo	ēdĭdi	ēdĭtum	ēdĕre	*to put forth, to publish*
indo	indĭdi	indĭtum	indĕre	*to put on*
perdo	perdĭdi	perdĭtum	perdĕre	*to ruin, to lose*
prōdo	prōdĭdi	prōdĭtum	prōdĕre	*to betray*
reddo	reddĭdi	reddĭtum	reddĕre	*to put back, to restore*
subdo	subdĭdi	subdĭtum	subdĕre	*to put under, to substitute*
trādo	trādĭdi	trādĭtum	trādĕre	*to put across, to deliver up*
crēdo	crēdĭdi	crēdĭtum	crēdĕre	*to believe, trust*
vendo	vendĭdi	vendĭtum	vendĕre	*to sell*

19. sisto stĭti (rare) stātum sistĕre *to cause to stand, stay*

(c) Perfect—**i**. *Supine*—**sum**.

20.	(cando, only in comps.) -cendo	-cendi	-censum	-cendĕre	*to set on fire*
21.	cūdo	cūdi	cūsum	cūdĕre	*to hammer*
22.	ĕdo	ēdi	ēsum	ĕdĕre	*to eat*
23.	(fendo, only in comps.)	-fendi	-fensum	-fendĕre	*to strike, ward*
24.	fŏdio	fōdi	fossum	fŏdĕre	*to dig*
25.	fundo	fūdi	fūsum	fundĕre	*to pour*

26.	mando	mandi (rare)	mansum	mandĕre	*to chew*
27.	pando	pandi	{pansum / passum	pandĕre	*to spread*
28.	prĕhendo	prĕhendi	prĕhensum	prĕhendĕre	*to grasp*
29.	scando	scandi	scansum	scandĕre	*to climb*
30.	{strīdo / strīdeo	strīdi	—	strīdĕre	*to creak*
31.	verto	verti	versum	vertĕre	*to turn*
32.	findo	fĭdi	fissum	findĕre	*to cleave*
33.	scindo	scĭdi	scissum	scindĕre	*to tear*
34.	{frendo / frendeo	— / —	{frcssum / frēsum	frendĕre	*to gnash the teeth*

(*d*) *Other Forms.*

35.	mĕto	messui	messum	mĕtĕre	*to mow*
36.	pĕto	pĕtīvi *or* ĭi	pĕtītum	pĕtĕre	*to make for, seek*
37.	sīdo	sēdi (rarely sīdi)	—	sīdĕre	*to settle down*
38.	sterto	stertui	—	sterĕre	*to snore*
39.	fīdo	fīsus sum	—	fīdĕre	*to trust*

1. The comps. of claudo change *au* into *ū*; as, conclūdo, occlūdo.
2. The comps. of laedo change *ae* into ī; as, allīdo, collīdo, etc.: v. § 207, 3.
6. *Plaudo.*—The comps. except applaudo, change *au* to *o*; as, displōdo, explōdo, etc.
12. *Quătio.*—The comps. change quătio into -cŭtio; as, incŭtio, concŭtio, etc., which have full Perf., incussi, concussi, etc.

13–17.—No reduplication in compounds.

13. *Căedo.*—The comps. change *ă* to *ĭ*, and with the exception of occīdo, occĭdi, occāsum, *to set*, are without Sup. and Fut. Part.
14. *Caedo.*—The comps. change *ae* to *ī*; as, occīdo, di, sum, *to kill.*
15. Pendo is the transitive correlative to pendeo.
17. *Tendo.*—The comps. have usually *-tum* in Supine; as, attentum, contentum, etc. But extendo, ostendo, prōtendo, rĕtendo, have *sum* and *tum.*
18. Do, *to put*, as found in comps. abdo, etc., is perhaps a different root from do, *to give.* Comparo Gr. δί-δω-μι and τί-θη-μι. In Sanskr. *dâ-* and *dhâ-*. Observe that these comps. keep the reduplication.

Reddo.—Old form of prefix *red*, as in rĕd-eo.

Crēdo.—The reduplication shows this to be a comp. of do: the former part of the word is probably an obsolete Noun signifying *trust.* See Curtius, Gr. Etym. § 309.

Vendo.—For vēnum (vae-) do, *I put to sale.*

19. *Sisto.*—The Perf. stĭti is rare, but has good authority; and stătus occurs as Pass. Part.: both in legal phrase. The comps. have -stĭti, -stĭtum (rare), and are intrans.
20. The form *cando* is inferred from the correlative candeo (intrans.), *to glow.* Comps. accendo, *to put a light to*; incendo, *to fire*; etc.
23. *-fendo.*—Comps. offendo, *to strike against*; dēfendo, *to strike down, parry* (*a blow*), etc.

28. *Prehendo.*—Also contr. prendo, di, sum.
29. *Scando.*—The comps. change *a* to *e*: as, ascendo, descendo.
30. *Strido.* See also 2nd Conj.

§ 141.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in* L, M, N.

(*a*) *Perfect*—ui. *Supine*—ĭtum or tum.

1.	ălo	ălui	ălĭtum or altum	ălĕre	*to nourish*
2.	cŏlo	cŏlui	cultum	cŏlĕre	*to till*
3.	consŭlo	consŭlui	consultum	consŭlĕre	*to consult*
4.	mŏlo	mŏlui	mŏlĭtum	mŏlĕre	*to grind*
5.	occŭlo	occŭlui	occultum	occŭlĕre	*to conceal*
6.	vŏlo	vŏlui	—	velle	*to wish*
7.	frĕmo	frĕmui	frĕmĭtum	frĕmĕre	*to roar*
8.	gĕmo	gĕmui	gĕmĭtum	gĕmĕre	*to groan*
9.	trĕmo	trĕmui	—	trĕmĕre	*to tremble*
10.	vŏmo	vŏmui	vŏmĭtum	vŏmĕre	*to vomit*
11.	gigno	gĕnui	gĕnĭtum	gignĕre	*to produce*

(*b*) *Perfect with Reduplication.*

12.	fallo	fĕfelli	falsum	fallĕre	*to deceive*
13.	pello	pĕpŭli	pulsum	pellĕre	*to drive*
14.	cano	cĕcĭni	cantum	cănĕre	*to sing*

(*c*) *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum.

15.	cōmo	compsi	comptum	cōmĕre	*to adorn*
16.	dēmo	dempsi	demptum	dēmĕre	*to take away*
17.	prōmo	prompsi	promptum	prōmĕre	*to bring out*
18.	sūmo	sumpsi	sumptum	sūmĕre	*to take up*
19.	temno	tempsi	temptum	temnĕre	*to despise*

(*d*) *Other forms.*

20.	(cello, only in comps.)	-cŭli	-culsum	-cellĕre	*to force, push*
21.	psallo	psalli	—	psallĕre	*to play on a stringed instrument*
22.	vello	velli / vulsi	vulsum	vellĕre	*to pluck*
23.	tollo	sustŭli	sublātum	tollĕre	*to raise up*
24.	ĕmo	ēmi	emptum	ĕmĕre	*to buy*
25.	prĕmo	pressi	pressum	prĕmĕre	*to press*
26.	lĭno	lēvi / lĭvi (rare)	lĭtum	lĭnĕre	*to smear*
27.	sĭno	sīvi	sĭtum	sĭnĕre	*to place, permit*

8. *Gĕmo.*—Comp. incept. ingĕmisco, *to sigh deeply.*
9. *Trĕmo.*—Incept. trĕmisco, with comps., *to begin to tremble.*
11. *Gigno.*—Contr. for *gi-gĕn-o* [gig'no]: rt. gen-, with reduplication as in sisto.
12. *Fallo.*—Comp. rĕfello, i, falsum, *to refute.* Reduplication in Comps. lost, as in two following verbs.

14. *Căno.*—Comps. concĭno, occĭno, praecĭno, succĭno, take -ui in Perf. No Perfect or Sup. occurs to rĕcĭno (*to echo*).
15–18. Cōmo, dēmo, etc., are comps. of ĕmo, though departing from it in Perf. Tenses. Prōmo and sūmo have further comps. depromo, expromo, absumo, consumo.
19. *Temno.*—More freq. in comp. contemno.
20. *Cello.* Simple verb cello lost. Comp.—

percello percŭli perculsum *to strike down, stun, paralyse.*
(antĕcello, praecello, *to excel*, without Perf. or Sup.; prob. from distinct root.)

From analogy cello appears to have formerly had redup. in Perf. (cĕcŭli).
22. The forms in velli are the regular ones; but vulsi, avulsi, rĕvulsi, etc., occur.
23. *Tollo.*—Same rt. as tŭli (fĕro). Comp. extollo, without Perf. or Sup.
24. *Ĕmo.*—See above, 15–18, comps. of ĕmo.
26. *Lino.*—In this and following verb, the *n* is no part of the root. Another form of Pres. appears in dē-leo, lēvi: § 131.
27. *Sĭno.*—Comp. dēsĭno, sīvi and ĭi (also dēsĭtus sum), sĭtum, *to cease.*

§ 142.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in* R.

1.	cerno	crēvi	crētum	cernĕre	*to sift, to divide*
2.	sperno	sprēvi	sprētum	spernĕre	*to despise*
3.	sterno	strāvi	strātum	sternĕre	*to strew*
4.	gĕro	gessi	gestum	gĕrĕre	*to carry* ✓
5.	ūro	ussi	ustum	ūrĕre	*to burn*
6.	curro	cŭcurri	cursum	currĕre	*to run*
7.	fĕro	[tŭli]	[lātum]	ferre	*to bear, to carry*
8.	păr-io	pĕpĕri	partum	părĕre	*to produce*
9.	quaero	quaesīvi	quaesītum	quaerĕre	*to seek*
10.	sĕro	sĕrui	sertum	sĕrĕre	*to put in rows, to arrange*
11.	sĕro	sēvi	sătum	sĕrĕre	*to plant, sow*
12.	tĕro	trīvi	trītum	tĕrĕre	*to rub*
13.	verro	verri	versum	verrĕre	*to sweep* ✓

1–3. In *cerno, sperno, sterno*, the Stems are *cer, sper, ster*, the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 124, No. 2.
5. *Uro.*—There seems to have been also a verb *būro*, which appears in ambūro (*to scorch*), combūro (*to burn up*). The other comps. have ūro: exūro, ădūro, etc.
6. *Curro.*—The redup. in comps. is fluctuating: Neue gives examples of ac-cucurri, con-cucurri, de-cucurri, dis-cucurri, ex-cucurri, oc-cucurri, per-cucurri, prae-cucurri, trans-cucurri: but the shorter forms are more usual.
7. *Fĕro.*—See § 107. An old reduplicated form tĕtŭli occurs (Ter.).
8. *Părio.—Fut. Part.* părĭtūrus.
9. *Quaero* has the Stem in *s* as well as in *r*. Hence we find not

only quaesīvi, quaesītum, but also quaeso, quaesūmus, *I pray, we pray.* See § 113, xii. Quaero in comps. becomes quīro, as,

conquīro conquīsīvi conquīsītum conquīrĕre *to collect*

10, 11. The two verbs *sĕro* are from different roots; *sa- to sow*, and *ser-* (cf. Gk. *εἴρω*), *to arrange in rows.*

§ 143.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in* S, X.

1.	depso	depsui	depstum	depsĕre	*to knead*
2.	pinso (pīso, *obs.*)	pinsui pinsi	pinsĭtum / pinsum / pistum	pinsĕre	*to pound*
3.	vīso	vīsi	—	vīsĕre	*to visit*
4.	pōno	pŏsui	pŏsĭtum	pōnĕre	*to place*
5.	arcesso	arcessīvi	arcessītum	arcessĕre	*to send for*
6.	căpesso	căpessīvi	căpessītum	căpessĕre	*to take in hand*
7.	făcesso	făcessīvi	făcessītum	făcessĕre	*to make, to cause*
8.	incesso	incessīvi	incessītum	—	*to attack*
9.	lăcesso	lăcessīvi	lăcessītum	lăcessĕre	*to provoke* ✓

5. In *pōno* the radical part is *pŏs*, the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 124, No. 2.

6–9. *Arcesso, căpesso, făcesso, in-cesso, lăcesso*, are formed respectively from *arcio* (an old verb, the root of which is seen in *cieo*), *căpio, făcio, cĕdo, lăcio.* There was also an old verb pĕtesso, *to seek*, from pĕto. 'Perfects incessi, facessi, lacessi, are cited.' (K.)

Arcesso sometimes has Infin. Pass. *arcessīri.*

§ 144.—*Verbs the Stems of which end in* U, V.

Perfect—i. *Supine*—tum.

1.	ăcuo	ăcui	ăcūtum	ăcuĕre	*to sharpen*
2.	arguo	argui	argūtum	arguĕre	*to prove*
3.	bātuo	bātui	—	bātuĕre	*to beat, fence*
4.	imbuo	imbui	imbūtum	imbuĕre	*to soak*
5.	(-duo or -uo, only in comps. See *Obs.*	-d-ui	-d-ūtum	-d-uĕre	*to put)*
6.	in-gruo	ingrui		ingruĕre	*to rush in* or *on*
7.	mĭnuo	mĭnui	mĭnūtum	mĭnuĕre	*to lessen, to break up*
8.	rŭo	rui	rŭtum	ruĕre	*to turn up, rush*
9.	spuo	spui	spūtum	spuĕre	*to spit*
10.	stătuo	stătui	stătūtum	stătuĕre	*to set up*
11.	suo	sui	sūtum	suĕre	*to sew*
12.	trĭbuo	trĭbui	tribūtum	trĭbuĕre	*to assign*
13.	solvo	solvi	sŏlūtum	solvĕre	*to loosen*
14.	volvo	volvi	vŏlūtum	volvĕre	*to roll*
15	luo	-lui	-lūtum	luĕre	*to wash*
16.	luo	lui	—	luĕre	*to atone*

17.	(nuo, only in comps.	-nui	-nūtum -nuĭtum	-nuĕre	*to nod*)
18.	mĕtuo	mĕtui	—	mĕtuĕre	*to fear*
19.	pluit	{pluit, {plūvit	—	pluĕre	*to rain*
20.	sternuo	sternui	sternūtum	sternuĕre	*to sneeze*

4. *Imbuo.*—Simple verb lost: probably connected with bĭbo.
5. *-d-uo.*—It is doubtful whether the compound is *in-duo*, or *ind-uo*. Compare ex-uo, i, ūtum, *to strip.*
6. *Ingruo, congruo (to agree).* Simple verb lost.
7. *Ruo.—Fut. Part.* ruĭturus (not in comps.). The comps., except corruo, irruo are trans.: as, ĕruo, *to overturn*, etc.
15, 16. *Luo* in sense of *to wash*, rare except in comps., alluo, dĭluo, colluo, etc. Luo, *to atone for*, is prob. a distinct word: comp. Gr. λούω and λύω.
17. *Nuo.*—Comps. annuo, *to assent;* abnuo, rĕnuo, *to refuse.*

§ 145.—*Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in* SCO.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptives*, that is, they denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Nouns, and Adjectives.

Those formed from Verbs have been indicated above. (See especially Notes on Verbs of 2nd Conj.) They have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines: as, incălesco, incălui, incălescĕre, *to grow warm*, from călĕo, călui, călēre, *to be warm.* The following are exceptions and have Supines:—

1.	abŏlesco	ăbŏlēvi	ăbŏlĭtum	ăbŏlescĕre	*to grow out of use*
2.	adŏlesco	ădŏlēvi	ădultum	ădŏlescĕre	*to grow up*
3.	exŏlesco	exŏlēvi	exŏlētum	exŏlescĕre	*to grow too old*
4.	cōălesco	cōălui	cōălĭtum	cōălescĕre	*to grow together*
5.	obsŏlesco	obsŏlēvi	obsŏlētum	obsŏlescĕre	*to grow out of use*
6.	concŭpisco (cŭpio)	concŭpīvi	concŭpītum	concŭpiscĕre	*to desire*
7.	convălesco (văleo)	convălui	convălĭtum	convălescĕre	*to grow strong*
8.	exardesco (ardeo)	exarsi	exarsum	exardescĕre	*to take fire*
9.	invĕtĕrasco (invĕtĕro)	invĕtĕrāvi	invĕtĕrātum	invĕtĕrascĕre	*to grow old*
10.	obdormisco (dormio)	obdormīvi	obdormītum	obdormiscĕre	*to fall asleep*
11.	rĕvīvisco (vīvo)	rĕvixi	rĕvictum	rĕvīviscĕre	*to come to life again*

12.	scisco (scio)	scīvi	scītum	sciscĕre	*to seek to know; to enact*

5. obsŏlesco.—Some connect this Verb, not with rt. ŏl- *to grow*, but with sŏleo.

Inceptives formed from Nouns and Adjectives are usually without Supine, and some want both Perfect and Supine: as,

1.	consĕnesco (senex)	consĕnui	—	consĕnescĕre	*to grow old*
2.	ingrăvesco (grăvis)	—	—	ingrăvescĕre	*to grow heavy*
3.	jŭvenesco (jŭvĕnis)	—	—	jŭvenescĕre	*to grow young*
4.	mātūresco (mātūrus)	mātūrui	—	mātūrescĕre	*to grow ripe*
5.	obmūtesco (mūtus)	obmūtui	—	obmūtescĕre	*to grow dumb*

§ 146. The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as underived Verbs:

1.	cresco	crēvi	crētum	crescĕre	*to grow*
2.	glisco	—	—	gliscĕre	*to swell*
3.	nosco	nōvi	nōtum	noscĕre	*to learn, to know*
4.	pasco	pāvi	pastum	pascĕre	*to feed*
5.	quiesco	quiēvi	quiētum	quiescĕre	*to become quiet*

3. *Nosco.*—The Perfect nōvi signifies *I know*; Pluperf., *I knew*. Two comps. agnosco, cognosco, shorten the rt. vowel in Sup.: agnĭtum, cognĭtum.

IV. The Fourth Conjugation.

§ 147. In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in īvi, the Supine in ītum: as, audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *to hear*. The following are exceptions:

1.	farcio	farsi	fartum (farctum)	farcīre	*to cram*
2.	fulcio	fulsi	fultum	fulcīre	*to prop*
3.	haurio	hausi	haustum	haurīre	*to draw* (water)
4.	sancio	sanxi	sancītum, sanctum	sancīre	*to enact, ratify*
5.	sarcio	sarsi	sartum	sarcīre	*to patch*
6.	sentio	sensi	sensum	sentīre	*to feel, to think*
7.	saepio	saepsi	saeptum	saepīre	*to fence in*
8.	vincio	vinxi	vinctum	vincīre	*to bind*
9.	eo	īvi	ītum	īre	*to go*
10.	sălio	sălui, sălii	saltum	sălīre	*to leap*

11.	sĕpĕlio	sĕpĕlīvi	sĕpultum	sĕpĕlīre	*to bury*
12.	vĕnio	vēni	ventum	vĕnīre	*to come*
13.	amĭcio	{ămĭcui / amixi	ămictum	ămĭcīre	*to wrap round*
14.	ăpĕrio	ăpĕrui	ăpertum	ăpĕrīre	*to open*
15.	ŏpĕrio	ŏpĕrui	ŏpertum	ŏpĕrīre	*to cover*
16.	compĕrio	compĕri	compertum	compĕrīre	*to find out*
17.	rĕpĕrio	reppĕri	rĕpertum	rĕpĕrīre	*to discover*

1. *Farcio.*—The comps. change *a* to *e:* as, rĕfercio, confercio. See § 207.
2. *Sancio.*—Originally *to make holy* (sac-er).
9. *Eo.*—See § 109.
10. *Sălio.*—The comps. change *ă* to *ĭ:* exsĭlio, dēsĭlio, etc.: see § 207: Sup. -sultum.
13. *Amĭcio.*—Properly a comp. of jăcio; *to throw* or *wrap about.* The Perfects are rare.
14–17. It is doubtful whether these Verbs all contain the same root. K. refers them all to root peri-, *to try* (ex-perior); and this may be true of compĕrio, rĕpĕrio: but the etym. of ăpĕrio (and with it of ŏpĕrio), remains obscure. Others refer compĕrio, rĕpĕrio to părio, *to get.* Compĕrio occurs also as Deponent. (Sall.)

§ 148. Some Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are without Perfect or Supine (compare Second Conj., §§ 136, 137): as,

fĕrio	—	—	fĕrīre	*to strike*
gestio	—	—	gestīre	*to be eager*
prūrio	—	—	prūrīre	*to itch*
singultio	—	—	singultīre	*to hiccup*

with some other Verbs of infrequent occurrence: as, caecūtio, *to be blind;* dēmentio, *to be insane;* ĭneptio, *to be silly,* glōcio, *to cluck;* etc. Also most Desiderative Verbs (§ 191), as, cēnātŭrio (caen-), *to be wanting dinner;* etc.

Fĕrio supplies its deficient tenses from percŭtio; partŭrio, *to be about to bring forth,* has Perf. (regular), and ēsŭrio, *to be hungry,* has Supine.

V. Deponents.

§ 149. *First Conjugation* (all regular).

Note.—The words to which an asterisk is prefixed are used also in the active form.

abōmĭnor, *to express abhorrence*
*admĭnĭcŭlor, *to aid*
ădŭlor, *to flatter*
*adversor, *to oppose*
aemŭlor, *to rival*
*altercor, *to quarrel*
ālūcĭnor (also alluc. and halluc.), *to dote, talk idly*
amplexor, *to embrace fondly*
ampullor, *to talk big*
ancillor, *to be a handmaid*
aprīcor, *to sun oneself*
ăquor, *to fetch water*
arbitror, *to think*
architĕctor, *to build* (architectus)
*argūmentor, *to argue*

*argŭtor, *to chatter* (*to be* argutus)
*aspernor, *to despise*
assentor, *to agree with, flatter*
astĭpŭlor, *to agree*
auctiōnor, *to sell at auction*
aucŭpor, *to catch birds* (*to be* auceps)
augŭror (augur), *auspĭcor (auspex), hăriŏlor (hariolus), } *to practise soothsaying*
auxĭlior, *to aid*
aversor, *to dislike, avoid with horror*
*bacchor, *to revel as a Bacchante*
*bellor, *to make war*
călumnior, *to cavil*
căvillor, *to banter*
caupōnor, *to deal in a retail way*
causor, *to allege*
circŭlor, *to form a circle around*
cōmissor, *to revel*
*cŏmĭtor, *to accompany* (active form only in the poets)
commentor, *to reflect upon*
contiōnor, *to harangue*
*conflictor, *to contend* ✓
cōnor, *to attempt*
consĭlior, *to advise*
conspĭcor, *to get sight of, descry*
contemplor, *to contemplate*
convĭcior, *to revile*
convīvor, *to feast* (conviva)
cornīcor, *to chatter as a crow*
*crīmĭnor, *to accuse*
cunctor, *to delay*
dēpĕcŭlor, *to plunder* ✓
despĭcor, *to despise; p. part.* despĭcātus, passive, *despised*
dēversor, *to lodge*
dīglădior, *to fight*
*dignor, *to think worthy* (sometimes passive, *to be thought worthy*)
dēdignor, *to disdain*
*dŏmĭnor, *to rule* (dominus)
*ēlūcubror, *to produce by lamplight, by dint of study*
ĕpŭlor, *to feast*
exsecror, *to execrate*
*fabrĭcor, *to fashion*
*fābŭlor, confābŭlor, *to talk*
fămŭlor, *to serve* (famulus)
*fēnĕror (fae-), *to lend at interest*
fĕrior, *to keep holiday*
(for), fāri, *to speak*
frūmentor, *to collect corn*
*frustror, *to disappoint*
fūror, suffūror, *to steal*
glōrior, *to boast*
graecor, *to live in the Greek style*, i.e. *luxuriously*
grassor, *to advance, attack*
grātŭlĭcor, *to comply with* ✓
grātor and grātŭlor, *to give thanks, to present congratulations*
grăvor, *to think burdensome; to grudge*
helluor (*not* heluor), *to gluttonise*
hortor, *to exhort;* ădhortor, exhortor, dĕhortor (*to dissuade*)
hospĭtor, *to be a guest; lodge*
ĭmāgĭnor, *to imagine* ✓
ĭmĭtor, *to imitate*
indignor, *to be indignant, spurn*
infĭtior, *to deny*
insĭdior, *to plot*
interprĕtor, *to explain* (*to be an* interpres)
jăcŭlor, *to throw, dart* (jaculum)
jŏcor, *to jest*
laetor, *to rejoice*
lāmentor, *to lament*
latrōcĭnor, *to rob*
lēnōcĭnor, *to flatter*
lĭbīdĭnor, *to be voluptuous* ✓
lĭcĭtor, *to bid at an auction*
lignor, *to collect wood*
lucror, *to gain*
luctor, *to strive, wrestle* (obluctor and rĕluctor, *to resist*)
*lūdĭfĭcor, *to make game of*
*luxŭrior, *to be wanton*
māchĭnor, *to devise*
mātĕrior, *to fell timber*
*mĕdĭcor, *to heal*
*mendīcor, *to beg*
mĕdĭtor, *to meditate, practise*
mercor, *to buy*
*mĕrĭdior, *to repose at noon*
*mētor, *to measure out, plan*
mĭnor and mĭnĭtor, *to threaten*
mīror, *to wonder* (dēmīror, admīror) ✓
mĭsĕror, commĭsĕror, *to show pity on*
mŏdĕror, *to restrain, temper*
mŏdŭlor, *to modulate*
mōrĭgĕror, *to comply*

mŏror, *to delay;* trans. and intrans. (commŏror)
*mūnĕror, rĕmūnĕror, *to reward*
*mūtuor, *to borrow*
nĕgōtior, *to carry on business*
*nictor, *to wink*
nīdŭlor, *to build a nest*
nūgor, *to trifle*
nundĭnor, *to buy and sell*
obversor, *to present oneself, appear*
ŏdōror, *to smell out*
*ōmĭnor, *to forebode*
ŏpĕror, *to bestow labour; perform religious rites*
*ŏpīnor, *to think*
ŏpĭtŭlor, *to lend help*
*opsōnor, *to buy food*
*oscĭtor, *to yawn*
oscŭlor, *to kiss*
ōtior, *to have leisure*
pābŭlor, *to forage*
*pācĭfĭcor, *to make peace*
pălor, *to wander, straggle*
*palpor, *to stroke, flatter*
pandĭcŭlor, *to stretch and yawn*
părăsītor, *to act the parasite* (parasītus)
patrōcĭnor, *to patronize*
percontor, *to inquire*
pĕregrīnor, *to dwell as a stranger*
pĕrīclĭtor, *to risk, to be in danger*
phĭlŏsŏphor, *to philosophize*
*pignĕror, *to take a pledge, to bind by a pledge*
pigror, *to be idle* (pĭger)
piscor, *to fish*
pollĭcĭtor, *to promise repeatedly*
*pŏpŭlor, *to lay waste*
praedor, *to plunder*
praestōlor, *to wait for*
praevārĭcor, *to walk crookedly, act dishonestly*
prĕcor, *to pray;* comprĕcor, *invoke;* dēprĕcor, *deprecate;* imprĕcor, *imprecate*
proelior, *to fight a battle*
rătiōcĭnor, *to reason*
rĕcordor, *to call to mind*
refrāgor, *to oppose*
rīmor, *to examine minutely*
rixor, *to wrangle*
rustĭcor, *to live in the country*
scītor and sciscĭtor, *to inquire*
scrūtor, *to search*
scurror, *to play the buffoon*
sector, *to follow* (frequentative of sĕquor); assector, consector, insector
sermōcĭnor, *to hold discourse*
sōlor, consōlor, *to comfort*
spătior, exspătior, *to walk, range abroad*
spĕcŭlor, *to keep a look out*
*stăbŭlor, *to be in stall*
stĭpŭlor, *to make a bargain;* adstĭpŭlor, *to agree*
stŏmăchor, *to be indignant*
suāvior, *to kiss*
suffrāgor, *to assent to*
suspĭcor, *to suspect*
tergĭversor, *to shuffle*
testor and testĭfĭcor, *to call to witness, bear witness*
trīcor, *to make unreasonable difficulties* (trīcae)
tristor, *to be sad*
trūtĭnor, *to weigh in scales*
tŭmultuor, *to make a disturbance*
tūtor, *to defend*
ūrinor, *to dip under water*
vădor, *to let go on bail*
*văgor, *to wander*
vātĭcĭnor, *to prophesy*
*vēlĭfĭcor, *to make sail*
vēlĭtor, *to skirmish*
*vĕnĕror, *to venerate*
vēnor, *to hunt*
vĕrēcundor, *to feel shame*
versor (properly passive of verso), *to be occupied in*
vōcĭfĕror, *to cry aloud*

§ 150. *Second Conjugation.*

1.	fătĕor	fassus sum	fătēri	*to confess*
2.	lĭcĕor	lĭcĭtus sum	lĭcēri	*to bid (at a sale)*
3.	mĕdĕor	—	mĕdēri	*to heal*
4.	*mĕrĕor	mĕrĭtus sum	mĕrēri	*to earn, to deserve*

5.	mĭsĕreor	mĭsĕrĭtus sum *or* mĭsertus sum	mĭsĕrēri	*to pity*
6.	pollĭceor	pollĭcĭtus sum	pollĭcēri	*to promise*
7.	reor	rātus sum	rēri	*to think*
8.	tueor	tŭĭtus sum	tuēri	*to look upon, protect*
9.	vĕreor	vĕrĭtus sum	vĕrēri	*to fear*

Făteor.—The comps. take ĭ: confĭteor, prŏfĭteor (*to give notice*), diffĭteor (no perf. occurs), *to deny.*

2, 6. Pollĭceor is a comp. of lĭceor, though without its specialized sense.

§ 151. *Third Conjugation.*

1.	fruor	(fructus sum) / frŭĭtus sum	frui	*to enjoy*
2.	fungor	functus sum	fungi	*to perform*
3.	grădior	gressus sum	grădi	*to step*
4.	lăbor	lapsus sum	lăbi	*to slip*
5.	lĭquor	—	lĭqui	*to melt*
6.	lŏquor	lŏcūtus sum	lŏqui	*to speak*
7.	mŏrior	mortuus sum	mŏri	*to die*
8.	nītor	nixus sum / nīsus	nīti	*to lean, strain, strive*
9.	pătior	passus sum	păti	*to suffer*
10.	quĕror	questus sum	quĕri	*to complain*
11.	ringor	—	rĭngi	*to show the teeth, to snarl*
12.	sĕquor	sĕcūtus sum	sĕqui	*to follow*
13.	ūtor	ūsus sum	ūti	*to use*
14.	(verto) / rĕvertor	(rĕversus sum)	rĕverti	*to return*
15.	(plecto) / amplector	amplexus sum	amplecti	*to embrace*
	complector	complexus sum	complecti	
16.	ăpiscor	aptus sum	ăpisci	*to obtain*
	ădĭpiscor	ădeptus sum	ădĭpisci	"
17.	commĭniscor	commentus sum	commĭnisci	*to devise*
18.	rĕmĭniscor	—	rĕmĭnisci	*to remember*
19.	dēfĕtiscor	dēfessus sum	dēfĕtisci	*to grow weary*
20.	expergiscor	experrectus sum	expergisci	*to wake up*
21.	īrascor	īrātus sum	īrasci	*to be angry*
22.	nanciscor	nactus *or* nanctus sum	nancisci	*to obtain by chance*
23.	nascor (gn-)	nātus sum	nasci	*to be born*
24.	oblīviscor	oblītus sum	oblīvisci	*to forget*
25.	păciscor	pactus sum	păcisci	*to make an agreement*
26.	prŏfĭciscor	prŏfectus sum	prŏfĭcisci	*to set out*
27.	ulciscor	ultus sum	ulcisci	*to avenge*
28.	vescor	—	vesci	*to feed on*

1. *Fruor.*—There is a guttural in the root: frug-. The comp. form perfructus est is cited from Cic. by Prisc. (x. 2. 13). *Fut. Part.* frŭĭtūrus (Cic. Tusc. 3, 38).

3. *Grădior.*—Comps. take *e:* ingrĕdior, aggrĕdior, etc.
7. *Mŏrior.*—*Fut. Part.* mŏrĭtūrus. *Inf.* morīri occurs in isolated instances.
8. *Nītor.*—Nixus appears to be commonly used in sense of *leaning on*, both in simple verb and comps. Comp. Forc. s. v. *ad fin.*
9. *Pătior.*—Comp. takes *e:* perpĕtior.
16. The simple verb ăpiscor is rare, but occurs in Lucr., Cic., etc. (Same rt. as Gk. *ἅπ-τομαι, to fasten on.*)
19. The *Pres.* of dēfĕtiscor is rare: the part. dēfessus is chiefly used as Adj. The Simple Verb appears only as Part. Adj. fessus.
20. *Expergiscor.*—From ex-pergo (per-rĕgo), with inceptive element, *I begin to stir myself.*
21. *Irascor.*—Part. īrātus usu. Adj.
26. *Prŏficiscor.*—From pro-făcio, with inceptive element, *I begin to make* or *get (myself) forward.*

§ 152. *Fourth Conjugation.*

1.	*assentior	assensus sum	assentīri	*to agree to*
2.	blandior	blandītus sum	blandīri	*to flatter*
3.	expĕrior	expertus sum	expĕrīri	*to try*
4.	oppĕrior	oppertus sum / oppĕrītus	oppĕrīri	*to wait for*
5.	largior	largītus sum	largīri	*to give bountifully*
6.	mentior	mentītus sum	mentīri	*to lie*
7.	mētior	mensus sum	mētīri	*to measure*
8.	mōlior	mōlītus sum	mōlīri	*to labour*
9.	ordior	orsus sum	ordīri	*to begin*
10.	ŏrior	ortus sum	ŏrīri	*to rise*
11.	*partior	partītus sum	partīri	*to divide*
12.	pŏtior	pŏtītus sum	pŏtīri	*to obtain possession of*
13.	*pūnior	pūnītus sum	pūnīri	*to punish*
14.	*sortior	sortītus sum	sortīri	*to take by lot*

3. Compĕrio, *to find out*, also occurs as Deponent.
10. *Orior.*—*Fut. Part.* ŏrĭtūrus. The *Pres. Ind.* follows 3rd Conj.: ŏrĕris, ŏrĭtur, ŏrĭmur. In *Imperf. Subj.* both ŏrĕrer and ŏrīrer are found. The compounds cŏŏrior and exŏrior, are conjugated like *ŏrior:* but ădŏrior, *to attack*, has ădŏrīris, ădŏrītur.
11. *Partior.*—The comps. take *e:* dispertior, impertior.
13. The active form *pūnio* is the usual one; but *pūnior* occurs in Cic.

Chapter XXIV.—Adverbs.

§ 153. Adverbs are derived from Adjectives, Participles, Nouns, and Pronouns. A few only cannot be traced back to other words: as, nē, haud.

The greater number of Adverbs are formed from Adjectives.

§ 154.—1. Adverbs formed from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions end in ē, which takes the place of the Stem Vowel: e. g.—

Adj.		*Stem.*	*Adverb.*	
altus	*high*	alto-	altē	*high*
rectus	*right*	recto-	rectē	*rightly*
lībĕr	*free*	lībĕro-	lībĕrē	*freely*
pulchĕr	*beautiful*	pulchro-	pulchrē	*beautifully*

Obs. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have Adverbs in ō as well as in ē: See § 194, 1.

2. Adverbs formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension end in ter, which is added to the Stem: e. g.—

Adj.		*Stem.*	*Adverb.*	
lĕvĭs	*light*	lĕvi-	lĕvĭtĕr	*lightly*
cĕlĕr	*swift*	cĕlĕri-	cĕlĕrĭtĕr	*swiftly*
ācĕr	*sharp*	ācri-	ācrĭtĕr	*sharply*
fēlix	*lucky*	fēlīci-	fēlīcĭtĕr	*luckily*

If the Stem ends in t, the t is omitted before the suffix: as, săpiens, *wise*, săpienter.

§ 155. Sometimes the Neuter of an Adjective is used Adverbially: as, făcĭlĕ, *easily* (not faciliter); rĕcens, *recently* (preferable to recenter); multum, *much*; prīmum (also prīmō), *first*.

Obs. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have Adverbs in tĕr as well as in ē. See § 194, 6.

§ 156. Adverbs derived from Adjectives have Degrees of Comparison like Adjectives.

1. The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in ĭŭs.

2. The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into ē.

Adjectives.		Adverbs.		
		Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
doctus	*learned*	doctē	doctius	doctissĭmē
aeger	*sick*	aegrē (*with difficulty*)	aegrius	aegerrĭmē
fortis	*brave*	fortĭter	fortius	fortissĭmē
sĭmĭlis	*like*	sĭmĭlĭter	sĭmĭlius	sĭmillĭmē
ācĕr	*keen*	ācrĭter	ācrius	ācerrĭmē
fēlix	*lucky*	fēlīcĭter	fēlīcius	fēlīcissĭmē
prūdens	*prudent*	prūdenter	prūdentius	prūdentissĭmē

§ 157. The following Adverbs are irregular or defective in their Comparison:—

Adjectives.		Adverbs.		
		Positive	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
bŏnus	*good*	bĕnĕ	mĕlius	optĭmē
mălus	*bad*	mălĕ	pējus	pessĭmē
multus	*much*	multum	plūs	plūrĭmum
magnus	*great*	[magnŏpĕrĕ]	măgĭs	maxĭmē
(prŏpinquus)	*near*	prŏpĕ	prŏpius	proxĭmē
[prō, *Prep.*]	*before*	(no Pos.)	prius	prīmum and prīmō

Obs. From bŏnus, by vowel assimilation, comes bĕnĕ, and from mălus comes mălĕ, both with final *e* short. See also § 746, 4. ◡ .

§ 158. The following Adverbs not derived from Adjectives are also compared:—

Positive.		*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
dĭū	*for a long time*	dĭūtius	dĭūtissĭmē
nūper	*lately*	—	nūperrĭmē
saepē	*often*	saepius	saepissĭmē
tempĕrī (tempŏri)	*timely*	tempĕrius	——

§ 159. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into the following classes:—

I. Adverbs of Interrogation, Affirmation, and Negation.

(*a*) *Of Interrogation.*

-nĕ	*is it so?*	utrum . . . -nĕ, ăn	*is this the case,*
num	*it is not so, is it?*	quārē, cūr	*why?* [or *that?*
nonnĕ	*is it not so?*	quŏtiēs (-ens)	*how often?*

(*b*) *Of Affirmation.*

nē, nae	*verily*	immo, vērō	*nay, of a truth*

Obs. There is no word in Latin precisely equivalent to the English *yes.* Instead of it, some part of the question is generally repeated. Tu ita dicis? Ego vero dico. *Do you say so? Yes, I do.*

Immo is equivalent to *nay, nay rather:* and may sometimes be rendered by *yes* or by *no:* as

Fătētur? *Immo* pernĕgat—*Does he confess? No, he denies outright.* (Pl. Most. 3, 1, 19.)

Causa igitur non bŏna est? *Immo* optima—*Is our cause then not good? Yes, exceedingly good.* (Cic. Att. 9, 7.)

(*c*) *Of Negation.*

nē	*not, lest*	mĭnĭmē	*by no means*
nōn (contr. from nē oenum, i. e. ūnum), haud	*not*		

§ 160.—II. Adverbs of Place.—1. Derived from Pronouns.

(1.) *Rest in a Place.*	(2.) *Motion from a Place.*	(3.) *Motion by a Way.*	(4.) *Motion to a Place.*	(5.) *Motion towards a Place.*
hīc, *here, near me*	**hinc**, *from the place near me*	**hāc**, *by this road near me*	**hūc**, *to the place near me, hither*	**horsum**, *towards where I am, hitherwards*
istīc, *there, near you*	**istinc**, *from the place near you*	**istā, istāc**, *by that road, near you*	**istō, istūc**, *to the place near you, thither*	**istorsum**, *towards where you are*
illīc, *near him, yonder*	**illinc**, *from the place near him, from yonder place*	**illā, illāc**, *by that road near him, by yonder road*	**illō, illūc**, *to the place near him, to yonder place, thither*	**illorsum**, *towards where he is, to yonder place*
ībi, *there*	**indĕ**, *thence*	**eā**, *by the said way*	**eō**, *thither*	
ībīdem, *in the same place*	**indīdem**, *from the same place*	**eādem**, *by the same way*	**eōdem**, *to the same place*	
ŭbi, *where*	**undĕ**, *whence*	**quā**, *by which way*	**quō**, *whither?*	**quorsum (us)**, *towards whither*
ŭbīquĕ, *everywhere*	**undīquĕ**, *from every side*			
ŭbicunquĕ, ŭbiŭbi, *wheresoever*	**undĕcunquĕ, undeundĕ**, *from whatever side*	**quācunquĕ, quāquā**, *by which way soever*	**quōcunquĕ, quōquō**, *whithersoever*	**quōquōversum (us)**, *in whatever direction*
ălĭbi, *elsewhere*	**ălĭundĕ**, *from elsewhere*	**ălĭā**, *by another way*	**ălĭō**, *to another place*	**ălĭorsum (-us)**, *towards another place*
ălĭcŭbi, *somewhere*	**ălĭcŭndĕ**, *from some place or another*	**ălĭquā**, *by some way*	**ălĭquō**, *to some place*	**ălĭquorsum (-us)**, *towards some place*
uspiam, usquam, *anywhere*				
nusquam, *nowhere*				
ŭbīvīs, ŭbilĭbet, *in any place you will, everywhere*	**undĕlĭbĕt**, *from which side you please*	**quāvīs, quālĭbĕt**, *by which way you will*	**quōvīs, quōlĭbĕt**, *whither you will*	
utrōbīquĕ, *in both places*	**utrimque**, or **utrinquĕ**, *from both sides*	**utrācunquĕ**, *by which soever of two ways*; **utrāque**, *by both ways*	**utrōvīs**, *to which of two places you will*; **utrōquĕ**, *to both places*	**utrōquĕversum (-us)**, *towards both places*

2. Derived from Prepositions and other Words.

(a) *Rest in a Place.*

intŭs, intrinsĕcŭs	*within*
extrā, extrinsĕcŭs	*without, outside*
prŏpĕ	*near*
prŏcŭl	*at a distance*
passim	*here and there, in every direction*
fŏrīs	*out of doors, abroad*
pĕregrē	*abroad*
subtŭs	*beneath*
sŭpernĕ	*above*
infernĕ	*below*
praesto	*at hand*

(b) *Motion towards a Place.*

introrsum (-ŭs)	*inwards*
dĕorsum (-ŭs)	*downwards*
sursum (-ŭs), i.e. subversum	*upwards*
retrorsum (-ŭs)	*backwards*
prorsus	*straight-forwards, outright*
sĕorsum (-ŭs)	*apart*
dextrorsum (-ŭs)	*towards the right*
sĭnistrorsum (-ŭs)	*towards the left*
fŏrās	*abroad*

§ 161.—III. Adverbs of Time.

1. *When?*

quandō	*when? at any time*
nunc	*now*
jam	*now, presently*
mŏdŏ	*just now*
tum, tunc	*then*
nūpĕr	*lately*
dūdum, prīdem	*some time ago*
jamdūdum, jamprīdem	*for some time past*
mox	*soon*
interdum, nonnunquam	*sometimes* ✓
ălĭquando, quandōque	*at some time*
quondam, ōlim	*formerly, hereafter*
nondum	*not yet*
vixdum	*hardly yet*
nunquam	*never*
cĭto	*quickly*
stătim, confestim, prōtĭnŭs, illĭcĕt, illĭco	*immediately, forthwith* ✓
post, posteā, posthāc	*afterwards*
intĕrim, intĕrĕā	*meanwhile*
ălĭās	*at another time*
tandem	*at length* ✓
jamdĭū	*long since*
hŏdĭē	*to-day*
crās	*to-morrow*
hĕrī (hĕrĕ)	*yesterday*
prīdiē	*the day before*
nŭdĭustertiŭs	*three days since*
postrīdiē	*the following day*
pĕrendiē	*the next day but one*

2. *How long?*

dĭū	*long*
quamdĭū	*how long, as long as*
ălĭquamdĭū	*for some time*
ălĭquantispĕr	*for a little while*
tamdĭū	*so long*
tantispĕr	*just for a moment*
părumpĕr, paulispĕr	*just for a little while*
ădhūc	*hitherto*
sempĕr	*always*

3. *How often?*

sĕmĕl	*once*	saepĕ, saepĕnŭmĕro	*often*
bĭs, tĕr, &c.	*twice, thrice, &c.*	crēbrō	*frequently*
tŏtiēs (-ens)	*so often*	rārō	*seldom*
quŏtiēs (-ens)	*how often; as often*	ĭdentĭdem	*repeatedly*
ălĭquŏtiēs (-ens)	*several times* [*as*	rursŭs, ĭtĕrum	*again*
plērumquĕ	*usually*	dēnŭo	*afresh*
interdum, sŭbindĕ	*now and then*	quŏtīdiē	*every day*
		quŏtannīs	*every year*

§ 162.—IV. Adverbs of Comparison, Order, Manner, Degree.

ădĕō	*to such a degree*	quāsī	*as if*
admŏdum	*exceedingly*	quātĕnŭs	*how far, as far as*
ălĭtĕr	*in another way*	eātĕnŭs	*so far*
aequē	*equally*	hactĕnŭs	*thus far and no farther*
ĭtă	*in that way, so*	ălĭquātĕnŭs	*to a certain point* ✓
ĭtem	*likewise*	saltem	*at least*
măgĭs	*more, rather*	sānē	*truly, indeed*
magnŏpĕrĕ	*greatly*	sătĭs	*enough*
mĭnŭs	*less*	sĕcus, sĕcius*	*otherwise*
mŏdŏ	*only*	sīc	*so, in this way*
omnīno	*altogether*	sĭcŭtī	*as*
paenĕ	*almost*	sōlum	*only*
părĭtĕr	*equally, side by side*	tanquam	*as, as if*
pĕrindĕ (proindĕ)	*in the same manner*	tantŏpĕrĕ	*so greatly*
perquam	*very*	tantum, tantummŏdŏ	*only*
pŏtiŭs	*rather*	ŭt, ŭtī	*as, how*
pŏtissĭmum	*in preference to all others*	valdĕ	*very, greatly*
prŏpĕ	*nearly*	vĕlŭt, vĕlŭt	*just as*
prorsŭs	*altogether, in short*	vix	*hardly, with difficulty*
quam	*as, than*		
quantŏpĕrĕ	*how greatly, as greatly as*		

* It is doubtful whether these words are etymologically connected. ✓

Chapter XXV.—Prepositions.

§ 163. Prepositions show the relation of one Noun to another, and are therefore always followed by an Object. Some Prepositions govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some may take either the Accusative or the Ablative. (*cap.* § 556, foll.)

§ 164.—I. *With the Accusative only.* (See § 556.)

ăd	*to*	**ŏb**	*against, on account of*
adversŭs / **adversum**	*opposite, towards*	**pĕnĕs**	*in the power of*
		pĕr	*through*
antĕ	*before*	**pōnĕ**	*behind*
ăpŭd	*near*	**post**	*after*
circā, circum	*around*	**praetĕr**	*beside*
circĭtĕr (usu. adv.)	*about*	**prŏpĕ**	*near*
		proptĕr	*on account of*
cis & citrā	*on this side of*	**sĕcundum**	*following, along, in accordance with*
contrā	*against*		
ergā	*towards* (of the [mind)	**suprā**	*above*
extrā	*outside of*	**trans**	*across*
infrā	*below*	**ultrā**	*on the farther side of*
intĕr	*between, among*	**versŭs** / **versum**	*towards*
intrā	*inside of, within*		
juxtā	*hard by, beside*		

Obs. *Versŭs* is always placed *after* its Noun: as, Rōmam versŭs, *towards Rome.*

§ 165.—II. *With the Ablative only.* (See § 557.)

ā, ăb, *or* **abs**	*by* or *from*	**ex** *or* **ē**	*out of*
absquĕ (rare)	*without*	**prae**	*before*
cōram	*in the presence of*	**prō**	*in front of, before*
cum	*with*	**sīnĕ**	*without*
dē	*down from, from*	**tĕnŭs**	*reaching to, as far as*

Obs. 1. *Ab* is used before vowels and *h*; both *ā* and *ăb* before consonants, *abs* very seldom except in the phrase *abs te.*

Obs. 2. *Ex* is used before vowels and *h*; both *ex* and *ē* before consonants.

Obs. 3. *Tĕnŭs* sometimes takes Gen., as labrōrum tĕnŭs, *as far as the lips* (Lucr.). It is always placed after its case.

§ 166.—III. *With the Accusative or Ablative* (usually with a difference of meaning). (See § 558.)

ĭn	*in, into*	**sŭpĕr**	*over*
sŭb	*up to, under*	**subtĕr**	*under*

clam, *without the knowledge of.*

In and *Sub* with the *Acc.* answer the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

Obs. Some Prepositions are also used as Adverbs, their object being then implied, not expressed: as, antĕ, circā, circĭter, extrā, intrā, infrā, suprā, juxtā, ultrā, clam, cōram, contrā, pōnĕ, post, praeter, propter, prae.

§ 167. Prepositions, in composition with other words,

frequently undergo euphonic changes. The most common of these are the following:—

ăb, abs. *Ab* remains unchanged before vowels and most consonants. Before *m* and *v* it becomes *ā:* as, ā-mŏveo, ā-vĕho. *Ab* becomes *au* in au-fĕro, au-fŭgio. *Abs* stands before *c* and *t* only: as, abs-cēdo, abs-tĭneo.

ăd remains unchanged before *b, d, j, m, v:* as, ad-bĭbo, ad-do, ad-jăceo, ad-mīror, ad-vĕho. The *d* is assimilated before most other consonants: as, ac-cēdo, af-fĕro, ag-gĕro, ap-pōno, acquīro, as-sisto, as-sūmo. The *d* is omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and before *gn:* as, a-spĭcio, a-gnosco.

com (old form of **cum**) remains unchanged before the labials *p, b, m:* as, com-pōno, com-bĭbo, com-mitto. The *m* is assimilated before *l, n, r:* as, col-lĭgo, con-necto, cor-rĭpio; and changed into *n* before the other consonants: as, con-fĕro, con-gĕro, contrăho. The *m* is dropped before vowels and *h:* as, cŏ-ălesco, cŏ-eo, cŏ-hæreo.

ex remains unchanged before vowels and before the consonants *c, p, q, s, t:* as, ex-eo, ex-cĭpio, ex-pōno, ex-quīro, ex-solvo, extrăho. The *x* is assimilated before *f:* as, ef-fĕro (also, ecfĕro), and is omitted before the remaining consonants: as, ē-lĭgo, ē-jĭcio (also, ēĭcio).

In becomes *im* before the labials *p, b, m:* as, im-pōno, im-buo, im-mitto. The *n* is assimilated before *l* and *r:* as, il-lūdo, ir-rumpo. Before other consonants and vowels it remains unchanged. An old form *ind-, indŭ-*, is seen in ind-ĭgeo, indŭpĕrātor (Lucr.), and perhaps in ind-uo.

intĕr undergoes assimilation only in the verb intel-lĭgo and its derivatives.

ŏb undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, p:* as, oc-curro, of-fĕro, og-gĕro, op-pōno. Before other consonants it usually remains unchanged. Note the short quantity in ŏmitto, ŏpĕrio. A form *obs* is believed by some to be seen in obsŏleo: see § 145.

pĕr undergoes assimilation only in pel-lĭcio and its derivatives.

sŭb usually undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, m, p,* and often before *r:* as, suc-curro, suf-fĭcio, sug-gĕro, sum-mitto, sup-pōno, sur-rĭpio. The *b* disappears before *s:* as, susplcio, suspīro; and before some words beginning with *c, p, t,* it appears to become *s:* as, susclpio, suspendo, sustŭli. These forms, however, are explained by referring them to an older form *subs*. Before vowels and before other consonants it remains unchanged.

trans is frequently shortened into **trā**; as, trā-dūco, trā-jĭcio.

§ 168. Inseparable Prepositions are prefixes which occur only in composition:—

amb-, *around*: as, amb-io, *to go around*; amb-ĭgo, *to wander round, to doubt*. The *b* is dropped before *p:* as, am-pūto, *to cut round* or *away*; am-plector, *to twine around* or *embrace*. *Amb-*

becomes *an-* before gutturals and *f:* as, an-ceps, *two-headed;* an-quīro, *to seek around;* an-fractus, *a bending.*

dĭs- or **dī-**: *apart, in different directions:* as, dis-pōno, *to set in different parts;* dī-rĭpio, *to tear in pieces.* Before *f*, *dis-* becomes *dif-:* as, dif-fundo, *to pour in different directions.* It is changed into *dĭr* before ĕmo and hăbeo; as, dĭr-ĭmo, dĭr-ĭbeo.

rĕ- or **rĕd-**, *back:* as, rĕ-mitto, *to send back;* rĕd-eo, *to go back.*

sē- or **sēd-**, *aside:* as, sē-dūco, *to lead aside;* sē-cūrus, *free from care;* sēd-ĭtio, *a going apart, sedition.*

CHAPTER XXVI.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 169. Conjunctions indicate the relations of sentences to each other. They may be divided into the following classes:—

I. CONNECTIVE.

ĕt **atquĕ, ăc** **-quĕ**	*and*	**nĕquĕ, nĕc** **nēvĕ, neu** **sīvĕ, seu**	*neither, nor* *or if, whether*
aut **vĕl, -vĕ**	*either, or*	**ĕtiam** **quŏquĕ** **necnōn**	*also*

Obs. 1. **-quĕ** and **-vĕ** are always added enclitically to the second of the two words which they unite, and must be pronounced with it, as if they formed a single word: as, terrā mārīquĕ, *by land and by sea;* plūs mīnusvĕ, *more or less.*

Obs. 2. **Ac, -vĕ, nĕc, neu, seu** are contractions respectively of atquĕ, vĕl, nĕquĕ, nēvĕ, sīvĕ. **Ac** is never used before vowels or *h;* atquĕ occurs most frequently before vowels, but also before consonants.

To these may be added the correlatives non mŏdo (sōlum) . . . . sed (vērum) ĕtiam, *not only . . . . but also;* quum (tum) . . . . tum, *both . . . . and.*

II. ADVERSATIVE.

sĕd **autem** **ast, ăt**	*but*	**tămĕn**	*yet, nevertheless*
		vērum, vēro	*but, indeed*
		ĕnimvēro	*but indeed*
atquī	*and yet*	**attămĕn**	*but yet*

III. CONDITIONAL.

sī	*if*	**dum**	*provided that*
nīsi, nī	*if not*	**mŏdŏ**	
sīn	*if not; but if*	**dummŏdŏ**	

IV. Concessive.

etsi, ĕtiamsi, tămetsi, lĭcĕt, quanquam	*although*	quamvīs	*however much, although*
		quum	*although [though*
		quĭdem	*indeed*
		ŭt	*granting that, although*

V. Causal.

quum	*whereas, since*	nam, ĕnim	*for*
quĭă, quŏd	*because*	ĕtĕnim	*and in fact*
quŏniam	*since*		
quandŏquĭdem	*seeing that*		

VI. Conclusive.

ergō, idcirco, ĭdeo, ĭgĭtŭr	*therefore*	ĭtăquĕ	*and so, accordingly*
		quōcircā, quārē, quāproptĕr	*wherefore*

VII. Final.

ŭt, quō	*that, in order that*	nē	*that not, lest*
quĭn, quōmĭnŭs	*that not*	nēvĕ, neu	*and that . . . not*

VIII. Temporal.

antĕquam, prĭusquam	*before that*	dōnec, quoad [monosyl.]	*so long as, until*
postquam	*after that*	dum	*while, until*
quum	*when*		

sīmŭlatquĕ (āc), *as soon as.*

Chapter XXVII.—Interjections.

§ 170. Interjections are not so much parts of speech as substitutes for definite sentences. They are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion.

They may be divided into the following classes:—

1. Of surprise: ō! ēn! eccĕ! păpae! ătăt! etc.
2. Of grief: ah! ēheu (heu)! hei! vae! etc.
3. Of joy; ĭo! ha! ēvoe! eu (eugĕ)! etc
4. Of disgust: phuī! ăpăgĕ! etc.
5. Of adjuration: prō (prŏh)! To this may be added the abbreviated oaths mĕhercŭlĕ (mehercŭlĕ, herclĕ, etc.), pol, ēdĕpol, mĕdĭusfĭdĭus, and the like.

CHAPTER XXVIII.—FORMATION OF WORDS.

§ 171. Words are usually formed from elements called ROOTS, by the addition of Suffixes and Prefixes, sometimes with internal change.

ROOTS.—In the Indo-European family of languages, to which Latin belongs, all roots are monosyllabic; as, **es-**, *to be*; **i-**, *to go*; **fer-**, *to bear*.

A few words are identical in form with roots; either originally, or through loss of a suffix. The former is the case with the Prepositional elements, **dē-**, *down*; **sŭb-**, *up*; **pro-**, *forth, forward*: the latter is the case with the Imperative forms, **ĕs**, *be thou*; **ī**, *go thou*; **fĕr**, *bear thou*.

Obs. 1. The origin of Roots is to a great extent unknown. Some are imitative; as, crĕp-are, *to crack*, rt. **crĕp-**; clang-or, *a loud ringing sound*, rt. **clang-**; mū-g-īre, *to bellow*, rt. **mu-**, being the natural sound of the ox tribe. (Compare also the Noun bo-s, Gk. *βοῦς*.) A few appear to have originated in instinctive exclamations, such as *ah! fi!* etc. (See Wedgwood, Eng. Dict. *Pref.*) But in the great majority of cases the ground of the connexion between sound and sense can no longer be traced.

Obs. 2. Syllables assumed as Roots must not be supposed to be in every case ultimate Roots. Many of them may yet be resolved into simpler elements, but for practical purposes they are Roots, and their further analysis belongs to Philology rather than to Grammar.

Suffixes are not usually found as independent words, though they may all of them have once been such.

The addition of a Suffix often acts back upon the former part of the word, thus causing internal change: see §§ 22, 26, *Obss.*

Simple and Compound Words.

§ 172. *A Simple Word* may be either,—

(1) A Pure Root, without any addition whatever: see above, § 171.

Or (2) a word derived from a single Root by the addition of an inflexional element: as, **rex** (=regs), *king*, rt. **reg-**; **scrība**, *scribe*, rt. **scrib-**.

§ 173. *A Compound Word* is formed from two or more words, with the addition of an inflexional element, and often with internal change: as, **frātrīcīda**, *slayer of a brother*, from **frāter**, *brother*, and **caedo**, *I kill*; with suffix **-a**.

§ 174. *Suffixes* are partly Inflexional and partly Verbal or Derivative.

Inflexional Suffixes are those which are used in modifying the form of inflected words, to denote Case, Number, Gender, etc.

Derivative Suffixes are those which serve to form distinct words, whether inflected or uninflected.

In the following paragraphs, the term Suffix is used to denote the Verbal or Derivative Suffix, without regard to inflexion.

§ 175. *A Prefix* is an element set before a root or word, to modify its meaning: as, *in*-dignus, *unworthy*.

§ 176. Some words are formed at once from the root, by adding the inflexional endings. These may be called *Primary Words:* as,

ăg-o	Stem and Root		ăg-	*act*
rĕg-o, rex (reg-s)	„	„	rĕg-	*straighten, rule*
lĕg-o, lex (leg-s)	„	„	lĕg-	*gather, read*
pēs (ped-s)	„	„	pĕd-	*foot*
scrīb-a	„	„	scrīb-	*write*
lūd-o, ludus	„	„	lūd-	*play*
spē-s	„	„	spe-	*hope*

CHAPTER XXIX.—DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

I. NOUNS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

§ 177. Nouns are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following suffixes:—

1. **ŏr, ōris** (*m.*); **ĭa**; **ĭum**; **ĭo, ōnis** (*f.*): expressing the activity or state implied in the Verb in an abstract way. These Suffixes are added to the Verb-stem, a final vowel being first removed; as,

ăm-or	*love*	from	ămo
căl-or	*heat*	„	căleo
fŭr-or	*rage*	„	fŭro
invĭd-ia	*ill-feeling*	„	invĭdeo
dēsĭd-ia	*sloth*	„	dēsĭdeo
ŏd-ium	*hatred*	„	ōdi (? ŏdo)
vĭtŭpĕr-ium	*censure*	„	vĭtŭpĕro
rĕlĭg-io	*religion*	„	rĕlĭgo (?)
ŏpīn-io	*opinion*	„	ŏpīnor

2. **tĭo** (**sĭo**, when the Supine has **s**), **ōnis** (*f.*): **tus** (**sus**), 4 Decl.; denoting an action; also with more of a collective force, **tūra** (**sūra**); **īna**; **ēla** (**ella**); **mōnia** (and **mōnium**): as,

ac-tio	*action*	from	ăgo
scan-sio	*climbing*	„	scando
ac-tus	*act, doing*	„	ăgo
cur-sus	*running*	„	curro
mercā-tūra	*trade*	„	mercor
ăper-tūra	*opening*	„	ăpĕrio
junc-tūra	*joint*	„	jungo

ver-sūra	*turn*	from	verto
suād-ēla	*persuasion*	„	suādeo
quĕr-ēla	*complaint*	„	quĕror
lŏqu-ēla (ella)	*speech*	„	lŏquor
răp-īna	*rapine*	„	răpio
ru-īna	*downfall*	„	ruo
parsĭ-mōnia	*economy*	„	parco
quĕrĭ-mōnia	*complaint*	„	quĕror
ălĭ-mōnium	*nourishment*	„	ălo

3. **tŏr (sŏr), ōris, with fem. trix, īcis**: denoting the agent: as,

ămā-tor	*lover*	from	ămo
audī-tor	*hearer*	„	audio
vic-tor, *f.* -trix	*conqueror*	„	vinco (rt. vic-)
cur-sor	*runner*	„	curro

4. **trum; cŭlum and bŭlum (crum and brum after l)**: denoting an instrument: as,

ărā-trum	*plough*	from	ăro
ros-trum	*beak*	„	rōdo
vin-cŭlum (for vinc-culum)	*bond*	„	vincio
lăvā-crum	*bath*	„	lăvo
vēnā-bŭlum	*hunting-spear*	„	vēnor
pā-bŭlum	*fodder*	„	pasco
ventĭlā-brum	*winnowing-fork*	„	ventĭlo

5. **mĕn, ĭnis, *n.*;** derived from old participial form (compare alumnus, vertumnus, No. 8): these Nouns are sometimes active, and denote an instrument: as,

teg-men	*covering*	from	tĕgo
lēnĭ-men	*solace*	„	lēnio
sōlā-men	*means of comfort*	„	sōlor

Sometimes passive or middle: as,

ag-men	*an army being led*	from	ăgo
gestā-men	*something carried*	„	gesto
lū-men (luc-men)	*light*	„	lūceo
flū-men	*stream*	„	fluo

6. **mentum**: derived from preceding (**men**), but with more definitely instrumental force: as,

dŏcŭ-mentum	*proof*	from	dŏceo
impĕdī-mentum	*hindrance*	„	impĕdio
mō-mentum	*moving force*	„	mŏveo
ornā-mentum	*ornament*	„	orno

7. **ĭes** (*f.*) denoting that which is made, or which is the result of an action: as,

sĕries	*order*	from	sĕro
effĭgies	*image*	„	effingo (rt. fig-)
congĕries	*heap*	„	congĕro

8. **mnus** (*m.*), passive or middle participial form (Gk. *-όμενος*): as,

ălumnus	*nurseling, foster-son*	from ălo
Vertumnus	*god of the seasons* ["*he that turns himself*"]	„ verto

9. **tōrium**; denoting the place for doing something (mostly late Nouns); cf. Gk. *-τήριον*: as,

dormī-tōrium	*sleeping-room*	from dormio
lăvā-tōrium	*washing-room*	„ lăvo

II. Nouns derived from other Nouns.

§ 178. Nouns are derived from Nouns by the addition of the following Suffixes:—

1. **ŭla**; **ŭlus**; **ŭlum**; added to Nouns of the First and Second Declensions, according to their Gender; and **cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum**, added to Nouns of the Third, Fourth and Fifth Declensions, to form Diminutives: as,

mens-ŭla	*a little table*	from mensa
virg-ŭla	*a little twig*	„ virga
nīd-ŭlus	*a little nest*	„ nīdus
hort-ŭlus	*a little garden*	„ hortus
sax-ŭlum	*a small rock*	„ saxum
scūt-ŭlum	*a small shield*	„ scūtum
frāter-cŭlus	*a little brother*	„ frāter
flos-cŭlus	*a little flower*	„ flos
māter-cŭla	*a poor mother*	„ māter
nāvī-cŭla	*a small ship*	„ nāvis
ăvī-cŭla	*a small bird*	„ ăvis
corpus-cŭlum	*a small body*	„ corpus
rētī-cŭlum	*a little net*	„ rēte
versī-cŭlus	*a little verse*	„ versus
rē-cŭla	*a small matter*	„ rēs

Obs. 1. In the Third Declension, when the Stem ends in a Guttural or a Dental, Diminutives are formed as in the First and Second: as,

rādīc-ŭla	*a small root*	from rādix
rēg-ŭlus	*a petty king*	„ rex
cāpīt-ŭlum	*a small head*	„ căput

Obs. 2. If a vowel precede the Suffixes *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*, they become *ŏlus, ŏla, ŏlum*: as,

fīli-ŏlus	*a little son*	from fīlius
malle-ŏlus	*a small hammer*	„ malleus
fīli-ŏla	*a little daughter*	„ fīlia
līne-ŏla	*a little line*	„ līnea
nĕgōti-ŏlum	*a little business*	„ nĕgōtium
ingĕni-ŏlum	*a little talent*	„ ingĕnium

Obs. 3. If the final vowel of the stem of the primitive is preceded by *l, n*, or *r*, a contraction takes place, and the terminations of the diminutive become *ellus, ella, ellum*, and sometimes, but rarely, *illus, illa, illum*: as,

ŏcellus	*a little eye*	from	ŏcŭlus	Stem	ŏcŭlo
lĭbellus	*a little book*	„	liber	„	libro
cătella	*a little chain*	„	cătēna	„	cătēna
sīgillum	*a little figure*	„	signum	„	signo

In this way are formed secondary diminutives: as, furca, furcŭla, furcilla; cănis, cătŭlus, cătellus; ŏs, oscŭlum, oscillum. A similar contraction takes place in lăpis, stem lăpĭd-, lăpillus.

2. **īna**: often denoting an employment; also the place where an employment is carried on: as,

mĕdĭc-īna	*the healing art*	from	mĕdĭcus
offĭc-īna	*a workshop*	„	ŏpĭfex
sūtr-īna	*a shoemaker's shop*	„	sūtor

Offĭcīna is a contraction for ŏpĭfĭcīna (ŏpus, făcio).

Sometimes *īna* is simply a Feminine Suffix: as,

rēg-īna	*a queen*	from	rex
gall-īna	*a hen*	„	gallus

Obs. Some Neuters are formed in īnum: as, pistr-īnum (also pistrīna), from pistor; tabl-īnum, *a registry*, from tăbŭla.

3. **ātus** (4 Decl.), added to Nouns designating public officers, denotes the office: as,

consŭl-ātus	*consulship*	from	consul
trĭbūn-ātus	*tribuneship*	„	trĭbūnus

The suffix **tūra** (**sūra**) has in certain words a like force: viz.,

dictā-tūra	*dictatorship*	from	dictator
prae-tūra	*praetorship*	„	praetor
cens-ūra	*censorship*	„	censor

4. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an employment, condition, &c.: as,

săcerdōt-ium	*priesthood*	from	săcerdōs (-dōtis)
mĭnistĕr-ium	*service*	„	mĭnister
exsŭl-ium	*state of exile*	„	exsul
hospĭt-ium	*hospitality*	„	hospes (-pĭtis)

5. **ētum**, affixed to names of trees or plants, denotes the place where they grow together, and also the trees themselves collectively: as,

myrt-ētum	*a myrtle-grove*	from	myrtus
querc-ētum	*an oak-plantation*	„	quercus
ŏlīv-ētum	*an olive-yard*	„	ŏlīva
vīn-ētum	*a vineyard*	„	vīnea

6. **ĭle** (is, *n.*), affixed to the names of animals, denotes a place for them: as,

bŏv-īle (bub-īle)	*an ox-stall*	from	bōs, bŏvis
ĕqu-īle	*a stable for horses*	„	ĕquus
ŏv-īle	*a sheep-fold*	„	ŏvis

Obs. *ile* is properly a neuter Suffix of Adjectives. See § 182, 6.

7. mōnĭum, denoting a state, etc.: as,

mātrĭ-mōnium	*matrimony*	from māter
patrĭ-mōnium	*patrimony*	„ păter
vădĭ-mōnium	*security*	„ vas

8. Besides the above, formed directly from Nouns, others come through Adjectives (see § 180, foll.): especially those ending in ārius (from which come Nouns in ārius, āria, ārium) and āris (or ālis), from the Neuter of which come the Nouns in ăr and ăl (shortened for āre and āle): e.g.

argentārius	*banker*	sīcārius	*assassin*
ferrārium *pl.*	*iron-works*	dōnārium	*gift*
pōmārium	*orchard*	sōlārium	*dial*
calcăr	*spur*	ănĭmăl	*animal*

In some cases no corresponding Adjective is known to exist: e.g. dōnārium, sōlārium; but one may be assumed.

§ 179. *Patronymics.*—These are exclusively Greek formations, though freely used by Latin poets.

(i) Masculine Patronymics have the following Suffixes:—

1. ĭdēs: as, Priămĭdes, *a son of Priamus.*
2. īdēs: as, Atr-īdes, *a son of Atreus;* contr. for Atrĕ-ĭdes.
3. ădēs and ĭădēs: as, Aene-ădēs, *a son of Aeneas;* Atlant-ĭădēs, *a son of Atlas.*

Obs. Patronymics in ĭdes (εἰδης) are only formed from Proper Names in eus (εύς).

(ii) Feminine Patronymics have the following Suffixes:—

1. ĭs, *Gen.* ĭdis: as, Tantăl-is, *a daughter of Tantalus;* corresponding to Masc. ĭdēs.
2. ēĭs, *Gen.* ēĭdis: as, Nēl-ēis, *a daughter of Neleus;* corresponding to Masc. īdēs.
3. ĭas, *Gen.* ĭădis: as, Laert-ĭas, *a daughter of Laertes;* corresponding to Masc. ĭădēs.
4. ĭnē: as, Neptūn-ĭnē, *a daughter of Neptunus.*
5. ōnē: as, Acrĭsi-ōnē, *a daughter of Acrisius.*

III. Nouns derived from Adjectives.

§ 180. Nouns derived from Adjectives denote a quality or state, and have the following Suffixes:—

1. ĭa: as,

grāt-ia	*favour*	from grātus
insān-ia	*madness*	„ insānus
mĭsĕr-ia	*wretchedness*	„ mĭser
prūdent-ia	*prudence*	„ prūdens

2. **tĭa**; also **tĭes** (5 Decl.): as,

laetĭ-tia	*joy*	from	laetus
justĭ-tia	*justice*	„	justus
mollĭ-tia, mollĭ-ties	*softness*	„	mollis
pigrĭ-tia, pigrĭ-ties	*sloth*	„	pĭger

3. **tās**, tātis, *f.*: as,

bŏnĭ-tas	*goodness*	from	bŏnus
vērĭ-tas	*truth*	„	vērus
crūdēlĭ-tas	*cruelty*	„	crūdēlis
atrōcĭ-tas	*fierceness*	„	atrox

4. **tūdo**, tūdĭnis, *f.*; also **ēdo**, ēdĭnis, *f.*: as,

altĭ-tūdo	*height*	from	altus
aegrĭ-tūdo	*sickness*	„	aeger
fortĭ-tūdo	*bravery*	„	fortis
sĭmĭlĭ-tūdo	*likeness*	„	sĭmĭlis
dulcĭ-tūdo (more freq. dulc-ēdo)	*sweetness*	„	dulcis

5. **mōnĭa**: as,

sanctĭ-mōnia	*sanctity*	from	sanctus
castĭ-mōnia	*purity*	„	castus
ācrĭ-mōnia	*sharpness*	„	ācer

Chapter XXX.—Derivation of Adjectives.

I. Adjectives derived from Verbs.

§ 181. Adjectives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes:

1. **ĭdus** (chiefly from Verbs of the Second Conjugation), denotes the quality expressed by the Verb: as,

frīg-ĭdus	*cold*	from	frīgeo
măd-ĭdus	*wet*	„	mădeo
tĭm-ĭdus	*fearful*	„	tĭmeo
văl-ĭdus	*strong*	„	văleo
trĕp-ĭdus	*alarmed*	„	trĕpo (old Latin: cf. Gk. τρέπω, *I turn.*)

2. **ĭlis** and **bĭlis** denote the possibility of a thing, usually but not always, in a middle or passive sense: as,

dŏc-ĭlis	*teachable*	from	dŏceo
făc-ĭlis	*(doable) easy*	„	făcio
ămā-bĭlis	*loveable*	„	ămo
mō-bĭlis (= mŏvĭ-bĭlis)	*moveable*	„	mŏveo
vŏlū-bĭlis	*apt to roll*	„	volvo

Obs. Some Adjectives in **ĭlis** and **bĭlis** are found in Act. sense, esp. in the poets, e.g. pĕnetrā-bĭlis or pĕnetrālis, *penetrating.*

3. **ax** denotes a propensity, and generally a faulty one: as,

aud-ax	*audacious*	from audeo
ĕd-ax	*gluttonous*	„ ĕdo
lŏqu-ax	*talkative*	„ lŏquor
vŏr-ax	*voracious*	„ vŏro
vīv-ax	*long-lived*	„ vīvo

4. **ĭvus** denotes the possession of a certain quality, corresponding to the Verb: as,

nŏc-īvus	*hurtful*	from nŏceo
rĕcĭd-īvus	*falling back, returning*	„ rĕcĭdo

It is most frequent in Adjectives formed from Sup. or Perf. Part.: as,

cap-tīvus	*captured*	from căpio, captus
fŭgĭ-tīvus	*runaway*	„ fŭgio, fŭgĭtum
praerŏgā-tīvus	*first asked (in voting)*	„ praerŏgo, -ātus

(Subsĕc-īvus, *pared off, remaining over, spare*, is irregularly formed.)

5. **ŭus**: similar to ĭvus: as,

nŏc-uus	*hurtful*	from nŏceo
dēcĭd-uus	*falling off*	„ dēcĭdo
văc-uus	*empty*	„ văco

6. **cundus** (infrequent), denoting an active quality; as,

fā-cundus	*eloquent*	from fā-ri
īrā-cundus	*passionate*	„ īra-scor
jū-cundus	*delightful*	„ jŭ-vo
vĕrē-cundus	*fearing, modest*	„ vĕreor

7. **ŭlus** (infrequent), similar in meaning to the preceding: as,

quĕr-ŭlus	*apt to complain*	from quĕror
trĕm-ŭlus	*trembling*	„ trĕmo

8. **bundus**: similar in force to the Imperfect Participle, but sometimes intensive: as,

mŏrĭ-bundus	*actually dying*	from mŏrior
contiōnā-bundus	*making an harangue*	„ contiōnor
vītā-bundus	*carefully avoiding*	„ vīto

II. Adjectives derived from Nouns.

§ 182. Adjectives are derived from Nouns by the addition of the following Suffixes:

1. **ĕus** denotes the material of which things are made, also sometimes resemblance: as,

aur-eus	*golden*	from aurum
virgĭn-eus	*maidenlike*	„ virgo, -ĭnis
flamm-eus	*fiery*	„ flamma

L

2. **nus**: *made of;* appended chiefly to stems of nouns denoting *trees;* as,

ăcer-nus	*made of maple*	from	ăcer
quer-nus [querc-nus]	*oaken*	„	quercus
ĕbur-nus	*of ivory*	„	ĕbur

3. **ĭcus**: belonging or relating to a thing: as,

bell-ĭcus	*relating to war*	from	bellum
cīv-ĭcus	*relating to a citizen*	„	cīvis
class-ĭcus	*relating to a fleet*	„	classis

Obs. In the following Adjectives, not derived from Nouns, the **i** is long: aprīcus, ămīcus, antīcus, postīcus.

4. **ĭcius** also denotes relation to something: as,

trĭbūn-ĭcĭus	*relating to a tribune*	from	trĭbūnus
aedīl-ĭcius	*relating to an aedile*	„	aedīlis
lătĕr-ĭcius	*made of bricks*	„	lăter

Obs. 1. **āceus** has the same meaning, but is rare: as, argill-āceus, *clayey*, from argilla.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in **icius** derived from the Perfect Part. or Supine have the *i* long, and denote the way in which a thing originates, and hence its nature: as, commentīcius, *fictitious;* trālātīcius, *traditional, ordinary.*

The following suffixes, **ālis (āris), e; īlis, e; ius; īnus; ānus;** are similar in meaning to No. 3 (**ĭcus**), and signify *relating to, belonging to:*

5. **ālis**: very frequent: as,

fāt-ālis	*fatal*	from	fātum
rēg-ālis	*kingly*	„	rex
vīt-ālis	*vital*	„	vīta
mort-ālis	*relating to death*	„	mors
Quĭrīn-ālis	*relating to Quirinus*	„	Quĭrīnus

Obs. If the last syllable of the noun is preceded by *l*, the Suffix of the Adjective is **āris** (comp. § 177, 4): as,

pŏpŭl-āris	*pertaining to the people*	from	pŏpŭlus
sălūt-āris	*salutary*	„	sălūs, sălūtis

Hence come certain Nouns in **ăl** and **ăr**, by dropping the **e** of the neuter and shortening the vowel: as, ănĭmăl (for ănĭmālĕ, *a living thing*); vectīgăl, cervīcăl, etc.; calcăr (for calcārĕ); exemplăr.

6. **īlis**: esp. from Stems in **i**:

host-īlis	*hostile*	from	hostis
serv-īlis	*slavish*	„	servus
pŭĕr-īlis	*childish*	„	puer

7. **ius**: usually forming Adjectives from personal names: as,

patr-ĭus	*pertaining to a father*	from	păter
sŏrōr-ĭus	*pertaining to a sister*	„	sŏror
ōrātōr-ĭus	*pertaining to an orator*	„	ōrātor

8. **īnus**: found especially in derivatives from the names of animals: as,

cān-īnus	*pertaining to a dog*	from cānis
čqu-īnus	*pertaining to a horse*	„ čquus
dīv-īnus	*pertaining to the gods*	„ dīvus

Note the quasi-nouns, agn-īna (*sc.* cāro), *lamb's flesh*; porc-īna, *pork*; fĕr-īna, *venison*; etc.

9. **ānus**: as,

urb-ānus	*pertaining to a city*	from urbs
font-ānus	*pertaining to a fountain*	„ fons, fontis
mont-ānus	*pertaining to a mountain*	„ mons, montis

10. **ārius**: longer form of āris (ālis); very frequent:

agr-ārius	*pertaining to land*	from ăger
grĕg-ārius	*pertaining to a flock*	„ grex, grĕgis
lĕgiōn-ārius	*pertaining to a legion*	„ lĕgio

Obs. *ārius* and *ārium* are often used as the Suffixes of Nouns. See § 178, 8.

11. **ōsus** denotes fulness: as,

lăpĭd-ōsus	*full of stones*	from lăpis
pĕrīcŭl-ōsus	*full of dangers*	„ pĕrīcŭlum
ănĭm-ōsus	*full of courage*	„ ănĭmus

12. **lentus**, usually preceded by the vowel ŭ or ŏ, also denotes fulness: as,

fraud-ŭ-lentus	*full of deceit*	from fraus (fraud-s)
vi-ŏ-lentus	*full of violence*	„ vis

13. **ātus, ītus, ūtus** (according to the stem-vowel): *provided with*: as,

āl-ātus	*furnished with wings, winged*	from āla
tŏg-ātus	*furnished with a toga*	„ tŏga
aur-ītus	*furnished with ears*	„ auris
corn-ūtus	*furnished with horns, horned*	„ cornu

14. **tĭnus**: from words signifying *time*: as,

cras-tĭnus	*to-morrow's*	from crās
annō-tĭnus	*one year old, last year's*	„ annus

III. Adjectives derived from Proper Names.

§ 183. Adjectives are derived from Roman names of men by the Suffix **ānus** or **iānus**: as,

Mări-ānus	from Mărius
Sull-ānus	„ Sulla
Gracch-ānus	„ Gracchus
Cĭcĕrōn-iānus	„ Cĭcĕro

Similarly in the case of legions whose proper name is an ordinal number: as, vīcēsīm-ānus, (*a soldier*) *of the 20th legion*; from Vīcēsīma; etc.

Obs. From Greek names of men we have the Greek Suffixes **ēus** or **īus** and **ĭcus**: as,

Ĕpīcūr-ēus (Ἐπικούρειος)	from Epīcūrus
Ăristŏtĕl-īus (Ἀριστοτέλειος)	„ Aristŏtēles
Plătōn-īcus (Πλατωνικός)	„ Plăto

The poets form Adjectives in **ĕus** from Roman names: as,

Rōmŭl-ĕus	from Rōmŭlus

§ 184. Adjectives are formed from the names of towns by the addition of the following Suffixes:—

1. **ensis**: very frequent: as,

Cann-ensis	from Cannae
Cōm-ensis	„ Cōmum
Sulmōn-ensis	„ Sulmo (Sulmōn-is)

2. **īnus**, from names of towns in *ia* and *ium*: as,

Amĕr-īnus	from Amĕria
Caud-īnus	„ Caudium

3. **ānus**, from names of towns in *a* and *ae*, and from some in *um* and *i*: as,

Rōm-ānus	from Rōma
Thēb-ānus	„ Thēbae
Tuscŭl-ānus	„ Tuscŭlum
Fund-ānus	„ Fundi

4. **ītānus**, chiefly from names of Greek cities: as,

Mĕgălŏpŏl-ītānus	from Mĕgălŏpŏlis
Pănorm-ītānus	„ Panormus

The long ī is probably due to an intermediate form in -ītēs (ἴτης).

5. **ās**, *Gen.* **ātis**, older uncontracted form -**ātis**, e: from Stems in **o** and **a** preceded by **n**: as,

Arpīnās	from Arpīnum
Cāpēnās	„ Cāpēna
Fīdēnas	„ Fīdēnae

Obs. These Adjectives are also used as Substantives to denote the inhabitants: e.g. Arpīnas, *a native of Arpinum.*

N.B.—In Adjectives derived from names of Greek towns the Greek suffixes are retained. The most frequent suffix is *ius*: as,

Cŏrinth-ius	from Cŏrinthus

§ 185. Sometimes Adjectives in **ĭcus** are formed from the names of peoples, especially when the latter are used only as Nouns: as

Gall-ĭcus, *Gallic*	from Gallus, *a Gaul*
Ărăb-ĭcus, *Arabic*	„ Ărabs, *an Arab*

Obs. The names of countries are usually derived from those of the people: as, Hispānia, *Spain*, from Hispānus. Adjectives in **ensis**, derived from such names, denote some relation to the country rather than to the people: as exercĭtus Hispāniensis, *an army stationed in Spain* (not *an army consisting of Spaniards*); but, on the other hand, spartum Hispānĭcum is a plant *growing in Spain*; similarly Gallĭcānus from Gallĭcus: as, Gallicanae legiones, *Roman legions in Gaul* (also used = Gallicus: see Forcell. s.v.).

CHAPTER XXXI.—DERIVATION OF VERBS.

I. VERBS DERIVED FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

§ 186. Derivative Transitive Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and are formed from Nouns and Adjectives by the removal of the Stem-vowel (if any), and the addition of the suffixes of the First Conjugation. They signify *to make* what the Noun or Adjective denotes: as

mātūro	*I make ripe*	from mātūrus
lībĕro	*I make free*	„ lĭber
rōbŏro	*I make strong, I strengthen*	„ rōbŭr (rōbŏr-is)

Obs. A few Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are similarly formed from Adjectives having *i* Stems: as,

fīnio	*I finish*	from fīnis
mollio	*I soften*	„ mollis

§ 187. Many Deponents of the First Conjugation are formed in the same way, and signify *to make oneself* or *to provide oneself with* what the Noun or Adjective denotes: as,

ancillor	*I (make myself) am a maid-servant*	from ancilla
dŏmĭnor	*I (make myself) am master of*	„ dŏmĭnus
ăquor	*I fetch water*	„ ăqua
laetor	*I am joyful*	„ laetus
phĭlŏsŏphor	*I am a philosopher*	„ phĭlŏsŏphus

§ 188. Derivative Intransitive Verbs are usually of the Second Conjugation, and are formed from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (see also § 193): as,

calveo	*I am bald*	from calvus
albeo	*I am white*	„ alvus

Obs. Many Verbs of this kind are only found as inceptives (see § 145): as dūresco (dūreo), *I grow hard*, from dūrus.

II. VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

§ 189. *Frequentative Verbs* express the repetition of an action; and are formed by adding **ito** to the Stem of the First Conjugation,

and to the Supine of the other Conjugations (after removing the endings). They are all of the 1st Conjugation: as,

clām-ĭto	*I cry out often*	from clāmo
rŏg-ĭto	*I ask often*	„ rŏgo
mĭn-ĭtor	*I threaten often*	„ mĭnor
lect-ĭto	*I read often*	„ lĕgo, lectum
script-ĭto	*I write often*	„ scrībo, scriptum
vent-ĭto	*I come often*	„ vĕnio, ventum

Obs. 1. Many frequentatives, especially of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply substituting the verbal terminations: as,

cur-so	*I run hither and thither*	from cŭrro, cursum
sal-to	*I dance*	„ sălio, saltum
ges-to	*I bear (habitually)*	„ gĕro, gestum
spec-to	*I gaze*	„ spĕcio, spectum
dormī-to	*I nod, doze*	„ dormio, dormītum

Obs. 2. The Frequentatives of Deponent Verbs are themselves Deponent: as,

sec-tor	*I follow habitually*	from sĕquor
tūtor	*I guard* „	„ tueor

Obs. 3. Some Frequentatives have an irregular formation: as,

vexo (veh-so) *I toss about, harass* „ vĕho

(Ăg-ĭto, *to drive about*, from ăgo, 3, is formed after the analogy of Frequentatives from Verbs of 1 Conj.)

§ 190. *Inceptive or Inchoative Verbs* express the beginning and increase of an action, and are formed by adding **sco (asco, esco, isco)**, to the Stems of Nouns and Adjectives as well as of Verbs. They are all of the 3rd Conjugation: as,

lăb-asco	*I begin to totter*	from lăbo
căl-esco	*I grow warm*	„ căleo
trĕm-isco	*I begin to tremble*	„ trĕmo
obdormi-sco	*I fall asleep*	„ dormio
sĕn-esco	*I grow old*	„ sĕnex

§ 191. *Desiderative Verbs* express a desire after a thing, and are formed from the Supine by adding **ŭrio**, after removing the um of the termination. They are all of the 4th Conjugation: as,

ēs-ŭrio	*I long to eat*	from ēdo, ēsum
script-ŭrio	*I long to write*	„ scrībo, scriptum

Obs. By analogy Cic. facetiously forms Sullatūrit, *he longs to play the part of Sulla.*

§ 192. *Diminutive Verbs* denote the same action on a smaller scale, and end in **illo**. They are of the 1st Conjugation: as,

cant-illo	*I warble*	from canto
sorb-illo	*I sip*	„ sorbeo
conscrīb-illo	*I scribble*	„ conscrībo

§ 193. Intransitive Verbs of the Second Conjugation sometimes exist side by side with Transitive Verbs of the First or Third Conjugation: as,

dĕ-albo, 1	*to whiten*	albeo, 2	*to be white*
dūro, 3	*to harden*	(*dūreo, 2 § 188)	*to be hard*
jăcio, 3	*to throw*	jăceo, 2	*to lie*
pendo, 3	*to hang, weigh*	pendeo, 2	*to be hanging*
părio, 3	*to bring forth*	părco, 2	*to appear*
(candō, 3 § 140, 20)	*to burn*	candeo, 2	*to be glowing*

Compare also sīdo, 3 (with comps. insīdo, consīdo, etc.), denoting an act, *to settle*, and sĕdeo, 2, denoting a position or state, *to sit, be seated.*

CHAPTER XXXII.—DERIVATION OF ADVERBS AND PARTICLES.

§ 194. It has been already stated that Adverbs are derived from Adjectives, Participles, Nouns, and Pronouns. (Chap. XXIV.)

I. ADVERBS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

The regular formation of these has been treated. Those in **ē** are probably to be traced back to ancient Ablatives in **ēd** (see Part IV., Abl. Sing.). Those in **ō** are obviously Ablatives; whether of time, place, manner, or attendant circumstances: §§ 311, 312.

1. *Adverbs in* **o**.—(i.) A considerable number of these denote the time or condition of things during which something takes place: as, contīnuō (*forthwith*), perpĕtuō, assĭduō, crēbrō, rārō, sērō, sērēnō (*in fair weather*), tranquillō (*in calm*); also the Ordinal Adverbs prīmō, sĕcundō . . . ultĭmō, etc. Praesto (*close at hand*), perhaps a Superlative form from prae, may be referred to this class.

(ii.) Others are derived from Perfect Participles, used in an abstract sense, or absolutely: as, compŏsĭtō (*by agreement*), consultō (*designedly*: but in-consultē, *imprudently*), improvīsō, inspĕrātō, inŏpīnātō, nĕcŏpīnātō, bīpartītō, trīpertītō, mĕrītō, sortītō, intestātō (*without making a will*), prōpĕrātō (Tac.).

(iii.) Others are formed from ordinary Adjectives, and are frequently identical in sense with collateral forms in **ē**: as, falsō (-ē, rare), fortuītō, grātuītō, līquĭdō (-ē), mănīfestō (-ē), mūtuō (-ē), nĕcessārĭō (-ē), prĕcārĭō, sēcrētō, sēdŭlō, sērĭō, vērō (*of a truth*; vērē, *truly*), immo (less correctly īmo), with some others.

2. *Adverbs in* **ĕ**.—These are formed from Adjectives in **is, e**: as, făcĭlĕ (-ĭter, rare), difficĭlĕ (usu. difficulter or difficĭlĭter), and perh. ăbunde (but the quantity of the *e* is uncertain: Gell. has Adj. ăbundus, a, um, which would imply -ē). (In such poetical

phrases as dulce lŏquentem, dulce is Adj.: see § 235, *Obs.*) The etymology of pĕregrĕ (*abroad*) is somewhat obscure.

3. *Adverbs in* **um.**—These are mostly the Neuter Accusatives of Adjectives used adverbially. Such are multum, paullum, nīmium, tantum, quantum, ălīquantum, plērumque, etc.; prīmum, sĕcundum (but usu. ītĕrum), cētĕrum, sōlum, tantum, vērum. To the same category belong num, tum (nun-c, tun-c, by addition of *c*, i.e. *ce*), quum, from Pronominal elements; dum, probably a mutilated Case from *dius (=dies), dēmum, probably lost Sup. corresponding to Prep. dē, with which dēnīque (for dēmīque, by euphonic change) is cognate, and părum, the etymology of which is uncertain. Clancŭlum is dimin. of clam.

Obs. The Pronominal Stems *to-*, *no-*, are Demonstrative in their nature. (See § 913, foll.) The former is seen in the Cases of *ὁ, ἡ, τό*, English *the, that;* the latter in Germ. je-*ne*-r, Skr. *é-na, that.*

4. *Adverbs in* **am.**—These are mostly Accusatives Feminine, viam being probably understood: as, bīfāriam, trīfāriam, multĭfāriam; also, from Pronominal Stems, nam, tam, quam, unquam (nunquam). Clam, cōram, pălam, are perhaps Locative forms: cf. No. 9, *Obs.* The etymology of perpĕram (*amiss*) is uncertain.

5. *Adverbs in* **ā.**—These are Ablatives Feminine, viā being probably understood: as, hā-c, illā-c, istā-c, eā, ăliā, quā, intrā, extrā, ultrā, citrā, contrā, rectā. To this class are probably to be referred juxtā (perhaps a Superlative form) and ī-tā, the latter apparently with twofold pronominal stem and shortened final vowel.

6. *Adverbs in* **ter.**—(See § 153.) The following Adverbs in **ter** are formed from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions: dūrĭter (also dūrē), firmĭter (firmē), (g)nāvĭter (nāvē), hūmānĭter (hūmānē), largĭter (more freq. largē), lūcŭlenter (more freq. lūcŭlentē), viŏlenter (from viŏlentus: viŏlens is late); also ălĭter (from ălius); with some others of less frequent occurrence.

7. *Adverbs in* **ĭs** *and* **īs.**—Of these măgĭs contains abbreviated Comparative stem; as probably do paullĭs-per (in diminutive or softened sense, *for rather a short time only*), and nīmīs. Tantĭsper is apparently formed after analogy of paullisper, but can scarcely be a true Compar. form.

Alternīs (*alternately:* Lucr.) is Abl. Plural, vĭcībus being understood. Bīs (for duis) corresponds to Gk. *δίς* (*δϜίς*).

8. *Adverbs in* **ēs** (formerly **ens**).—These answer the question, *how many times?* and are formed only from Numerals: quinquiēs, sexiēs, quŏtiēs, etc.

9. *Adverbs in* **ĭ** (**bi**), **ō**, **im** (**inc**), **dĕ.**—These are Adverbs of Place, formed, with the exception of those in **de**, from Pronominal stems: **ĭ** or **bi** denoting place *where*, **ō** denoting place *whither*, and **im** (in form **inc**) place *whence*. The forms in **ĭ** and **im** are strengthened by the suffix *c* (*ce*): as, hīc, illīc, istīc; hinc,

illinc (also ōl-im, *from of old*), istinc. From **is** comes Loc. ĭbi (strengthened, ĭbidem); from quīs (unless a different stem be assumed: see p. 61, *Obs.*), ŭbi; from ālius, ālĭbī. (See Table of Adverbs of Place, p. 134.) Indĕ (im-de), undĕ (um-de) have the prepositional suffix dĕ (= dē).

Obs. The suffix *im* is identified by Corssen with Skr. suffix *bhyâm* (found in Abl. Dual); *bh* being originally represented by *f*, whence would arise such forms as illo-fim, isto-fim. Then the *f* first passing into *h* (as in *h*ostis for *f*ostis, etc.) and afterwards disappearing altogether, there would arise the contracted forms illo-im, illim; isto-im, istim.

10. *Adverbs in* **tem** (same stem as tum).—Of these ĭtem contains the Stem of is, ea, id; for autem, cf. Gk. *αὖτις, αὖτε*.

11. *One Adverb in* **ti** (prob. same stem as preceding), ŭ-tī.—The same suffix appears in ĭden-tī-dem (Corss.).

12. *Adverbs in* **versus** *or* **versum**.—These come chiefly from Pronominal and Prepositional stems. The **v** is usually lost in formation, versus, old form vorsus (pp. of verto, vorto), becoming -orsus or -ursus. Those from Pronominal stems are given on p. 134. Those from Prepositions are: dĕorsum (*downwards*), sursum (*upwards*), prorsus (*forwards, outright*), rursus, -um (*back*), sĕorsum (*apart*). Other instances of similar formation are dextrorsum (*towards the right*), sĭnistrorsum (*towards the left*).

13. *Adverbs in* **sĕcus** (perh. akin to Gk. *ἑκάς, far, aloof*): as in extrinsĕcus, intrinsĕcus, altrinsĕcus.

14. *Adverbs in* **tĕnus**.—These are from Pronominal or Prepositional stems: as, hactĕnus (*thus far and no farther*), eātĕnus, quātĕnus, prōtĭnus.

§ 195.—II. Adverbs formed from Nouns.

1. *Adverbs in* **ĭtŭs**.—These denote the source from which something proceeds. The following are the principal:—

caelĭtŭs	*from heaven*	from	caelum
fundĭtŭs	*from the foundation*	„	fundus (*ground, bottom*)
pĕnĭtŭs	*from within, inwardly*	„	pĕnus (*'from the inner chamber or store'*)
rādīcĭtŭs, stirpĭtŭs	*from the roots, 'root and branch'*	„	rādix stirps

After the same analogy are formed from Adjectives:—

antīquĭtŭs	*from olden time*	from	antīquus
dīvīnĭtŭs	*from the gods, by divine power*	„	dīvīnus
hūmānĭtŭs	*after the manner of men, humanly*	„	hūmānus
prīmĭtŭs (not class.)	*from the first*	„	prīmus

This suffix appears also (without connecting Vowel) in **intus, subtus**.

2. Some Adverbs are simply Cases of Nouns used adverbially: e.g.

dŏmī	*at home*	Loc. Sing. of	dŏmus
fŏrīs	*away from home*	Loc. Plur. „	(*fŏra) = fŏrīs, *door*
fŏrās	(to go) *abroad*	Acc. Plur. „	„
noctū	*by night*	Abl. Sing. „	(*noctus) = nox
diū, in conjunction with noctu	*by day*	„ „ „	(*dius) = dies (See also § 194, 3)
grātīs (-iīs)	*for thanks, for nothing*	Abl. Plur. „	grātia
ingrātīs (-iīs)	*without thanks, against one's will*	„ „ „	ingrātia
mŏdŏ (for mŏdō)	*by measure, only*	Abl. Sing. „	mŏdus
fors	*perchance*	Nom. Sing. „	fors
fortĕ	*by chance (accidentally)*	Abl. „ „	„
spontĕ	*of (one's) own accord*	„ „ „	(*spons: § 52)

§ 196.—III. Adverbs derived from Verbs.

These end in **tim** or **sim**, and are probably the Accusatives Singular of lost Verbal Nouns in **is**, formed after the analogy of Supines of Verbs. Similar Adverbs are derived also from Nouns, through supposed Verbal forms. (Cf. ālātus, barbātus, etc.)

(i.) From actual Verbs.

caesim	*by cutting, with the edge*	from	caedo, caesum
punctim	*by stabbing, with the point*	„	pungo, punctum
carptim	*piecemeal*	„	carpo, carptum
cursim	*swiftly*	„	curro, cursum
dĕcussātim	*crosswise*	„	dĕcusso, 1. reg.
exsultim	*bounding-ly*	„	exsĭlio (cf. de-*sal*-tor)
passim	*in all directions*	„	pando, passum
pĕdĕ-tentim	*feeling the way with the foot, cautiously*	„	tendo, tentum
raptim	*hurriedly*	„	răpio, raptum
sensim	(?) *sensibly, gradually*	„	sentio, sensum
singultim	*as one sobbing, in broken language*	„	singultio, singultum
stătim	*on the spot, immediately*	„	sto. stātum
strictim	(*as it were*) *grazing the skin, superficially*	„	stringo, strictum

(ii.) From Nouns or Adjectives, through assumed verbal stems.

cătervātim	*in troops*	from	cătervа
centŭriātim	*by centuries*	„	centŭria
cŭriātim	*by curies*	„	cŭria
oppĭdātim	*town by town*	„	oppĭdum
pectĭnātim	*like (the teeth of) a comb*	„	pecten
syllăbātim	*syllable by syllable*	„	syllăba
turmātim	*by squadrons*	„	turma
paullātim	*little by little, by degrees*	„	paullus
singŭlātim / sĭgillātim	*singly*	„	singuli

N.B.—From vir comes (by vowel assimilation) vīrītim, *man by man*. Juxtim occurs as collateral form of juxt-.

§ 197.—IV. Adverbs and Particles formed from other Adverbs or Particles.

1. With suffix **dem.**—This element has a Demonstrative and emphatic force: as in prīdem (where prī is Locative, in time sense, from same root as prae), tandem, ībīdem, quīdem (the precise etym. of which is obscure), īdentīdem (*again and again*).

2. With suffix **dum** (see above, § 194, 3), as in nondum, necdum, interdum, vixdum, nēdum (in which the force of dum is obscure), dūdum (i.e. dumdum, *long, long ago*). **dam** (perh. with euphonic change of vowel) in quondam appears to have same force.

3. With suffix **do.**—This element (like *dum*) is probably a mutilated Ablative case of dius = dies, denoting *time when;* as in quando, ălīquando, sīquando, nēquando.

4. With suffix **num** (§ 194, 3), in sense of *now* (=nun-c), as in ĕtiamnum.

5. With suffix **nam** (§ 194, 4) as particle of emphasis: in ŭbĭnam, quōnam, ŭtĭnam.

6. With suffix **pe** (of obscure origin and force; perhaps =*que*); as in quippe, nempe.

7. With suffix **per** (*through, very*); chiefly joined to words denoting *a little* of something, *a short time; just, only:* as, părumper, paullisper, tantisper, nūper (=nŏvumper, *just newly*), semper (perh. *once for all;* or acc. to Corssen, '*through the whole;* sem= Skr. *sam*, the whole.')

8. With suffix **piam** (apparently from coalescence of **-pe** and **-iam**, see below, No. 13), with generalizing force, as in uspiam, nuspiam.

9. With **quam** (§ 194, 4), indef. pron. suffix, *in any way soever:* as in tamquam, unquam, usquam (prob. for ubis-quam), quāquam (haudquāquam), quanquam.

10. With suffix **quĕ** (probably for quēd, Abl. of indef. pron., see above, § 194, 1; and for the shortening of the *e*, compare bĕnĕ, mălĕ), *in any way soever;* with universalizing force, as in ŭbīque, ūtīque, usque, undīque, utrimque, utrōbīque. In strengthened form, cunque (i.e. cum-que, quum-que); as in ŭbĭcunque, utcunque, etc.

11. With suffix **quī, quīn** (Locative); as in ălĭōquī (-quīn), cētĕrōquī (-quin), *under other circumstances.*

12. With suffix **ăn** (Gk. *ἄν*), denoting contingency: in forsăn, forsĭtăn.

13. With suffix **iam**, probably identical with the Adverb jam (iam); as in ĕtiam, nunciam. See also above, No. 8.

§ 198. Some Adverbs are compounded of two or more words: as of an Adjective and a Substantive; or of a Preposition and a Substantive: or of two Verbs: as,

hŏdĭē	from	**hōc dĭē**	*on this day*
quŏtīdĭē	„	**quŏt dĭes**	*every day*
magnŏpĕrĕ	„	**magnō ŏpĕrĕ**	*greatly*
tantŏpĕrĕ	„	**tantō ŏpĕrĕ**	*so greatly*
obvĭam	„	**ob vĭam**	*in the way of*
quamobrem	„	**quam ob rem**	*wherefore*
invĭcem	„	**in vĭcem**	*in turn*
scīlĭcĕt	„	**scīre lĭcĕt**	*doubtless, of course*
vīdēlĭcĕt	„	**vīdērĕ lĭcĕt**	*manifestly, to wit*
quamvīs	„	**quam vīs (vŏlo)**	*however much*

with many others.

Chapter XXXIII.—Compound Words.

§ 199. In the process of Derivation, the new word is formed from an existing one, by the addition of an element which is purely functional, and has no independent existence; either with or without internal change: as, Stem **dŭc-**; derived words, dūc-o, dux (i.e. duc-s), duc-tor: Stem **ăg-**; derived words, ăg-o, ac-tor, ac-tio, ăg-ilis, ag-men.

In the process of Composition, two or more independent words are brought together; the result being a word which in some way combines the meanings of both: as, agrī-cŏla (from ăger and cŏlo), *land-tiller:* omnī-pŏtens (from omnis and pŏtens), *able to do all things, all-powerful.*

§ 200. In forming a Compound Word, the Stems of the separate words (which often suffer abbreviation in the process) are combined; and the Compound takes its own appropriate Derivative Suffix, as if it were a simple word: e.g. ignī-fer (for ignī-fĕr-us), *fire-bringing;* from Stems **igni** and **fer**; Compound Stem ignĭfĕro-: aequī-noctium, *equinox;* from Stems **aequa** (shortened aequĭ) and **nocti**; Compound Stem, aequĭnoctio- (Suffix **ium**; see § 178, 4).

In some cases, Composition takes place by means of a Prefix which is not found existing as an independent word. Such Prefixes are **in-**, *not;* **dis-**, *in two, separately;* **sē-**, *apart from;* **ambi-** or **amb-**, *on both sides;* **red-**, **rĕ-**, *back again:* see § 203, 3. But there can be little doubt that most of these existed as separate words long after the language assumed its present form; so that they cannot, like the Suffixes, be regarded as purely functional.

Obs. Dis and *ambi* exist as separate words in Greek (*δίς, twice; ἀμφί, on both sides*). *Se* = *sed;* probably originally abl. of *se, by itself.*

§ 201. In some cases, quasi-compound words have arisen from the

mere juxtaposition of two words often used together; as; res-publĭca, jus-jūrandum, senatūs-consultum, păter-fămilĭas. But when each of the words keeps its own inflection, true composition has not taken place, and the words may equally well be written separately. This is further seen by the fact that an enclitic may sometimes be found placed between the factors of the so-called Compound; e.g. milites patresque familiae (Caes.).

Compound Nouns.

§ 202. The following classes of Compound Nouns deserve special mention:—

1. Names of agents; in which the former part of the Compound word is the stem of a Noun, and the latter the stem of a Verb; the Noun being the Object of the Verb: e.g.,

agrĭcŏla	*land-tiller*	(agrum colere)
jūdex	*judge*	(jus dicere)
ŏpĭfex	*work-doer*	(opus facere)
armĭger	*armour-bearer*	(arma gerere)
pontĭfex	*pontiff*	(pontem facere
auspex	*taker of auspices*	(aves specere)

In other cases, the relation of the Noun to the Verb is less direct: e.g.—

tūbĭcen	*trumpeter*	(tubā canere)
artĭfex	*skilled workman*	(arte facere)
manceps	*purchaser*	(*rem* manu capere, from the customary procedure in buying)

Nouns like perfūga, transfūga, must be regarded as Derivatives from Compound Verbs; not as themselves Compound Words.

2. Names of things (rarely persons), formed by the union of a Noun-Stem and an Adjective-Stem; the latter serving to define the former: e.g.—

lātĭfundium	*vast landed estate*	(latus fundus)
mĕrĭdies	*mid-day*	(medius dies)
prīvĭlēgium	*a law aimed at an individual*	(priva lex)
dĕcempĕda	*a ten-foot rule or chain*	(decem pedes)
vīvĭrādix	*a quickset*	(viva radix)

3. Names of persons and things formed from Nouns by the addition of a Prefix of some kind. The relations of these two elements vary. In numerous cases, the Prefix has an Adjectival force; in some it is Prepositional: e.g.—

nĕgōtium	*occupation*	(nec otium = nullum otium)
nēmo	*nobody*	(ne homo = nullus homo)
ăbăvus	*great-grandfather*	(ab avo)
cōhēres	*joint-heir*	(heres cum *altero*)
convallis	*a narrow valley, defile*	(con vallis)
incūria	*want of care*	(in negative)
prōnōmen	*pronoun*	(pro nomine)
pōmoerium	*space behind the walls*	(post moeros, i.e. muros)

Compound Adjectives.

§ 203. The number of Compound Adjectives is immense: all complex ideas being descriptive, and therefore commonly adjectival in their nature. Very many Compound Nouns are Adjectival forms used substantively; and many which are true Substantives are used also as Adjectives: as, artĭfex, index, armĭger, etc.

The following are the principal classes of Compound Adjectives:—

1. Adjectives compounded of a Noun and an Adjective, the sense of which might be represented by a Genitive or Ablative of description (§§ 274, 319): e.g.—

magnănĭmus	*having a great spirit*	(= magni animi or, magnum animum habens)
cĕlĕrĭpes	*swift-footed*	(= celeribus pedibus or, celeres pedes habens)
multĭcŏlor	*many-coloured*	(= multis coloribus or, multos colores habens)
centĭceps	*many-headed*	(= centum capitibus or, centum capita habens)

2. Adjectives compounded of a Noun and a Verb, the Noun being the object of the Verb. These correspond to Class 1 of Compound Nouns: e.g.—

lānĭfer	*bearing wool*	(lanam ferre)
lānĭger	,,	(lanam gerere)
multĭlŏquus	*speaking much*	(multa loqui)
tūrĭcrĕmus	*consuming incense*	(tura cremare)
mīrĭfĭcus	*wonder-working*	(mira facere)

3. Adjectives formed from other Adjectives by means of a modifying prefix: e.g.—

in-, *not:* in-justus, ĭn-īquus (aequus), ĭn-ĭmīcus (amicus), im-par, with very many others.

pĕr, prae, *very, exceedingly:* per-multus, per-paucus, per-făcĭlis, per-difficĭlis; prae-grandis, prae-dīves, prae-dūrus, prae-calvus, prae-cānus.

sŭb, *rather so:* sub-difficĭlis, sub-nĭger, sub-fuscus.

dĭs-, in a few Adjectives with negative force: dis-par, dis-sĭmĭlis, dif-fĭcĭlis.

pro, *forwards:* prō-curvus, *bent forwards;* prō-pŭtŭlus, *opening forth, public.*

ŏb, *towards*, ob-longus, ŏb-uncus (*hooked in*, or *back*), ob-stīpus (*bent back*).

rĕ-, rĕd-, *backwards, back:* rĕ-curvus, rĕ-pandus (*spread backwards, turned up*), rĕd-ĭ-vīvus, rĕd-uncus, rĕ-dux.

vē- (probably identical with Sanskr. prefix *vi*, implying *separation*; cf. *dis*, i.e. *dvis*, § 194, 7), apparently with both negative and intensive force: vē-grandis, vē-sānus, vē-pallĭdus.

sēmĭ-, *half:* sēmĭ-vīvus, sēmĭ-nex, sēmĭ-ănĭmis, sēmĭ-nūdus.

4. Adjectives formed from words other than Adjectives, by means of a prefix, which is usually a Preposition: e.g.—

ā, ăb, abs, *away from:* ā-mens, ā-vius, abs-ens, abs-tēmius.

ăd, *to, towards:* ac-clīvis (clīvus, *slope*).

antĕ, *before:* antĕ-lūcānus, antĕ-mĕrīdiānus.

circum, *around, about:* circum-fōrāneus, circum-pădānus.

cis, *on this side of:* cis-alpīnus, cis-pădānus.

con-, cum, *with, together:* con-tŭbernālis, cog-nōmĭnis, con-sanguĭneus.

dē, *down, from:* dē-clīvis, dē-mens.

ē, ex, *out of:* ex-lex, ex-cors, ex-spes, ē-grĕgius (grex), ē-lumbis (*weak in the loins*, lumbus).

ĭn (*prep.*), *in, on:* in-signis (*having a mark on*).

ĭn (*negative*): im-berbis, im-bellis, im-plūmis.

inter, *between:* inter-cus (*between skin and flesh*, inter cutem).

per, *through:* per-vius.

prae, *before:* prae-ceps (caput), prae-vius.

pro, *forward:* prō-cērus (*tall:* rt. of creo, *form, grow*), prō-clīvis.

rĕ-, rĕd-, *back, backward:* rĕ-bellis, re-clīnis.

sē-, *apart from:* sē-cūrus, *without care.*

trans, *across:* trans-alpīnus, trans-rhēnānus.

vē-, (see above, No. 3): vē-cors (*mad, raging*).

Compounds in **bĭ-** (=dui-), may be referred to Class 1 of Compound Adjectives: e.g. bĭ-dens, bĭ-māris, bĭ-pes, bĭ-ceps.

Compound Verbs.

§ 204. Compound Verbs are formed from Simple Verbs by means of prefixes, chiefly Prepositions: viz.,

ăb, abs, ā [for the euphonic changes of this and the foll. Prepositions, see § 167], *away, off:* as, ăb-īre, ab-dūcĕre, ab-jūdĭcare; au-ferre, au-fŭgĕre; abs-cēdĕre, abs-tĭnēre, as-portāre; ā-bītĕre (*to go away*), ā-mandāre.

ăd, *to, towards; just touching:* as, ăd-īre, ac-cedĕre, ăd-ūrĕre (*to burn on the surface, to singe*); *in addition*, as, ad-discĕre; also in intensive sense, as, ăd-āmāre (*to love passionately*): and implying *accession* or *agreement*, as as-sentīri. Sometimes the force of the prefix is to be felt rather than distinctly expressed in English: as, ad-mĭnistrāre, *to manage, attend to;* af-firmāre, *to assert positively;* ad-sĭdĕre, *to sit down;* a-stāre, *to stand present.*

amb-, *around* [Gk. ἀμφί]: amb-īre (*to go round, canvass*), amb-ūrĕre (*to burn all round, all but consume*), amb-ĭgĕre.

an-, apparently in sense of *up* (Gk. ἀνά): ăn-hēlāre.

com (old form of cum), *together:* as, con-vĕnīre, con-vŏcāre, cŏ-īre, col-lĭgĕre: also in sense of *completely;* conclāre (*to stir up thoroughly*), com-mŏrāri (*to stay some considerable time*), complēre (*to fill full*).

Obs. Sometimes the Compound seems to be used without any perceptible access of meaning: e.g. com-mŏvēre (*to stir*), con-sōlāri (*to console*), con-demnāre (*to condemn*), convălescĕre (*to recover strength*).

contrā, *against* (rare in comp.): contrā-dīcĕre.

dē, *down;* esp. with reference to a point sought; *from, off;* and in intensive sense, *to the end, completely, violently;* also like the Eng. *un-* (Germ. *ent-*), *to undo an action:* dē-prĭmĕre, de-stĭnāre (*to fasten down*, e.g. *a beam, an anchor:* hence figuratively, *to settle, fix*); dē-dūcĕre (*to lead to the destined point, to escort home*), dē-currĕre (*to have recourse to*); dē-hortāri (*to dissuade from*); dē-fungi (*to have done with*), dē-bellāre (*to carry on a war to the end*), dē-proeliāri (*to battle furiously*), dē-tōnāre (*to cease thundering;* of a storm, *to spend itself*); dē-dŏcēre (*to unteach; teach not to*), dē-discĕre (*to unlearn*), dĕ-armāre (*to disarm*), dĕ-hŏnestāre (*to disgrace*).

Obs. Sometimes *de* in composition seems to have a bad sense: as, dē-cīpĕre, dē-lūdĕre, etc. Such words may however mostly be referred to the sense '*completely:*' e.g. de-ludere, *regularly to play off a game upon;* so, de-cipere, de-ridere.

dĭs- (dĭr-), dī-: *asunder, apart; in different directions:* dif-findĕre (*to cleave asunder*), dis-cēdĕre (*to part*), dis-cumbĕre (of guests, *to take their several places*); dis-sĭdēre (*to dissent*), di-gnoscĕre (*to know one thing from another; to distinguish*); dĭr-ĭmĕre, *to part;* dĭr-ĭbēre (habere), *to sort out.* Also in colloq. Latin, with intensive force: dis-cŭpĕre (*to desire exceedingly*), dis-taedēre (*to affect with exceeding weariness*); dī-laudāre (*to praise to the skies*); all of very rare occurrence.

ex, ē: *out, out of, off; up; to the end, thoroughly, exceedingly;* also like Eng. *un-* (Germ. *ent-*): ex-īre, ex-cēdĕre, ef-fŭgĕre, ē-mŏri (*to die off, speedily*); ex-sŭpĕrāre (*to tower up*), ex-struĕre (*to pile up*), e-scendĕre (*to mount*); ē-nīti (*to climb up*); ē-bĭbĕre (*to drink off*), ex-plēre (*to fill up completely*), ē-mīrāri (*to wonder greatly at*); ex-augūrāre (*to unconsecrate*). Also in some words, ex has a sort of pregnant sense, and conveys the notion of *getting something out* by an action: as, ex-ōrāre (*to gain by entreaty*), ē-blandīri (*to obtain by coaxing*).

Obs. In some cases, Verbs beginning with *ex* are not true compounds: e.g. exossāre, *to bone*, i.e. *take the bones out before cooking.* No such verb as ossāre is possible; and apart from the intermediate Adjective exos, *boneless*, the Verb may be taken directly from the stem ŏssi- (for *osti-*), shortened to *oss-* before the suffix -āre, *to make.* Similarly, ēnōdāre, *to free from knots;* ē-mendāre, *to free from faults*, etc.

in (old forms **endŏ, indŭ**): *in, into, on, upon, against:* in-grĕdi, in-nūbĕre (*to marry into another family*), in-ūrĕre (*to burn in, brand*), also perh. ind-ucre (*to put on*), in-stāre (*to press on*), in-vādĕre (*to go against, fall upon*), in-dīcĕre (esp. of *declaring war against*).

In one verbal compound, the negative **in** is used: i-gnoscĕre (*to take no notice of, to forgive*).

intĕr: *between; at intervals* or *with interruptions;* also, of *difference:* less freq. in bad sense, implying *destruction* (cf. Germ. *unter*, Eng. *under*): inter-fluĕre, inter-mittĕre (*to leave intervals, stop from time to time*), inter-fringĕre (*to break off, destroying continuity*), inter-dīcĕre (*to cut off from, by judicial sentence*), intĕr-īre (*to perish*), inter-fĭcĕre (*to kill*).

intrō, *adv. in, within:* intrō-dūcĕre, intrō-grĕdi, etc.

ŏb, *in the way of, against, forward, towards: over; down:* op-pōnĕre, ob-jĭcĕre, ŏb-esse (*to injure*), of-ferre (*to put forward*), ŏb-īre (*to travel over;* also = per-ire, *to perish*), oc-cĭdĕre (of the sun, *to set*), oc-cīdĕre (*to cut down in battle*), ob-tĕrĕre (*to trample underfoot*).

pĕr, *through, thoroughly;* and in bad sense, *coming to an end:* per-cōlāre, per-meāre; per-fĭcĕre (*to complete*), per-ferre (*to carry through, pass* a law), per-suādēre (*to succeed in persuading*), per-dĕre (*to for-do, destroy*), pĕr-īre (*to perish*).

post, *after,* of time or preference: post-gĕnĭtus (*born afterwards*), post-pōnĕre (*to regard as of inferior importance*), post-hăbēre.

prae, *before* (of place or time): *in front of; at the extremity of;* of precedence, *at the head of, before others:* prae-grĕdi, prae-īre, prae-occŭpāre, prae-fīgĕre (*to fix at the end of*), prae-ăcuĕre *to sharpen at the end*), prae-esse (*to be at the head of*), prae-fulgēre (*to outshine*). (Quantity of prae before a vowel in comp. is short.)

praetĕr, *by the side of, past,* chiefly with Verbs of motion: praeter-lābi, praeter-fluĕre, praetĕr-īre.

prŏ [**prōd** before a vowel: *forward, forth,* oft. of publicity: prōd-īre, prō-grĕdi, prŏ-fĭtĕri (*to avow openly*), prō-jĭcere, prō-creāre (with the notion of *carrying on* the race). (**por-** in por-rĭcĕre, pol-lingĕre, etc., is probably a separate prefix: see Smaller L. Dict. s.v. polliceor.)

rĕd-, rĕ- [**rĕd** before vowels], *back, backwards; again; in reply, against:* of reversing an action, like Eng. *un-* (= Germ. *ent-*): rĕd-īre, re-grĕdi; rĕ-cĭdere, rĕ-cĭnĕre (*to sing in response, to echo*), rĕd-ămāre (*to love in return*), re-spondēre (strictly, *to engage on the other part*), rĕ-pugnāre (*to struggle against*); re-clūdĕre (*to unclose, to open*), rĕ-sĕrāre (*to unlock*). (The syllable **red-** seems to have been originally long.)

sēd-, sē- [**sēd-** before vowels, but only found in Noun sēd-ĭtio: **se-** before consonants], *apart:* sē-cēdĕre, sē-jungĕre (*to separate*), sē-pōnĕre.

sŭb, usually *under, up* or *close to, up;* hence, of *taking another's place; secretly; slightly:* sup-pōnĕre, suc-cendĕre (*to ignite from below*), sŭb-īre (*to go under; to come up to*), sum-mŏvēre (*to clear away*), su-spĭcĕre (*to look up to;* but su-spĭcāri, *to look under, to suspect*), suc-currĕre (*to hasten up, to relieve*), sub-sĕqui (*to follow up closely*), sŭb-esse (*to be close at hand*), suf-fĭcĕre (*to appoint in the place of*), sub-stĭtŭĕre (*to substitute*); sur-rĭpĕre (*to seize secretly, pilfer*), sub-rēpĕre (*to creep on stealthily*); sub-rīdēre (*to laugh gently, smile*), sub-īrāsci (*to be somewhat angry:* colloq.).

subtĕr, *under:* only with verbs of motion; subter-lābi, subter-volāre.

sŭpĕr, *over, upon*, of place; also in figurative sense, *over and above:* sŭper-vŏlāre, sŭpĕr-immĭnēre; sŭpĕr-esse.

trans, *across;* in figurative sense, *through, from end to end:* trans-currĕre, trans-dūcĕre or trā-dūcĕre; trā-jĭcĕre, trans-lūcēre or trā-lūcēre; trans-ĭgĕre (*to carry through, finish*).

§ 205. Such phrase-verbs as bĕnĕ-făcĕre, mălĕ-făcĕre, sătis-făcĕre, mănū-mittĕre (*to emancipate;* from the symbolical act of *letting go from the hand*), can only be regarded as quasi-compounds, since the parts may also be written separately.

§ 206. Sometimes a kind of causative verb is formed by compounding an Intransitive Verb-stem with făcĕre: e.g. călĕ-făcĕre (*to heat*), lăbĕ-făcĕre (*to cause to totter;* from lăbāre); both of which have frequentative forms, călĕfactāre, lăbĕfactāre. Verbs such as aedĭfĭc-āre, nīdĭfĭc-āre (*to build a nest*), are not compounds, but formed from the stems of intermediate compound Adjectives (aedĭfĭc-us, nīdĭfĭc-us) whether the corresponding words themselves are in use or not.

Changes undergone by Verbs in Composition.

§ 207. These take place in accordance with the affinities of Vowels as explained above (§ 3), and the change is always in the direction of lightening the Vowel sound; namely from *a* to *e* and *i*, or to *o* and *u*; also from *e* to *i*, and from *o* to *u*.

1. Short *a* is usually changed into short *i* before one consonant, but sometimes into short *e:* as,

căpio	*to take*	ac-cĭpio
răpio	*to seize*	ar-rĭpio
pătior	*to suffer*	per-pĕtior
grădior	*to walk*	con-grĕdior

Obs. Pĕrăgo, *to complete*, perplăceo, *to please greatly*, and făcio compounded with adverbs, as sătisfăcio, *to satisfy*, are exceptions.

2. *a* before two consonants is usually changed into *e:* as,

carpo	*to pluck*	con-cerpo
damno	*to condemn*	con-demno
scando	*to climb*	con-scendo
spargo	*to scatter*	con-spergo

3. *a* is sometimes changed into *u*, especially before *l*: as,

salto	*to dance*	in-sulto
calco	*to tread*	con-culco
quătio	*to shake*	con-cŭtio

4. Short *e* is changed into short *i* before one consonant: as,

ĕgĕo	*to want*	ind-ĭgeo
sĕdeo	*to sit*	in-sĭdeo
tĕneo	*to hold*	abs-tĭneo

Obs. Perlĕgo, *to read through*, praelĕgo, *to read to others*, rĕlĕgo, *to read again*, are exceptions.

5. The diphthong *ae* becomes long *i*: as,

caedo	*to cut*	oc-cīdo
quaero	*to seek*	in-quīro
laedo	*to dash*	col-līdo

6. The diphthong *au* becomes either *ō* or *ū*, but in one instance *ē* (*œ*): as,

plaudo	*to clap the hands*	ex-plōdo
claudo	*to shut*	con-clūdo
audio	*to hear*	ŏb-ēdio

Obs. The changes which the prepositions undergo in composition are mentioned in § 167.

§ 208. Nouns and Adjectives in composition are usually connected by the vowel ĭ, or the last syllable of the stem of the first word is changed into *i*: as,

pĕdĭsĕquus	*a follower on foot*	from	pes (pĕd-) and sĕquor
mūnĭfĭcus	*bountiful*	„	mūnus (mūnĕs-) and făcio
causĭdĭcus	*an advocate*	„	causa and dĭc in dīco = deico
agrĭcŏla	*a husbandman*	„	ăgĕr (agro-) and cŏlo
ăquĭlĭfĕr	*a standard-bearer*	„	ăquĭla and fĕro

The *quantity* of words in composition is the same as that of the simple words: as, fĕro, affĕro: hăbeo, pro-hĭbeo, etc. The exceptions are mentioned in the chapter on Prosody.

PART II.—SYNTAX.

BOOK I.

§ 209. Syntax treats of the relations of words and sentences or parts of sentences to each other.

CHAPTER XXXIV.—OF SENTENCES.

§ 210. The elementary parts of a sentence are two: SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The Subject is that of which something is affirmed or predicated (praedĭcāre, *to affirm*); the Predicate is that which is affirmed of the Subject.

Obs. 1. In Grammar the terms Subject and Predicate are usually applied to single words. Thus in the sentence Alexander rex Măcĕdŏnum Bābўlŏne mortuus est, *Alexander* is the Subject—not the entire phrase Alexander rex Macedonum—and *mortuus est* the Predicate. The *logical* Subject, on the other hand, includes the grammatical Subject together with its attributives.

Obs. 2. The term Predicate is by an extension of its original meaning applied to sentences which contain a question or a command instead of an affirmation: as,

Quis crēdat? *Who would believe?* Tu ne quaesiĕris, *inquire not thou* (Hor. Od. 1, 11, 1): where the Predicates are *credat* and *quaesieris*.

§ 211. THE SUBJECT.—The Subject of a sentence must be either a Noun or some word (or words) equivalent to a Noun: as,

India mittit ĕbur—*ĕgo* te dēfendam—*virtus* laudātur—*bŏni* laudantur—*bĕnĕ lābōrāre* est bĕnĕ ōrāre.

Obs. The Subject is often indicated solely by the termination of a Verb, so that a sentence may consist of a single word: as, vīcīmus, *we have conquered;* vixērunt, *they have lived, have ceased to exist.* In such cases the personal suffix is really a Pronominal Subject in an abbreviated form. See § 122.

§ 212. Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a Verbal Noun, is often the Subject of a sentence (see also § 505): as,

At pulchrum (est) dīgĭto monstrārī, *But it is a fine thing to be pointed out (for admiration) with the finger.*—Pers. (1, 28.) (Subject, monstrari.)

Obs. Any word, or even letter, when spoken of *as such*, may become the Subject of a sentence: as,

Atque partĭcŭla conjunctio esse dīcĭtur connexīva, *The particle* atque *is said to be a connective conjunction.*—Gell. (10, 29.)

§ 213. THE PREDICATE.—The Predicate of a sentence must always be a Finite Verb, either alone or with some complementary word: as,

Ego *văleo*—fīlius patrem *ămat*—Orgĕtŏrix *mortuus est*—Trōja *fuit*—ĕgo *nōmĭnor leo.*

The Verb sum being a Verb of incomplete predication (except when used in the sense of *to exist*), the Nominative Case after it (§ 232) is called the Complement of the Predicate, and the Predicate may be regarded as consisting of the Verb and its Complement: as,

Grātissĭma (*est*) myrtus Vĕnĕrī, *The myrtle is most pleasing to Venus.*—Virg. (E. 7, 61.)

Obs. No part of the Infinite Verb (including Infinitive Mood, Participles, etc.) is capable of making a predication. But the Infinitive after a Verb of *saying* or *thinking*, representing as it does a Finite Verb in an independent sentence, may be regarded as a Virtual or Secondary Predicate. See § 507.

§ 214. APPOSITION.—Sometimes a Noun is followed by another Noun descriptive of the same thing. The latter Noun is then said to be in *Apposition* with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same Number, and, if possible, in the same Gender: as,

Scĕlĕrum *inventor* Ūlysses, *Ulysses, contriver of crimes.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 164.)

Ŏleae Mĭnerva *inventrix, Minerva, inventress of the olive.*—Virg. (G. 1, 19.)

Hārum dispūtātiōnum *inventōri* . . . Plātōni, *To Plato the inventor of these discussions.*—Cic. (de Or. 1, 47.)

Ut ŏmittam illas omnium doctrīnārum *inventrices* Athēnas, *To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventress of all branches of learning.*—Cic. (de Or. 1, 13.)

Obs. 1. In the case of Nouns possessing a twofold form, as *măgister, măgistra; mĭnister, mĭnistra; inventor, inventrix;* the Masculine form is used in apposition with Masculine Nouns, and the Feminine with Feminines, as in the preceding examples.

Obs. 2. When two or more members of the same family are mentioned *together, the gentile or family name* is often given in the Plural, *instead of being repeated* with each in the Singular: as, Cn. et P. *Scīpiōnes (Cic. Sen. 29)*, L. et C. Quinctios Cincinnātos (Liv. 6, 32). *Similarly in the case of lĕgio:* cum lĕgiōnibus sĕcundā ac tertiā (Liv. 10, 18).

§ 215. When the Noun in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and Number of the original subject: as,

Tullĭŏla, *dēlĭcĭŏlae nostrae*, mūnuscŭlum tuum *flāgĭtat, Tullia, my little darling, clamours for your present.*—Cic. (Att. 1, 8, *fin.*)

§ 216. When the Noun in apposition is *urbs, oppĭdum, cīvĭtas* or a similar word, the Predicate is regularly made to agree with it: as,

Cŏrĭŏli *oppĭdum* capt-*um*, *The town of Corioli was taken.*—Liv. (2, 33.)

Tungri, *cīvĭtas* Galliae, fontem *habet* insignem, *The country of the Tungri, a people of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain.*—(Plin. 31, 12.) (See also § 229.)

§ 217. Very often simple Apposition takes place in Latin where in English we should use the word "as" or "when:" as,

Dēfendi rempublĭcam ădŏlescens, *I defended the commonwealth as* (or *when*) *a youth.*—Cic. (Phil. 2, 118.)

Consul ĭtĕrum C. Flaminio trĭbūno plēbis restĭtit, *When consul for the second time, he (Fabius) withstood C. Flaminius, tribune of the plebs.*—Cic. (Sen. 11.)

Obs. But when *as* denotes a comparison, it must be expressed by ŭt or tanquam: as,

Hic bella gĕrēbat *ut ădŏlescens*, quum plānē grandis esset, *He waged wars like a youth, when he was quite old.*—Cic. (Sen. 10.)

Cĭcĕro . . . . . quae nunc ūsū vēniunt, cĕcĭnit *ŭt vātes, Cicero predicted like a prophet, those things which are now happening.*—Nep. (Att. 16.)

Chapter XXXV.—Concord and Government.

§ 218. Syntax may be divided into two parts: Syntax of Concord and Syntax of Government.

Syntax of Concord treats of such agreement or correspondence as exists between words related to each other;

Syntax of Government treats of the modifying influence exerted upon one word by another on which it depends. Thus in the sentence,

Alexander vīcit Darīum, *Alexander conquered Darius,*

the Verb *vicit* corresponds ("agrees") with the subject *Alexander* in Number and Person [Syntax of Concord]; while the Noun *Darium* is put in the Accusative Case on account of its dependence upon the Transitive Verb *vicit*, by which it is said to be "governed." [Syntax of Government.]

First Concord.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as.

Ego dŏceo—vos discītis—nos dŏcēmus—pueri discunt.

§ 220. When two or more Singular Nouns form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,

Castor et Pollux ex ĕquis pugnāre *vīsi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.*—Cic. (N. D. 2. 6.)

Conclāmant vir pătĕrque, *Husband and father raise loud cries.*—Liv. (1, 58, *extr.*)

Nec dŭbĭtāro quīn *Sȳphax regnumque* ējus in pŏtestāte Rōmānōrum *essent, were in the hands of the Romans.*—Liv. (28, 18.)

Obs. 1. When the Subject consists of two Singular Nouns which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,

Rătio ordoque agmĭnis ălĭter se hăbēbat, *The plan and order of march was different.*—Caes. (B. G. 2, 19.)

Cum tempus nĕcessĭtasque *postŭlat, When time and necessity demand(s).*—Cic. (Off. 1, 81.)

Relĭgio et fides *antĕpōnātur* ămīcĭtiae, *Let duty and good faith be preferred to friendship.*—Cic. Off. (3, 46.)

Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque Rōmānus *intellĭgit, The senate and people of Rome is aware.*—Cic. (Fam. 5, 8, 1.). (So commonly after this phrase: cf. Cic. Pis. 57. But the plural also occurs: quum senatus populusque R. comprobaverint, Liv. 37, 45, *med.*)

Obs. 2. Sometimes, when there are two or more Subjects, the Verb agrees with the nearest and is understood with the rest: as,

Orgĕtŏrīgis fīlia [capta est] et *ūnus* e fīliis *captus est, The daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons* was *taken prisoner.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 26.)

Obs. 3. Occasionally a Plural Verb is used when an Ablative is connected by the Preposition *cum* with a Nominative Case in the Singular, as:

Bocchus cum pĕdĭtĭbus . . . postrēmam ăciem Rōmānōrum *invādunt*, *Bocchus along with the infantry fall upon the rear of the Romans.*—Sall. (Jug. 101, *med.*)

This construction is extremely rare in Cic., and does not occur at all in Caes. In Sall. and Liv. it is not infrequent. (Dräger.)

4. When two Singular Subjects connected by *aut* are presented disjunctively, i.e. as alternatives which are mutually exclusive, the Verb must be in the Singular: as,

Quum *esset* prōpōsīta *aut* fŭga turpis *aut* glōriōsa mors, *When the alternative of shameful flight or glorious death* [i.e. *one or the other*, not *both*] *was set before* (*them*).—Cic. (Fin. 2, 97.)

But when the two Subjects are used collectively, or when the choice between them is matter of indifference, the Plural may be used: as,

Si quid Sōcrātes aut Aristippus . . . . *fēcĕrint lŏcūtīve sint*, i.e. *Whatever these men may have done or said.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 148.) Cf. also id. Tusc. 5, 26, when the Sing. is used.

Ut quosque aut stŭdium aut grātia occŭpāverant, *According as personal feeling or favour had influenced them* (i.e. *whether the one or the other or both*).—Liv. (5, 8, *extr.*) Similarly with *vel* (*ve*), *seu*.

Obs. 5. In the case of Singular Subjects connected by nĕc (nĕque), the Verb is regularly Singular. But when the Subjects are of different persons, the Plural may be used: as,

Haec si nĕque ego nec tu *fēcĭmus*, *If you and I never offended in this way.*—Ter. (Ad. 1, 2, 23.)

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, a Subject of the First Person and a Subject of the Second or Third Person are considered as together equivalent to a First Person Plural (= nos); while a Subject of the Second Person and a Subject of the Third Person are together equivalent to a Second Person Plural (= vos): thus ĕgo et tu, or ĕgo et frāter meus, both = nos; while tu et ille, tu et frāter, = vos: as,

Si tu et Tullia lux nostra (= vos) *vălētis*, ego et suāvissĭmus Cĭcĕro (= nos) *vălēmus*, *If you and my darling Tullia* (= *ye*) *are well, so am I and our sweetest Cicero* (= *so are we*).—Cic. (Fam. 14, 5.)

Obs. In Latin the First Person always takes precedence of the Second: as, ĕgo et rex, *I and the king*.

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Noun ("Noun of Multitude"), or a word implying plurality, the Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the poets: as,

Cum tanta multĭtūdo lăpĭdes ac tēla *conjĭcerent*, *were showering stones and darts*.—Caes. (B. G. 2, 6.)

Tūra *fĕrant plăcentque* nŏvum pia *turba* Quĭrīnum, *Let the pious people offer incense and propitiate the new* (*deity*) *Quirinus*.—Ov. (Fast. 2, 507.)

Dēsectam sĕgĕtem magna *vis hŏmĭnum* sĭmul immissa corbĭbus *fŭdēre* in Tĭbĕrim, *A large body of men was set to work at once to reap the corn*, and they *emptied it from baskets into the Tiber*.—Liv. (2, 5.)

Obs. 1. This construction is not used by Cic., and is exceptional in prose writers of the best age. It is however of frequent occurrence in Livy and in the poets. The following Collective Nouns are found with plural predicate in Livy: actas, civitas, classis, cohors, equitatus, gens, globus, juventus, manus, multitudo, nobilitas, pars, vis (hominum), plebes, senatus, turba, vulgus. (Drüger, 1, 172.)

In the following passage the Singular and Plural senses are combined; attention being first directed to the group and afterwards to the persons composing it:—

Pars stŭpet innuptae dōnum exĭtiāle Mĭnervae
Et *mīrantur* ĕqui mōlem,

A portion is awe-struck at unwedded Minerva's fatal offering, and they wonder at *the massy bulk of the horse*.—Virg. (Aen. 2, 31.)

Obs. 2. A Plural Verb is sometimes used after *ŭterque*, *quisque* (especially *pro se quisque*), *pars—pars* (= *ălii—ălii*), *ălius—ălius*, and *alter—alter*, since these words contain the idea of plurality: as,

Ŭterque eōrum ex castris exercĭtum ēdūcunt, *Both of them lead out their armies from camp*.—Caes. (B. C. 3, 30.)

Missi (sunt) hŏnōrātissĭmus quisque ex patrĭbus, *All the most distinguished of the fathers were sent*.—Liv. (2, 15.)

Second Concord.

§ 223. *Noun and Adjective.*—An Adjective agrees with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

Magnus dux—magni dŭces; magna pars—magnae partes; magnum ŏpus—magna ŏpĕra; etc.

Obs. The rule is the same whether the Adjective is used attributively or predicatively: as, vĭr bŏnus, *a good man*, or vĭr est bŏnus, *the man is good*.

In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice, agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

Filius laudat-*us* est—filia laudat-*a* est—filii laudat-*i* sunt—filiae laudat-*ae* sunt, etc.

§ 224. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different genders, the Adjective is Masculine: as,

(Rogavit) quam prīdem păter mĭhi et măter *mortui essent*, *how long my father and mother had been dead*.—Ter. (Eun. 3, 3, 11.)

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

Sĕcundae rēs, hŏnōres, impĕria, victōriae *fortuīta* sunt, *Prosperity, honours, places of command, victories are accidental (things).*—Cic. (Off. 2, 20.)

Lăbor vŏluptasque, *dissĭmillimă* nātūrā, sŏcĭētāte quădam inter sē sunt *juncta*, *Labour and enjoyment, though most different in nature, are linked together by a kind of partnership.*—Liv. (5, 4.)

Obs. Even if the subjects are of the same Gender, the Neuter is often used; as,

Ira et *ăvārĭtia* impĕrio *pŏtentiōra* ĕrant, *Rage and cupidity were (things) too strong to be controlled.*—Liv. (37, 32, *fin.*)

(3.) When personal and impersonal Subjects are combined, the Adjective or Participle agrees with the nearest Subject: as,

Fundĭtōres, săgittārĭique et frūmentum *trădĭtum* consŭlĭbus, *Slingers, archers, and grain were handed over to the consuls.*—Liv. (22, 37, *fin.*)

§ 225. When an Adjective is used attributively of more than one Noun, it usually agrees with the nearest, and is left to be understood with the rest: as,

Cuncta măria terraeque, *All seas and lands.*—Sall. (Cat. 10.)

Sometimes it follows the same rule as a predicative Adjective (see preceding section): as,

Corpŏra ănĭmosque *magna* magis quam *firma*, *Great rather than strong bodies and minds.*—Liv. (5, 44.)

§ 226. Sometimes the Adjective or Participle of the Predicate follows the *sense* instead of the grammatical form of the Subject: as,

Căpĭta conjūrātiōnis .... virgis *caesi* ac sĕcūrī *percussi* (sunt), *The heads of the conspiracy were scourged and beheaded.*—Liv. (10, 1.)

Duo *millia* (Tўrĭōrum) ..... crŭcĭbus *affixi* sunt, *Two thousand were crucified.*—Curt. (4, 4, *ad fin.*)

Obs. In the above examples the Masculine of the participle is used because *Persons* are meant, though the actual Subjects *millia* and *căpĭta* are Neuter.

§ 227. Sometimes a predicative Adjective, instead of agreeing in Gender with the Subject, is referred to a general class and put in the Neuter; where in English we should express the word "*thing*:" as,

Triste lŭpus stăbŭlis, *A wolf is a bad thing for cattle-stalls.*—Virg. (E. 3, 80.)

Si turpĭtūdo *pējus* est quam dŏlor, *If disgrace is a worse thing than pain.*—Cic. (Tusc. 2, 31.)

Third Concord.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

Ego qui dŏceo—tu qui dŏcēs—puer qui discit—puella quae discit—pŭĕri qui discunt—puellae quae discunt.

But the *Case* of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence: as,

Arbŏres sĕret dīlĭgens agrĭcŏla, *quārum* adspĭciet bācam ipse nunquam, *The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 31.)

NOTE.—Here the Relative *quarum* is governed by the Noun bācam in the Relative sentence. [Genitive of Possessor, § 264.]

§ 229. When the Relative is followed by a predicative Noun of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative agrees in gender sometimes with the Antecedent, and sometimes with the Noun in the Predicate: as,

(*a*) *Agreement in Gender with Antecedent.*

Magnam quandam insŭlam incŏlunt, *quam* nos orbem terrae dīcīmus, *They inhabit a kind of great island, which we call the world.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 165.)

Summa pars caeli, *quae* aethĕr dīcĭtur, *The topmost region of the sky, which is called aether.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 117.)

(*b*) *Agreement in Gender with Noun in Relative Clause.*

Justam glōriam, *qui* est fructus vērae virtūtis hŏnestissimus, *Just renown, which is the most honourable fruit of real virtue.*—Cic. (Pis. 57.)

Ănīmal *hoc* . . . *quem* vŏcāmus hŏmĭnem, *This animal which we call man.*—Cic. (Leg. 1, 22.)

The latter construction is generally used in the case of names of towns: as,

Caesar Gomphos pervēnit, *quod* est (not *qui sunt*) *oppĭdum* Boeōtiae, *Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.*—Caes. (B. C. 3, 80.)

Similarly a demonstrative or determinative Pronoun usually agrees in Gender with a Noun in the Predicate: as,

Ĭdem velle atque ĭdem nolle, *ea* (not *id*) dēmum vēra *ămicĭtia* est, *To have the same wishes as to what should be and what should not be, that and nothing short of it is true friendship.*—Sall. (Cat. 20.)

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent an entire clause or sentence, it is put in the Neuter Gender: as,

In tempŏre vēni, *quod* rērum omnium est prīmum, *I came at the nick of time,—which is the main thing of all.*—Ter. (Heaut. 2, 3, 123.)

Obs. In such cases *id quod* (or *quae res*) is often used: as,

Tīmŏleon, *id quod* difficĭlius pūtātur, multo săpientius tŭlit sĕcundam quam adversam fortūnam, *Timoleon—what is thought the more difficult—bore prosperity much more wisely than adversity.* Nep. (Timol. 1.)

Chapter XXXVI.—The Nominative Case.

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a sentence: as,

Ego rēges ējēci, *vos* tyrannos introdūcĭtis, *I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots.*—Auct. ad Her. (4, 66.)

Obs. In the case of the Infinitive Mood only, as in *oblīqua oratio*, the Subject is in the Accusative.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used as descriptive of the Subject ['Complement of Predicate'] after the following classes of Verbs:—

(1.) Verbs which signify *to be* or *to become:* as, sum, existo, fīo, vĕnio (rare), ēvādo (*to issue, turn out*), nascor (*to be born*), etc.

(2.) Verbs which denote a *state* or *mode of existence;* also, *gesture:* as, măneo (*to remain*), sto (*to stand*), incēdo (*to walk*), etc.

(3.) Passive Verbs of *naming, making, appointing:* as, nōmĭnor, dīcor, appellor, [also audio, in sense of *to be called*]; creor, fīo, dēsignor, etc.

(4.) Verbs signifying to *seem* or *be thought:* as, vĭdeor, hăbeor, existĭmor, dūcor, etc.: as,

(1.) His de causis ĕgo huic *patrōnus* exstĭti, *For these reasons I have appeared as the advocate of my client.*—Cic. (R. Am. 5.)

Patres *auctōres* facti (sunt), *The Fathers* (*senate*) *became sanctioners* (i.e. *agreed to the choice*).—Liv. (1, 22.)

Nēmo rĕpente vĕnit *turpissĭmus, No one becomes utterly base all at once.*—Juv. (2, 83.)

(2.) Mūnītiōnes *integrae* mănēbant, *The fortifications remained entire.*—Caes. (B. G. 6, 32.)

Dīvum incēdo *rēgina, I walk queen of the gods.*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 46.)

(3.) Nŭma *rex* creātus est, *Numa was made king.*—Eutr.

Justĭtia ergā deos *religio* dīcĭtur, *Justice towards the gods is called religion.*—Cic. (Part. Or. 78.)

(4.) Cum sătis altĭtūdo mūri *exstructa* vĭdērētur, *When the height of the wall seemed sufficiently raised.*—Nep. (Them. 6.)

Rēbus angustis *ănĭmōsus* atque *fortis* appārē, *In trying circumstances, show thyself courageous and manly.*—Hor. (Od. 2, 10, 21.)

Obs. Vĭdeor is generally used as a personal verb, though more frequently translated into English as an impersonal: as,

Ne Alpes vīcisse Hannĭbălem vĭdeantur, *Lest it should seem that the Alps (and not we) have conquered Hannibal.*—Liv. (21, 40, *fin.*)

§ 233. The Nominative is used even after the Infinitive of the above-mentioned Verbs, when they follow possum, vŏlo, mālo, nōlo, cŭpio; incĭpio, coepi; dēsĭno; vĭdeor, existĭmor, and the like: as,

Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo *pŏtest, No one can be happy without virtue.*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 48.)

Cāto esse quam vĭdēri *bŏnus* mālĕbat, *Cato preferred being good to seeming so.*—Sall. (Cat. 54.)

Miltĭades non vĭdēbātur posse esse *privātus, Miltiades did not seem to be capable of being a (mere) private citizen.*—Nep. (Milt. 8.)

Urbānus coepit hăbēri, *He begins to be thought a fine gentleman.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 15, 27.)

Lĭbĕrātur Mĭlo non eo consĭlio *prŏfectus* esse, ut . . ., *Milo is cleared of the charge of having set out in order to . . .*—Cic. (Mil. 47.)

Chapter XXXVII.—The Accusative Case.

1. Accusative of the Direct Object.

§ 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an Action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent, govern the Accusative.

Deus *mundum* aedĭfĭcāvit—glōria *virtūtem* sĕquĭtur—ĭmĭtāri *sollertiam* Nātūrae, etc.

Obs. 1. Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passives; the Object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the Subject, and the Subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent. If the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed to this ablative; thus, māgister puerum laudat, *the master praises the boy*, becomes in the Passive, puer a māgistro laudātur, *the boy is praised by the master.*

Obs. 2. Verbs which govern any other case are rarely used in the Passive except *impersonally*: § 291, *Obs.* 1.

Obs. 3. The principal *apparent* exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.

§ 235. *Cognate Accusative.*—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves: as,

Mīrum *somniāvi somnium, I have dreamt a strange dream.*—Plaut. (Rud. 3, 1, 5.)

Vērissimum *jusjūrandum* jūrāvi, *I swore a most true oath.*—Cic. (Fam. 5, 2, *med.*)

Obs. The Intransitive Verb has in such cases a transitive force: thus, *to dream* a dream = *to energize* or *imagine* a dream; *to swear* an oath = *to utter* an oath. This construction is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed, as in examples given. A further development of this construction is when Intransitive Verbs are followed by the Neuter of an Adjective in Acc. Sing. or Plur.: as, dulce rīdēre, *to have a sweet laugh* (Hor.), insuēta rūdentem, *uttering unusual roars* (Virg.), falsum rēnīdēre vultu, *to wear a treacherous smile* (Tac.)

This is sometimes called the Accusative of the *Internal Object* ('Contained Object,' K.); the Object being already implied in the Verb.

§ 236. In like manner Verbs signifying *to taste of*, *to smell of*, and *to sound of* (*to show by taste*, *smell*, or *sound*), are used as Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Ŏlet unguenta, *He smells of perfumes.*—Ter. (Ad. 1, 2, 37.)

Ipsum *măre săpĕre, To taste of the very sea.*—Sen. (N. Q. 3, 18.)

Nec vox hŏmĭnem sŏnat, *Nor has thy voice the tone of a human being* (*it is not such as to indicate a human being*).—Virg. (Aen. 1, 328.)

And in a figurative sense (cf. § 235, *Obs.*):—

Nĭhil sŏnāre aut ŏlēre *pĕrĕgrinum, To have no foreign ring or smell.*—Cic. (de Or. 3, 44.)

Rĕdŏlēre antīquĭtātem, *To smack of antiquity.*—Cic. (Br. 82.)

§ 237. Some other Intransitive Verbs may govern an Accusative by virtue of a transitive sense involved in them. Thus sĭtio, *I thirst* (*for*) = *I desire eagerly*; contrĕmo, *I tremble* (*at*) = *I fear*; horreo, *I shudder* (*at*) = *I dread*; fleo, *I weep* (*for*) = *I lament*; rideo, *I laugh* (*at*) = *I ridicule*; dēpĕreo, *I am dying* (*for*) = *I desperately love*: as,

Sanguĭnem nostram sĭtiēbat, *He was thirsting for our blood.*—Cic. (Ph. 5, 20.)

Sĕquāni Arioviști *crūdēlĭtātem* horrērent, *The Sequani dreaded the cruelty of Ariovistus.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 32.)

Nēmo illīc vĭtia rīdet, *No one there laughs at vice.*—Tac. (Ger. 19.)

Sĕcūres dictātōris trĕmĕre atque horrēre, *To tremble and shudder at the axes of the Dictator.*—Liv. (22, 27.)

Obs. 1. This construction is used very freely in the poets and later writers: as, pallēre pontum, *to turn pale at (the sight of) the sea* (Hor.); ērubescĕre jūra, *to blush at* (i.e. *to respect*) *rights* (Virg.).

Obs. 2. Such Verbs, not being real Transitives, are not often used as Personal Passives. Rīdeo, *to ridicule*, takes a personal passive (Cic. Hor.) Also *sĭtio* (plus sītiuntur ăquae, Ov. F. 1, 216).

Obs. 3. In the poets and in rhetorical prose, great boldness is shown in making various Intransitive Verbs govern an Accusative. Thus Virg. has nāvīgāre aequor, *to sail the main* (Aen. 1, 67); Juv., Cūrios sĭmŭlāre, *to pretend to live like Curius* (2, 3); and Cic., in a highly rhetorical passage, māria ambŭlāre, *to walk the seas* (Fin. 2, 112).

§ 238. Intransitive Verbs of *motion* compounded with the Prepositions circum, per, praeter, trans, sŭper, and subter, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative. The principal of these are:—circumeo (circueo), circumvĕnio; percurro, perambŭlo, pervŏlo; praetĕreo, praetergrĕdior, praeterlābor; transeo, transsĭlio, transno (trāno); sŭperēmĭneo, sŭpervŏlo; subterlābor, subterfluo: as,

Cum circŭīret praedia, *As he was going round his estates.*—Cic. (Caec. 94.)

Alpes cum exercĭtu transīre, *To cross the Alps with an army.*—Nep. (Han. 3.)

Percurrens pectĭne tēlas, *Running through the warp-threads with the shuttle.*—Virg. (Aen. 7, 14.)

Obs. Such verbs are regarded as real Transitives, and some of them become Personal Passives, the object of the Active Verb becoming the subject of the Passive: as,

Rhŏdănus nonnullis lŏcis vādo *transītur*, *The Rhone is crossed in some places by a ford.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 6.)

§ 239. Many Intransitive Verbs compounded with the Prepositions ad, in, and ob, as, accēdo (in prose with Prep. repeated), *to approach;* ădeo, *to go* or *apply to;* ădŏrior, aggrĕdior, *to attack;* allŏquor, *to accost;* incesso, *to fall upon;* increpo, *to upbraid;* invādo, *to attack;* ĭneo (in fig. sense), *to enter upon;* ŏbeo, *to travel over, to discharge (a duty);* oppugno, *to assault;* obsĭdeo, *to besiege;* also some compounded with ante, con, ex and prae, as, antĕcēdo, *to excel*, anteeo, *to precede;* excēdo, *to exceed, transgress;* praesto, *to surpass* (also used with *Dat.*), praeeo (verba), *to dictate;* praeverto, *to outstrip*, and as deponent, praevertor, *to attend*

first to; also convĕnio, in sense of *to meet, have an interview with;* become quasi-Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Integros accēdĕre fontes, *To approach the untouched fountains.*—Lucr. (1, 927.)

Urbem invādunt, *They fall upon the city.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 265.)

Nēmĭnem conveni . . . . . quin . . . , *I have met no one that did not . . .* Cic. (Fam. 9, 14, init). Also as personal passive, convĕnīri, *to be visited.*

Mŏdum excēdĕre, *To exceed the limit.*—Liv. (26, 19, *med.*).

Quantum Galli virtūte *cēteros mortāles praestārent, How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.*—Liv. (5, 36.)

Ut nēmo *eum* in ămīcĭtiā *antecēdĕret, That no one excelled him in friendship.*—Nep. (Alc. 9.)

Obs. After Verbs compounded with ex, the Ablative is more common (see § 306); and after those compounded with con, prae, ante, the Dative (§ 292).

§ 240. Intransitive Verbs of rest (as sĕdeo, sto, sisto), compounded with circum, become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

Exercĭtus Cn. Pompēium circumsĕdet, *An army beleaguers Pompey.*—Cic. (Att. 9, 12.)

Centŭriōnes Mettum circumstant, *Centurions surround Mettus.*—Liv. (1, 28). Also in Caes.

§ 241. These five Impersonal Verbs pŭdet, *it shames;* taedet, *it wearies;* paenĭtet, *it repents;* pĭget, *it grieves;* and mīsĕret, *it pities (affects with pity);* take an Accusative of the Person *whom the feeling affects.* The cause of the feeling is put in the Genitive (see § 282): as,

Non paenĭtere me consĭlii, (*That*) *I do not repent of the advice I gave.*—Atticus (ap. Cic.).

Tui me mīsĕret, mei pĭget, *I pity you, I am vexed with myself.*—Cic. poet. (Div. 1, 66.)

Me cīvĭtātis mōrum pĭget taedetque, *I am vexed and disgusted with the morals of the state.*—Sall. (Jug. 4, *extr.*)

Obs. The Cause of the feeling is sometimes expressed by an Infinitive mood or clause: as, Ut non dīdicisse mīnus paeniteat, *That I am less sorry not to have learned.* Cic. (de Or. 2, 77.)

Se paenĭtēre, *quod ănĭmum tuum offendĕrit, He is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.*—Cic. (Att. 11, 13.)

Ŏportet, *it behoves,* takes Accusative and Infinitive: ōportet me hoc făcĕre.

§ 242. In like manner dĕcet, *it is becoming,* and dēdĕcet, *it is unbecoming,* take an Accusative of the Person: but,

unlike the above-named Impersonals, they may have an Impersonal Nominative as their subject: as,

Orātōrem mĭnĭme dĕcet īrasci, sĭmŭlāre non dĕdĕcet, *It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper, it is not unbecoming in him to pretend to do so.*—Cic. (Tusc. 4, 55.) (Subjects irasci, simulare.)

Te *tŏga* picta dĕcet, *An embroidered toga becomes thee well.*—Prop. (5, 4, 53.)

Obs. In like manner the Impersonals *jŭvat, it delights; lătet, fallit, fŭgit, practĕrit, it escapes the notice of*; take an Accusative of the Person.

2. Double Accusative.

§ 243. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: namely, dŏceo, *I teach* (with its compounds ēdŏceo, *I teach thoroughly;* dēdŏceo, *I unteach, teach not to do something*); and cēlo, *I conceal, hide from:* as,

Quis *mūsĭcam* dŏcuĕrit *Epămīnondam, Who taught Epaminondas music.*—Nep. (Pref.)

Non *te* cēlāvi *sermōnem* T. Ampii, *I have not kept from you the language of T. Ampius.*—Cic. (Fam. 2, 16.)

Obs. 1. The reason of this double Accusative is that we may say, for example, both dŏcuit mūsĭcam, *he taught music;* and dŏcuit Ĕpămĭnondam, *he taught Epaminondas;* hence blending the two, *musicam docuit Epaminondam.*

Obs. 2. Dŏceo, *to inform of*, usually takes the Ablative with *de:* it may also be followed by a dependent interrogative clause, or by the Accusative and Infinitive.

Obs. 3. Cēlo, *to conceal*, takes the Ablative of a Noun with *de*, in the Passive, and sometimes in the Active: as,

Non est *de* illo *vēnēno cēlāta* māter, *The mother was not kept in ignorance of that poisoning.*—Cic. (Clu. 189.) (But the Accusative of a Neut. Pron. or Adj. may be used both with dŏceo, in sense of *to inform of*, and with cēlo: e.g. haec ēdoctus, cuncta ēdoctus, hoc cēlātus: cf. § 253.)

Obs. 4. When a Verb of *teaching* is used in the Passive, the thing taught may still be expressed by the Accusative: as,

L. Marcius *omnes* mīlĭtiae *artes* ēdoctus fuĕrat, *Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.*—Liv. (25, 37.)

Obs. 5. With Verbs of teaching, the instrument on which an art is practised is put in the Ablative: as,

Sōcrătem *fĭdĭbus* dŏcuit nōbĭlissĭmus fĭdĭcen, *A most noble lyrist taught Socrates the lyre* (i.e. *to play on the lyre*).—Cic. (Fam. 9, 22, *med.*)

§ 244. Some verbs of *asking, entreating*, and *demanding*, take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and

another of the person: rŏgo, *I ask;* ōro, posco (rĕposco), *I entreat;* flāgĭto, *I demand:* as,

Ut *eum sĭmŭlācrum* Cĕrĕris rĕposcĕrent, *should demand back from him the statue of Ceres.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 113.)

Caesar *frūmentum Aeduos* flāgĭtāre, *Caesar continued to demand corn of the Aedui.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 16.)

Pācem te pŏscĭmus, *We beg of thee peace.*—Virg. (Aen. 11, 362.)

Obs. 1. *Pĕto, postŭlo,* and *quaero* are not used with a double Accusative. *Postŭlo* takes the Ablative of the person with *ab* or *de; quaero* and *pĕto* the Ablative of the person with *ex, ab,* or *de.* (See foll. *Obs.*)

Obs. 2. Verbs of *inquiring* or *asking* often take the Ablative of the thing with *de* (interrŏgo, percontor ălĭquem de ălĭqua re). The double Accusative is most frequently used when the thing asked is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or an adjective (comp. § 253): as,

Hoc te ōro, *I entreat you this; multa* me interrŏgāvit, *He asked me many questions.*

Obs. 3. When a verb of *asking,* &c., is turned into the Passive, the thing asked may still be expressed by the Accusative: as,

Rŏgātus *sententiam, Being asked his opinion.*—Sall. (Cat. 50.)

§ 245. *Complementary Accusative.*—Verbs signifying, *to make* or *appoint, to name, to reckon* or *esteem,* and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Complement to that Object: as,

Ancum Martium *rēgem (Compl. Acc.)* pŏpŭlus crĕavit, *The people made Ancus Martius king.*—Liv. (1, 32.)

Mē ūnĭversa cīvĭtas *consŭlem (Compl. Acc.)* dēclārāvit, *The whole state declared me consul.*—Cic. (Pis. 3.)

Nēmĭnem prae se ducit *hŏmĭnem (Compl. Acc.), He holds no one a man in comparison with himself.*—Auct. ad Her. (4, 28.)

Obs. The Complementary Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative after the Passive of the above verbs: see § 232.

§ 246. Some Transitive Verbs compounded with trans and circum, as transjĭcio (trājĭcio), transdūco (trādūco), transporto, *to carry across,* and circumdūco, *to lead around,* take after them two Accusatives; one of which is governed by the Verb, and the other by the Preposition in composition: as,

Hellespontum cōpias trājēcit, *He carried his troops across the Hellespont.*—Nep. (Ag. 4.)

Hannĭbal nōnāgintā *millĭa* pĕdĭtum *Ibērum* trāduxit, *Hannibal led ninety thousand foot-soldiers across the Iberus.*—Liv. (21, 23.)

Quos Pompēius omnia sua *praesĭdia* circumduxit, *Pompeius led them round all his entrenchments.*—Caes. (B. C. 3, 61.)

Obs. 1. In the Passive, one of the two Accusatives may remain: as,

Nē mājor multitūdo Germānōrum *Rhēnum* transdūcātur, *Lest a greater multitude of Germans should be brought across the Rhine.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 31, *fin.*) (Here the Prep. might have been repeated: see § 646, 6.)

Obs. 2. Transitive Verbs compounded with *circum* take more frequently an Accusative and a Dative (see § 292, *Obs.* 4).

3. Accusative of Motion towards.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards.* For examples, see *Appendix on the Construction of Names of Towns:* § 259.

§ 248. Similarly the Accusative is used after many Prepositions signifying *motion towards, proximity,* or *relation to:* as, ăd, ĭn (*into*), inter, prŏpĕ, &c. See the Chapter on Prepositions: § 556

4. Accusative of Time or Space.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad?* etc.: as,

Unum diem vīvĕre, *to live but one day.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 94.)

Pĕricles *quadrāgintā annos* praefuit Athēnis, *Pericles governed Athens for forty years.*—Cic. (de Or. 3, 138.)

Annos septuāgintā nātus, *Seventy years old.*—Cic. (Sen. 5.) (Without nātus, the Gen. of Description would be used: vir septuāgintā annōrum, *a man of 70 years:* § 274.)

Pĕdem e villā adhuc ēgressi non sŭmus, *As yet we have not stirred one foot from the (country) house.*—Cic. (Att. 13, 16.)

Campus Mărăthon est ab oppĭdo circĭter *millia* passuum dĕcem, *The plain (of) Marathon is distant from the town about ten thousand paces.*—Nep. (Milt. 4.)

Ferrum *tres* longum *pĕdes, An iron head 3 feet long.*—Liv. (21, 8.)

Quidquid prōgrĕdiēbantur, *The further they advanced.*—Liv. (8, 30.)

Ăbĕrant bīdui (sc. *iter*), *They were two days' journey off.*—Cic. (Att. 5, 16.)

Obs. 1. Duration of Time is also expressed emphatically by *per:* as,

Lūdi dĕcem *per dies* facti sunt, *The games were celebrated through ten entire days.*—Cic. (Cat. 3, 20.)

Obs. 2. Duration of time is sometimes, but rarely, expressed by the Ablative: as,

Tōtā nocte īērunt, *They marched all night long.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 26.)

5. Accusative in Exclamations.

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection: as,

O fallācem hŏmĭnum *spem, O deceitful hopes of men!*—Cic. (de Or. 3, 7.) (Where we may supply, *See! behold!* before the *Acc.*)

Mē mĭsĕrum, *O hapless me!*—Cic. (Fam. 14, 1.)

Pro deōrum atque hŏmĭnum *fĭdem! In the name of gods and men!* —Cic. (Tusc. 5, 48.) (Supply, *I invoke*, before the *Acc.*)

En quattuor *āras, Lo, four altars.*—Virg. (E. 5, 65.)

Obs. 1. But *en* and *ecce* are quite as frequently found with the Nominative, est or sunt being understood: as,

Ecce *tuae litterae* (sc. *sunt*) de Varrōne, *There is your letter about Varro!*—Cic. (Att. 13, 16.)

Obs. 2. *Hei* and *vae* take a Dative of the Indirect Object. See § 299.

6. Accusative of Closer Definition (called also Accusative of Respect, and Greek Accusative).

§ 251. When a predication is made, not with reference to a person or thing as a whole, but to some part or parts, the Accusative is used (by the poets and later prose writers) to indicate *the part affected.* This use of the Accusative is found after Verbs, Participles and (less frequently) Adjectives: as,

(Ĕquus) trĕmit *artūs, The horse trembles in every limb.*—Virg. (G. 3, 84.)

Ōs hŭmĕrosque deo sĭmĭlis, *In face and shoulders like a god.*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 589.)

Hannĭbal, *adversum fĕmur* grăvĭter ictus, cĕcĭdit, *Hannibal fell severely wounded in the fore part of the thigh.*—Liv. (21, 7.)

(Fĕmĭnae) nūdae *bracchia ac lăcertos, Women with both the lower and upper part of the arm bare.*—Tac. (Ger. 17.)

Obs. In prose of the best period, the Ablative is used (§ 322): as,

Pĕdĭbus aeger, *Diseased in the feet.*—Sall. (C. 59.)

Altĕro ŏcŭlo căpĭtur, *He was disabled in (lost the sight of) one eye.* —Liv. (22, 2, *extr.*)

7. Greek Accusative after Middle Verb.

§ 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a Middle, that is, a Reflexive, sense, and made to govern an Accusative ('Medial Object,' K.): as, induor,

ămĭcior, *I clothe, put on myself:* exuor, *I strip off (from myself);* cingor, accingor, *I gird on myself;* and the like: as,

Inūtĭle *ferrum cingĭtur, He girds on the useless steel.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 510.)

Andrōgei *găleam indŭĭtur, He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 392.)

Obs. On this principle must be explained Horace's,

Suspensi *lŏcŭlos tăbŭlam*que lăcerto (S. 1, 6, 74), *With their satchels and tablet swinging at their elbow.*—(Suspensi, *having fastened to themselves: ἀπηρτημένοι.*) So also, pĕdes trajectus lōra tūmentes, *Having thongs passed through his swollen feet.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 273.) This construction is strictly confined to the poets.

8. Other Uses of the Accusative.

§ 253. The Neuters of some Pronouns (quid, quod, id, hoc, illud, ĭdem, &c.), and of Adjectives implying number (ūnum, multa, pauca, &c.), are frequently used with verbs which require a different construction in the case of other words: as,

Ūnum stŭdētis, *You are bent on one thing.*—Cic. (Ph. 6, 18.) So, eădem stŭdēre, Ter. (Usu. construction of studeo, with Dat.: § 291.)

Nĭhil fēcit quod (= propter quod) succenseas, *He has done nothing for you to be angry about.*—Ter. (Ph. 2, 1, 33.)

Id ŏpĕram-do, *I strive after this.*—Ter. (Andr. 1, 1, 130.)

Utrumque laetor, *I rejoice at both things.*—Cic. (Fam 7, 1.) (Usu. constr. with *ob* and *Acc.*)

Sed eos *hoc* mŏneo, *But I warn them of this.*—Cic. (Cat. 2, 20, *init.*) (Usu. const. with *de* and *Abl.*)

Consĭlium pĕtis, *quid* sim tĭbi auctor, i.e. *what I advise you to do.*—Cic. (Fam. 6, 8.) (Instead of Gen. after auctor.)

Similarly, the phrases, id tempŏris (= eo tempŏre), id aetātis (= eā aetāte), are of frequent occurrence. See also foll. section.

§ 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions magnam (maxĭmam) partem, *in great part, for the most part;* vĭcem, *on account of, in the manner of;* sĕcus, *in sex;* cētĕra, *in other respects;* nĭhil, *not at all;* id gĕnus, *of that kind:* as,

Suēvi *maxĭmam partem* lacte atque pĕcŏre vīvunt, *The Suevi for the most part live on milk and cattle.*—Cic. (B. G. 4, 1.)

Tuam vĭcem saepe dŏleo, *I often grieve on your account.*—Cic. (Fam. 12, 23.)

Sardanapāli *vĭcem, After the manner of Sardanapalus.*—Cic. (Att. 10, 8.)

Līběrōrum căpĭtum *vīrile sĕcus* (= vīrīlis sexūs) ad dĕcem millia capta, *Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.*—Liv. (26, 47.)

Regnum *cētĕra* ēgrĕgium, *A reign admirable in other respects.*—Liv. (1, 32.)

Sĕnātus *nihil* sānē intentus, *The senate (was) not at all on the alert.*—Sall. (Cat. 16, *fin.*)

§ 255. On the construction of the Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood, see Syntax of Verbs (§ 507).

APPENDIX ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

§ 256. For the sake of convenience, all the rules for the construction of the names of towns and small islands, in answer to the questions *Where? Whither? Whence?* are here brought together.

1. Answer to Question Where? (Locative Case).

§ 257. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the (so-called) Genitive, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases, in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

Rōmae, *at Rome;* Cōrinthi, *at Corinth;* Tībūre, *at Tivoli;* Athēnīs, *at Athens;* Gābiīs, *at Gabii;* etc.

These forms are really *Locatives:* a Case which in the Singular ended in *i* and in the Plural was identical with the Ablative. See § 15, *Obs.* This accounts for such forms as Carthāgĭnī, Lacedaemŏnĭ, in the Third Declension, which frequently occur in MSS., instead of the Ablative, in answer to the question *Where?* Hence rūrī rather than rūrĕ, *in the country.*

Obs. 1. When the name of a town is qualified by an Adjective, the Ablative is used with the preposition *in:* as,

In ipsā Alexandrīā, *In Alexandria itself.*—Cic. (Att. 11, 16.)

Obs. 2. If the Noun *urbs, oppĭdum* or *cīvĭtas,* be added in apposition, it is never put in the Genitive (as would be the case if the forms in *ae* and *i* were true Genitives), but in the Ablative, with or without *in:* as,

Mīlites *Albae* constĭtērunt, in *urbe* opportūnā, *The soldiers halted at Alba, (in) a suitable city.*—Cic. (Ph. 4, 6.)

Antiŏchiae nātus est . . . . . cĕlebri quondam *urbe, He was born at Antioch, a once famous city.*—Cic. (Arch. 4.)

§ 258. After the same manner are used the following Locatives: dōmī (also less frequently, dōmo), *at home;* hūmi, *on the ground;* rūri (less frequently rūre), *in the country;* mīlĭtiae, belli, *in the field;* also fōrīs, *abroad* (commonly called an Adverb): as,

*Dŏmī fŏrīs*que, *At home and abroad.*—Liv. (2, 60.)

Unā semper *mīlĭtiae* et *dŏmi* fuĭmus, *We were always together in war and peace.*—Ter. (Ad. 3, 4, 49.)

Jăcēre *hŭmi*, *To lie on the ground.*—Cic. (Cat. 1, 26.)

Fŏris cēnāre, *To dine out.*—Cic. (Fam. 7, 16.)

Vel *belli* vel *dŏmi*, *Whether in peace or war.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 85.)

Obs. 1. *Domi* is also used with *meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae,* and *alienae;* but if any other Adjective or a Noun in the Genitive Case is used with it, the preposition *in* is commonly used, as *in illā dŏmo; in dŏmo Caesăris* (Cic. Att. 2, 7); but also, dŏmi Caesăris (ib. 1, 12).

Obs. 2. In the poets *terrae* is also found as a Locative, after the analogy of *hŭmi*: as,

Prōcŭbuit *terrae*, *He fell flat on the ground.*—Ov. (Met. 5, 122.)

(For ănīmi, see § 278.)

Obs. 3. Various Adverbial forms denoting place and time were originally Locatives: as, *hi-c, illi-c, isti-c, crastīnī*, etc.

2. Answer to the Question Whither?

§ 259. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,

Cŏrinthum atque in Attĭcam terram rĕdiit, *He returned to Corinth and Attica.*—Liv. (31, 25, *fin.*)

Leucădem vēnĭmus a.d. viii Id. Nov., *We arrived at Leucadia Oct.* 24.—Cic. (Fam. 16, 9.)

Multĭtūdĭnem omnem *Rōmam* trāduxit, *He transferred all the population to Rome.*—Liv. (1, 33.)

Obs. 1. If *urbs* or *oppĭdum* be added, a Preposition is commonly used: as,

Consul pervēnit *in* oppĭdum Cirtam, *The consul arrived in the town of Cirta.*—Sall. (Jug. 102.)

Contŭlit se *Tarquīnios in urbem* Etrūriae opulentissĭmam, *He betook himself to Tarquinii, a very wealthy city of Etruria.*—Cic. (Rep. 2, 19.)

But not always: cf.,

Ancȳram, nōbĭlem in illis lŏcis *urbem* pervēnit, *He came to Ancyra, a famous city in those parts.*—Liv. (38, 24, *init.*)

Obs. 2. The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and with Nouns generally: as,

Ītăliam Lāvīniaque vēnit lītŏra, *He came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.*—Virg. (Aen. 1, *init.*)

Verba rĕfers *aures* non pervĕnientia nostras, *Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.*—Ov. (Met. 3, 462.)

Obs. 3. Even in prose writers the preposition is occasionally omitted with names of countries: as, *Aegyptus, Chersonnēsus, Epīrus*, etc.

§ 260. The Accusatives dŏmum (dŏmos), *to the house of, home;* and rūs, *to the country;* also fōrās, *abroad* (after a Verb of motion), have the same construction as Names of Towns: as,

Prīmā lūce *dŏmum* Pompōnii vēnit, *At daybreak he came to the house of Pomponius.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 112.)

Galli *dŏmos* ăbīĕrant, *The Gauls had gone away to their homes.*—Liv. (45, 34.)

Exīre *fŏras, To go abroad.*—Ter. (*pass.*)

Rūs ībo, *I will go into the country.*—Ter. (Eun. 1, 2, 107.)

Obs. 1. *Dŏmum* is also used with *meam, tuam, suam, ălĭēnam;* but when any other Adjective than such is used with it, a Preposition must be employed; as rĕmigrare in dŏmum vĕtĕrem.—Cic. (Ac. 1, 13.)

Obs. 2. To this rule belong the phrases infītias īre, *to deny;* vēnum īre, *to be sold;* literally, *to go to sale.*

3. Answer to the Question Whence?

§ 261. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Nos ădhuc *Brundisio* nĭhil, *As yet (I have) no news from Brundisium.*—Cic. (Att. 9, 6.)

Dēmărātus fūgit Tarquĭnios *Cŏrintho, Demaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 109.)

Similarly dŏmo, *from home,* rūre, *from the country,* are used in the Ablative without a Preposition.

Obs. When the nouns *urbs* and *oppĭdum* are used in Apposition or before names of towns, they follow their ordinary construction and take a Preposition (comp. § 257, *Obs.* 2; 259, *Obs.* 1): as,

Expellĭtur *ex oppĭdo* Gergovia, *He is driven out of the town of Gergovia.*—Caes. (B. G. 7, 4.)

Chapter XXXVIII.—The Genitive.

§ 262. The Genitive Case denotes the dependence of a Noun (or Pronoun) upon another word, which is generally a Noun or Adjective, but sometimes a Verb.

Obs. 1. The Genitive appears originally to have denoted *origin*, in English, *from* or *of*: it can, however, very seldom be translated by *from*, a meaning which is expressed by the Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Genitive is also found after the Preposition *tĕnus*: see the Chapter on Prepositions, § 557, 10.

A. Genitive after Nouns.

§ 263. *General Rule.*—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Noun upon another: as,

Bellum Pyrrhi, *the war of* or *with Pyrrhus*—fŭga Pompēii, *the flight of Pompey*—sĭmŭlātio ămīcĭtiae, *the pretence of friendship.*

The relations denoted by this dependence of one Noun upon another may be of the most varied kind, and frequently can be determined only from the context. See following sections; especially § 268, *Obs.* 1.

Obs. Under this rule falls the Genitive dependent on *ergō* (= *causā*), *for the sake of*; *instăr* (indecl. acc. neut.), *on the scale of, like*: as,

Ējus lēgis *ergo*, *For the sake of this law.*—Lex ap. Cic. (Att. 3, 23, *med.*)

Instăr *montis* ĕquum, *A horse huge as a mountain.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 15.)

Plăto mihi ūnus instăr est *omnium*, *Plato alone is, in my opinion, worth them all.*—Cic. (Br. 191.)

(In later writers, instar is found preceded by Prep. *ad.*)

1. Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of the Possessor.

§ 264. The Genitive denotes the *Possessor*, or the person or thing whereto anything belongs:—

Caesăris horti, *Caesar's gardens*—*Cўclōpum* offĭcīnae, *the forges of the Cyclops*—*rēgis* sceptrum, *the king's sceptre.*

§ 265. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after the verb sum, when in English the word *property* (*belonging to*), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed:—

Omnia sunt *victōris*, *All things are* (*the property*) *of the conqueror.*—Liv. (21, 13.)

Nĭhĭl est tam *angusti ănĭmi* quam āmāre dīvĭtias, *Nothing is (the mark) of so petty a mind as to love riches.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 68.)

Cūjusvis hŏmĭnis est errāre, *It is (the part) of any man to err.*—Cic. (Ph. 12, 5.)

Obs. 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns: thus, meum est, *it is my duty;* tuum est, *it is thy duty;* (never mei, tui est).

Obs. 2. The Noun, or a suitable Adjective, is sometimes expressed, especially when the Verb is in the Infinitive: as,

Princĭpum *mūnus* esse dūcēbat, *He thought it was the function of the leading men.*—Cic. (Mil. 22.)

Sāpientis est prōprium, *It is the characteristic of a wise man.*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 81.)

Obs. 3. To this rule belong such expressions as mōris est, consuētūdinis est, *it is (belongs to) the custom of.*

§ 266. *Other Elliptical uses of Possessive Genitive.*—

(1) The word "temple," (aedes or templum) is frequently omitted after the preposition ad, and before the Genitive of the name of the deity: as,

Ventum erat *ad Vestae*, *We had come to (the temple) of Vesta.*—Hor. (S. 1, 9, 35.)

(2) The words for "wife," "son," or "daughter," are occasionally omitted before the Possessive Genitive (a Greek idiom): as,

Verānia *Pisōnis*, *Verania the wife of Piso.*—Plin. (Ep. 2, 20, *init.*)

Hasdrūbal *Gisgōnis*, *Hasdrubal the son of Gisgo.*—Liv. (25, 37.)

2. Subjective Genitive.

§ 267. The Subjective Genitive denotes the doer of the action indicated by the Verbal Noun on which it depends, and takes the place of the Subject of a verb: as,

Cūra *patrum*, *Care on the part of senators.*—Hor. (Od. 4, 14, 1.)

Flūmĭnum lapsūs, *The gliding courses of rivers.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 12, 10.)

Obs. 1. The so-called possessive pronouns are used instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns: as, mors tua, *thy death.*

Obs. 2. A Genitive may stand in apposition to a personal pronoun implied in a possessive adjective: as,

Rempublĭcam meā (=mei) *ūnius* ŏpĕrā esse salvam, *That the republic was saved by the exertions of me alone.*—Cic. (Pis. 6.)

Hi ad vestram *omnium* caedem Rōmae restĭtērunt, *These remained at Rome with a view to the slaughter of you all.*—Cic. (Cat. 4, 4.)

The Genitives *unius*, *ipsius* (*ipsorum*) are often so used.

Similarly where the Genitive is that of the *Possessor:* as,

Tuum, *hŏmĭnis* simplĭcis, pectus vīdīmus, *We have seen the heart of you, guileless man as you are.*—Cic. (Ph. 2, 43.)

Obs. 3. So the Relative may agree with a Personal Pronoun implied in a pronominal Adjective: as,

Nostrā caede *qui* rĕmansissēmus, *With the massacre of us who had remained.*—Cic. (Cat. 1, 7.)

3. Objective Genitive.

§ 268. The Objective Genitive denotes the *Object* of the action expressed by the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the Object of a verb: as,

Dŏlōrum lăbōrumque contemptio, *the despising of sufferings and hardship*—fŭga mălōrum, *escape from ills*—ŏdium hūmāni gĕnĕris, *hatred of (for) the human race*—Săbīnārum mŭlĭĕrum injūriae, *the wrongs done to the Sabine women.*

N.B.—Often the context alone enables us to determine whether the Genitive is used objectively or subjectively; thus, patris amor = either, *a father's love* (Subj. Gen.), or *love for a father* (Obj. Gen.).

Obs. 1. The Objective Genitive is more frequently used in Latin than the Subjective, and the latter does not occur except where the context prevents ambiguity; thus cūra Caesăris (Hor. Od. i. 12, 50), is "care *of* or *for* Caesar" [Objective], while cūra Patrum (id. iv. 14, 1) in the example given in § 267, it is equally plain, must mean "care *on the part of* the Senators. In case of any real ambiguity a preposition is used instead of the Objective Genitive, especially in denoting a feeling towards any one: as,

Suscīpĕre ŏdium erga ălĭquem, Nep. (Dat. 10.)

Obs. 2. An Objective and a Subjective Genitive are sometimes dependent upon the same Noun: as,

Pro vĕtĕrĭbus Helvētiōrum injūriis Pŏpŭli Rōmāni, *For old injuries done by the Helvetii to the Roman people.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 30.)

Here *Helvetiorum* denotes the Subject and *Populi Romani* the Object; and the sentence implies that *the Helvetii injured the Roman people.*

Obs. 3. To express the sense of the Objective Genitive, the Genitive of a personal pronoun (*mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*), and not a possessive adjective, is used: as,

Mīsit fīlium non sōlum dēprĕcātōrem *sūi*, sed ĕtiam accūsātōrem *mei*, *He sent his son not only to intercede for himself, but also to accuse me.*—Cic. (Att. 11, 8.)

Mĕmŏria *nostri*, *The remembrance of ourselves.*—Sall. (Cat. 1.)

Obs. 4. The Objective Genitive is also found after *Adjectives* derived from Verbs: see § 276, 1.

4. Partitive Genitive.

§ 269. The Genitive is used after Nouns and words used as Nouns, to denote the whole of which a part is taken: as,

Magna pars mīlĭtum—mŏdius trītĭci—mille hŏmĭnum vălentium. —Cic. (Mil. 53.)

Obs. It is rare that a Partitive Genitive is used without a governing word, as in the following example:—

Fīes nōbĭlium tu quŏque *fontium*, *Thou also shalt become (one) of the fountains known to fame.*—Hor. (Od. 3, 13, 13.)

§ 270. The Partitive Genitive is most frequently found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns denoting *quantity*. These Neuters are then virtually Nouns of Quantity.

The principal Adjectives and Pronouns so used are these:—**multum**, *much* (with plūs and plūrĭmum); **paulum** or **paullum**, *a little* (with mīnus and mĭnĭmum); **tantum**, *so much*, **quantum**, *how much*, **ălĭquantum**, *a good deal* (with their diminutives, tantŭlum, *so little*, quantŭlum, *how little*, aliquantŭlum, *some little*); also **hoc**, *this* (*amount*); **id, illud**, *that* (*amount*); **ăliquod**, *some* (*amount*); **quicquam**, *any* (*amount*) *soever*; **quicquĭd**, *whatsoever*; with the indeclinable Noun **nĭhil** (nīl), *nothing*, *none of*: e.g.—

Multum tempŏris, *much* (*of*) *time*—ălĭquantum ĕquōrum et armōrum, *a considerable quantity of horses and arms*—tantŭlum mŏrae, *so little delay*—hoc cōpiārum, *this amount of troops* (Liv. 42, 18, *extr.*)—num quidnam nŏvi, *is there any news?*—id tempŏris, *at that time*—deorum quicquid, *whatever of gods, all the gods who* (Hor. Epod. 5, 1)—nĭhil pācāti, *nothing of a peaceful nature* (Liv. 38, 28)—nĭhil pensi, *no scruples* (Sall. C. 12).

Obs. 1. The Genitive dependent upon these words is not unfrequently a neuter adjective of the Second Declension, used Substantively; as, alĭquid bŏni, măli, *some good* or *evil*; but Adjectives of the Third Declension cannot be so used, except perhaps in connection with a neuter of the Second Declension (Zumpt): hence ălĭquid difficĭle, *something difficult* (not ălĭquid difficĭlis); ălĭquid difficĭlius, *something more difficult* (not aliquid difficilioris). See § 343, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. The poets and later prose-writers use the Neuters of various Adjectives with a Partitive Genitive dependent on them: as,

Cuncta *terrārum*, *All* (*parts of*) *the world.*—Hor. (Od. 2, 1, 23.)

Ardua *terrārum*, *The lofty* (*regions of*) *the earth.*—Virg. (Aen. 5, 695.)

Exĭguum *campi*, *A small portion of the plain.*—Liv. (27, 27.)

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also frequently found after Adverbs of *Quantity*, *Place*, or *Time*, used substantively: as,

Sătis *ēlŏquentiae*, *săpientiae* părum, *Plenty of eloquence, little enough of wisdom.*—Sall. (Cat. 5.)

Ŭbi *terrārum*, *In what part of the world?*—Cic. (Att. 5, 10.)

Eo *mīsĕriārum*, *To such a pitch of wretchedness.*—Sall. (J. 14, *init.*)

Posteā *lŏci*, *Afterwards (at a later point of time).*—Sall. (J. 102.)

Inde *lŏci*, *Thereupon (after that point of time).*—Lucr. (5, 791.)

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Comparatives and Superlatives: as,

Mājor *jŭvĕnum*, *(Thou) elder of the youths.*—Hor. (A. P. 366.)

Maxĭme *princĭpum*, *Greatest of princes!*—Hor. (Od. 4, 14, 6.)

Graecōrum *ōrātorum* praestantissĭmi sunt ii, qui, etc., *Of Greek orators the most eminent are those who*, etc.—Cic. (Opt. Gen. Or. 13.)

Obs. Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex*, *de*, are frequently used; also sometimes *inter*: as,

Ācerrĭmus *ex omnĭbus nostris sensĭbus* est sensus vīdendi, *The keenest of all our senses is the sense of sight.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 357.) So, audācissimus ex omnĭbus, id. (R. Am. 2.)

De trĭbus et dĕcem *fundis* tres nōbilissĭmi fundi.—Cic. (R. Am. 99.)

Croesus *inter rēges* ŏpŭlentissĭmus.—Sen. (Contr. 2, 1, 7.)

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after ūnus, alter, neuter, with some other Pronouns and Adjectives implying a number: as,

Quārum ūnam (partem) incŏlunt Belgae, *Of which the Belgae inhabit one part.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 1.)

Consŭlum alter, *one of the two consuls.*—Liv. (40, 59.)

Obs. 1. The Genitive is often used in English with numerals and adjectives when there is no Partitive meaning, but only an enumeration of the whole. In such cases the Genitive cannot be used in Latin: thus we say in English, "The veterans, of whom few are surviving," but in Latin "qui pauci supersunt," because these few are all. So, "all of us" is in Latin "nos omnes."

Obs. 2. The use of prepositions (*ex*, *inter*, *de*) is more frequent after numerals: as,

Ūnus *ex* illis dĕcemvīris, *One of those Decemvirs.*—Cic. (Rep. 2, 37.)

Pauci *de* nostris cădunt, *A few of our men fall.*—(B. G. 1, 15.)

Unus *e* multis, *One of the multitude (an undistinguished person).*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 66.) Also, ūnus *de* multis, id. (Off. 1, 109.)

Obs. 3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as Partitive Genitives, but not *nostri* and *vestri*: e.g. ūnus nostrum—nēmo nostrum—qui vestrum prīmus oscŭlum mātri tŭlĕrit (Liv. 1, 56.)

5. Genitive of Quality or Description.

§ 274. The Genitive of Quality is a construction by which one Noun is joined to another with a descriptive force [see also Abl. of Quality, § 319]. But the latter Noun must always have an Adjective with it: as,

Non *multi cĭbi* hospes, sed *multi jŏci, A guest not for much feeding but much mirth.*—Cic. (Fam. 9, 26, *fin.*)

Vir priscae sĕvērĭtātis, *A man of old-fashioned strictness.*—Liv. (22, 60, *init.*)

Quattuor jūgĕrum āger, *A farm of four acres.*—Liv. (3, 26).

Obs. 1. The Genitive of Quality denotes a more inherent and abiding quality than the Ablative. The latter is especially used of external features: as, longis crūribus hŏmo, magno cāpīte vir; etc.

Obs. 2. Such expressions as hŏmo jŏci, hŏmo sĕvērĭtātis, hŏmo ingĕnii are inadmissible. Say either hŏmo jocōsus, hŏmo sevērus, hŏmo ingĕniōsus, or hŏmo multi joci, &c.

Obs. 3. This construction is limited to the connexion of two Substantives: thus, fossa quindĕcim pĕdum, *a ditch of fifteen feet;* but when longus or lātus is added, the Accusative must be used: as, fossa quindĕcim pĕdes lāta: in like manner, puer dĕcem annōrum, *a boy of ten years,* but puer dĕcem annos nātus. See § 249.

6. Genitive of Definition.

§ 275. Sometimes a Noun is used in the Genitive by way of Definition, where the relation is strictly that of a Noun in Apposition; as,

Merces *glōriae, The reward (of, consisting of) glory.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 34.)

Haec vox *vŏluptātis, This appellation (of) pleasure.*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 6.)

Lūcus *ābĭĕtis* arbŏrĭbus saeptus, *A sacred grove surrounded by trees of fir,* i.e. *fir-trees.*—Liv. (24, 3, *init.*)

Occasionally the Genitive of the name of a town is used in this way: e.g. urbem Pătăvi (Virg. Aen. 1, 247), in oppĭdo Antĭŏchĭae (Cic. Att. 5, 18). See Dräger, Hist. Synt. i. 466.

B. Genitive after Adjectives.

§ 276. All transitive Adjectives; also Adjectives of *participation, fulness,* and their opposites, govern a Genitive Case: as,

Amans virtūtis, *fond of virtue*—dīlĭgens vērĭtātis, *careful of truth*—pĕrĭtus belli, *skilled in war*—āvĭdus glōriae, *eager for glory*—ēdax rērum, *devouring (all) things*—parcus vini, *sparing of the wine*—impŏtens irae, *unable to control anger*—partĭceps rătiōnis, *partaking of reason*—plēnus īrae, *full of anger*—etc.

The following Adjectives come under the above rule and govern the Genitive:—

1.	ăvārus	*covetous*		imprūdens	*not foreseeing*
	aemŭlus	*jealous*		rŭdis	*unskilled*
	ăvĭdus	*greedy*		insŏlens	*unaccustomed*
	cŭpĭdus	*eager*		insŏlĭtus	
	stŭdĭōsus	*fond of*		insuētus	
	fastīdĭōsus	*disdainful*		compos	*master of*
	invĭdus	*jealous*		impos	*not master*
	tĭmĭdus	*fearful*		pŏtens	*controlling*
	păvĭdus			impŏtens	*not able to control*
	lĭbĕrālis	*liberal*	3.	mĕmor	*mindful*
	prŏfūsus	*lavish*		immĕmor	*unmindful*
	prōdĭgus			cūrĭōsus	*careful*
	parcus	*stingy*		incūrĭōsus	*careless*
2.	pĕrītus	*skilled*	4.	partĭceps	*participating*
	impĕrītus	*unskilled*		consors	*sharing*
	conscius	*conscious*		exsors	*not sharing*
	iuscius	*ignorant*		expers	
	nescius			ĭnops	*destitute*
	praescius	*foreknowing*		prŏprius	*belonging to*
	gnārus	*knowing*	5.	plēnus	*full*
	ignārus	*not knowing*		ĭnānis	*empty*
	prūdens	*foreseeing*			

Obs. 1. The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 1, 2, 3, and those in *ax*, *ans*, and *ens*, is an Objective Genitive: thus, cūpĭdus sum pĕcūniae = cūpio pĕcūniam. The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 4, 5, is a Partitive Genitive. Those signifying *plenty* or *want* are also used with the Ablative: see § 307.

Obs. 2. Some of the above Adjectives are also found with a Preposition: thus perītus is found with in and *abl.* (Prop.), also with de (Varr.), prūdens and rŭdis with in and *abl.* (Cic.). See Lexicons.

Obs. 3. Such Adjectives as āmīcus, *friendly*; ĭnīmīcus, *unfriendly*; fīdēlis, fīdus, *faithful*, &c., do not fall under the above rule, but govern the Dative according to § 298.

Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though when used strictly as Participles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus pătiens *(adj.)* *lăbōrum*, signifies *capable of enduring hardships*; pătiens *(part.)* *lăbōres*, *(actually)* *enduring hardships*.

§ 277. Adjectives of *likeness* and *unlikeness* (sīmĭlis, dissīmĭlis, dispar) are frequently found followed by the Genitive, especially in the earlier writers. The Genitive is particularly common when living objects are spoken of. Examples:—

Sīmĭlis *hŏmĭnis* (of external resemblance), Cic. N. D. 1, 78—*sui* sīmĭlem spĕciem, id. Tusc. 1, 34—*patris* sīmĭlem (of internal likeness), id. Verr. 5, 30—făcĭē *patris*, vītā *omnium perditorum* sīmĭlis (external and internal resemblance combined), id. Tusc. 1, 81—sīmĭles *meōrum* versus, *verses like mine*, Hor. S. 2, 1, 3—(nihil) dispar *sui* atque dissīmĭle, Cic. Sen. 78.

After Cicero, the Dative became more usual, though not to the exclusion of the Genitive. See § 298, 5.

§ 278. *Genitive of Respect* after Adjectives.—This being a late usage (of which no example is found in Cic.), is probably due mainly to Greek analogy (see § 285). Only in the case of animi, it appears to be a pure Latin idiom, probably based on the original use of the Genitive as a Locative Case: e.g.—

Anxius ănĭmi, *anxious in mind* (Sall. J. 55, *dub.*)—fīdens ănĭmi, *resolute in mind* (Virg. Aen. 2, 61)—mātūrus ănĭmi (ib. 9, 246)—aeger ănĭmi, *heart-broken* (Liv. 1, 58).

C. Genitive after Verbs.

1. Genitive after to Remember or to Forget.

§ 279. Verbs signifying *to remember* or *to forget* usually govern the Genitive (of the Object): as,

Anĭmus mĕmĭnit *praetĕrĭtōrum, The mind remembers the past.*—Cic. (Div. 1, 63.)

Nec unquam oblīviscar *illius noctis, Nor shall I ever forget that (memorable) night.*—Cic. (Planc. 101.)

Obs. 1. But they govern the Accusative:—

(*a*) When the *entire object* is represented as remembered or forgotten, not merely something about it: as,

Oblīvisci nĭhĭl sŏles nĭsi *injūrias, Thou art wont to forget nothing save injuries.*—Cic. (Lig. 35.)

Dulcīs mŏriens rĕmĭniscĭtur Argŏs, *Dying he remembers beloved Argos* (not merely, *about it*).—Virg. (Aen. 10, 782.)

Hence *mĕmĭni* invariably governs an Accusative to indicate a contemporary whom one remembers: as,

Cinnam mĕmĭni, vīdi Sullam, *I remember Cinna, I saw Sulla.*—Cic. (Ph. 5, 17.)

(*b*) When the object is a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective: thus, id, ea, omnia, multa rĕcordāri, rĕmĭnisci, &c.; not ejus, eorum [but earum rerum], &c. (See § 253.)

Obs. 2. Verbs of *reminding* (mŏneo, admŏneo, commŏneo, &c.) govern the Accusative of a person and the Genitive of a thing: as,

Cātīlīna admŏnēbat ālium *ĕgestātis*, ālium *cŭpĭdĭtātis* suae, *Catiline reminded one of his penury, another of his ruling passion.*—Sall. (C. 21.)

But if the thing is denoted by a Neuter Pronoun, this is put in the Accusative, so that a verb of *reminding* is thus joined with two Accusatives: as, illud me admŏnes, *you remind me of that.*

Obs. 3. Verbs of *reminding* are frequently constructed with *de* and the Ablative, in different sense from the foregoing: as,

De aede Tellūris me admŏnes, *You remind me about the temple of Tellus.*—Cic. (Q. Fr. 3, 1, 4.)

Obs. 4. *Rĕcordor* generally governs the Accusative, very rarely the Genitive.

Obs. 5. The impersonal phrase, "vĕnit mihi in mentem," *I think of, recollect,* is also used with the Genitive: as,

Sŏlet mihi in mentem vĕnīre *illīus tempŏris, I am wont to call to mind that time.*—Cic. (Fam. 7, 3, *init.*)

But the phrase is also used personally: as,

Non vĕnit in mentem pugna apud Rēgillum lăcum, *Do you not call to mind the battle at lake Regillus?*—Liv. (8, 5.) (Subject, pugna.)

2. Genitive after to Accuse, Condemn, and Convict.

§ 280. (1.) The Genitive is used after Verbs of *accusing, condemning,* and *acquitting,* to denote the Charge: as,

Accūsātus est *prōdĭtiōnis, He was accused of treason.*—Nep. (Milt. 7.)

Caesar Dŏlābellam *rĕpĕtundārum* postŭlāvit, *Caesar impeached Dolabella for extortion.*—Suet. (Jul. 4.)

Mājestātis absŏlūti sunt permulti, *Very many persons have been acquitted of treason.*—Cic. (Clu. 116.)

Hoc crīmĭne absens *prōdĭtiōnis* damnātus est, *On this charge he was brought in guilty of treason in his absence.*—Nep. (Them. 8.)

Obs. 1. There can be no doubt that the use of the Genitive is here elliptical, since the Abl. judicio or crimine is sometimes expressed (never the Gen. judicii or criminis): thus Cic. has arcessere aliquem judicio capitis (Off. 2, 51), as well as simply arcessere capitis (Deiot. 30); also ambītus crimine arcessere (Cael. 16).

Obs. 2. Instead of the Genitive may often be found the Ablative with *de:* as, de pĕcūniis rĕpĕtundis, de parricīdio (Cic.), etc. This is the only admissible construction in the case of vis, *violence:* as de vi postŭlare, damnare, &c.

Obs. 3. The Genitive is also used with Adjectives signifying *guilty, innocent, condemned:* as, *reus, noxius* (late), *innoxius* (late), *insons, mānĭfestus,* and the like.

(2.) The Genitive is also sometimes used to denote the punishment to which a person is condemned: as,

Căpĭtis hŏmĭnem condemnāre, *To condemn a man to death.*—Cic.

Octupli damnāri, *To be condemned to pay eight-fold.*—Cic. (Verr. 3, 28.)

Damnātus *longi lăbōris, Condemned to long toil.*—Hor. (Od. 2, 14, 19.)

Obs. 1. In prose, the Gen. of the penalty appears to be confined to the words capitis (also capite, Cic. Tusc. 1, 50), pecuniae, capitalis poenae (Liv. 42, 43), with such words as dupli, quadrupli, etc. (Roby, § 1325.)

Obs. 2. If the money-penalty is expressed by an Adjective of Quantity, the Genitive is commonly used, as *tanti, quanti, dupli, quadrupli* (comp. § 281): but if the sum is definitely expressed, the Ablative is used: as,

Ea lis quinquāgintā *tālentis* aestīmāta est, *The damages in the case were fixed at fifty talents.*—Nep. (Milt. 7, *fin.*)

3. Genitive of Price or Valuation.

§ 281. This Genitive is used in the case of indefinite Adjectives of Quantity, to denote the *price* or *rate* at which a thing is valued. The principal of these forms are, magni, tanti, tantīdem, quanti, plūris, mĭnōris; with which the Noun prĕtii appears to be understood [Genitive of Quality, § 274]: as,

Quanti quisque sit, pondĕrandum est, *We must weigh well what each man is worth.*—Cic. (Br. 257.)

Plūris, mĭnōris ĕmĕre, *To buy for more* or *less.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 14.)

(Vŏluptātem) virtus mĭnĭmi făcit, *Virtue sets a very low value on bodily pleasure.*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 42.)

(But a definite price is expressed by a Noun in the Ablative: cf. Ter. Eun. 5, 5, 14: quanti?—Vīginti mĭnis, *At what price?—For 20 pounds.* And even in the case of Adjectives of Quantity, the Ablatives magno, parvo, plurimo, etc., are frequent, when *money value* is referred to.)

Obs. To this head belong the expressions bŏni consŭlĕre (Quint.), *to make the best of;* aequi bŏni făcĕre, *to take in good part, put up with* (Ter. Cic.).

The Genitive of Valuation also occurs in such idiomatic expressions as, nihĭli, flocci, pīli, nauci (*some unknown trifle*), assis, hūjus (?prĕtii), modifying a verb of *valuing*, usually with a negative, *to care nothing for:* as,

Mĭnas ego istas *flocci* non făcio tuas, *I don't care a straw* [lit. *a lock of wool*] *for your threats.*—Pl. (Rud. 3, 5, 16.)

Hūjus non făciam, *I shan't care that* (probably a contemptuous gesture here) *for it!*—Ter. (Ad. 2, 1, 9.)

4. Genitive with Verbs of Feeling.

§ 282. The Personal Verbs mīsĕreor, mīsĕresco, *to pity;* and the Impersonals mīsĕret, mīserescit, mīsĕrētur, *it causes pity;* pĭget, *it vexes;* paenĭtet, *it repenteth;* pūdet, *it causes*

shame; taedet, pertaesum est, *it causes weariness;* are followed by a Genitive of the cause of the emotion: as,

Tui me mĭsĕret, *mei* pĭget, *I pity you and am vexed with myself.*—Cic. (Div. 1, 66, *poet.*)

Prorsus *vĭtae* taedet, *I am thoroughly sick of life.*—Cic. (Att. 2, 24, *fin.*)

Nunquam *suscepti nĕgōtii* eum pertaesum est, *He never tired of a business he had taken in hand.*—Nep. (Att. 15.)

Obs. 1. The cause of the feeling is also sometimes expressed by an Infinitive Mood, or a clause with *quod.* See § 488, *Obs.*

Obs. 2. Mĭsĕror and commĭsĕror, *to commiserate, take pity on,* follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

5. Genitive with Intĕrest and Rēfert.

§ 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs intĕrest and rēfert, *it is of advantage, importance* [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person *to whom* a thing is of *importance* or *benefit:* as,

Quid *Mĭlōnis* intĕrĕrat interfĭci Clōdium, *What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?*—Cic. (Mil. 34.)

Nĕque rēfert cūjusquam, *Nor does it matter to anybody* (foll. by Inf.).—Tac. (Ann. 4, 33.)

NOTE.—*Rēfert* probably = rem fert, *it brings advantage;* and with *interest,* rei (*Dat.*) may be understood. The forms *meā, tuā,* &c., may perhaps be regarded as ablatives agreeing with causā understood. (For another explanation of the constr. of interest, see Sm. Lat. Dict. s.v.)

Obs. 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā, being used instead: as,

Quid id rēfert *tuā, What matters that to you?*—Pl. (Curc. 3, 88.)

Vestrā intĕrest, *It is your concern.*—Tac. (H. 1, 30.)

Obs. 2. *Rēfert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, less rarely with *meā, tuā,* &c.

Obs. 3. The subject of *intĕrest* (and *rēfert*) is never a Substantive, but is expressed,

(*a*) By the Infinitive alone: as,
Intĕrest omnium *rectē făcĕre, It is the interest of all to act rightly.* (Madv.)

(*b*) By the Accusative and Infinitive: as,
Meā intĕrest *te vălēre, It is of importance to me that you should be in good health*—Cic. (Fam. 16, 4.)

(*c*) By a secondary clause beginning with *ut, nē,* or an interrogative: as,

Illud meā magni intĕrest, *tē ut vĭdeam, It is of great importance to me that I should see you.*—Cic. (Att. 11, 22.)

Magni rĕfert, *quid hic vĕlit, It is of great importance what this person wishes.*—Caes. ap. Cic. (Att. 14, 1.)

(*d*) By a neuter pronoun (so that the Verbs are not quite impersonal): see examples above.

Obs. 4. The degree or measure of importance is expressed:

(*a*) By the Genitives of value, *magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti:* v. § 281.

(*b*) By the Adverbs *valdē, vĕhĕmenter, magnŏpĕre, măgis,* &c.

(*c*) By Neuter Adjectives, *multum, plus, plūrimum,* &c.

D. Exceptional Uses of the Genitive.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used by the poets after Verbs and Adjectives of separation or removal; whether according to the Greek idiom (this being a leading sense of the Genitive in Greek), or by virtue of the original meaning of the Case (see § 262, *Obs.* 1): as,

Dēsīne mollium tandem *quĕrēlārum, Cease at length from unmanly repinings.*—Hor. (Od. 2, 9, 17.) (Compare the Greek *γόων, κλαυθμοῦ παύεσθαι.*)

Scĕlĕris pūrus, *Pure from guilt.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 22, 1.) (Gr. *καθαρὸς δδικίας.*)

Sōlūtus *ŏpĕrum, Released from toil.*—Hor. (Od. 3, 17, 16.) (Gr. *λελυμένος πόνων.*)

§ 285. The Genitive is sometimes used (especially by the poets), in the sense of *with regard to, in reference to, because of* (cf. § 278): as,

O te, Bōlāne, fēlīcem *cĕrebri, O my friend Bolanus, lucky for your choleric vein!*—Hor. (S. 1, 9, 11.)

Nōtus in frātres *ănĭmi păterni, Renowned for right fatherly affection to his brothers.*—Hor. (Od. 2, 2, 6.)

Justĭtiaene prius mīrer, etc., *Should I praise (thee) first for thy justice,* etc.—Virg. (Aen. 11, 126.)

(Compare the Greek *ὄλβιος, μάκαρ τῶν τέκνων,* etc.)

§ 286. Note especially the use of ănĭmi in such phrases as ănĭmi pendēre, *to be in suspense or anxious in mind;* discrŭcĭāre se ănĭmi, *to torture oneself in mind* (Ter. Ad. 4, 4, 1), &c. (The form is a Locative: see § 257.)

Chapter XXXIX.—The Dative.

§ 287. The Dative may usually be translated by the Preposition *to* or *for*, in English. It denotes the *Indirect Object*, as distinguished from the *Direct Object*, with which it is often combined: as,

Aesōpo lăpĭdem impĕgĕrat, *he had thrown a stone at Aesop*—pōcŭlum dĕdit *Bitiae, she gave the cup to Bitias—erranti* viam monstrāre, *to point out the road to one going astray*—incŭte vim *ventis, smite force into the winds*—ērĭpĕre vītam *hŏmĭni, to take life from a man.*

It is also used after Intransitive Verbs, after Adjectives other than Transitive (§ 276), and after Interjections (§ 250, *Obs.* 2), to denote that the action, state, or quality indicated has a bearing upon some person or thing.

A. Dative after Verbs.

1. Dative of Advantage, or Dative of the Recipient.

(Dătīvus Commŏdi.)

§ 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for, for the good of:* as,

Ăliis cōluit (praedia) non *sĭbi, He cultivated farms for others, not for himself.*—Cic. (R. Am. 49.)

Non *omnĭbus* dormio, *I am not asleep to everybody.*—Cic. (Fam. 7, 24.)

Non *vītae* sed *schŏlae* discĭmus, *We learn not for life but for the school.*—Sen. (Ep. 106, *extr.*)

Obs. The use of the term Dativus Commodi or Dative of the Recipient is extended so as to include those cases in which a thing is represented as *happening to* or *with reference to* a person: as,

In Antiāti *mĕtentĭbus* cruentas in corbem spīcas cĕcĭdisse, *In the territory of Antium, the ears of corn dropped blood-stained into the basket of the reapers* (Lit. *to them reaping*).—Liv. (22, 1.)

Lānigĕris *grĕgĭbus* sponte suā lānae cădunt, *From* (lit. *to*) *the woolly flocks the wool drops off of its own accord.*—Ov. (Met. 7, 541.)

§ 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which do not naturally imply an external object, are constructed with a Dative, to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus văco, *to be free*, signifies with the Dative, *to have leisure for a thing, to devote oneself to it;* nūbo, *to cover* or *veil oneself*, in speaking of a woman signifies with the Dative, *to cover herself* or *put on the veil*

for a man, hence *to marry*; supplĭco, *to be a suppliant*, signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person*; as,

Philŏsŏphiae semper văco, *I always find leisure to study philosophy.* —Cic. (Div. 1, 11.)

Vĕnus nupsit *Vulcāno, Venus married Vulcan.*—Cic. (N. D. 3, 59.)

Caesări pro te lĭbentissĭme supplĭcābo, *I will most cheerfully supplicate (make petition to) Caesar for you.*—Cic. (Fam. 6, 14.)

2. Dativus Ethicus.

§ 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns *mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis*) is used simply to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with *interest* (ἦθος) by some person (dătīvus ēthĭcus): as,

Pater *nobis* decessit a.d. iiii Kal. Decembres, *My poor father died on the fourth day before the Kalends of December.*—Cic. (Att. 1, 6, 4.)

Quid *mihi* Celsus ăgit, *How is my (dear) Celsus?*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 3, 15.)

Pulset tum *mihi* lictōrem, *I should like to see a man beat a lictor then!*—Liv. (2, 29.)

Hic tĭbi . . . . . bellum ingens gĕret Itălĭă, *He, for thy satisfaction —shall wage*—&c., i.e. *thou shalt see him wage a great war in Italy.*— Virg. (Aen. 1, 261: cf. ib. 258, mănent immōta tuōrum fāta *tibi*—i.e. '*you shall not have them disturbed*').

Suo *sibi* glădio hunc jŭgŭlo, *I cut this man's throat with his very own sword.*—Ter. (Ad. 5, 8, *fin.*)

Obs. The *Dativus Ethicus* is a more delicate shade of the Dative of Advantage.

3. Dative after various Verbs.

§ 291. The following classes of Intransitive Verbs, denoting an action or state of mind which has a bearing upon some person or thing, govern a Dative:

1. *To assist:* subvĕnio, succurro, auxĭlior, adsum.

2. *To resist, oppose:* rĕsisto, adversor, obnītor, rĕnītor, rĕpugno, obsum, &c.

3. *To favour, study (be devoted to):* făveo, indulgeo, stŭdeo.

4. *To envy, be jealous of:* invĭdeo, aemŭlor (see *Obs.* 4).

5. *To please:* plăceo, arrīdeo.

6. *To serve, obey, benefit:* pāreo, ŏbēdio (ŏboedio), obtempĕro, mĭnistro, servio, prōsum, prōfĭcio.

7. *To trust* or *distrust:* crēdo, fīdo, confīdo, diffīdo.

8. *To spare, refrain from:* parco, tempĕro.

9. *To advise, persuade:* suādeo, persuādeo.

10. *To flatter:* ădūlor, assentor, blandior.

11. *To cure:* mĕdeor, mĕdĭcor.

12. *To pardon:* ignosco.

13. *To congratulate:* grātŭlor.

14. *To revile:* mălĕdīco, obtrecto, convĭcior.

15. *To be angry:* īrascor, succenseo.

16. *To command:* impĕro, impĕrĭto, praecĭpio, and sometimes mŏdĕror, tempĕro.

Familiar examples:—

Mĭsĕris succurrĕre, *to relieve the wretched*—hostĭbus rĕsistĕre, *to withstand the enemy*—fāvēre sententiae, *to support an opinion*—invĭdēre nēmĭni, *to envy no one*—turpĭtūdĭni servīre, *to be the slave of sensual passion*—parcĕre subjectis, *to spare the prostrate*—gentĭbus impĕrāre, *to rule over nations*—tempĕrāre sĭbi, *to control oneself*—&c., &c.

Obs. 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally: thus—

Indicative Mood—Present Tense.

invĭdĕtur mihi	*I am envied*
invĭdĕtur tĭbi	*thou art envied*
invĭdĕtur illi	*he is envied*
invĭdĕtur nōbis, vōbis, illis	*we, ye, they are envied:* &c., &c.

(Poet. constr. 'Ego cur invĭdeor.' Hor. A. P. 56. Cf. Gk. φθονοῦμαι.)

Obs. 2. Jŭvo, adjŭvo, *I assist*—dēlecto, oblecto, *I delight*—cūro, *I take care of*, or *treat medically*—are pure Transitives, and always govern an Accusative.

Obs. 3. Mĕdeor, mĕdĭcor, *I heal*, and ădūlor, *I flatter*, have sometimes the Accusative, but oftener the Dative.

Obs. 4. Aemŭlor, *to rival, emulate* (in good sense), is followed by an Accusative: Cic.: Hor. (Od. 4, 2, 1, Pindărum aemulari).

Obs. 5. Invĭdeo, *I envy, begrudge*, may take in addition to a Dative of the Person an Accusative (or in later writers an Ablative) of *the thing begrudged*; also less frequently a Genitive: as,

Invĭdent nōbis *măgistram* optĭmam, *They envy us the best of teachers (Nature)*.—Cic. (Tusc. 3, 2, 3, *dub.*: but the constr. is found in Liv., Virg., etc.)

Nē *spectācŭlo* quĭdem proelii nōbis invĭdērunt, *They (the gods) have not even begrudged us the spectacle of a battle*.—Tac. (Ger. 33.)

(For Gen. after invĭdeo, see Hor. S. 2, 6, 84.)

Obs. 6. *Jŭbeo, rĕgo*, and *gŭberno* are pure Transitives and always followed by the Accusative; and *mŏdĕror, tempĕro*, as frequently by the Accusative as by the Dative; especially when they mean *to govern*: as,

Equos mŏdĕrāri, *to manage horses.*—Caes. (B. G. 4, 33.)

Qui *res* hŏmīnum ac deōrum . . . . . : *tempĕrat*, *Who governs the affairs of men and gods.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 12, 16.)

Dŏmĭnor is commonly used with Prep. or *Absol.*; rare and late with Dative.

Obs. 7. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative: as,

Haec nobis convĕniunt, *These things are suited to us.*
Convĕnīre aliquem, *To have an interview with any one.*
Mĕtuo, tīmeo te, *I fear you.*
——————— tibi, *I am apprehensive for you.*
Consŭlo te, *I consult you.*
——— tibi, *I consider your interests.*
——— in te, *I take measures against you.*
Prospĭcio te, *I see you at a distance.*
——————— tibi, *I exercise forethought for your interests.*
Căveo te *or* a te, *I am on my guard against you.*
——— tĭbi, *I am concerned for your safety.*
Tempĕro, mŏdĕror aliquid, *I regulate, arrange something.*
——————— mihi, irae, &c., *I set bounds to, check, restrain.*

Obs. 8. Fīdo, *I trust*, takes the Dative of the person trusted; but is also found with Abl. of ground of confidence: § 313.

§ 292. Most Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in, inter,
ob, post, prae, sub and sŭper,

govern a Dative, the Preposition indicating the direction or bearing of the energy denoted by the Verb. In the case of transitive Verbs, this Dative occurs in addition to the Accusative of the direct object of the verb: as,

Tu *mĭhi* (= in me) terram *in*-jĭce, *Fling thou earth on me (my corpse).*—Virg. (Aen. 6, 365.)

In-cŭbuit *tŏro* (= in tŏrum), *She leaned upon her couch.*—Virg. (Aen. 4, 650.)

Quum prŏpĕmŏdo *mūris* (= ad muros: rare constr.) *ac*-cessisset, *When he had almost got up to the walls.*—Liv. (24, 20.)

Tuscus ăger Rōmāno [= ad Rōmānum] *ad*-jăcet, *The Tuscan soil borders on that of Rome.*—Liv. (2, 49.)

Caesări (= ob Caesărem) vĕnienti *oc*-currit, *He hastens to meet Caesar on his way.*—Caes. (B. C. 3, 79.)

Prae-pōnens ultĭma *prīmis* (= prae prīmis), *Putting the last before the first.*—Hor. (S. 1, 4, 59.)

Quum virtūte *omnĭbus* (= prae omnibus) *prae*-stārent, *As they (the Helvetii) surpassed all in valour.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 2: also with Acc.)

Obs. 1. When *motion towards* is very distinctly expressed, the Accusative is generally used, commonly with a Preposition. This is the case with *ădeo, addūco, accēdo* (in local sense), *ingrĕdior*, and similar Verbs, (cf. § 239). But the construction of each compound requires to be separately studied by the help of the dictionary. (See also Krebs, *Antibarbarus.*)

Obs. 2. *Assuēfăcio, assuesco* are usually constructed with the Ablative, rarely with the Dative: as,

Cum Lūsītānis *gĕnĕre* quŏdam pugnae assuēfacti, *Accustomed to a certain kind of fighting with the Lusitani.*—Caes. (B. C. 1, 44.)

Obs. 3. Verbs compounded with *ante* and *prae*, as *antesto, antĕcēdo, antĕcello, praesto*, usually take the Dative, but sometimes the Accusative: v. § 239, *Obs.* ✓

Obs. 4. Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo, inspergo, circumdo*, have two constructions, namely, either an Accusative and a Dative, or—taking the Verb in a complex sense, *to besprinkle, to bespatter, to surround*—an Accusative and an Ablative: as,

Tōto oppĭdo (*Dat.*) mūnītiōnes circumdăre, *To draw lines of fortification entirely round the town.*—Hirt. (B. G. 8, 34.)

Oppĭdum vallo et fossā circumdăre, *To surround a town with a rampart and moat.*—Cic. (Fam. 15, 4, *med.*)

Obs. 5. Some compounds of *a* (*ab*), *de, e* (*ex*), take a Dative of the indirect object, as ăliquid *ălīcui* ērīpĕre, *to take anything violently from a man* (Cic.); dērīpĕre pellem *leōni*, to rob the *lion of his skin* (Ov.). The Dative here denotes the person *to whom* the act of *taking something away* is done.

4. Dative after Passive Verbs.

§ 293. The Dative is often used after the *Perfect* Tenses Passive to denote the Agent, instead of *a* or *ab* and the Ablative: as,

Cui non *sunt auditae* Demosthĕnis vĭgĭliae, *By whom have not the night studies of Demosthenes been heard of?*—Cic. (Tusc. 4, 44.)

Obs. The Dative is by the Poets, and occasionally by prose writers, used with *all* tenses of the Passive Verb: as,

Nĕque cernītur *ulli*, *Nor is he seen by any.*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 440.)

Carmīna quae scrībuntur ăquae *pōtōrĭbus*, *Poems that are written by water-drinkers.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 19, 3.)

Cicero uses this construction in a very few instances: e.g.

Illa *nōbis* ălio tempŏre explĭcābuntur, *will be explained by me.*—(Inv. 1, 86.)

§ 294. The Dative is regularly used after the Gerundive Participle with the Verb *esse*, to denote the Agent: as,

Quod *fĕrendum est* mollĭter *săpienti*, *Which the wise man must bear patiently.*—Cic. (Sen. 5.)

Ita vīvāmus, ut rătiōnem *reddendam* (esse) *nōbis* arbĭtrēmur, *that we must render up an account.*—Cic. (Verr. 2, 28.)

Obs. But the Ablative is used to prevent ambiguity: see § 536, *Obs.* 4.

5. Dative after Impersonal Verbs.

§ 295. The Impersonal Verbs lĭcet, *it is lawful;* lĭbet, *it pleases;* expĕdit, *it is expedient,* govern the Dative: as,

Līcet nēmīni dūcĕre exercĭtum contrā patriam, *It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.*—Cic. (Ph. 13, 14.)

Sin ei lĭbēbit, quod non lĭcet (*ei*), *If it shall please him to do that which is unlawful for him.*—Cic. (Qu. 94.)

Obs. After *lĭcet,* &c., we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse* [by 'Attraction']; as,

Lĭcuit esse Themistocli *ōtiōso, Themistocles was at liberty to be inactive.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 33.)

Illis *tĭmĭdis* et *ignāvis* licet esse, *They (the enemy) are at liberty to be timid and cowardly.*—Liv. (21, 44.)

But the Accusative may be used: e.g.,

Si cīvi Rōmāno lĭcet esse *Gādĭtānum, If it is legal for a Roman citizen to be a citizen of Gades.*—Cic. (Bal. 29.)

6. Dative with the Verb Sum.

§ 296. The Verb sum with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo:* as,

Mĭhi est injusta nŏverca, *I have an unjust stepmother.*—Virg. (E. 3, 33).

Fons *cui* nōmen Arĕthūsa est, *A fountain which has the name of Arethusa.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 118.)

Obs. 1. When, as in the last example, a *name* is specified after the verb *esse* or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative: as,

Cui Servio Tullio fuit nōmen, *Whose name was Servius Tullius.*—Liv. (1, 39.)

Cui postea *Afrĭcāno* cognōmen fuit, *Who afterwards bore the surname of Africanus.*—Sall. (Jug. 5.)

Obs. 2. The following use of the Dative by attraction is an idiom borrowed from the Greek:

Ut *mīlĭtĭbus* lābor *vŏlentĭbus* esset, *That the soldiers might be willing to undertake labour.*—Sall. (Jug. 100.) (Lit., *that the labour might be to the soldiers as willing persons:* τοῖς στρατιώταις βουλομένοις εἴη.)

7. Dative of Purpose or Result.

§ 297. A Dative of Purpose or Result ("Predicative Dative of Purpose," K.) is often found in combination

with the Dative of the person concerned, after Verbs signifying *to be* or *become; to give, send* or *come; to impute* or *reckon, &c.*: as,

Illud Cassiānum, cui *bŏno* fŭerit, *The well-known rule laid down by Cassius, for whose advantage was it?*—Cic. (Mil. 32.)

Ampla dŏmus saepe fit *dŏmĭno dēdĕcŏri, A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 139.)

Nulla cīvĭtas Athēniensibus *auxĭlio* fuit praeter Plătaeenses, *No state helped* (lit. *was for a help to*) *the Athenians except Plataea.*—Nep. (Mil. 5.)

Nec tĭmuit *sibi* nē *vĭtio* quis vertĕret, *Nor was afraid that any one might impute it to him as a fault.*—Hor. (S. 1, 6, 85.)

Among the more frequent Datives of this kind are argūmento, auxĭlio, bŏno, causae, cordi, crīmĭni, cūrae, damno, dēdĕcŏri, dētrīmento, dŏcūmento, dōno, exĭtio, fraudi (*harm, damage*), frūgi (*for profit*; hence, *profitable, thrifty*), glōriae, hŏnōri, impĕdīmento, indĭcio, laudi, lucro, lūdibrio, mŭlo, mŏrae (*a cause of delay*), mūnĕri, noxae (*prejudicial*), ŏdio (*an occasion for hatred*; hence *hateful*), ŏnĕri, ŏpĕrae (*matter of attention:* non operae est, *it is not worth while*, Liv. 1, 24), opprobrio and probro, praesĭdio, pŭdōri, relĭgiōni, spectācŭlo, subsĭdio, terrōri, vĭtio, vŏluptāti, ūsui. (See Roby, vol. ii. Preface; where an exhaustive list is given.)

Obs. 1. The Dative of Result may be used without a Dative of the Person: as,

Nec eam rem hăbuit *relĭgiōni, Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.*—Cic. (Div. 1, 77.)

Obs. 2. The Dative of Purpose or Result is often denoted by a Gerund or Gerundive Participle or a Verbal Noun, denoting a work to be done: as,

Cŏmĭtia dĕcemvīris creandis, *Elections for appointing decemvirs.*—Liv. (3, 35.)

Solvendo esse, *To be able to pay one's debts.*—Cic. (Att. 13, 10.)

Rĕceptui cănĕre, *To sound (for) a retreat.*—Caes. (B. G. 7, 47.)

B. Dative after Adjectives and Adverbs.

§ 298. The Dative (in most cases a Dative of the Indirect Object), is used after the following classes of Adjectives, with their opposites: as,

1. *Of utility:* ūtĭlis, commŏdus, fructuōsus; ĭnūtĭlis, noxius, incommŏdus, etc.

2. *Of fitness:* aptus, accommŏdātus, īdōneus, convĕniens, prŏprius; incommŏdus, inconvĕniens.

3. *Of acceptableness:* grātus, jūcundus, cārus; ingrātus, injūcundus, mŏlestus, obnoxius.

4. *Of friendliness:* bĕnignus, ămīcus, bĕnĕvŏlus, fīdēlis, fīdus; ĭnīmīcus, pernĭciōsus, mălĕvŏlus, mălignus, īrātus, infestus, ălienus.

5. *Of similarity and equality:* sīmĭlis, dissīmĭlis; aequālis, inaequālis.

6. *Of proximity:* fīnĭtĭmus, vīcīnus, prŏpinquus; ălienus.

Rōmŭlus *multitūdĭni grātior* fuit quam Patrĭbus, *Romulus was more acceptable to the multitude than to the Fathers.*—Liv. (1, 15.)

Fĭdēlis *Pŏpŭlo Rŏmāno, Faithful to the Roman people.*—Cic. (Ph. 11, 34.)

Hŏmĭnes *mihi* cārissĭmi et ămīcissĭmi, *Men most dear and most attached to me.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 15.)

Gens infestissĭma *nōmĭni Rōmāno, A nation most bitterly hostile to the name of Rome.*—Sall. (Cat. 52.)

Irātum te *rēgi Deiotăro* fuisse, *That you were offended with king D.*—Cic. (Deiot. 8.)

Fīlius *patri* sĭmĭlis, *A son like his father.*—Cic. (Fin. 5, 12.)

Identity being the highest degree of *likeness*, the Adjective *īdem* is sometimes construed with the Dative: as,

Īdem făcit *occīdenti, He does the same as a murderer.*—(Hor. A. P. 467. Usu. constr., īdem făcit quod . . . .)

Obs. 1. Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, *ămīcus* (*friend*), *ĭnīmīcus* (*enemy*), *fīnītīmus, vīcīnus, prŏpinquus* (*neighbour*), &c., and are then constructed with the Genitive.

Obs. 2. Concerning the use of *sĭmĭlis* and *dissĭmĭlis* with the Genitive, see § 277.

Mutual likeness, &c., is expressed with *inter:* as,

Dissĭmillīmi *inter vos, Very unlike each other.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 126.)

Obs. 3. An Adjective denoting *fitness* or *utility* may take an Accusative of the *purpose* with *ad:* as,

Multas ad res pĕrūtĭles (*nobis*) Xĕnŏphontis libri sunt, *The works of Xenophon are very useful* (*to us*) *for many purposes.*—Cic. (Sen. 59.)

Obs. 4. Adjectives which express *friendliness*, as *bĕnignus, bĕnĕvŏlus*, &c., are often constructed with *in, ergā* or *adversus;* and those which express *hostility*, as *mălignus, mălĕvŏlus*, with *adversus* or *in*. (See Dictionary.)

Obs. 5. Ălienus, when it means *unfriendly*, takes a Dative; when it means *foreign to, ab* and Ablative; less frequently a Genitive: when it means *unsuitable*, a Dative or *ad* and Accusative.

C. Dative after Adverbs and Interjections.

§ 299. (1.) An Adverb which corresponds in sense to the Adjectives above described, sometimes takes a Dative: as,

Convĕnienter nātūrae vīvĕre, *To live agreeably to nature.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 13.)

(2.) The Interjections hei and vae have an adverbial force, and are followed by the Dative: as,

Vae *victis* esse, *It was woe to the vanquished!* Liv. (5, 48, *extr.*)
Hei mĭhi, *Alas for me!*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 274.)

D. Exceptional Uses of the Dative.

§ 300. In the Poets, the Dative is occasionally, by a Greek idiom, used after a Verb of *fighting* (instead of the Ablative with *cum*): as,

Luctantem *Icăriis fluctĭbus* Africum, *The south wind wrestling with the Icarian billows.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 1, 15.)
(Compare the Gr. μάχεσθαί τινι.)

§ 301. The Dative is sometimes used by the Poets to express *motion towards:* as,

It clāmor *caelo, The shout rises to heaven.*—Virg. (Aen. 5, 451.)
(See also ib. 290, consessu for consessui = ad consessum.)

Chapter XL.—The Ablative.

§ 302. The Ablative combines the functions of an Instrumental Case with those of an Ablative [auferre, ablātum, *to take away*] properly so called.

It is usually expressed in English by the help of the Prepositions *from, by, with, in:* as,

Trōjae ab ōris, *from the coasts of Troy*—lĭber culpā—*free from blame*—fāto prŏfŭgus, *exiled by destiny*—virgīs caedĕre, *to scourge with rods*—stŭdiis asperrĭma belli, *most fierce in the pursuits of war.*

1. Ablative Proper or Ablative of Separation.

§ 303. *From* a Place or Person is put in the Ablative both with and without a Preposition.

§ 304. Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition, to denote *Motion from.* See § 261.

§ 305. All Prepositions denoting *Motion* or *Absence from*, as ā or ăb, dē, ex, sĭnĕ, etc., are construed with the Ablative. See Chapter on Prepositions, § 557.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found after Verbs signifying to *separate, remove, deliver from;* but more frequently, especially in Prose, with a Preposition: as,

(A.) WITHOUT A PREPOSITION.

Commeātu prŏhĭbēri, *To be cut off from supplies.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 49.)

Corpus prŏhĭbēre *chĭragrā*, *To save the body from gout.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 1, 31.)

Lĭbĕrāre (ălĭquem) *culpā*, *To discharge from blame.*—Cic. (Att. 13, 22.)

Oppugnātiōne dēsistĕre, *To abandon a siege.*—Caes. (B. G. 6, 39).

(B.) WITH A PREPOSITION.

Ab oppĭdis vim hostium prohĭbent, *They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their towns.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 11.)

Eum *ab* omni errātiōne lĭbĕrāvit, *He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.*—Cic. (Tim. 6.)

Tu Jūpĭter, hunc *a tuis āris* arcēbis, *Thou, O Jove, wilt keep this (villain) from thine altars!*—Cic. (Cat. 1, 33.)

A dēfensiōne dēsistĕre, *To abandon the defence.*—Caes. (B. C. 2, 12): Liv.

§ 307. The Ablative is used after some Adjectives denoting *freedom* or *exemption from* (see § 276, *Obs.* 1): as,

Anĭmus *omni* lĭber *cūrā*, *A mind free from all care.*—Cic. (Fin. 1, 49.)

Fāmā atque *fortūnis* expertes, *Destitute of character as well as fortune.*—Sall. (Cat. 33.)

Obs. 1. The Preposition *ab* is often used along with the Ablative: as, *Lĭber ab* omni sumptu, *Free from all expense.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 23.)

Obs. 2. Expers, ĭnānis, more frequently take a Genitive: lĭber, vācuus, usually the Ablative alone, or with a Preposition.

Obs. 3. For the Construction of ălĭēnus, see § 298, *Obs.* 5.

§ 308. Ŏpus est, *there is need*, like verbs of privation, governs the Ablative: as,

Măgistrātĭbus ŏpus est, *There must be magistrates.*—Cic. (Leg. 3, 5.)

Opus est mātūre *facto*, *There is need of prompt execution.*—Sall. (Cat. 1.)

Ita (tibi) *dictu* ŏpus est, *So you must say.*—Ter. (Heaut. 5, 1, 68.) [The Second 'Supine' being really a Verbal Noun in Abl.]

Obs. 1. But *ŏpus* is also used as an Adjective (indeclinable), in the Predicate: as,

Cēlĕrĭter, quae *ŏpus erant*, rĕpĕrĭēbat, *He was quick at devising what was needful.*—Nep. (Them. 1.)

Obs. 2. The Ablative after *ŏpus est* is perhaps strictly an Ablative of the instrument = *there is work (to be done) with something.*

2. Ablative of Origin.

§ 309. The Ablative of Origin arises out of the Ablative of separation. It denotes that *from which* anything is made or originates.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles nātus, *born from;* ortus (also ŏrĭundus), *sprung from;* gĕnĭtus, *begotten of:* also, in the poets, with sātus, ēdĭtus, creātus, crētus (from cresco), *sprung from* or *begotten of:* as,

Pĕlŏpe nātus, *Born of Pelops.*—Cic. (Tusc. 3, 26, poet.)

Orte *Sāturno*, *O thou offspring of Saturn!*—Hor. (Od. 1, 12, 50.)

Sātus *Anchīsā*, *The son of Anchises.*—Virg. (Aen. 5, 244.)

Quo sanguĭne crētus, *From what blood sprung.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 74.)

Albā ŏrĭundum sācerdōtium, *A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.*—Liv. (1, 20.)

Obs. But *ŏrĭundus*, and likewise *ortus* when it refers to *more remote* origin, are more frequently used with a Preposition: as,

Hippocrātes et Epicȳdes, nāti Carthāgĭne, sed *ŏrĭundi ab* Sȳrācūsis, *Hippocrates and Epicydes, natives of Carthage, but having their origin from Syracuse.*—Liv. (24, 6.)

Belgae *orti* sunt *a* Germānis, *The Belgians are descended from the Germans.*—Caes. (B. G. 2, 4.)

3. Ablative of Cause, Instrument, Manner.

§ 311. The Ablative is used after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to denote the *Cause*, *Instrument*, *Means*, or *Attendant Circumstances* of an action or state: as

Qui offĭcia dēserunt *mollĭtiā* ănĭmi, *Those who neglect duty from weakness of mind.*—Cic. (Fin. 1, 33.) [Cause.]

Sol cuncta *suā lūce* illustrat, *The sun illumines all things with its light.*—Cic. (Rep. 6, 17.) [Instrument, Means.]

Jăcent *suis testĭbus*, *They are floored by means of their own witnesses.*—Cic. (Mil. 47.) [Means.]

Cēna mĭnistrātur *puĕrīs tribus*, *Supper is served by three slaves.*—Hor. (S. 1, 6, 116: cf. Palmer, *ad l.*) [Instrument, Means.]

Cornĭbus tauri, apri *dentĭbus*, se tūtantur, *Bulls defend themselves with their horns, boars with their tusks.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 127.) [Means.]

Lăpĭdĭbus pluit, *It rained (with) stones.*—(Liv. 35, 9.) [Instrument.]

Scūta duo *sanguĭne* sūdasse, *Two shields had sweated (with) blood.*—Liv. (22, 1.) [Instrument.]

Maerōre et *lacrĭmis* consĕnescĕre, *To pine in* (or *with*) *sorrow and tears.*—Cic. (Clu. 13.) [Attendant circumstances or cause.]

Ex essĕdis dēsĭliunt et *pĕdibus* proeliantur, *They leap down from their chariots and skirmish on foot.*—Caes. (B. G. 4, 33.) [Instrument of *standing*, implied in desiliunt.]

Caelo invectus *ăperto*, *Driving along under (with) a cloudless sky.*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 155.) [Attendant circumstance.]

Quid *hoc pŏpŭlo* obtĭnēri pŏtest, *What can be secured with such a people as this?*—Cic. (Leg. 3, 37.) [Attendant circumstance.]

Quid *illo* fīet, *What will become of him?*—Cic. (Att. 6, 1, 11, N.) [? Instrument, or as preceding.]

(In examples like the last, *de* is sometimes used: as, de frātre quid fīet, *What will be done about my brother?*—Ter. Ad. *extr.*)

§ 312. The *Manner* in which anything is done is often expressed by the Ablative with the Preposition cum: as, cum cūrā (aliquid facere), cum summo stŭdio, cum summa cĕlĕrĭtāte, cum sĭlentio, etc.; but the Ablative is used without a Preposition in the case of words which themselves signify *way* or *manner*, as, mŏdo, rĭtu, rātiōne, mōre (not *in* mŏdo, etc.); also in the case of the Adverbial Ablatives fraude, dŏlo, jūre, injūria, vi, armis, vĭtio (*with informality; informally*). For examples, see Lexicons.

Also the Ablative alone is used in the case of other Nouns, when they have an Adjective with them: as,

Summā aequĭtāte res constĭtuit, *He settled matters with the greatest equity.*—Nep. (Milt. 2.)

Deos pūrā, integrā, incorruptā mente vĕnĕrāri, *To worship the gods with pure, undefiled, unpolluted mind.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 71.)

Summo stŭdio cūrāque aliquid discĕre, *To learn anything with the utmost zeal and care.*—Cic. (Fam. 4, 3 *ad fin.*)

Mărius *quadrāto agmĭne* incēdĕre, *Marius advances in column.*—Sall. (Jug. 100.)

Obs. The student should observe that where *with* in English means *in company with*, or *furnished with*, cum is always used; as, esse cum tēlo, *to carry arms* (Cic. Mil. 11): but where *with* denotes the instrument, as, *to kill a person with a sword*, cum cannot be used, but only the Ablative of the instrument.

§ 313. The Ablative of Cause is used with Intransitive verbs which express feelings or emotions, as, for example.

ardēre stŭdio, *to burn with zeal;* exsultāre gaudio, *to exult with joy;* gaudēre (laetāri) ămīci adventu, *to rejoice at the arrival of a friend;* glōriāri victōriā suā, *to boast of one's victory;* confīdĕre nātūrā lŏci, *to rely upon the nature of the ground.* But such Verbs admit of a variety of constructions, for which the Lexicon must be consulted. See also § 489.

Obs. 1. After Transitive Verbs, an Ablative of the Cause is for the most part used only in the case of such verbal Substantives as *jussu, mandātu, rŏgātu, permissu,* &c. In other cases the preposition *propter* with the Accusative, or *causā* with the Genitive, is generally used instead of the Ablative of the Cause.

Obs. 2. If the Cause is a state of feeling, the Perfect Participle of some verb signifying "to induce" is generally used with the Ablative of the Instrument: as, cūpīdĭtāte *adductus,* īrā *commōtus,* fūrŏre atque āmentiā *impulsus,* &c.

Obs. 3. *Fīdo* and *confīdo* are used with the Dative of *a person* (see § 292, *Obs.* 8); *dŏlco* with Accusative, Ablative (with or without Prep.), or dependent clause; *glōrior,* often with prep. *de* or *in.*

§ 314. Also Adjectives which express a state of the feelings are followed by an Ablative of the Cause; as, contentus, *contented,* sūperbus, *proud,* frētus, *relying on,* and, less frequently, laetus, *rejoicing,* maestus, *sorrowful,* anxius, *anxious* [for dignus, indignus, see § 317]: as,

Frētus *diligentiā vestrā, Relying on your attention.*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 49.)

Contentus suis *rēbus, Content with one's own.*—Cic. (Par. 6, 51.)

Opĭbus sūperbi, *Proud of their treasures.*—Virg. (Aen. 5, 268.)

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs ūtor, fruor, fungor, with their compounds, also vescor, nītor, pōtior, are followed by an Ablative, which was originally one of Instrument or Means: as,

Rătiōne ūti, *to use one's reason*—ăbūti pătientiā, *to abuse (anyone's) long-suffering*—fungi offĭcio, *to discharge a duty*—morbo dēfunctus, *having done with* or *got free from disease* (Liv.)—carne vesci, *to live on flesh*—insĭdiis nīti, *to rely on ambushes*—impĕrio pōtīri, *to obtain the supreme power.*

Obs. 1. Most of the above are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflexives. The Ablative with *pōtior* is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it (§ 320). It sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase *rērum pōtīri,* to obtain the *management of affairs.*

Obs. 2. Fungor and vescor are sometimes found with the Accusative; the former regularly so in Plautus and Ter.: as,

Nĕque bŏni nĕque lībĕrālis functus *officium* est vīri, *He has acted the part neither of an honest man nor of a gentleman.*—Ter. (Ad. 3, 4, 18.)

Vesci *singŭlas, To eat them up one by one.*—Phaedr. (1. 2, 25.)

§ 316. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, exchanging;* also the Adjectives cārus, *dear*, and vīlis, *cheap*, are used with the Ablative of Price, that is of the means or instrument of purchase (§ 311): as,

Trītĭci mŏdius ĕrat *ternis sestertiis, The peck of wheat was at three sestertii*, i.e. *about sixpence.*—Cic. (Verr. 3, 189.)

Vīginti *tālentis* ūnam ōrātiōnem Isocrătes *vendĭdit, Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.*—Plin. (H. N. 7, 110.)

Quod non ŏpus est, *asse cārum est, What you don't want is dear at any price* (lit. *at an* as).—Cato ap. Sen. (Ep. 94, 28.)

Mūtat quadrāta *rŏtundis, He changes square for round* (or *vice versa*).—Hor. (Ep. 1, 1, 100.) (With *muto*, either of the things exchanged may be represented by the Ablative.)

Obs. The Ablative of Price is always used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price may be expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity: see § 281. The Ablatives magno, *at a high price;* permagno, plūrīmo, *at a very high price;* nīmio, *at too high a price;* parvo, *at a low price;* mīnīmo, *for a very low price;* nīhĭlo, *for nothing;* are frequently found with words of *buying, selling, and valuing*, without a Noun expressed: as,

Permagno dĕcŭmas vendĭdi, *I farmed the dues (tenths) out at a very high rate.*—Cic. (Verr. 3, 90.)

§ 317. To this head (the Ablative of Price) must be referred the use of the Ablative after dignus, *worthy of*, and indignus, *unworthy of* (cf. Gk. ἄξιος): as,

Laude dignus—indignus *hŏnōre*—etc.

Obs. Dignus is occasionally found with the Genitive, but only in poetry: see Virg. Aen. 12, 649 (magnōrum indignus ăvorum).

§ 318. Verbs and Adjectives signifying *fulness* or *want* often take an Ablative. After words signifying fulness, the Ablative denotes the means or instrument by which anything is filled (§ 311); after words signifying want, it denotes separation or privation (§ 307): as,

Villa ăbundat porco, *A farm-house abounds in pork.*—Cic. (Sen. 56.)

Plēna dŏmus ornāmentis fānōrum, *A house filled with the decorations of temples.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 126.)

Vŏluptāte virtus saepe căret, nunquam indĭget, *Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs (it).*—Sen. (V. Beat. 7.)

Obs. 1. Verbs of *filling* less frequently take a Genitive of that *with which;* as, implēre ollam dēnārĭōrum, *to fill a pot with denaries*, Cic. (Fam. 9, 18). Adjectives of *fulness* usually take a Genitive (§ 276). Of Verbs of *want*, căreo takes always an Ablative; indĭgeo, usually a Genitive; ĕgeo, either a Genitive or Ablative.

Obs. 2. Praedītus, *endowed with*, always takes the Ablative.

4. Ablative of Quality.

§ 319. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the *Genitive* of Quality (§ 274), it requires an Adjective in agreement with it: as,

Fuisse trādĭtur *excelsā stātūrā, cŏlōre candido, He is said to have been of tall stature and fair complexion.*—Suet. (Jul. 45.)

Difficĭli transĭtu flūmen rīpisque praeruptis, *A river of difficult passage and with precipitous banks.*—Caes. (B. G. 6, 7.)

Obs. For the difference between the *Ablative of Quality* and the *Genitive of Quality*, see § 274, *Obs.* 1.

5. Ablative of Comparison.

§ 320. The Ablative is frequently used after Comparative Adjectives, instead of *quam* with the Nominative and some part of the Verb *sum:* as,

Ex ējus linguā *melle* (= quam mel est) dulcior fluēbat ōrātio, *From his tongue flowed speech sweeter than honey.*—Cic. (Sen. 31.)

Obs. 1. But the use of *quam* is quite as common: as, sol mājorne *quam* terra sit (Cic. Div. 2, 10), sol . . mājor atque amplior *quam* ūnīversa terra (id. N. D. 2, 92).

Obs. 2. The Ablative is also found instead of *quam* with the Object-Accusative, but it is infrequent: e.g.,

Quem auctōrem lōcuplētiōrem Plātōne laudāre possŭmus, *What weightier authority can we quote than Plato?*—Cic. (Rep. 1, 10.) See also Caes. B. G. 7, 19, *fin.*

When the Object-Accusative is a Pronoun, the Ablative is more frequently used instead of *quam;* and this is always the case with the Relative in negative clauses (Zumpt): as,

Pūnĭcum bellum, *quo* nullum mājus Rōmāni gessēre, *The Punic war, than which the Romans carried on none greater.*—Liv. (38, 53.)

Obs. 3. An Ablative after the comparative of an adverb, though common in verse, is chiefly found in prose in the case of the following words: *spe, exspectātiōne, ōpīniōne, aequo, justo, sōlito, dicto:* e.g.—

Spē, ōpīniōne, exspectātiōne cēlērius, *sooner than was expected*—spe sērius, *not so soon as had been anticipated* (Liv. 2, 3)—plus justo, *unduly*—grāvius aequo, *more deeply than is reasonable*—dicto cītius, *quicker than the word* (Virg.), *in less time than it took to say the word;* magis sōlīto, *more than usual;* etc.

Obs. 4. The Comparative Ablative is occasionally found after ălius, *other than:* see § 630, *Obs.* ?

6. Ablative of Measure (by how much).

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes *by how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words: as,

Turres *dēnis pĕdĭbus* quam mūrus *altiōres sunt*, *The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet.*—Curt. (5, 1.)

Hĭbernia *dimĭdio* mĭnor quam Brĭtannia, *less by one-half.*—Caes. (B. G. 5, 13.)

Uno plus Etruscōrum cĕcĭdisse in ăcie, *more by one.*—Liv. (2, 7.)

Sol, *multis partĭbus* major quam terra ūnĭversa, *The sun, (by) many times greater than the whole earth.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 92.)

This construction is very frequent in the case of such words as **multo, paulo, nĭhĭlo, quo, eo, hoc, tanto, quanto**: as,

Multo major, *much greater*—nĭhĭlo mīnus (or as one word, nĭhĭlōmĭnus), *none the less*—tanto mĕlior, *so much the better* (*man*)—quo plus . . . . eo plus, *the more . . . . the more*; etc.

Obs. The Ablative of Time, in connexion with the Adverbs *ante, post*, belongs to this rule: as, quod xx *annis* ante fēcĕrat Cŏrĭōlānus, *what Coriolanus had done 20 years earlier.*—Cic. (Am. 42.)

7. Ablative of Respect.

§ 322. The Ablative is used after Verbs and Adjectives to denote the part *of the body* especially referred to or affected, or the particular in Respect to which anything is affirmed: as,

Claudus *altĕro pĕde*, *Lame of one foot.*—Nep. (Ag. 8.)

Helvētii rĕlĭquos Gallos *virtūte* praecēdunt, *The Helvetii surpass the rest of the Gauls in valour.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 1.)

Epămīnondas princeps *meo jūdĭcio* Graeciae, *Epaminondas, in my judgment, the foremost man in Greece.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 4.)

Obs. This construction is very frequent in the case of such words as: re, *in reality*; nōmĭne, *in name* or *by name*; spĕcie, *in appearance*; gĕnĕre, *in birth*; nātu (with Adjectives, esp. mājor, mīnor, maxĭmus, mĭnĭmus), *in age*; etc. (Compare *Accusative of Closer Definition*, § 251.)

8. Ablative of Time.

§ 323. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Hĭĕme, *in winter*—aestāte, *in summer*—prīmo vēre, *at the commencement of spring*—prīmā lūce, *at daybreak*—vespĕre (vespĕri), *in the evening*—sōlis occāsu, *at sunset*—quartā hōrā, *at the fourth hour*; etc.

Obs. 1. Nocte, *by night*, is rare: usually, noctu (older form of Abl.) or de nocte. Die, *by day*, is more frequent (cf. Cic. Att. 13, 26, Quantum scribam *die*, quinetiam noctibus); but also, de die, '*in broad daylight*' (Liv. 23, 8; Ter. Ad. 5, 9, 8), and diu or interdiu, especially with noctu: also with nocte (cf. Liv. 1, 47, nec nocte nec interdiu virum conquiescere pati).

Obs. 2. Note also such expressions as: lūdis, *at the games*—cōmitiis, *at the elections*—Līberālibus, *at the festival of Liber*—glādiātōribus, (Cic. Att. 2, 19, 2), *at a show of gladiators*. In the case of other words than those indicated above, the Preposition *in* is mostly used, unless they are attended by an attributive Adjective: as, in ădŏlescentiā, *in youth* (Suet. Cl. 41), in puĕrītiā, *in childhood*; but, extrēmā puĕrītiā, *at the close of boyhood* (Cic. Man. 28); in pāce, *in peace*; but in connection with bello without Prep. (bello ac pāce, Liv. 8, 35).

§ 324. The Ablative denotes not only the 'time *when*' but also the time *in which* a thing is done: as,

Sāturni stella XXX fere *annis* cursum suum conficit, *The planet Saturn completes its orbit in about* 30 *years*.—Cic. (N. D. 2, 52.)

(See also "Time how long," § 249, *Obs.* 2.)

§ 325. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is usually expressed by the Ablative with in: as,

In paucis *diēbus quibus haec acta sunt*, *Within a few days of this affair*.—Ter. (Andr. 1, 1, 77.)

Dēcrēvēre ut (lēgāti Jūgurthae) *in diēbus proximis* dĕcem Itāliā dēcēdĕrent, *within the next ten days*.—Sall. (Jug. 28.)

This sense may be more precisely expressed by intra.

§ 326. The answer to the question *How long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with ante or post after it. (See § 321.) But the Accusative may be used in the same sense, under the government of ante or post. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or the Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning (Zumpt): as,

Accusative.	*Ablative.*
ante *or* post tres annos	trĭbus annis ante *or* post.
„ post tertium annum	tertio anno ante *or* post.
tres ante *or* post annos	trĭbus ante *or* post annis.
tertium ante *or* post annum	tertio ante *or* post anno.

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a Noun in the Accusative Case: as,

Anno *post Rōmam conditam* quartōdĕcīmo et quingentēsīmo, 514 *years after the founding of Rome*.—Cic. (Br. 72.)

Obs. Abhinc, *ago*, is used both with the Accusative and the Ablative: as, abhinc *annos* quattuordĕcim, *Fourteen years ago*.—Cic. (Verr. 2, 1, 34)—abhinc trīgintā *diēbus*.—Cic. (Verr. 2, 130.)

9. Ablative of Place.

§ 327. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained in § 257.

§ 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* dextrā, *on the right hand;* laevā, sĭnistrā, *on the left hand;* terrā mărīque (also, et terrā et mări, terrā ac mări), *on sea and land;* bello, *in the field* (comp. § 258).

§ 329. The following Nouns, lŏcus, terra, rēgio, via, ĭter, with similar words, are used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some attributive is attached to them: as,

Athēnienses *lŏco ĭdōneo* castra fēcērunt, *The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.*—Nep. (Milt. 5.)

Aurēliā viā prŏfectus est, *by the Aurelian way.*—Cic. (Cat. 2, 6.)

§ 330. Any Noun, with the Adjective tōtus, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Quis *tōto mări* lŏcus . . . ., *throughout all the sea.*—Cic. (Man. 31.)

Tōtā Asiā, *Throughout all Asia.*—Cic. (Man. v. 7.)

Tōtā vitā discendum est, *all our life long.*—Sen. (Brev. Vit. 7.)

Obs. Similarly Livy has mĕdio monte, *along the middle of the mountain range* (38, 26). But *in* mĕdio colle, Caes. (B. G. 1, 24.)

Viā is found without an attributive: cf. Liv. 21, 33: ālios *viā* transīre hostes, *along the highway.*

§ 331. In all cases besides the above, the Preposition in is used in prose: as,

In Ităliā—in fōro—in prōvincia sua—in hac urbe—in dēsertissimā sōlĭtūdine—in omni rēpublica—in conspectu Italiae, etc.—(All from Cic.)

Obs. These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place: as,

*Silvis*que *agris*que *viis*que corpŏra foeda jăcent, *O'er forest, field, and highway.*—Ov. (Met. 7, 547.)

Mĕdius *Pollūce* et *Castŏre*, *Betwixt Pollux and Castor.*—Ov. Am. 2, 16, 13.)

10. Ablative Absolute.

§ 332. When a Noun and a Participle form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute:* as,

Caesar, *explōrātis rēgiōnĭbus, albente caelo,* omnes cōpias castris ēdūcit, *Caesar, having reconnoitred the country, the sky being clear, leads forth all his forces from the camp.*—Caes. (B. C. 1, 68.)

Pȳthăgŏras *Superbo regnante* in Ităliam vēnit, *Pythagoras came into Italy in the reign of Superbus.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 38.)

Obs. 1. The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 323), as in the 2nd of the above examples: sometimes as the Ablative of Attendant Circumstances (§ 311), as in the 1st. It always denotes some condition under which something is described as taking place.

Obs. 2. As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, the English Perfect Participle Active with '*having*' is in Latin usually represented by the Passive, agreeing with what was in English its own Object. (See above, Example 1.)

§ 333. Sometimes the Noun is represented by an entire clause: as,

Nondum *comperto*, quam rĕgiōnem hostes pĕtissent, *It not being yet ascertained into what quarter the enemy had gone.*—Liv. (31, 39.)

Excepto quod non sĭmul esses, *This fact excepted that you are not with me.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 10, 50.)

Obs. This construction occurs most frequently in the case of such Ablatives as audīto, cognīto, comperto, etc.

§ 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with a Noun in Apposition, without any participle: as,

Si *se invīto* transīre cōnārentur, *If they should attempt to cross against his will* (lit. *he being unwilling*).—Caes. (B. G. 1, 8.)

Alĭquid *salvis lēgĭbus* ăgĕre, *To do a thing without breaking the laws* (lit., *the laws being safe* or *unbroken*).—Cic. (Fam. 1, 2, *fin.*)

Chapter XLI.—The Vocative.

§ 335. The Vocative Case indicates the person spoken to.

Obs. Hence the Pronouns of the Third Person, as *sui, hic, ille, iste*, &c., and the Relative, can have no Vocative.

§ 336. The Vocative is often introduced by the Interjection **O**, especially in the Poets, when it usually implies a more impassioned mode of address: as,

O lux Dardănĭae, *O light of the land of Troy!*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 281.)

O dŏmĭtor mundi mīles, *O soldiers, conquerors of the world!*—Lucan. (7, 250.)

Obs. This use of the Interjection *O* must not be confounded with that [with *Acc.*] explained in § 250: the Vocative is used only in *speaking to* or *invocation*.

§ 337. In the archaic style, the Nominative is not unfrequently found used as a Vocative, the latter being indeed simply an abbreviated form of the Nominative: as,

Audi tu *pŏpŭlus Albānus*, *Hear, O thou people of Alba!*—Liv. (1, 24.)

Agĕdum *pontĭfex publĭcus* pŏpŭli Rōmāni, prāci verba, *thou national pontiff of the people of Rome!*—Liv. (8, 9.)

Chapter XLII.—Adjectives.

§ 338. The ordinary rules for the construction of Adjectives are given under the Second Concord (§§ 223, foll.). The following are of a more special nature.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Noun to denote *Persons;* and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things:* as,

Omnes omnia bŏna dīcĕre, *All (men) say all kinds of good (things).*—Ter. (Andr. 1, 1, 71.)

Parvum parva dĕcent, *Small (things) befit a small (man).*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 7, 44.)

Obs. 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive hŏmo or res must be expressed: thus, multōrum hŏmĭnum, *of many persons;* multārum rērum, *of many things.* [*Multorum* alone might refer to either *persons* or *things.*]

Obs. 2. Adjectives are principally used in this way in the Plural: as, docti, *learned men;* magna, *great things.* In the Singular a Substantive is usually added: as, homo doctus, *a learned man;* pulchra res, *a beautiful thing.*

§ 340. When two Adjectives are attributives to one Noun they must be connected by a Conjunction. Thus whereas in English we say, "*many great things,*" the Latin idiom requires multae *et* magnae res (Cic. Inv. 1, 6).

Obs. 1. But if a Noun and Adjective together form one single notion, an additional Adjective may be used without a Connective: as,

Nāvis-ŏnĕrāria maxima, *A transport-ship of the largest size.*—Cic. (Verr. 5, 136.)

Stātuae-ēquestres īnaurātae, *Gilded equestrian-statues.*—Cic. (ib. 2, 150.)

Obs. 2. The foregoing rule does not apply to numerals (including the indefinite numerals, tot, quot, etc.; also, nullus and omnis) or to Pronominal Adjectives: thus we may say, dĕcem bŏni vīri, illi boni viri, omnes boni viri.

Obs. 3. Also sometimes an Adjective is used attributively with another Adjective employed as a Noun: as,

Neque quidquam *insĭpiente fortūnāto* intŏlĕrābĭlius fiĕri pŏtest, *than a fool grown rich.*—Cic. (Am. 54.)

§ 341. Many Adjectives appear as Nouns, owing to the ellipsis of a Noun with which they are frequently used. Among the most common of these are the following:—

Călĭda, frīgĭda (*sc.* aqua)—grammătĭca, mūsĭca, etc. (ars)—cāni (căpilli)—agnīna, fĕrīna, etc. (căro)—aestīva, hīberna, stātīva (castra)—mŏlāris (dens), '*a grinder*'—nātālis (dies)—rēgia (dŏmus)—tertiāna, quartāna (febris)—aerārĭa, arēnārĭa, etc. (fŏdīna)—dextra, sĭnistra, laeva (mănus)—ŏnĕrārĭa, lĭburnĭca (nāvis)—prīmae, sĕcundae (partes)—praetexta (tŏga)—occĭdens, ŏriens (sol)—praerŏgātīva (trĭbus, centŭrĭa)—fictĭlia, Corinthia (vāsa)—Africus, sōlānus (ventus)—Appia, Aemĭlia, etc. (via)—Falernum, etc. (vīnum).

Others become true Nouns, being used without any sense of ellipsis. Such are—

(i) Names of persons engaged in different pursuits or trades: as, mĕdĭcus, rustĭcus, grammătĭcus, phўsĭcus, argentārius, librārius, falcārius, with others in -ārius. (ii) Words denoting a period of life: as, ădŏlescens, jŭvĕnis, sĕnex, mortāles (= homines). (iii) Many participial Nouns, masc. and neut.: as, candĭdātus, lēgātus, praefectus, sponsus, sponsa; peccatum, factum, dictum, ēdictum, dēcrētum, etc. (See Drüger, i. 44, foll.)

§ 342. *Adjectives translated by Nouns.*—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Noun. This is the case with summus, *at the top, the top of;* infĭmus or īmus, *at the bottom, the bottom of;* mĕdius, *the middle;* extrēmus, *last, the end of;* prīmus, *first, the beginning of;* rĕlĭquus, *remaining, the remainder of;* dimĭdiātus, *halved, the half of:* as,

Ad īmam (quercum), *At the foot of an oak.*—Phaedr. (2, 4, 3.)

Unus dīmĭdiātusque mensis, *A month and a half.*—Cic. (Verr. 2,129.)

Extrēmo libro tertio, *At the end of the 3rd book.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 9.)

Graecia rĕlĭqua, *The rest of Greece.*—Cic. (Am. 6, extr.)

Obs. But *relĭquum* is also found as a Neuter Noun, especially in commercial sense = *balance;* when it is mostly plural (cf. Cic. Att. 16, 3, *ad fin.*, ratio reliquorum meorum, i.e. *what I still owe*).

§ 343. *Neuter Adjectives used Substantively.*—The Neuter of an Adjective is sometimes equivalent to an abstract Noun. Thus, aequum, *the equitable,* is equivalent to aequĭtas, *equity;* hŏnestum, *the honourable,* to hŏnestas, *honour, virtue:* as,

Ex aequo et bŏno, *In accordance with what is right and just.*—Cic. (Caec. 65.)

Omnis *hŏnesti justi*que disciplīna, *The entire training which belongs to honour and justice.*—Quint. (12, 2, 1.)

Obs. 1. This is especially the case in such adverbial phrases as ex aequo, *in accordance with equity;* ex (de) improvīso, *unexpectedly.*

Obs. 2. Adjectives in *is, e,* are rarely used in this way except in the Nominative and Accusative. Yet Horace has miscēre ūtile *dulci* (*Dat.*), *to mingle the useful with the agreeable* (A. P. 343); and Livy, pōtior *utilis* quam hŏnesti cūra, *the care for expediency took precedence of that of honour* (42, 47).

§ 344. *Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs.*—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the agent, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude. The following Adjectives are thus used:—

Invītus, *unwilling, unwillingly;* lactus, *joyful, joyfully;* lĭbens = lĭbenter, *gladly, with pleasure;* sciens, *knowing, knowingly;* imprūdens, *unwitting, unwittingly;* impĕrītus, *unskilled, unskilfully:* also mātūtīnus (Virg. Aen. 8, 465), *early in the morning;* vespertīnus (Hor. S. 2, 4, 17), *in the evening;* dŏmestĭcus (ib. 1, 6, 128), *at home;* prōnus, *on one's face;* sūpīnus, *on one's back;* sublīmis, *aloft;* mĕdius, *in the midst:* e.g.—

Ego eum a me *invītissīmus* dīmīsi, *I parted with him very unwillingly.*—Cic. (Fam. 13, 63.)

Plūs hŏdie bŏni *imprūdens* fēci, quam *sciens* ante hunc diem unquam, *I have to-day done more good unwittingly, than I ever before did wittingly.*—Ter. (Hec. 5, 4, *extr.*)

§ 345. The neuter (Accusative) singular is sometimes used adverbially; especially by the poets: see § 235, *Obs.*

Comparatives.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by *quam,* and the verb or governing word belongs to both, the second member is put in the same case as the first: as,

His ĭgĭtur quam *phўsĭcis* pōtius crēdendum existĭmas, *Do you think we ought to believe these men rather than (believe) scientific men?*—Cic. (Div. 2, 37.)

Dĕcet nōbis cāriorem esse *patriam* quam (dĕcet) *nosmetipsos, Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.*—Cic. (Fin. 3, 64.)

§ 347. But if the first member of a comparison is governed by a word which does not belong to the second, the case of the latter will be independent of that of the former, and depend upon its own predicate: as,

Verba Varrōnis, hŏmĭnis quam *fuit Claudius* doctiōris, *The words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudius.*—Gell. (10, 1.)

(Argentum reddĭdisti) hŏmĭni hŏnesto sed non gratiōsiori, quam *Cn. Calidius est, You restored the silver to a man of respectability, but not more influential than Cn. Calidius.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 44.)

Obs. If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,

Ego hŏmĭnem callĭdiōrem vīdi nēmĭnem quam *Phormiōnem* (for, quam Phormio est), *I have never seen a cleverer fellow than Phormio.*—Ter. (Ph. 4, 2, 1.)

Tam plăcīdum reddo quam *ŏvem* (= quam ŏvis est), *I make him as quiet as a sheep.*—Ter. (Ad. 4, 1, 18.)

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative, with the omission of quam. This is explained under § 320.

§ 349. Plūs and ampliŭs, *more*, and mĭnŭs, *less*, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction: as,

Nec *plus quam* quattuor millia effūgērunt (*not* effūgit), *Nor did more than four thousand escape.*—Liv. (39, 31, *med.*)

Non sunt ūsi *plus* (*not* pluribus) *quam* quattuor cŏlōrĭbus, *They did not use more than four colours.*—Cic. (Br. 70.)

Rāro unquam nix *mĭnus quattuor pĕdes* jăcuit, *The snow hardly ever lay less than four feet deep.*—Liv. (21, 61, *fin.*)

§ 350. To denote the excess of one quality over another, either măgĭs is used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are put in the comparative degree: as,

Corpŏra magna *magis* quam firma, *Bodies rather big than strong.*—Liv. (5, 44.)

Paulli contio fuit *vērior* quam *grātior* pŏpŭlo, *The speech of Paullus was more true than popular.*—Liv. (22, 38.)

Obs. Tacitus departs from this construction, and uses the positive in the second member of the comparison, or even in both: as,

Clāris mājōribus quam *vĕtustis*, *Of a family more distinguished than old.*—Tac. (See § 695, 2.)

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that a quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree (i.e. *in a higher degree than is ordinary or fit*): as,

Sĕnectus est nātūrā *lŏquācior*, *Old age is naturally somewhat talkative* (*more so than other periods of life*).—Cic. (Sen. 55.)

(Vŏluptas) quum *mājor* est atque longior, omne ănĭmi lūmen exstinguit, *when too great and too long-continued.*—Cic. (Sen. 41.)

Obs. 1. *Too great in proportion to something* is expressed by the Comparative and *quam pro:* as,

Proelium *atrōcius quam pro* nŭmĕro pugnantium, *A bloodier battle than one might have expected from the number of the combatants.*—Liv. (21, 29.)

Obs. 2. The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut:* as,

Damna *mājōra quam quae* (or ut ea) aestīmāri possent, *Losses too great to be able to be estimated.*—Liv. (3, 72.)

§ 352. **Atque** and **āc** are sometimes used by the poets instead of *quam* after Comparatives: as,

Artius atque hĕdĕrā, prōcēra astringĭtur īlex, *More closely than the tall oak is clasped by the ivy.*—Hor. (Epod. 15, 5.)

Haud *mĭnus ac* jussi făciunt, *no less than they were bidden.*—Virg. (Aen. 3, 561.)

Superlatives.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with **quam**, or in the case of **maximus** with **quantus**, usually with, but also without **posse**: as,

Quam maxĭmis pŏtest ītĭnĕrĭbus, *Making as long daily marches as possible.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 7.)

Uti quam plūrĭmas possent nāves aedĭfĭcandas cūrārent, *To have as many ships built as possible.*—Caes. (ib. 5, 1.)

Quam grātissimus ergā te, *As grateful as possible towards you.*—Cic. (Fam. 1, 5, a.)

Quam maxĭmas pŏtest cōpias parat, *He equips the largest force he can.*—Sall. (J. 48.)

Tanta est inter eos *quanta maxĭma* pŏtest esse distantia, *There is the greatest possible difference between them.*—Cic. (Am. 74.)

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of **ūnus** or **ūnus omnium**: as,

Quem *ūnum* nostrae cīvĭtātis . . . . *praestantissĭmum* audeo dīcĕre, *decidedly the most distinguished man.*—Cic. (Am. 1.)

Quum . . . . *ūnus omnium maxĭmē* flōrēret, *Being pre-eminently distinguished above all others.*—Nep. (Milt. 1.)

Căsdit et Rhīpeus *justissimus unus* qui fuit in Teucris, *pre-eminent above all the Trojans for righteousness.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 426.) Compare ib. 1, 15, Quam Jūno fertur terris măgis omnibus *ūnam* . . . cŏluisse, i.e. *pre-eminently and beyond comparison with all others.*

§ 355. A similar sense may also be expressed by means of quam qui and the Superlative: as,

Tam sum mītis *quam qui lēnissĭmus* (*i. e.* est), *I am as gentle as can possibly be.*—Cic. (Sull. 87.)

Tam sum ămīcus rĕipublicae *quam qui maxĭmē, as much as any one in the world.*—Cic. (Fam. 5, 2, 3.)

§ 356. Quisque is often used with the Superlative, to denote the selection of all persons or objects most characterized by any particular quality: as,

Săpientissĭmus quisque acquissĭmo ănĭmo mŏrĭtur, *All the wisest of men die with the most resignation.*—Cic. (Sen. 83.)

Obs. 1. A similar meaning may be expressed with the comparative: thus the above sentence might be expressed,

Quo (*or* ut) quisque est săpientior, eo (*or* ĭta) aequiŏre ănĭmo mŏrĭtur.

Obs. 2. A like sense may be expressed by quam . . . tam, with the Superlative: as,

Quam vos *făcillĭmo* ăgĭtis . . . . *tam maxĭmo* vos ŏportet, etc., *In proportion as you live most at your ease, ought you above all others, etc.*—Ter. (Ad. 3, 4, 56.)

Chapter XLIII.—Pronouns.

1. The Personal Pronouns. (See § 76.)

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed when the emphasis is on them: as,

Ego te laudāvi, *tu* me culpasti, *I have praised thee, thou hast blamed me.*

Nos, nos consŭles dēsŭmus, *It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting (in our duty)!* —Cic. (Cat. 1, 3.)

§ 358. The speaker often uses the first Person Plural when he does not wish to intrude his own personality: as,

Sex libros de rēpublĭcā *scripsĭmus, We* (= *I*) *wrote six books upon the commonwealth.*—Cic. (Div. 2, 3.)

Rĕlĭquum est ut de fēlĭcĭtāte (Pompēii) pauca *dīcāmus, It remains for us* (= *me*) *to say a few words respecting the good fortune of Pompey.* —Cic. (Man. 47.)

Obs. Noster is used in the same way instead of *meus.* (But *vos, vester*, are NEVER used for *tu, tuus.*)

§ 359. The plural forms **nostrum, vestrum,** must be carefully distinguished from **nostri, vestri.** The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with omnium. Thus *one of us* is ūnus nostrum (not ūnus nostri); *the wish of you all,* omnium vestrum (*not* vestri) vŏluntas (Cic. de Or. 3, 208); commūnis omnium nostrum părens (id. Cat. 1, 17).

Obs. Nostri, vestri, are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular Neuter of *noster, vester,* used abstractly. Thus mĕmor nostri = *mindful of our interest* (i. e. *of us*). *Nostrum, vestrum* may be used = *nostri, vestri,* but not *vice versa.*

2. Reflexive Pronouns of the Third Person.

(See § 78.)

§ 360. The Reflexive Pronoun **sui, sĭbi, sē** (sēsē), with the Pronominal Adjective **suus,** refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

Brūtus *sēsē* interfēcit—Gaius *sui* ămātor est—puer *sĭbi* indulget—fīlia mātrem *suam* sĕquĭtur—pueri părentibus *suis* sĭmĭles sunt.

Obs. The reflexive pronoun may also refer to a Noun which is not the Nominative case, provided it be the virtual subject: as,

Jam inde ab ĭnītio *Faustŭlo* spes fuerat, rēgiam stirpem apud *se* ēdŭcāri, *Faustulus had from the very beginning entertained the hope that the children brought up with him* (*Faustulus*) *were of royal origin.*—Liv. (1, 5.)

A *Caesăre* invītor, *sĭbi* ut sim lēgātus, *I am invited by Caesar* (*Caesar invites me*) *to become his lieutenant.*—Cic. (Att. 2, 18.)

§ 361. The Pronominal Adjective **suus** in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another Noun, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

Hannĭbălem sui cīves ē cīvĭtāte ējēcērunt, *His own citizens banished Hannibal.*—Cic. (Sest. 142.) (See also § 279, *Obs.* 2, Ex.)

Admŏnēbat *ălium* ĕgestātis, *ălium* cūpĭdĭtātis *suae, He reminded one of his poverty, another of his* (*ruling*) *passion.*—Sall. (C. 21.)

Sunt hīc ĕtiam *sua* praemia laudi, *Here too merit has its due rewards.*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 461.)

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, **sui, sĭbi, se,** and **suus** may refer back to the subject of the principal proposition, provided the sense is obvious: as,

(Prŏcŭlus) dixisse fertur, a *se* vīsum esse Rōmŭlum, *Proculus is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.*—Cic. (Rep. 2, 10.)

Ariovistus respondet, si quid Caesar *se* vĕlĭt, illum ad *se* vĕnīre ŏportēre, *Ariovistus replies that, if Caesar had any need of him (Ariovistus), he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 34.)

Sălīnātor Q. Făbium rŏgāvit ut mĕmĭnisset, ŏpĕrā *suā* se Tarentum rĕcēpisse, *Salinator begged Q. Fabius to remember, that it was through his (Salinator's) efforts he (Fabius) had recovered Tarentum.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 273.) [Here *suā* and *se* refer to different persons—the obvious sense serving as clue.]

Obs. Inter se is used to denote reciprocity: as,

Vēri ămīci cōlent *inter se* ac dĭlĭgent, *True friends will respect and love one another.*—Cic. (Am. 82.)

3. Pronominal Adjectives or Possessive Pronouns. (See § 79.)

§ 363. The Pronominal Adjectives are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and when the reference can be easily supplied: as,

Quintus frāter, *My brother Quintus.*—Cic.

Apud *mātrem* recte est, *All is well with (your) mother.*—Cic. (Att. 1, 7.)

De *frātre* confīdo ita esse ut semper vŏlui, *As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.*—Cic. (Att. 1, 10, 4.)

4. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See § 80.)

§ 364. Hic is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me.* Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word: as,

Ŏpus vel in *hac* magnĭfĭcentiā urbis conspĭciendum, *A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city.*—Liv. (6, 4, *fin.*)

M. Cāto *hūjus* nostri Cātōnis păter, *M. Cato, father of the present Cato, our friend.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 66.)

§ 365. Ille is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him* or *yonder.* Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

Mēdēa *illa*, *The well-known Medea—the Medea of legendary fame.*—Cic. (Man. 22.)

O nox *illa!* *O that memorable night!*—Cic. (Fl. 103.)

Tūne *ille* Aenēas? *Art thou the great Aeneas?*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 617.)

So, Quis clādem *illĭus* noctis, etc., *of that awful night.*—(ib. 2, 361.)

§ 366. When hic and ille are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the *nearer*, *ille* to the *more remote:* as,

Caesar bĕnĕfĭciis atque mūnĭfĭcentiā magnus hăbēbātur, integrĭtāte vītae Cāto. *Ille* mansuētūdĭne et mĭserĭcordiā clarus factus, *huic* sĕvērĭtas dignĭtātem addĭdĕrat, *Caesar .... Cato .... The former ... to the latter.*—Sall. (C. 54.)

Obs. Hic sometimes refers to that which is nearest in the mind of the speaker, though more distant in the order of words: as,

Cāve Cātōni antĕpōnas ne (Socrătem) quĭdem .... *hujus* ĕnim facta, *illĭus* dicta laudantur, *the deeds of the one* (*our countryman*) .... *the words of the other.*—Cic. (Am. 10.)

Mĕlior tūtiorque est certa pax quam spērāta victōria, *haec* (pax) in tuā, *illa* (victoria) in deōrum pōtestāte est, *the one* (*peace*) *is in your own control, the other* (*victory*) *in the control of the gods.*—Liv. (30, 30, *med.*)

§ 367. Hic and ille are both used to denote *the following*, or something to be mentioned; but *hic* refers to something already present to the mind of both speaker and hearer, *ille* to something new or different from the previous subject: as,

Unum *hoc* dēfīnio, tantam esse nĕcessĭtātem virtūtis, *This one thing I would lay down, that there exists such a necessity for virtue.*—Cic. (Rep. 1, 1.)

Ac ne *illud* mīrēre . . ., *And that you may not be surprised at this* (*which I am about to say*) . . .—Cic. (Att. 1, 11.)

Illud in his rēbus vĕreor, ne forte reāris . . ., *There is one thing* (*however*) *I fear, in connexion with these matters*, (*namely*) *that you should perchance suppose, &c.*—Lucr. (1, 80.)

§ 368. Iste is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you* or *that of yours:* as,

De *istis* rēbus exspecto tuas littĕras, *Concerning what is going on where you are, I am expecting your letters.*—Cic. (Att. 2, 5.)

Postĕrius, inquit, *ista* vĭdēbimus, *We will attend to what you speak of by and by, he replies.*—Cic. (Qu. 19.)

Ista subsellia, *The benches where you are sitting.*—Cic. (Cat. 1, 16.)

§ 369. Iste sometimes has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent: as,

Iste vir optĭmus, *Your excellent client.*—Cic. (Qu. 19.)

But it is more frequently used in neutral sense: cf. Cic. Br. 266, nec *istos* excellentes vĭros respublica perdĭdisset, etc.

Obs. The primary distinction in meaning between *hic, ille, iste* is retained in the adverbs derived from them.

5. Determinative Pronouns. (See § 81.)

§ 370. Is has not an absolute demonstrative force like hic, iste, ille, but refers to some person or thing determined by the context: as,

P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est.... *Is* quum hăbēret ūnĭcam fīliam, *P. Asinius Asellus died.... As he (the said Asinius) had an only daughter, etc.*—Cic. (Verr. 2, 1, 104.)

Apud mātrem rectē est, *eaque* nōbis cūrae est, *Your mother is going on well, and she has our care.*—Cic. (Att. 1, 17.)

§ 371. Is or its strengthened form īdem is the regular attendant of the Relative Pronoun; the Relative clause serving to determine the reference: as,

(Străto) *is qui* phўsĭcus appellātur, *The same who is called the physicist.*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 35.)

Eădem ūtĭlĭtātis *quae* hŏnestātis est rēgŭla, *The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 75.)

§ 372. Is and īdem are emphatic, if placed after the relative clause; as,

Ămīcĭtiae nōmen quod armis vĭŏlārat, *id* prĕcĭbus consĕcūtus est, *That very title of friend, which he had outraged by arms, he has by entreaties obtained.*—Cic. (Sext. 59.)

Fortĭter mălum *qui* pătĭtur, *idem* post patĭtur bŏnum, *He who endures ill bravely, the same afterwards endures good.*—Pl. (As. 2, 2, 58.)

§ 373. The Accusative and Dative of is are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case as the Noun in the previous clause to which they refer: as,

De his lŏquor, quos illustrāvit fortūna dum vexat (*sc.* eos), *whom Fortune has made famous while persecuting (them).*—Sen. (Ep. 79, 12).

Non mŏdo non invĭdētur illi aetāti, vērum ĕtiam făvētur (*sc.* ei), *We not only do not envy that time of life, but even favour it.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 45.)

Obs. Sometimes the pronoun is omitted, even when it would be in a different case: as,

Huic meae vŏluntāti ut făveas adjūtorque (*sc.* ejus) sis, *That you would favour this my intention and be the furtherer (of it).*—Cic. (Fam. 15, 4.)

§ 374. Et is (isque, atque is, et is quĭdem), and nec is in negative clauses, make the preceding substantive more emphatic, and define it more particularly: as,

Hăbet mĕmŏrĭam *et eam* infīnītam, (*The soul*) *has a recollection, and that an unbounded one.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 57.)

Unā in dŏmo *et eā* quĭdem angustā, *In one house, and that a small one.*—Cic. (Fin. 1, 65.)

Uno *atque eo* făcĭlī proelio caesi hostes, *The enemy were cut to pieces in a single engagement, and that soon decided.*—Liv. (4, 57.)

In each of these examples, a like sense might have been expressed by means of a negative:—nec eam fīnītam—nec eā amplā—nec eo diffĭcĭlī.

§ 375. Idem is often used pleonastically in agreement with the Subject, to introduce and emphasize a second Predicate. It may then be translated by *also, at the same time, on the other hand:* as,

Utēbātur eo cĭbo, qui et suāvissĭmus esset *et īdem* facillimus ad concŏquendum, *He used such food as was at once most palatable and also easiest of digestion.*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 64.)

Quod hŏnestum, ĭdem justum, *What is honourable is also just.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 10.)

Inventi multi sunt, qui vītam prŏfundĕre pro pătriā parāti essent, *iidem* glōriae jactūram ne mīnĭmam quĭdem făcĕre vellent, *and* at the same time *would not make the very least sacrifice of glory (on behalf of their country).*—Cic. (Off. 1, 84.)

§ 376. Ipse gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very, just,* or *exactly:* as,

Ibi mĭhi Tullĭŏla mea fuit praesto, nātāli suo ipso die, *There met me my (daughter) Tullia, just on her very birthday.*—Cic. (Att. 4, 1.)

Annis octōgintā trĭbus *ipsis* ante me consŭlem, *Precisely* 83 *years before my consulate.*—Cic. (Br. 61.)

Crassus triennio *ipso* mĭnor erat quam Antōnius, *by exactly three years.*—Cic. (Br. 161.)

§ 377. Ipse, when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either the one or the other is more emphatic. Thus "me ipse laudo," *I (but not another person) praise myself;* but "me ipsum laudo," *I praise myself (but not another person):* as,

Non ĕgeo mĕdĭcīnā [i. e. ut *alii* me consolentur]; me *ipse* consōlor, *I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.*—Cic. (Am. 10.)

Drūsus se *ipse* intĕrēmit, *Drusus slew himself* [i. e. *others did not slay him*].—Vell. (2, 71.)

Frātrem suum, dein .... *seipsum* interfēcit, *He slew his brother and afterwards himself.*—Tac. (H. 3, 51.)

(See, however, § 617.)

6. Relative Pronouns and Adjectives.

(See §§ 82, 84.)

§ 378. The chief rules for the agreement of the Relative and its antecedent are given in §§ 228–230.

§ 379. *Correlation.*—The Relative Pronoun qui, quae, quod, and the Relative Adjectives, quālis, quantus, etc., have each their corresponding Demonstratives. A complete list of both is given above (§ 84).

Obs. 1. After *tālis, tantus, tot,* and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relatives *quālis, quantus,* etc., are often left to be understood: as,

Quaeso tam angustam tālis vir (*sc.* quālis tu es) pōnis dōmum, *Prithee being such a man (as thou art), buildest thou so small a house (as this is)*?—Phaedr. (3, 9, 6.)

Conservāre urbes *tantas* atque *tāles* (sc. *quāles* eae sunt), *To preserve cities so great and so remarkable (as those).*—Cic. (N. D. 3, 92.)

Also tālis, tāntus, etc., are often followed by the Subjunctive with *ut,* or by a simple Relative: e.g.,

Non fuit *tantus* homo Sex. Roscius in cīvitāte, *ut de eo* pōtissimum conquērāmur, *not so important a person that . . .* (where de quo might with equal propriety have been used).—Cic. (R. Am. 125).

Obs. 2. It must not be supposed that the Relative *qui* is regularly preceded by *is* or *īdem:* but these pronouns are used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not *hic, ille,* or *iste.* When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force: as,

Ille fulgor quī dīcītur Jŏvis, *Yonder splendour which is called (that of) Jupiter.*—Cic. (Rep. 6, 17.)

§ 380. *Special constructions of the Relative.*—Instead of the full construction is . . . . qui, the Relative is often attached attributively to the Substantive to be defined: as,

Quae cupīdītātes a natūrā prōficiscuntur, *Such* (= eae cupiditates quae) *passions as spring from nature.*—Cic.

(So Horace, Sat. I. 1, *init.*)

Obs. Virgil's *urbem* quam stātuo vestra est (Aen. I. 573), for *ea urbs* quam, or quam statuo urbem, ea, &c., is an irregular extension of this usage.

§ 381. When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause: as,

Noctu de servis suis [eum] *quem hăbuit fidēlissimum*, ad rēgem mīsit, *He sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to the king.*—Nep. (Them. 4.)

Obs. Horace has a construction the reverse of this, though not with a superlative: quis non mălārum quas ămor cūras hăbet oblīviscītur? = malarum curarum quas amor habet. (Epod. 2, 37.)

§ 382. The Relative Adjectives quālis, quantus, are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb, Noun, or Adjective in their own clause: as,

Căput esse . . . ut tālis, *quālem* se ipse optāret, vĭdērētur, *The main thing was for the orator to appear (to others) to be what he himself desired.*—Cic. (Or. 1, 87.)

Contio tanta, *quantam* mĕmĭnisse non vĭdeor, *So large a meeting as I don't think I remember before.*—Cic. (Phil. 4, *init.*)

7. Indefinite Pronouns. (See § 82.)

§ 383. Alĭquis, *some one*, is more definite than quis. *Alĭquis* often stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used chiefly in relative clauses, and after the conjunctions *si*, *nĭsi*, *nē*, and *num*. *Alĭquis* is also often used to avoid the mention of some particular person or thing by name: as,

Grăvis ălĭquis cāsus, *Some severe calamity.*—Cic. (Am. 84.)

Non tua ulla culpa est, si te *ălĭqui* tĭmuērunt, *It is no fault of yours if some persons have feared you.*—Cic. (Marc. 6, *fin.*)

Ad ūnum *ălĭquem* confŭgiēbant virtūte praestantem, *They had recourse to some one man, eminent for worth.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 41.)

Illis prōmissis standum non est, quae coactus *quis* mĕtu prōmīsĕrit, *One is not bound by those promises which one has made under compulsion of fear.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 32.)

Si quis quid de rēpublĭcā accēpĕrit, *If any one have heard aught concerning the state.*—Caes. (B. G. 6, 20.)

Divitiăcus Caesărem obsecrāvit, *ne quid* grăvius in frātrem stătuĕret, *not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 20.)

§ 384. Quispiam is similar to quis, but is capable of taking a more independent and emphatic position: as,

Quid, si hoc vŏluit *quispiam Deus*? *What if some deity hath willed this?*—Ter. (Eun. 5, 2, 36.) (See also Cic. Sen. 8.)

Quum de pĕcūniis rĕpĕtundis nōmen *cŭjuspiam* dēfĕrātur, *any (particular) person's name.*—Cic. (Div. Verr. 10.)

Obs. Hence it is not always possible to distinguish between the use of quispiam and aliquis.

§ 385. **Quīdam**, *a certain one*, denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary: as,

Quīdam ex advŏcātis, *One of the friends who had been called in.*—Cic. (Clu. 177.)

Quīdam Gallus, *A certain Gaul.*—Caes. (B. G. 7, 25.)

Obs. *Quīdam* and *quăsi quīdam* are often used to soften an expression: as,

Sine *quōdam* afflātu quăsi fūrōris, *Without a kind of inspiration of frenzy as it were.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 194.)

Incrēdībili *quādam* magnĭtūdine consĭlii, *Of an almost incredible greatness of sagacity.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 299.)

Non sunt isti audiendi, qui virtūtem dūram et *quăsi* ferream *quandam* vŏlunt, *a hard and, so to speak, iron virtue.*—Cic. (Am. 48.)

§ 386. The Pronoun **quisquam**, *anyone, any single one*, and the indefinite adjective **ullus**, are used in negative propositions, in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sine*: as,

Estne quisquam omnium mortālium, *Is there anyone of the whole human race . .?*—Cic. (Q. R. Com. 18.)

Sine sŏciis nēmo quidquam tāle cōnātur, *No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic. (Am. 42.)

Nec sine virtūte ămīcĭtia esse *ullo* pacto pŏtest, *Nor can friendship exist in any way without virtue.*—Cic. (Am. 20.)

Sine ullā exceptiōne, *Without any exception.*—Cic. (Agr. 2, 22.)

Obs. In Plautus and Terence *omnis* is sometimes used instead of *ullus* with *sine*: as,

Sine omni pĕrīclo, *Without any danger.*—Ter. (Andr. 2, 3, 17.)

§ 387. **Quisquam** and **ullus** are also used with emphasis after comparatives, and in conditional and relative propositions: as,

Tētrior hic tyrannus Syrācūsānus fuit quam *quisquam* sŭpĕriōrum, *than any one of his predecessors.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 123.)

Si tempus est *ullum* jūre hŏmĭnes nĕcandi, *If there be any time for justly putting men to death.*—Cic. (Mil. 9.)

Quamdiu *quisquam* ĕrit, qui te dēfendĕre audeat, vīves, *As long as there shall be a single man who will venture to defend you, you shall live.*—Cic. (Cat. 1, 6.)

Obs. The rules given above (§§ 386, 387) apply also to **unquam** and **usquam**: as,

Bellum maxĭmē mĕmŏrābile omnium, *quae unquam* gesta sunt, *the most memorable of all that have ever been waged.*—Liv. (21, 1.)

Cui nullus esset *usquam* consistendi locus, *no standing ground anywhere*.—Cic. (Fl. 50.)

On the other hand, **uspiam**, which is rare, may be used affirmatively = *somewhere*. See Lexicons.

§ 388. Quisque denotes *each one by himself* (distributively), *every single one*. It often appears in the strengthened form ūnusquisque (or as two words): as,

Pōnīte ante ŏcŭlos ūnumquemque rēgum, *Set before your eyes each one of the kings*.—Cic. (Par. 1, 11.)

Obs. When used with *se, suus*, quisque usually stands immediately after those pronouns: as,

Pro se quisque . . . dēbēmus . . , *We ought each one for himself*, &c. —Cic. (Agr. 1, 26.)

§ 389. Quisque is also used idiomatically with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. Ălius, when repeated, signifies *one . . . another;* alter, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things): as,

Prōfĕrēbant ălii purpŭram, gemmas ălii, *They brought forward some purple, others precious stones*.—Cic. (Verr. 5, 146.)

Alter exercĭtum perdĭdit, alter vendĭdit, *The one has lost an army, the other sold one*.—Cic. (Pl. 86.)

(See also §§ 629, 667.)

Chapter XLIV.—The Verb: Indicative Mood.

§ 391. The Indicative Mood is used,

(A.) To state a proposition; or, Predicatively.
(B.) To ask a question; or, Interrogatively.

Obs. On the use of the Indicative Mood in Hypothetical sentences, see § 424.

(A.) The Indicative Mood used Predicatively.

§ 392. *Present Tense.*—(1.) The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

Dŏmus ardet, *the house is on fire*—ignis est călĭdus, *fire is hot*—ăves cantant, *the birds are singing* or (generally) *birds sing*—ad quartam jăceo, *I lie till ten o'clock*.

Obs. 1. With jam prīdem, jamdūdum, the Present tense has the force of a Present-Perfect: as, jam prīdem cupio, *I (desire now and) have long desired* (Cic.): similarly the imperfect tense has the force of a Past-Perfect: as, jam dūdum flēbam, *I (was weeping and) had been for some time weeping* (Ov.). In poetry and in later writers, these Adverbs are also used with the perfect tenses.

Obs. 2. The Present is also used (rhetorically) by anticipation for the Future or Future-Perfect Indicative: as,

Si *vincīmus*, omnia nōbis tūta erunt, *If we conquer, we shall find all safe.*—Sall. (Cat. 58, *med.*)

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a Past) in narrative, for the sake of greater vividness, and is hence called the *Historical Present:* as,

Dum haec *gĕruntur*, Cassivellaunus nuntios *mittit*, *While these events are going on, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.*—Caes. (B. G. 5, 22.)

Obs. 1. This mode of speech, in English found only in quasi-dramatic passages, is in Latin very frequent, both in prose and verse.

Obs. 2. In historical narrative, the Present is almost always used with *dum*, though the rest of the sentence may be in a *Past* tense: as,

Dum ea Rōmāni *părant*, Saguntum jam *oppugnābātur*, *While the Romans were making these preparations, Saguntum was already being assaulted.*—Liv. (21, 7.) (The Imperfect however occurs: cf. Liv. 5, 47, *init.*)

But when *dum* signifies *as long as*, it may take a Past or Future: as,

Hoc fēcī *dum licuit*, *as long as I was permitted.*—Cic. (Ph. 3, 33.)

Dum hŏmīnum gĕnus erit, *So long as the human race exists.*—Cic. (R. Am. 91.)

Also when two past actions are intended to be represented as going on together, the Imperfect is used: as,

Dum illud *tractābam*, quăsi *fŏvēbam* meos dŏlōres, *While I was treating of that subject, I was, as it were, soothing my grief.*—Cic. (Att. 12, 18.)

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*—The Past-Imperfect Tense is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

Anus subtēmen *nēbat:* praetĕrea ūna ancillŭla *ĕrat;* ea *texēbat*, *An old woman was spinning a woof; there was only a little maid besides: the girl* (herself) *was weaving.*—Ter. (Heaut. 2, 3, 52.)

Obs. For the use of this tense with jam prīdem, etc., see § 392, *Obs.*

§ 395. The Past-Imperfect is often used of what *was wont* to be done: as,

Dīcēbat, *he used to say.*—Cic. (Sen. 41.)

Carthāgĭne quŏtannīs annui bīni rēges *creābantur*, *At Carthage two kings were annually appointed.*—Nep. (Han. 7.)

§ 396. The Past-Imperfect is also used to signify that something was *attempted* to be done: as,

Dēcernēbat (sĕnātus), ut vĕtĕrĭbus lēgĭbus quaerĕrētur, *The senate was just about to decree*, etc.—Cic. (Mil. 14.)

Cāto pro lēge quae *abrŏgābātur* ita dissĕruit, *Cato thus spoke in defence of the law which it was purposed to abrogate.*—Liv. (34, 1.)

Ferrum in pectus *dēfĕrēbat*, ni . . . . &c., *He was just plunging his sword into his bosom, (and would have done so), had not*, &c.—Tac. (A. 1, 35.)

§ 397. The Past-Imperfect of the Verb sum is used in the sense of the Past-Indefinite or *Aorist:* as,

Crīmen nullum *erat*—hŏmo *erat* Sĭcŭlus—dŭcentae nāves *erant*—quid ergo *ĕrat*—ăge vēro, quālis *erat* quaestio, etc.

Obs. 1. But the Perfect or Past-Indefinite is generally preferred when a thing is simply spoken of as an historical fact, not viewed as continuing: as,

Păter ējus Neocles gĕnĕrōsus *fuit*, *His father Neocles was of noble birth.*—Nep. (Them. 1.)

Obs. 2. The same remarks apply to the Past-Imperf. of *possum.*

§ 398. The Past-Imperfect is sometimes used in epistolary correspondence, of that which is *present* to the writer, but will appear as *past* to the reader of the letter: as,

Ego C. Pomptinium Brundĭsii *exspectābam*, *I am waiting for C. Pomptinius at Brundisium* (*I was so at the time of writing*).—Cic. (Fam. 3, 3.)

Sollĭcĭtus *eram* de rēbus urbānis: ĭta tŭmultuōsae contiōnes affĕrēbantur, *I am anxious about affairs in Rome; I hear of such disorderly meetings.*—Cic. (Fam. 2, 12.)

Nĭhil *hăbēbam* quod scrībĕrem, neque ĕnim quicquam nŏvi *audiĕram*, *I have nothing to write about, for in fact I have heard no news whatever.*—Cic. (Att. 9, 10.)

Trīginta dies *erant* ipsi, quum has *dăbam* littĕras, per quos nullas a vōbis *accēpĕram*, *It is exactly* 30 *days, on the day I dispatch this letter, since I received one from you.*—Cic. (Att. 3, 21.)

In the epistolary style, as the Imperfect is used for the Present, so the Pluperfect is used for the Perfect: see the two last of the above examples.

Obs. This usage is, however, comparatively rare, and occurs chiefly in verbs of the 1st person. In the great bulk of the correspondence of Cicero, the Tenses are used precisely as in English: compare the following out of innumerable examples:—

Apud mātrem recte *est*—nīmium rāro nōbis abs te littĕrae *affĕruntur*—Lentŭlus nāves suas *pollĭcētur*—ăpud te *est* ut vŏlŭmus—crēbras exspectātiones nōbis tui *commŏves*—accēpi tuas tres

ēpistŏlas—fēcisti mihi pergrātum—quae dūdum ad me *scripsisti* . . . ea sentio esse vēra—Brundīsium *vēni* a.d. xiv. Kal. Maias, etc. It does not appear to occur at all in the letters of M. Caelius (Cic. Fam. 8); nor in those of Pliny the Younger.

§ 399. *Future Tense.*—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come. It is also used with the force of an Imperative: see § 420, *Obs.* 2.

§ 400. *Perfect Tense.*—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and a Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *fēci* is either *I have done* or *I did*. The context alone enables us to tell in which sense it is used. When used as a Present-Perfect it has the sequence of a Present Tense, and when used as a Past-Indefinite it has the sequence of a Past Tense. See § 423.

N.B.—For the so-called Aoristic use of the Past-Indefinite Tense, see § 634.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after **postquam** (less freq. posteāquam), *after that;* **ut prīmum, sīmul atque (ac),** *as soon as;* **ut, ŭbi,** *when;* where in English we often use the Pluperfect: as,

Non dŭbĭtāvit, *sīmŭl ac conspexit* hostem, conflīgĕre, *He did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw the enemy, to engage.*—Nep. (Pelop. 5.)

Ubi de Caesăris adventu Helvētii certiōres *facti sunt,* lēgātos ad eum mittunt, *No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 7.)

Ut Hostus *cĕcĭdit,* confestim Rōmāna inclīnātur ăcies, *As soon as Hostus fell, the Roman line immediately gave way.*—Liv. (1, 12.)

Obs. 1. But examples of the Pluperfect after *sīmŭlac* occur; e.g. simulac pedem līmine extŭlerat (Cic. Cael. 34): also after *postcaquam* (id. Verr. 4, 54, posteaquam collēgerat): and *postquam* regularly takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified: as, Hannĭbal *anno tertio postquam* dŏmo *profŭgĕrat,* Afrĭcam accessit, *Hannibal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home.*—Nep. (Han. 8.) See also § 501.

Obs. 2. On the other hand *quum, when,* in historical sequence, takes the Pluperfect Subjunctive: v. § 483.

§ 402. *Past-Perfect Tense.*—The Past-Perfect (Pluperfect) Tense indicates that something *had taken place* at the time spoken of: as,

Et jam Argīva phălanx . . ībat . . flammas cum rēgia puppis *extŭlĕrat, after the royal galley had hoisted the fiery signal.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 257.)

Vix ea *fātus eram,* . . cum . . , *Hardly had I uttered those words, when* . . . (ib. 323.)

§ 403. The Past-Perfect Indicative is sometimes used by the Poets for the Past-Perfect Subjunctive, for the sake of greater vividness: as,

Me truncus illapsus cĕrebro,
Sustŭlĕrat, nisi Faunus ictum
Dextrā lĕvasset, *had* (= *would have*) *made an end of me, unless*, etc.—Hor. (Od. 2, 17, 28.) (This is probably a Greek idiom: the Past-Perfect being equivalent to a Past Tense Indic. with ἄν. Compare Eng. '*I had done it*' for '*I should have done it*.') See also Virg. Aen. 2, 55, impŭlĕrat = impŭlisset.

§ 404. *Perfect Tenses of* sum *in Compound Tenses of Passive.*

(1) *Perfect Passive.*—The forms with sum can alone be used in ordinary Past-Indef. sense: as,

Hŏmo occīsus est (*not* fuit), *the man was killed*: leges perlātae sunt (*not* fuĕrunt), *the laws were carried.*

The forms with fui denote that something was complete, or in a certain state, at a past time: e.g.—

Restĭtuat lĕgiōnes intra saltum quo saeptae *fuĕrunt*, *within which they were* (or *lay*) *hemmed in*—Liv. (9, 11, *init.*) (Saeptae *sunt* would simply state the *fact* that they 'were hemmed in.')

Lex dies *fuit* prōpŏsĭtā paucos; ferri coepta nunquam, i.e. *the notice of it was before the public for a few days.*—Cic. (Sull. 65.) (Cf. id. Sext. 55, legum multitudinem, quum earum quae *latae sunt*, tum vero, quae *promulgatae fuerunt*, i.e. '*which were there, posted up.*')

(2) *Pluperfect Tense.*—The same distinction applies to the Pluperfect, and may usually be traced; but it is not observed with the same strictness as in the Perfect. Livy especially often uses the forms with fueram in simple Pluperfect sense: e.g.—

In via Fornĭcātā . . . . alĭquot homines de caelo tacti exănĭmātique *fuerant*, *had been struck by lightning and killed* (22, 36, *fin.*)—duo servi . . . . inter pābŭlātores excepti a Nūmĭdis *fuerant*, *had been captured* (ib. 42, *med.*)—primo stātim proelio fundā grăviter ictus *fuerat*, *had been hit* (ib. 49, *init.*)—Rōmam . . . dēlētas omnes cōpias adlātum *fuerat*, *news had been brought* (ib. 54, *med.*)—(virgo) . . . . nĕcāta *fuerat*, *had been killed* (ib. 57, *init.*)—cīvĭtas . . . . antea tentāta *fuerat*, *had been attempted* (id. 31, 46, *med.*).

(3) *Other Perfect Tenses of Indicative and Subjunctive.*—The same observations apply to the Fut.-Perfect Indicative, and Perfect and Fut.-Perf. Subjunctive, as to the Pluperfect Indicative, though examples are less frequent. The simple Pluperfect Subjunctive with fuissem is not uncommon: e.g.—

Si omnibus cōpiis rex congressus *fuisset, if he had joined battle* (Liv. 31, 38, *med.*)—si extemplo . . . vōcāta in contiōnem multitūdo *fuisset, had been summoned forthwith* (id. 35, 36). Cf. also id. 31, 44, *med.*, institūta *essent* . . . . : followed by inscriptum *fuisset*, where the two forms appear to be used indifferently.

Obs. In the Pluperfect Subjunctive, *fŏrem* is frequent for *essem*.

(4) *Perfect Infinitive.*—In this tense, as in the Perfect Indicative, the distinction between the two forms (with esse and fuisse) seems to be strictly maintained; that with fuisse always referring to a past state: e.g.—

Jūbet bŏno ănĭmo esse, sōpītum *fuisse* rēgem sŭbĭto ictu . . . jam ad se rĕdiisse, *the king had been in a state of insensibility from the sudden blow . . . but he had now come to himself.*—(Liv. 1, 41, *med.*)

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense.*—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something *will have* taken place by the time spoken of: as,

Plūra scrībam ad te quum constĭtĕro, *I will write further to you as soon as I shall have settled down.*—Cic. (Att. 5, 12, *extr.*)

Ut sēmentem fēceris, ĭta mĕtes, *As you shall have sown, you will reap.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 261.)

§ 406. Sometimes the Future-Perfect conveys the idea that a thing will be finished immediately (Zumpt, § 511): as,

Quae fŭcrit causa, mox *vĭdero, What the reason is, I shall soon see* (*shall have got to see*).—Cic. (Fin. 1, 35.)

Tu invīta mūlĭĕres, ego *accīvero* pŭĕros, *Do you invite the women, I will (presently) have the men-folk invited.*—Cic. (Att. 5, 1.)

Nĭhil prōmōveris, *You will gain nothing by it.*—Ter. (Andr. 4, 1, 16.)

Dum lŏquīmur, *fŭgĕrit* invĭda aetas, *E'en while we speak, jealous time is fled.* (Lit. *will have fled.*)—Hor. (Od. 1, 11, 7.)

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are regularly used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed: as,

Ea certissĭma pūtābo, quae ex te *cognōro, what I hear* (lit. *shall have heard*) *from you.*—Cic. (Fam. 2, 11.)

Plūribus verbis ad te scrībam, quum plus ōtii *nactus ero, I will write you more at length when I get more leisure.*—Cic. (Fam. 3, 7, *init.*)

Vĕruntămen, Crīto, si me assĕqui *pŏtŭĕris*, ut tĭbi vĭdēbitur sĕpĕlīto, *if you can only catch me, you must bury me as you (shall) think proper.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 103.)

Nātūram si *sĕquēmur* dŭcem, nunquam aberrābĭmus, *If we (shall) follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 100.)

De quā (Carthāgĭne) vĕrĕri non ante dēsīnam, quam illam excīsam esse *cognōvĕro, till I learn* (lit. *shall have learned*) *she has been utterly destroyed.*—Cic. (Sen. 18.)

(B.) The Indicative Mood used Interrogatively.

1. Single Direct Questions.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used both with and without Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, in asking *Direct Questions:* as,

Quis nescit, *who knows not?*—ŭbi gentium sŭmus, *where in the world are we?*—quî fit, *how comes it?* ŭt *vălet?* ŭt *mĕmĭnit* nostri? *how does he? how does he think of me?*—quōta hōra *est? what o'clock is it?*—Thrax *est* Gallīna Sўro par? *is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?*

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question:—nĕ (enclitic), num; utrum and an. The latter two are used only in asking *Double Questions;* i.e. questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle* -nĕ.—The Particle nĕ is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question, without suggesting either an affirmative or a negative answer: as,

Tarquĭnius rex interrŏgavit: Estis*ne* vos lēgāti ōrātōresque missi a pŏpŭlo Collātino? Sūmus,—*King Tarquinius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia? We are.*—Liv. (1, 38.)

Dătur*ne* illa hŏdie Amphĭlo nuptum, *Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?*—Ter. (Andr. 2, 1, 1.)

Obs. 1. In the best writers, *-nĕ* is always joined to the *first* word in the interrogative sentence, except sometimes when united with non, as *nonne* (see next sect.).

Obs. 2. *-nĕ* is very rarely attached to an interrogative pronoun or adverb: Hor. has several examples. Cf. Sat. 2, 2, 107.

§ 411. Nonne.—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so? Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative—thus, nonne: as,

Cănis *nonne* sĭmĭlis lŭpo, *Is not a dog like a wolf?*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 97.)

Nonne ēmŏri per virtūtem praestat, *Is it not better with valour to die outright?*—Sall. (Cat. 20, *med.*)

Sometimes the simple *-ne* has almost the force of *nonne*, being used when an affirmative answer is expected: as,

Vĭdētisne ut apud Hŏmērum . . . . , *Do you not see how in Homer*, &c.?—Cic. (Sen. 31.)

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle* num.—The Particle num indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted = *it is not so, is it?* It always begins its sentence: as,

Num nĕgare audes, *Do you dare deny it?* (*Not you!*)—Cic. (Cat. 1, 8.)

Num fīlio vĭdētur uxōrem dăre, *Does it look as if he was marrying his son?* (*No indeed!*)—Ter. (Andr. 2, 6, 21.)

Num facti pĭget, *He isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?*—Ter. (Andr. 5, 3, 6.)

Num Viscellīnum ămīci regnum appĕtentem dēbuērunt jŭvāre, *Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him aiming at regal power?* (*Certainly not.*)—Cic. (Am. 36.)

Obs. In *Indirect* questions *num* ceases to have a negative force: v. § 435.

§ 413. **Ecquid** and **Numquid**.—These words are compounded of the interrogative and indefinite pronoun *quid;* but they are frequently used as mere interrogative particles, equivalent to *-ne* and *num* respectively: as,

Quid est, Cătīlīna? *Ecquid* attendis? *Ecquid* ănĭmadvertis hōrum sĭlentium? *What means it, Catiline? Mark you it* (*at all*)? *Observe you* (*at all*) *the silence of these men?*—Cic. (Cat. 1, 20.)

Numquid mĕmĭnisti, *You don't happen to remember it, do you?*—Ter. (Andr. 5, 4, 40.)

2. Double Direct Questions.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking Double direct questions are utrum (lit. *which of the two*), an, -nĕ. Utrum is used only in the first alternative, and an only in the second, while -nĕ is used in both: as,

Utrum ea vestra *an* nostra culpa est, *Is that your fault or ours?*—Cic. (Ac. 2, 95.)

Is*ne* es quem quaero *annon*, *Are you the man I am seeking or not?*—Ter. (Ph. 5, 6, 12.)

Sunt haec tua verba nec*ne*, *Are these your words or no?*—Cic. (Tusc. 3, 41.)

Obs. 1. *Necne* and *annon*, "*or no*," are written as single words.

Obs. 2. *-ne* is rare in the second alternative; unless that alternative may be stated in the form "*or no*," necne.

Obs. 3. The first particle (*utrum*) is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.

§ 415. An is sometimes *apparently* used in single questions; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed: as,

Quid ais? *An* Pamphĭlus vēnit? *What say you? Or is Pamphilus really come?*—Ter. (Hec. 3, 2, 11.)

Quid dīces? *An* bello fŭgĭtīvōrum Sĭcĭlĭam virtūte tuā lībĕrātam? *What will you say? Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from a runaway-slave war?*—Cic. (Verr. 5, 5.)

Obs. In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, *Or is my question unnecessary, and is Pamphilus come?*—"*Have you anything else to say, or will you say that,*" &c.

§ 416. The following table exhibits the ordinary sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative:—

First Alternative	Second, Third, etc.	
utrum	an	an
-nĕ	an	an
(omitted)	an	an
(omitted)	-nĕ	
num	an	

Obs. 1. Concerning Indirect Questions, see § 433.

Obs. 2. When *num* (*numquid*) is used in the former part of a double question, it retains its negative force: as,

Numquid vos duas habētis patrias, an est illa una patria commūnis, *Have you perchance two native-countries? or is the one country common also to you?*—Cic. (Leg. 2, 5.)

Chapter XLV.—The Imperative Mood.

§ 417. *Present Tense* ("*Jussive*").—The Present Imperative is used in giving orders, directions, or advice, either with reference to the immediate Present, or without reference to any definite time; also in salutations: as,

Haec *cūrā* (*cūrāte*) dīlĭgenter—*i* nunc intro—id mihi *da* nĕgōti—*lŏquĕre* quid velis—carpe diem—festīna lentē—*ăvē*, *vălē*, *salvē*.

Not in prohibitions is expressed by nē (never non); and in double sentences by nē....nēve (neu); nēve....nēve: as,

Ne crŭcia te, obsecro, *Do not torment yourself, I pray!*—Ter. (Eun. 1, 2, 15.)

Hŏmĭnem mortuum in urbe ne *sĕpĕlīto*, nēve *ūrīto*, *Thou shalt not bury or burn a corpse within the city.*—XII Tab. (ap. Cic. Leg. 2, 58.)

(Comp. Virg. Aen. 6, 832: *ne* pueri . . . *neu* . . .)

Obs. 1. Instead of *nēve, nĕque* is sometimes found with the second Imperative; especially when the latter is expressed by the Subjunctive: e.g.—

Tĕneāmus eum cursum .... *neque* ea signa audiāmus quae receptui cănunt, *nor let us listen*, &c.—Cic. (Rep. 1, 2.)

Nec deus intersit, *Nor let a deity interfere* . . .—Hor. (A. P. 191.)

Obs. 2. *Nē* with the 2nd pers. Imperative is rare and archaic. (Common in Pl. and Ter.) Instead of it was generally used either *ne* with Perf. Subj. (§ 420), or a circumlocution with căve or nōli: § 420, *Obs.* 1.

§ 418. *Future Tense.*—The Future Imperative is used in commands and exhortations extending to the future as well as to the present; hence it is always employed in laws and in wills: as,

Rēgio impĕrio duo *sunto*, *Let there be two persons with regal power.*—Vet. Lex in Cic. (Leg. 3, 8.) (See the whole of this context.)

Non sătis est pulchra esse poëmăta, dulcia *sunto*, *It is not enough for poems to have beauty; they must (always) charm.*—Hor. (A. P. 99.)

Hunc tu, Rōmāne, *căvēto*, *Against such an one, man of Rome, thou will have to be on thy guard.*—Hor. (S. 1, 4, 85.)

Si rem nullam hăbēbis, quod in buccam vēnerit, *scrībīto*, *you must then write what comes uppermost.*—Cic. (Att. 1, 12.)

L. Titius mihi hēres *esto*, *L. Titius is to be my heir.*—Ulp. (Dig. 28, 5, 1.)

§ 419. The Subjunctive Present is sometimes used instead of the Imperative, especially in the 3rd Person Singular or Plural; also in the 2nd Person when the command is a general one, and not addressed to a particular person: as,

Aut bĭbat aut ăbeat, *Let him either drink or go.*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 118.)

Stătus, incessus, vultus, ŏcŭli, tĕneant illud dĕcōrum, *Let the attitude, gait, features, and eyes maintain propriety.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 129.)

Injūrias fortūnae, quas ferre nĕqueas, dēfŭgiendo rĕli quas, *The injuries of fortune which you* (or '*one*') *cannot bear, you* (or '*one*') *may escape by flying from.*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 118.)

Dēnĭque isto bŏno *ūtāre* dum adsit, quum absit ne rĕquīras, *In short, use the advantage while it is there, when it is gone, wish it not back.*—Cic. (Sen. 33.)

Obs. The Second Person of the Subjunctive Mood is very seldom used in speaking to a definite person. See Roby, § 1601.

§ 420. A prohibition may also be expressed by nē (also nēmo, nihil) with the Subjunctive: generally with the Third Person of the Present, and the Second Person of the Perfect Tense: as,

Ne quid rĕi tibi sit cum Săguntīnis, *Meddle not with the Saguntines.* —Liv. (21, 44.)

Ne transĭĕris Ibērum, *Cross not the Ebro.*—Liv. (ib.)

Nihil (= ne quid) ignōvĕris, *Show no charity for anything.*—Cic. (Mur. 65: see the context.)

Nec tămen ista prĕtia hortōrum pertĭmueris, *And don't be afraid of those (high) prices for grounds.*—Cic. (Att. 12, 23, 5.)

Obs. 1. A prohibition is often expressed by the periphrasis *nōli, nōlito,* with the Infinitive: as,

Nōli pŭtāre, Brūte, quenquam, &c., *Do not suppose, Brutus, that any single person, &c.*—Cic. (Br. 125.) So, nōlite existĭmare, Sall. (Cat. 52, *med.*)

Or by căvĕ with Subjunctive: as,

Căve pūtēs, *Do not imagine.*—Cic. (Att. 5, 21, 4.)

Căvĕ dixĕris, *Don't say so!*—Ter. (Ad. 3, 4, 12.)

Obs. 2. Also the Second Person Singular of the Future Indicative has sometimes an Imperative force: as,

Tu nihil invītā *dīces făciesve* Mĭnervā, *Do not thou say or do anything against the bent of Nature.*—Hor. (A. P. 385.)

Chapter XLVI.—The Subjunctive ('Conjunctive') Mood.

§ 421. The Subjunctive Mood expresses a thing not as an independent *fact* like the Indicative, but merely as a *thought* or *conception* of the mind, or as contingent upon something else.

Hence the Subjunctive Mood is used to indicate,

(A). A supposition or conditional statement.
(B). An indirect question.
(C). A wish or prayer, or a command.
(D). A purpose or consequence.
(E). A dependent statement, forming an Adjectival or Adverbial sentence, occurring in *orātio oblīqua.* ('*Suboblique* statement.'—K.)

(A). Si īta sit, gaudeam—si īta dīcam mentiar—si īta esset (fuisset) gaudĕrem—nīsi tu adfuisses, pĕriissem.

(B). Quid făciam?—quid făcĕrem?—ausim (*I should be disposed to venture*)—crēdĭderim (*I am inclined to believe*).

(C).—(i) Vălĕas—sis fēlix—di prōhĭbeant—ūtĭnam ĭta esset—(ii) Aut bĭbat aut ăbeat—hoc ne fĕcĕris—tu nĕ quaesĭĕris—cāmus—mĕmĭnĕrimus.

(D). Vĕnio ut rōgem—vĕnĭēbam ut rōgārem—lēgātos mittunt ut pācem pĕtant—sĕquĭtur ut haec vēra sint—accĭdit ut ădessem.

(E). Esse nonnullos, quōrum auctōrĭtas apud plēbem plūrĭmum *vălĕat*, etc. (Cf. Caes. B. G. 1, 17.)

§ 422. The Subjunctive (or Conjunctive) Mood is incapable of making an independent or objective statement. When it appears to do so, it is only because the notion to which it is subordinated is left to be understood instead of being distinctly expressed. Thus, the Imperative-Subjunctive ('jussive') is dependent upon a suppressed vŏlo ut (see § 443, *Obs.*); and the use of the Perfect Subjunctive as a softened predication (crēdĭderim, confirmāverim) implies the submission of one's judgment to that of others ('if I might be allowed to express an opinion'). See also § 432 (Concessive use of Subjunctive).

§ 423. *Sequence of Tenses.*—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood must be in concord with the Tense of the antecedent Verb upon which it depends. Thus Present or Future time is followed by Present or Future (the Present Subjunctive having a Future sense), and Past time by Past.

The Perfect Indicative when used as an Historical Tense ('*Past-Indefinite*'), belongs to the series of Past Tenses, and is followed by a Past Subjunctive: when used as a Present Complete (*Perfect* with '*have*') it belongs to the series of Present Tenses and is followed by a Present Subjunctive.

EXAMPLES: INDIRECT QUESTIONS (§ 433).

(i) *Present or Future Time in both members.*

PRESENT.	Scio quid ăgas	*I know what you are doing*
	Scio quid ēgĕris	*I know what you have done*
	Scio quid actūrus sis	*I know what you are going to do* ✓
PRESENT PERFECT.	Cognōvi quid ăgas	*I have learnt what you are doing*
	Cognōvi quid ēgĕris	*I have learnt what you have done*
	Cognōvi quid actūrus sis	*I have learnt what you are going to do*
FUTURE.	Audiam quid ăgas	*I shall hear what you are doing*
	Audiam quid ēgĕris	*I shall hear what you have done*
	Audiam quid actūrus sis	*I shall hear what you are going*

(ii) *Past Time in both members.*

Past Imperf.	Sciēbam quid ăgĕres	*I knew what you were doing*
	Sciēbam quid ēgisses	*I knew what you had done*
	Sciēbam quid actūrus esses	*I knew what you were going to do*
Past Indefinite.	Cognōvi quid ăgĕres	*I learnt what you were doing or did*
	Cognōvi quid ēgisses	*I learnt what you had done*
	Cognōvi quid actūrus esses	*I learnt what you were going to do*
Past Perfect.	Cognōvĕram quid ăgĕres	*I had learnt what you were doing*
	Cognōvĕram quid ēgisses	*I had learnt what you had done*
	Cognōvĕram quid actūrus esses	*I had learnt what you were going to do*

Similarly in sentences expressing a Purpose or Result:—

Vĕniunt	ut spectent	*they come that they may see*
Vēnērunt	ut spectārent	*they came that they might see*
Vēnērunt	ut spectent	*they have (are) come that they may see*

N.B.—The Perfect Subjunctive is often used after the Past Indefinite Indicative in narrative, when the subordinate proposition is presented as a distinct and important historical statement: as,

Tantum in aerārium pĕcūniae *invexit*, ut unius impĕrātōris praeda fīnem *attŭlĕrit* trĭbūtorum, *that the spoils of a single general put an end to the taxes.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 76.)

Tantus fuit ardor armorum, ut eum mōtum terrae, qui . . . . , nēmo pugnantium *sensĕrit, that not one of the combatants noticed the earthquake*, &c.—Liv. (22, 5.)

See also Liv. 21, 1, ut prŏpius pĕrīcŭlum *fuĕrint;* and ib. 58, *init.*, ut Alpium foeditātem prŏpe sŭpĕrāverit.

Obs. The *Historical Present* (§ 393), being in reality a past tense, is often followed by Past Tenses Subjunctive: as,

Helvētii lēgātos ad Caesărem *mittunt*, qui *dīcĕrent*, *The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say, &c.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 7.)

1. Hypothetical Sentences.

§ 424. A hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, the *Protăsis* and the *Apodōsis:* the former containing the supposition or ground of argument, the latter the conclusion based upon it. As a general rule, the two members of a hypothetical sentence are in the same Mood and Tense.

(i) If both members of the sentence deal with *facts*, either actual or assumed for the purpose of argument, both their Verbs are in the Indicative Mood: as,

Sēra grātŭlātio reprehendi non sŏlet, praesertim *si* nullā neglĭgentiā praetermissa *est, especially if* [*as in the present case*] *it has not been omitted through any neglect.*—Cic. (Fam. 2, 7.)

Si ea quae accĭdērunt ĭta *fers* ut audio, grātŭlāri vĭrtūti (tuae) dēbeo, *If you are bearing what has happened in the way I hear, I ought to congratulate you on your fortitude.*—Cic. (Fam. 4, 8, *init.*)

(Cf. Liv. 21, 44, *fin.*: si hoc bĕne fixum omnibus destĭnātumque in animo *est, vicistis.*)

(ii) But if the sentence implies only that something *may* or *might* happen, or *may* or *might* have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive: as,

Si *nĕgem, mentiar, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.*—Cic. (Am. 10.)

Tu si hic *sis,* ălĭter *sentias, You, if you were in my place, would think differently.*—Ter. (Andr. 2, 1, 10.)

Te *nĕcassem* jam verbĕrĭbus, nisi īrātus *essem, I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.*—Cic. (Rep. 1, 38.)

§ 425. The Conjunctions used in formally stating hypothetical propositions are sī, *if;* and nīsi (nī), sīn, *if not.* The last (sīn shortened from si ne) is used only when another hypothesis with si (expressed or implied) has preceded.

Obs. To these may be added compounds of *si,* as *etsi, etiamsi;* and *dum, dummodo* (see §§ 498, 503).

§ 426. The *Present* and *Perfect* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing *may possibly happen* or *have happened:* as,

Me dies, vox, lătĕra, dēfĭciant, *si* hoc nunc vōcĭfĕrāri *vĕlim, Time, voice, strength, would fail me, if I were to purpose expressing now,* etc.—Cic. (Verr. 2, 52.)

Illaud istuc *dicas,* si cognōris . . , *You would not say that, if you only learn* [*what you may very well come to know*].—Ter. (Andr. 4, 1, 28.)

Si sciĕris (*Perfect*) aspĭdem occulte lătēre uspiam, ... imprŏbe *fēcĕris, nisi mŏnuĕris* altĕrum ne assĭdeat, *If you should have become aware . . . . you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour . . . .*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 59.)

At mĕmŏria mĭnuĭtur:—Crēdo, *nisi* eam *exerceas, But (you say), memory decays: I believe you, if you do not exercise it.*—Cic. (Sen. 20.)

(Apodosis not expressed, minuatur, *it would fail.*)

Obs. In such cases, we in English often use a *Past* Tense Subjunctive, and translate the Latin Present by *should, would, were,* &c., as in the above examples.

§ 427. The *Past* Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of as *not* actually taking place, whether *now* (Past-Imperfect), or in the *Past* (Past-Perfect): as,

Quae si vĭdēres, lacrĭmas non tĕnēres, *Could you see these things [which you cannot], you would not be able to withhold tears.*—Cic. (Fam. 7, 30.)

(*Si*) ūno proelio *victus* (*esset*) Alexander, bello *victus esset*, *Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the* (*entire*) *war.*—Liv. (9, 19.)

Obs. Instead of a Past Tense *Subjunctive* of a thing regarded as not taking place, a Past Tense of the *Indicative* is sometimes used in the Apodosis, for the sake of greater vividness. For examples, see § 403.

§ 428. The Indicative of the verbs dēbeo, dĕcet, ŏportet, possum, and sum with a gerundive or neuter adjective, is frequently used in the Apodosis instead of the Subjunctive: as,

Quae si dŭbia *essent*, tamen omnes bŏnos rĕipublicae subvĕnīre *dĕcēbat* (= dĕcēret), *If these things were uncertain, it would still be the duty of all good citizens to come to the aid of the commonwealth.*—Sall. (Jug. 85, extr.)

Si ĭta Milo *pŭtasset*, optābĭlius ei *fuit* (fuisset, N.), etc., *If Milo had so thought, it would have been more desirable for him, &c.*—Cic. (Mil. 31.)

Obs. This is probably a Greek idiom. In Greek we should have a Past Tense Indic. with ἄν.

§ 429. *Ellipsis of Protasis.*—The Subjunctive is sometimes used to signify that something would take place, if only some condition too obvious to be expressed were fulfilled (*Subjunctivus Potentialis*): as,

Crēdat Jūdaeus, non ĕgo, *The Jew may believe it* (*if it were told him*), *not I.*—Hor. (S. 1, 5, 100.)

Dīcas adductum prŏpius frondēre Tărentum, *You would say Tarentum had actually been transported and was blooming nearer home* (*if you were to see the place*).—Hor. (Ep. 1, 16, 11.)

Pĕcūniae an fāmae mĭnus parcĕret, haud facĭle *discernĕres*, *You would not easily tell* (*if you tried*), *whether she were more careless of her money or her reputation.*—Sall. (Cat. 25.)

Obs. The Past-Imperfect is generally used where in English we say, *you would* have *thought*; *you would* have *said*: as,

Crēdĕres victos (esse), (*Had you seen them*) *you would have thought they had been the vanquished.*—Liv. (2, 43.)

§ 430. The Subjunctive is similarly used in expressing a modest wish or affirmation: as,

Vĕlim mihi ignoscas, *I pray you (I could wish) pardon me.*—Cic. (Fam. 13, 75.)

Hoc vēro sine ullā dūbĭtātiōne *confirmāvĕrim, This I am prepared (if necessary) without any hesitation to assert.*—Cic. (Br. 25.)

Nam Cĭcĕrōnem cuicunque Graecorum fortĭter oppōsuĕrim, *As for Cicero, I would fearlessly back him against any one of the Greeks.*—Quint. (10, 1, 105.)

This usage is most frequent in 1 pers. sing.; but it is found in others: cf. Quint. *l. c.* 101; At non hĭstŏrĭa *cessĕrit* Graecis, *Our history is not, I think, inferior.*

§ 431. The Subjunctive is sometimes used when a virtual hypothesis is contained in another part of the sentence: as,

An ĕgo in hac urbe esse *possim*, his pulsis, *Could I exist in this city with these men in banishment* (i. e. *if they are banished*)?—Cic. (Sext. 146.)

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument ('*Concessively*'): as,

Mălus cīvis Cn. Carbo fuit:—*fuerit* aliis; tibi quando esse cœpit, *Cnaeus Carbo was a bad citizen, was he? (Granted that) he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?*—Cic. (Verr. 2, 1, 37.)

Vērum, *ut* ita *sit*, tamen non pŏtes hoc praedĭcāre, *Yet (granting) that it is so, still you cannot affirm this.*—Cic. (Verr. 3, 151.)

Ut ĕnim . . . , non sĕquĭtur tămen ut . . . , *For granting that . . . still it does not follow*, etc.—Cic. (Fat. 9.)

2. The Subjunctive in Dependent Questions or expressing Doubt or Uncertainty.

§ 433. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is dependent upon some verb of asking or answering, or some word or phrase signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Ego quid *ăgas* nihil intellĭgo, *I have no idea what you are aiming at.*—Ter. (Andr. 4, 3, 22.) (Direct Question: Quid ăgis?)

Rŏges me, quid aut quāle *sit* Deus, *Should you ask me what God is or what is the nature of God . . . .*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 60.)

(Direct Question: Quid aut quāle est Deus?)

Si quālis *sit* ănĭmus ipse ănĭmus nesciet, *If the mind itself shall not know what is the nature of the mind.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 53.)

(Direct Question: Quālis *est* animus? § 408.)

Quaerĭtur *sintne* dii necne *sint, The question is raised whether there are gods or no?*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 61.)

(Direct Question: *Suntne* dii, necne?)

§ 434. The dependent Interrogative clause must be carefully distinguished from a Relative clause defining the object: thus, quid tĭmeas scio (Ter. Andr. 2, 2, 9), *I know what you are afraid of* (Dependent Interr.); but dictūra es quod *rŏgo* (ib. 4, 4, 12), *are you going to answer what I ask?* (defining Rel. clause). See also Cic. Verr. 2, 161: quae sunt gesta cognoscīte (with Long's note).

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, num (see § 412) is sometimes used without any negative force: as,

Exsistit quaedam *quaestio* subdifficĭlis, *num* quando ămīci nŏvi vĕtĕrĭbus *sint* antĕpōnendi, *A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?*—Cic. (Am. 67.)

(See however Cic. Fat. 6: quaero . . . . *num*, ălĭter ac nunc ĕvĕniunt, *ēvĕnirent, I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?*—where the answer *No* is expected. Cf. also id. Vat. 15: quaero *num* tu Sĕnātui causam tuam permittas, quod făcit Caesar: implying that he did *not*. In later authors *num* occurs in Dependent Interrogatives even quite = nonne: see Quint. 4, 2, 79.)

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative, the following particles are used:—

Quaerĭtur,	**utrum**	**ăn**	**ăn.**
	-nĕ	**ăn**	**ăn.**
	(omitted)	**-nĕ**	**-nĕ.**

§ 437. Sometimes the Indicative is found in what are *apparently* Indirect Questions: in such cases the Verb of question must be treated as entirely independent in Syntax: as,

Quaero abs te, īine qui postŭlābant indigni erant, *I ask you, were those who made the request unworthy?*—Cic. (R. Am. 119.)

Et vīde, *quam conversa* res *est! And see! How the case has altered!*—Cic. (Att. 9, 13.)

§ 438. The particle an is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after haud scio, nescio, dŭbĭto, dŭbium est, incertum est: as,

Aristŏtĕlem, excepto Plătōne, *haud scio an* recte *dixĕrim* princĭpem philŏsŏphōrum, *With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.*—Cic. (Fin. 5, 7.)

Dŭb'to an Vĕnŭsiam *tendam*, et ibi *exspectem* de lĕgiōnĭbus, *I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.*—Cic. (Att. 16, 5, 3.)

Contĭgit tibi quod *haud scio an* nēmĭni, *The lot has fallen to you which* perhaps *has fallen to no one else.*—Cic. (Fam. 9, 14, *ad fin.*)

Obs. The phrases *haud scio an, nescio an,* imply the *probability* of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English "*I don't know whether.*"

§ 439. Propositions about which doubt and uncertainty are distinctly *denied* are expressed with quin and the Subjunctive; as non dūbium est quin, etc. (see § 461).

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in what look like Direct questions, to indicate *perplexity;* where the Verb *dŭbĭto* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*): as,

Sed quid *ăgam? adeamne* ad eum, et cum eo injūriam hanc *expostŭlem? But what am I to do? Shall I go to him,* etc.—Ter. (Andr. 4, 1, 15.)

Quid hoc hŏmĭne *făcĭātis, What are you to do with this man?*—Cic. (Verr. 2, 1, 42.)

Quid ălĭud *făcĕret, What else could he do?*—Cic. (de Or. 3, 86.)

Quid *ēnŭmĕrem* artium multĭtūdĭnem, *Why should I enumerate a multitude of arts?*—Cic. (Off. 2, 15.)

§ 441. Verbs of *fearing* take the Subjunctive with nē or ut according as the fear is expressed that a thing *will* (ne) or *will not* (ut) happen (see § 460).

§ 442. *In all cases* where the Subjunctive is found in apparently independent propositions, it is in reality dependent upon some *condition, doubt,* or *uncertainty,* present to the mind of the speaker or writer ("*subjective*"), though not expressed.

3. The Subjunctive expressing a Wish.

§ 443. *Subjunctīvus Optātīvus.*—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb expressed, to indicate a *wish.*

Obs. The wish may be introduced by a verb of *wishing,* with or without *ut:* e.g.—

Vŏlo ut mihi respondeas, *I beg you to answer me.*—Cic. (Vat. 14.)

Vĕlim ut tibi ămīcus sit, *I should be glad for him to be your friend.*—Cic. (Att. 10, 16, 1.)

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable: as,

Văleant cīves mei, *sint* beāti, *May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!*—Cic. (Mil. 93.)

Especially with ūtĭnam, *O that!* O si, *O if!* as,

Utĭnam ipse Varro *incumbat* in causam, *Would that Varro himself would take up the case!*—Cic. (Att. 3, 15, 4.)

Sit meae sēdes [Tībur] ūtĭnam sĕnectae, *May it be the resting-place of my old-age.*—Hor. (Od. 2, 6, 6.)

O mĭhi praetĕrĭtos *rĕfĕrat* si Juppĭter annos, *Oh if Jupiter would but recal my past years!*—Virg. (Aen. 8, 560.)

Also with *si* only: Virg. Aen. 6, 187.

Obs. Analogous to this is the use of Subj. in imprecations; pĕream, intĕream, mŏriar si (nīsi), etc.

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express an invitation to others to join in some action: as,

Amēmus patriam, *Let us love our country.*—Cic. (Sext. 143.)

Mŏriāmur, *Let us die.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 353.)

Obs. In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. mĕmīnerim: as, Mĕmĭnĕrĭmus, *Let us remember.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 41.)

§ 446. The Past-Imperfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive are used in expressing a wish for a thing regarded as no longer attainable: as,

Utĭnam prōmissa *lĭcēret* non dăre, *Would it were lawful not to fulfil promises!*—Ov. (M. 2, 51.)

Utĭnam, Cn. Pompēi, cum Caesăre sŏcietātem nunquam *coisses* aut nunquam *dirēmisses*, *I would, Cn. Pompeius, you either had never entered into league with Caesar, or had never broken it off.*—Cic. (Ph. 2, 24.)

Obs. 1. In this way are used *vellem, mallem, nollem, I could fain wish,* vellem īdem posse glōriāri (Cic. Sen. 32); nollem Cŏrinthum, *sc.* sublātam esse (id. Off. 1, 35); nollem factum (Ter. Ad. 2, 1, 11); while *vēlim, mālim,* and *nōlim* are used of wishes considered to be attainable (comp. §§ 426, 427).

Obs. 2. The Past-Imperfect Subjunctive is occasionally used to express a wish that something past *had happened* otherwise. Cf. Virg. Aen. 11, 162: obruĕrent, *would that they had overwhelmed* . . . atque haec pompa dŏmum me non Pallanta rĕferret, *and that this procession had borne me home, not Pallas.*

Obs. 3. Similarly, the Past Tenses of the Subjunctive are used to denote what *ought to have been done* under certain circumstances but was not done: e.g.—

Asservasses hŏmīnem, clausum *hăbuisses* [asservasse . . . habuisse, Nobbe] . . . . ălīquid de summo supplĭcio *rĕmitteres*, *You might (at least) have kept the man in custody . . . you might have waived something of the extreme penalty.*—Cic. (Verr. 5, 168.)

Pŏtĭus dīcĕret, *He ought rather to have said.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 88.)

At tu dictis, Albāne, mānēres, *Thou at least, Alban, shouldst have stood by thy words.*—Virg. (A. 8, 643.) (See also Virg. E. 3, 21.)

Praedīceres, *You might have forewarned (me)!*—Ter. (Andr. 4, 4, 54.)

§ 447. The construction of Verbs of *wishing* is various. Opto is most frequently followed by ut and Subjunctive: as,

Optāvit ut in currum patris tollĕrētur, *He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 94.)

(Rarely by Subj. alone: optavi, pĕtĕres . . , Ov. Tr. 2, 57.)

Cŭpio is not found with Subjunctive, either alone or with ut, in good prose. Vōlo, mālo, nōlo, are frequently found with the Subjunctive, both alone, and with a Conjunction: as,

Illud vŏlo ŭti respondeas, *I want you to answer this question.*—Cic. (Vat. 18.)

Hŏdie uxōrem dūcas vŏlo, *I wish you to take a wife to-day.*—Ter. (Andr. 2, 5, 7.)

Mālo te săpiens hostis *mĕtuat*, quam stulti cives *laudent*, *I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.*—Liv. (22, 39, *fin.*)

Nōlo accūsātor in jūdĭcium pōtentiam *affĕrat*, *I would not have an accuser bring personal predominance with him into court.*—Cic. (Mur. 59.)

Obs. 1. In the same way sīno, *I allow*, is sometimes used: as,

Sīne tīmīdum pro cauto *vŏcent*, *Let them call you timid instead of wary.*—Liv. (22, 39, *fin.*)

Obs. 2. For the construction of *vŏlo*, &c., with Infinitive, see § 512.

§ 448. To this place must be referred the use of the Present and the Second Person Singular of the Perfect Subjunctive as *Jussives* (see § 420).

4. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

§ 449. The Conjunction ut, *that, in order that, so that*, is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either a Purpose contemplated or a Consequence which ensues.

(*a.*) *Purpose contemplated.*

Ab ărātro abduxērunt Cincinnātum *ut* dictātor *esset*, *They fetched Cincinnatus from the plough to be dictator.*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 12.)

Quum Pȳlădes Ŏrestem se esse dīcĕret, *ut* pro eo *nĕcārētur*, *Pylades affirming himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.*—Cic. (Am. 24.)

(A negative purpose is expressed by **nē**, and less frequently **ut nē**. But **nē** is never used to denote merely a consequence: See § 454.)

(*b.*) *Result or Consequence ensuing.*

Tarquĭnius sic Servium dīlĭgēbat *ut* is ejus vulgo *hăbērētur* fīlius. *Tarquinius was so attached to Servius, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.*—Cic. (Rep. 2, 21.)

Saepe fit *ut* ii qui dēbeant non *respondeant* ad tempus, *It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.*—Cic. (Att. 16, 2.)

Si haec ēnuntiātio vēra non est, *sĕquĭtur ut* falsa *sit*, *If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic. (Fat. 28.)

Huic contĭgit *ut* patriam in lībertātem vindĭcāret, *It fell to his lot to deliver his country from bondage.*—Nep. (Thras. 1.)

(Such phrases as sĕquĭtur, *it follows;* restat, *it remains;* nĕcesse est, *it is necessary;* aequum, justum est, *it is right* or *just;* take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood: see § 510.)

§ 450. **Ut** explanatory.—Closely connected with the use of **ut** as denoting a Consequence is its use as explanatory of a preceding word or clause: as,

Vĕtus est lex ămīcĭtiae, *ut* ĭdem ămīci semper vĕlint, *It is an old law of friendship, that friends should always have the same wishes.*—Cic. (Planc. 5.)

Quod si hoc appāret in bestiis, *ut* se ipsae dīlĭgant, *And if this is evident in animals, that they love each other . . .* —Cic. (Am. 81.)

Invītus quĭdem fēci, *ut* L. Flāmĭnĭnum e sĕnātu ējĭcĕrem, *I did what I did reluctantly, namely in expelling*, etc.—Cic. (Sen. 42.) See also id. de Or. 1, 28, with Wilkins's note.

§ 451. **Ut** and **nē** are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying *to command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour;* **ut** in a positive, **nē** in a negative sense: as,

Cīvĭtāti *persuasit ut* de fīnĭbus suis *exīrent*, *He* (*Orgetorix*) *persuaded the community to leave their own territories.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 2.)

Te *hortor ut* hos libros de phĭlŏsŏphiā stŭdiōse *lĕgas*, *I urge you to read attentively these books of mine on philosophy.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 3.)

Te illud prīmum rŏgābo, *ne* quid invītus meā causā *făcias*, *I will first beg this of you, not to do anything against your will on my account.*—Cic. (Fam. 13, 1.)

Enĭtĭmĭni *ne* ego mĕliōres lībĕros sumpsisse *vĭdear* quam gĕnuisse, *Do your utmost that I may not seem to have adopted better children than I have begotten.*—Sall. (J. 10.)

Obs. 1. This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive *never* expresses a purpose.

Obs. 2. Jūbeo, *I order;* vĕto, *I forbid;* cōnor, *I attempt;* and sometimes nītor, *I strive,* take the Infinitive: as,

Jŭbet nos Pȳthius Apollo *noscĕre* nosmet ipsos, *The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."*—Cic. (Fin. 5, 44.)

Lex pĕregrinum *vĕtat* in mūrum *ascendĕre, The law forbids a foreigner to go up upon the walls.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 100.)

Ter *sunt cōnāti imponĕre* Pēlio Ossam, *Thrice they essayed to pile Ossa on Pelion.*—Virg. (G. 1, 281.)

Cirtam *irrumpĕre nītĭtur, He endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta.*—Sall. (J. 25.) (Usu. with ut and Subj.)

Obs. 3. *Impĕro* is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive, especially where brevity is desirable: as,

Has omnes actuārias impĕrat *fiĕri, He orders all these to be built for rowing as well as sailing.*—(Caes. B. G. 5, 1.)

Obs. 4. In poetry, prĕcor is found (like vŏlo) followed by Subjunctive without ut: cf. Hor. Od. 1, 2, 30, tandem vĕnias prĕcamur.

§ 452. Verbs which signify a *resolution* or *decision* are usually followed by ut or nē and the Subjunctive; especially when the Subject of the dependent Verb is different from that of the principal Verb: as,

Stătuunt ut x millia hŏmĭnum in oppĭdum submittantur, *They settle that* 10,000 *men should be sent to the help of the town.*—Caes. (B. G. 7, 21.)

Dēcrēvit sĕnātus *ut* consul *vīdĕret,* ne quid, etc., *The senate decreed, that the consul should look to it* . . . .—Cic. (Cat. 1, 4.)

Quum Āthēnienses *stătuĕrent ut* . . . . . lĭbertātem Graeciae classe *dēfendĕrent, When the Athenians were about resolving to defend the liberty of Greece with their fleet.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 48.)

Obs. But when the determination of an individual about himself is signified, the Infinitive is generally used: as,

Dēcrēram cum eo valde fămĭlĭārĭter *vīvĕre, I had determined to live on very friendly terms with him.*—Cic. (Att. 6, 6, *med.*)

§ 453. Quo.—The Conjunction quo, *that, in order that thereby,* is also used with the Subjunctive, to denote a *Purpose:* as,

Corrŭpisse dīcĭtur jūdĭcium pĕcūnĭā, quo ĭnĭmīcum suum *condemnāret, Cluentius is said to have bribed the court, that so it might condemn his enemy.*—Cic. (Clu. 9.)

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective or Adverb in its clause: as,

Obdūcuntur cortĭce trunci, *quo* sint a frīgŏrĭbus et călōrĭbus *tūtiōres, that so they may be safer,* etc.—Cic. (N. D. 2, 120.)

Pompēius, *quo făcĭlius* impĕtum Caesăris tardāret, portas obstruit, *that by that means he might more easily,* etc.—Caes. (B. C. 1, 27.)

Lēgem brĕvem esse ŏportet, *quo* făcĭlĭus ab impĕrītis *tĕnĕātur, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered.*—Sen. (Ep. 94, 38.)

(Here **quo = ut eo.**)

Obs. 1. But *quo* is not used like *ut* to denote a simple *result*, or *consequence.*

Obs. 2. Concerning non quo, *not that*, see § 488, *Obs.*

§ 454. **Nē** is used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Purpose*, ut being omitted: it is equivalent to ut non, quo non, *in order that . . . not; lest:* as,

Nōlo esse laudātor, *nē vĭdear* ădūlātor, *I am reluctant to be an applauder, lest I should seem a flatterer.*—Auct. ad Her. (4, 29.)

Gallĭnae pennis fŏvent pullos, *ne* frīgŏre *laedantur, Hens cherish their young under their wings, in order that they may not be hurt by the cold.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 129.)

§ 455. Sometimes, in the earlier writers (including Cic., but not Caes. or Sall.), ut is expressed along with nē: as,

Trebatio mandāvi, *ut*, si quid tu eum velles ad me mittĕre, *ne rĕcūsāret, I have charged Trebatius, if you wished on any account to dispatch him to me, not to refuse.*—Cic. (Fam. 4, 1.)

(Hoc) postŭlo . . *ut ne* quid huc praejūdĭcāti affĕrātis, *This I beg, that you will not bring hither any preconceived conclusions.*—Cic. (Clu. 6.)

Opĕra dătur *ut* jūdĭcia *ne* fīant, *Efforts are making to prevent the trials coming off.*—(Cic. Q. Fr. 3, 2, 2.)

Obs. This is especially the case with *ne quis, quid*, &c. (See Nizol. Lex. Cic. s. v. *ne.*) Once at least *quo* is found used with *ne:* Hor. S. 2, 1, 37.

456. When a *Purpose* is signified, we find

nē quis	instead of	**ut nēmo**	*that no one*
nē ullus	„ „	**ut nullus**	*that none*
nē unquam	„ „	**ut nunquam**	*that never*
nē usquam	„ „	**ut nusquam**	*that nowhere*
nēcŭbi (*i. e.* ne alicubi)		„	
nēcunde (*i. e.* ne alicunde)		„	*that from no quarter*
nēquando (*i. e.* ne aliquando)		„	*that at no time*

Caesărem complexus obsecrāre coepit *ne quid* grăvius in frātrem *stătuĕret, Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any too severe decision against his brother.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 20.)

Circumspectans *nēcunde* impĕtus in frūmentātōres *fĭĕret, Looking carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any quarter.*—Liv. (22, 23, *extr.*)

§ 457. But if only a *Result* is signified, the forms **ut non, ut nemo, ut nullus,** etc., must be used: as,

Ita efficitur .... *ut* omne corpus mortāle sit, *From this it follows that every body is liable to death.*—Cic. (N. D. 3, 30.)

Dēmosthĕnes perfēcit mĕditando, *ut nēmo* plānius eo lŏcūtus pŭtārētur, *By exercise Demosthenes so succeeded, that no one was considered to have been a clearer speaker than he.*—Cic. (de Or. 1, 260.)

§ 458. **Ut** and **nē** are used in parenthetical sentences, where some such notion as "supposing," "granting that," is implied: as,

Quae ut ŏmittam tam multa atque tanta, *To say nothing of these many important considerations.*—Cic. (Fam. 3, 10, *ad fin.*)

Nam *ŭt ŏmittam* Philippum, *to say nothing of Philip.*—Nep. (Han. 2.)

Ah nīmium simplex Hĕlĕne, *ne* rustĭca *dicam, Ah, too artless Helen, not to say, too rude!*—Ov. (Her. 15 (16), 285.)

§ 459. Similarly **nēdum,** *not to say, much less,* is followed by the Subjunctive: as,

Vix in ipsis tectis .... frīgus vītātur; nēdum in mări et viā *sit* făcĭle, etc., *much less can it be easy on sea and when travelling, etc.*—Cic. (Fam. 16, 8.)

Optĭmis tempŏribus vĭri clārissĭmi vim trĭbūnĭciam sustĭnēre non pŏtuērunt; *nedum* his tempŏrĭbus ..... salvi esse *possĭmus, much less can we, in these times, be secure.*—Cic. (Clu. 95.)

Obs. Ne is sometimes used with the force of *nēdum:* cf. Sall. Cat. 11, *extr., ne* illi corruptis mōrĭbus victōriae tempĕrārent, *Much less could they, in the corrupt state of morals,* &c.

§ 460. After words and phrases signifying *fear* or *anxiety,* **ne** expresses the apprehension that something *will* occur; **ut,** that it will *not* occur: as,

Id păves *ne* dūcas tu illam, tu autem *ut* dūcas, You *are afraid you* WILL *marry her, and* YOU *that you* WILL NOT.—Ter. (Andr. 2, 2, 12.) (See also Hor. S. 2, 1, 60.)

Tĭmēbam ne ĕvĕnīrent ea quae accĭdērunt, *I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.*—Cic. (Fam. 6, 21.)

Tĭmor Rōmae grandis *fuit, ne* ĭtĕrum Galli Rōmam rĕdīrent, *There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.*—Eutr. (5, 1.)

Pater ..... *terruit* gentes, grăve *ne* rĕdīret sēcŭlum Pyrrhae, *that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 2, 6.)

Vĕreor ... *ut* vim queas ferre, *I fear you may not* [lit. I have my fears *how* you may] *be able to resist force.*—Ter. (Andr. 1, 5, 42.)

Omnes lăbōres te excĭpĕre vĭdeo: *timeo ut* sustĭnĕas, *I am afraid you will not be able to stand them.*—Cic. (Fam. 14, 2.)

Obs. But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne non:* as,

Non ēnim vĕreor *ne non* scribendo te expleam, *For I have no fears of failing to satisfy you in letter-writing.*—Cic. (Fam. 2, 1.)

(Non vĕreor) *ne* tua virtus ŏpīnīōni hŏmĭnum *non* respondeat, *that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.*—Cic. (Fam. 2, 5.)

§ 461. Quīn, *that not, so that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after *negative*, or *virtually negative sentences* only. It is used,

(1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of *hindering:* as, Non prŏhĭbeo, *I do not prevent;* non rĕtĭneo, *I do not restrain;* non rĕpugno, *I do not object;* &c.

(2.) After such negative phrases as Non est dūbium, *there is no doubt;* quis dūbĭtat, *who doubts?* fĭĕri non pŏtest, *it cannot be;* nĕgāri *non* pŏtest, *it cannot be denied;* &c.

(3.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens *without* something else happening.

Obs. Under *negative* sentences are included those virtually so; as when *quis* expects the answer *No:* also those containing such words as vix, *scarcely;* pārum, (*too*) *little*, &c.

(1.) *Non* possūmus, *quin* ălii a nōbis *dissentiant, rĕcūsāre, We cannot object to others differing from us.*—Cic. (Ac. 2, 7.)

Vix me *contĭneo quin invŏlem* in căpillum, *I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at her hair.*—Ter. (Eun. 5, 2, 20.)

Haud multum *abfuit quin interfĭcĕrētur, A little more and he would have been killed.*—Liv. (42, 44.)

N.B.—The expressions *haud multum abfuit, mīnīmum abfuit*, are always impersonal.

(2.) *Non erat dŭbium quin* Helvētii plūrīmum *possent, There was no doubt that the Helvetii had the most influence.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 3.)

Haud dŭbia res vīsa . . . . . *quin circumdūcĕret* agmen, *There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.*—Liv. (21, 36.)

Non dŭbĭto quin ad te stătim vĕniam, *I have no doubt that* [in the case assumed] *I had better come to you at once.*—Cic. (Att. 8, 11, B.)

Obs. In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus,

Quis ignōrat quin tria Graecōrum gĕnĕra *sint, Who knows not* (i.e., *there is no one who knows not*) *that there are three races of Greeks?*—Cic. (Fl. 64): where we might equally well have had, Quis ignōrat tria . . . . *esse* (§ 507).

(3.) *Nullus* fĕre dies est quin meam dŏmum *ventĭtet, There is hardly a day that he does not keep coming to my house.*—Cic. (Att. 1, 1, 3.)

Nĕgo ullam pictūram . . fuisse quīn conquīsīĕrit, etc., *no picture that he did not hunt up.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, *init.*)

Littĕras ad te nunquam hăbui cui dărem, *quin* dĕdĕrim, *I have never had an opportunity of sending you a letter without doing so.*—Cic. (Fam. 12, 19.)

§ 462. Quin is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (quî ne); and expresses an animated appeal: as,

Quin ĭgĭtur expergiscĭmĭni? *Why not then be up and doing?*—Sall. (Cat. 20, *fin.*)

Quin conscendĭmus ĕquos? *Why not to horse at once?*—Liv. (1, 57.)

Obs. Quin with the Imperative is used in expostulations: as, Quin tu hoc audi, *Nay, but do you hear me.*—Ter. (Andr. 2, 2, 9.)

§ 463. Quōmĭnus, *that not, so that not,* is similar to *quin*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify *hindrance;* as, impĕdio, *I impede;* prŏhĭbeo, *I prevent;* offĭcio, *I obstruct*, etc.; per me stat, fit, *it is owing to me* (that something does *not* take place): as,

Nec vēro *rĕcūsābo quōmĭnus* omnes mea *lĕgant, Nor, indeed, will I object to all men's reading my writings.*—Cic. (Fin. 1, 7.)

Caesar cognōvit *per Afrānium stāre quōmĭnus dimĭcārētur, Caesar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius, that an engagement did not take place.*—Caes. (B. C. 1, 41.)

Obs. In the former of the above examples *quin* might have been used instead of *quominus* (comp. § 461), but not in the second: also, in the other applications of *quin* (*ib.* 2, 3), *quominus* could not be used for it.

5. Oratio Obliqua.

NOTE.—For the sake of convenience, the Rules for *Ōrātio obliqua* are brought together.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but as dependent upon a Verb of *saying*, and so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*, or Indirect speech: as,

Lēgātis respondit: diem *se* ad dēlĭbĕrandum sumptūrum, *He made answer to the ambassadors that he would take time to consider.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 7.)

(Words of Caesar reported in their original form: Diem *ego* ad dēlĭbĕrandum *sūmam, I will take time to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

(A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.

(B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.

(C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.

(D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.

(E.) The Subjunctive Mood used in the *Apodŏsis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes the Infinitive.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as dixit, *he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

Ariovistus respondit, ... Aeduis se obsĭdes *reddĭtūrum* non *esse*, *Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.* —Caes. (B. G. 1, 36.)

Ariovistus ad Caesărem lēgātos mittit, "*velle se* de his rebus ăgĕre cum eo," *Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying), that he wished to speak with him on these points.*—Caes. (ib. 47.)

Obs. Such an Infinitive is very often introduced quite abruptly, especially to indicate feelings entertained, rather than a direct speech: as,

Plēbem īra prŏpe armāvit: "Fāme *se* jam sīcut hostes *pĕti*; cībo victuque *fraudāri*," *Indignation all but armed the commons: "They were now attacked by starvation like open enemies; they were robbed of their bread and living."*—Liv. (2, 35.)

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar lēgātos cum his mandātis mittit, .. haec esse *quae* ab eo *postŭlāret*, *Caesar sends ambassadors with these instructions, .. that the following were the demands he made of him*, &c.—Caes. (B. G. 1, 35.)
(Direct form: Haec sunt quae a te *postŭlo*.)

Apud Hypănim flŭvium Aristŏtĕles ait, bestiŏlas quasdam nasci, *quae* ūnum diem *vivant*, *that there are insects produced which live only one day.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 94.)
(Direct form: *Quae* unum diem *vivunt*.)

Ausūrum se in trĭbūnis, quod princeps fămĭliae suae *ausus* in rēgĭbus *esset, what (he said) his great ancestor had dared to do in the case of kings.*—Liv. (3, 17.)
(Direct form: Quod ausus erat.)

Obs. But if a statement of the *writer's*, or one which he may be understood to adopt, be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, the Verb may stand in the Indicative: as,

Se haud multo post quam pestilentia in urbe *fuerat*, in jŭventūtem grassantem incīdisse, etc., *That he, not long after the plague had occurred, had fallen in with a band of riotous young men*, &c.—Liv. (3, 13.)

Cf. ib. 15: id negōtii dătum . . . ut forma eădem cīvĭtātis esset, quae ante Sacrum montem occŭpātum *fŭĕrat.*

§ 468. (C.) *Questions* transferred to *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood; being dependent upon *rogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 433): as,

Fŭrĕre omnes trĭbūni plēbis .. "quidnam id rei *esset?*" *All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked)* "*What did that mean?*"—Liv. (4, 44.)
(Direct question: Quidnam id rei *est?*)

Quod de praedā făciendum *censērent, What did they think should be done about the spoil?*—Liv. (5, 20.)
(Direct question: Quid de praedā faciendum *censetis?*)

Quam *pŭtārent* contĭnuātae mīlĭtiae causam esse, "*What did they suppose was the reason?*"—Liv. (5, 2.)
(Direct question: Quam pŭtātis, etc.)

§ 469. But when the interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, the construction of the Accusative and Infinitive (§ 507) is usually preferred: as,

"Si vĕtĕris contŭmēliae oblīvisci vellet, num ĕtiam rĕcentium injūriārum mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre *posse?*" "*Even if he were willing (he said) to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries?*"—Caes. (B. G. 1, 14.)
(Here, *num* dēpōnĕre posse = *non* dēpōnĕre posse.)

Interrŏgābat .. "*quando ausūros* exposcĕre rĕmĕdia, nĭsi .. etc.," *He asked* "*When would they venture to demand redress, if not* .. etc.?"—Tac. (Ann. 1, 17.)
(*Quando* ausuros, nearly = *nunquam* ausuros.)

"An quicquam *esse* sŭperbius?" *Could anything be more arrogant?*—Liv. (1, 50.) Cf. *paulo infr.:* Cui ĕnim non appārĕre?
(*An quicquam* esse = *nihil* esse; cui non apparere = omnĭbus apparere.)

See also Liv. 5, 24: quid in duābus fŏro? also ib. 45, *med.*: Etruscisne ĕtiam . lūdĭbrio *esse* clādes suas?

§ 470. (D.) *Commands* and exhortations, when transferred to *oratio obliqua*, also take the Subjunctive; *imperāvit*, or some such word, being expressed or understood (see § 451): as,

"Sin bello persĕqui persĕvērāret, *rĕmĭnisc*ĕ*rētur* pristĭnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum," "*If however he should be bent on prosecuting the war against them, (he bade him) remember the original prowess of the Helvetii.*"—Caes. (B. G. 1, 13.)

"Si quid vellent, ad Idus Aprīles revertĕrentur," *If they wanted anything, they should come back again about the Ides of April.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 7.)

"Illos *rĕpĕtĕrent* ănĭmos quos rĕcenti clāde hăbuissent," *Let them recal that dauntless spirit*, &c.—Liv. (5, 11.)

§ 471. (E.) Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in same Mood in *oratio obliqua:* as,

"Intellectūrum quid invicti Germāni, .. *qui* inter quāttuordĕcim annos tectum non *sŭbissent*, virtūte *possent*," "*He (Caesar) would learn what the unconquered Germans, who for fourteen years had not had a roof over their heads, could do in the field of battle.*"—Caes. (B. G. 1, 36.)

(Direct form also: "Qui subissent [§ 476] .. possint" [§ 433]).

§ 472. But the Subjunctive used in the *apodŏsis* of a hypothetical sentence becomes a Future-Infinitive in *oratio obliqua:* as,

Ei lēgātiōni Ariovistus respondit: "Si quid ipsi a Caesăre ŏpus esset, *sēse* ad eum *ventūrum fuisse*," "*That if he had wanted anything of Caesar, he would have to come to him.*"—Caes. (B. G. 1, 34.)

(Direct form: "Si quid .. opus esset, *venissem.*")

"Neque Eburōnes, si ille ădesset, tantā contemptiōne nostri ad castra *ventūros esse*," "*Nor would the Eburones, if he (Caesar) were at hand, approach the camp with such contempt for us.*"—Caes. (B. G. 5, 29.)

(Direct form: "Si .. adesset .. *vĕnīrent.*")

Pŭto ĕnim, ĕtiam si Icadius tum in spēluncā non fuisset, saxum tămen illud *cāsūrum fuisse, that the rock would have fallen all the same.*—Cic. (Fat. 6.)

(Direct form: "Si fuisset ... cĕcĭdisset.)

Obs. In such cases, the Past-Imperfect is represented by the Future Infinitive with *esse*, and the Past-Perfect by the same with *fuisse*. (See examples above.)

§ 473. TENSE OF VERBS IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.—The Tense of the Subjunctive Mood in *oblique* narration is in general determined by the ordinary laws for the Sequence of Tenses (§ 423). The following apparent exceptions require to be noticed:—

(1.) The *Praesens Historicum* is sometimes treated as a Past Tense, and followed accordingly by Past Tenses Subjunctive.

(2.) For the sake of greater vividness, a Past Tense like dixit, *he said*, is often followed by Present Tenses Subjunctive: as,

(1.) *Edicunt*, ne quis L. Quinctium consŭlem *făcĕret*. *They issue* (= *issued*) *a proclamation that no one should seek to make L. Quinctius consul.*—Liv. (3, 21, *extr.*)

Interim Caesări nuntiātur Sulmōnenses cūpĕre ea făcĕre quae *vellet*. *Meanwhile it is* (= *was*) *reported to Caesar, that the people of Sulmo were desirous to do as he wished them.*—Caes. (B. C. 1, 18.)

(2.) Cicero *respondit* . . "Si ab armis discēdĕre *vēlint*, se adjūtōre *ūtantur*, lēgātosque ad Caesărem *mittant*," *Cicero made answer*, "*if they wish to lay down their arms, they can use him as their coadjutor, and send ambassadors to Caesar.*"—Caes. (B. G. 5, 41.)

Illi lēgātiōni Ariovistus *respondit* . . . . "si quid ille se *vēlit*," etc., *To that embassy Ariovistus replied*:—"*if he* (*Caesar*) *wants anything from him*," &c.—Caes. (B. G. 1, 34.)

Obs. Speeches reported in the *obliqua*, frequently pass from the Past Tenses Subjunctive to the Present, and sometimes from the Present to the Past. Compare Caes. B. G. 1, 44, where the first part of the speech of Ariovistus is given in the Present form: consuērint . . . vēlint . . . vēlint . . pēpenderint . . . rĕmittātur . . . vēnĕrit, intŭlerit, dēfenderit. Then, for some space, the Past Tenses are used: vellet . . . vĕnīret . . ŏportēret . . dīcĕret . . . hăbuissent, etc.; after which the Present form is resumed for several lines, and again exchanged for the Past in the close of the speech.

Compare also Liv. 5, 11, where the bulk of the reported speech beginning with the words "Quibus delectus . ." is given in the Present form; but with a mixture of the Past in the latter portion: occīpĕrent . . . dēlīquissent . . rēpĕtĕrent . . . hăbuissent.

On the whole, the Present Form is preferred.

6. Use of the Subjunctive with the Relative Pronoun and Conjunctions.

§ 474. The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421), when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.

§ 475. Qui *hypothetical.*—The Relative qui, quae, quod, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual *hypothesis* (§ 431): as,

Haec *qui vĭdeat*, nonne *cōgātur* fătēri deos esse. *Would not the man, who should see these things, be compelled to confess that there are gods?*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 12.)

(*Qui* vĭdeat = *si* quis vĭdeat, *if any one were to see.*)

Nec quisquam rex Persārum pŏtest esse, *qui* non ante Măgōrum disciplīnam *percēpĕrit, who has not first studied.*—Cic. (Div. 1, 91.)

(*Qui non* percēperit = *nisi* perceperit, *unless he has learned.*)

Obs. To this head belongs the phrase, quod sciam, *as far as I know, if only I know.*

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something: as,

O fortūnāte adŏlescens, *qui* tuae virtūtis Hŏmērum praecōnem *invēnĕris, who hast found* (i.e. *in that thou hast found*) *a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess.*—Cic. (Arch. 24.)

Ut cŭbĭtum discessĭmus, me et de viā et *qui* ad multam noctem *vĭgĭlassem*, arctior quam sŏlēbat somnus complexus est, *owing to the journey and my having sat up to a late hour.*—Cic. (Rep. 6, 10.)

(*Qui* vigilassem = *quum* vigilassem, § 483.)

§ 477. The force of qui as introducing a *reason* is augmented by ut, utpŏte, quippe: as,

Magna pars Fĭdēnātium, *ut qui* cŏlōni addĭti Rōmānis *essent*, Lătīne sciēbant, *A great part of the Fidenates, (as might well be) from their having been joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.*—Liv. (1, 27.)

Multa de meā sententiā questus est Caesar, *quippe qui* ab eo in me *esset incensus, having in fact been goaded on against me by him* (*Crassus*).—Cic. (Fam. 1, 9, 3.)

Obs. But *quippe qui* is also found with the Indicative: as,

[Anĭmus fortūnā non ĕget], *quippe* [*quae*] prŏbĭtātem . . . nĕque dăre neque ērīpĕre *pŏtest, The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.*—Sall. (J. 1.) See also Sall. C. 48, *ad init.*: quippe cui . . . . omnes cōpiae . . . erant.

§ 478. Qui of *Purpose.*—Qui takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of ut, and denotes a *Purpose* (§ 449): as,

Sunt multi qui ērīpiunt ăliis quod ăliis *largiantur, There are many who take from one to bestow on another.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 43.)

(*Quod* largiantur = *ut* largiantur.)

Lēgātos Rōmam *qui* auxĭlium a sĕnātu *pĕtĕrent*, mīsĕre, *They sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.*—Liv. (5, 35.)

(*Qui* peterent = *ut* peterent.)

§ 479. Qui of *Result.*—Qui is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of ut as indicating a *Result* (§ 449): as,

In ēnōdandis nōmĭnĭbus, *quod* mĭsĕrandum *sit*, lăbōrātis, *In explaining names you* (*Stoics*) *trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.*—Cic. (N. D. 3, 62.)

(*Quod* miserandum sit = ĭta *ut* miserandum sit.)

Mājus laetiusque quam *quod* sătis crēdĕre possent, *Something too great and too joyful for them quite to believe.*—Liv. (27, 50.)
(Majus quam *quod* possent = major quam *ut* possent.)

§ 480. Qui is especially so used after the adjectives dignus, indignus, īdōneus, and the like, to denote what a person is *worthy of, fit for*, or *likely to do:* as,

Līviānae fābŭlae non sătis *dignae quae* ĭtĕrum *lĕgantur, The plays of Livius are hardly worthy of being read a second time.*—Cic. (Br. 71.)

Nulla mihi vīdēbātur *aptior* persōna *quae* [de sĕnectūte] *lŏquĕrētur*, quam Cātōnis, *No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old-age than that of Cato.*—Cic. (Am. 4.)

Iine indigni erant qui impetrārent, *Were they unworthy to obtain their request?*—Cic. (R. Am. 119.)

Quis est tam excors *quem* ista *mŏveant, Who is so foolish, as that those (tales) should influence him?*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 11.)

Obs. 1. The poets and later writers in general, also construe these Adjectives with the Infinitive: as,
Fons rīvo *dăre* nōmen *īdōneus, A fountain fit to give name to a stream.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 16, 12.)

Obs. 2. Similarly *qui* takes the Subjunctive when it is equivalent to *ut* after the Pronouns *is, talis, tantus:* as,
Non sūmus ii quĭbus nĭhil vērum esse *vīdĕātur, I am not one to whom nothing seems true.*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 12.)
Nulla est tanta vis quae non ferro . . . . . frangi *possit, as not to be broken.*—Cic. (Marc. 8.)

§ 481. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPETITION.—The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are often used in narrative, after Relative Pronouns and Particles, to denote the recurrence of an action under a given condition: as,

Prīmi, *qua* mŏdo *praeirent* dŭces, signa sĕquēbantur, *The foremost, wherever their guides only led the way, kept up with the standards.*—Liv. (22, 2.)

Alii ŭbi semel *prōcŭbuissent*, inter jūmenta . . . . mŏrientes, *Others when once they had fallen to the ground amongst the baggage cattle, dying there.*—Liv. (*ib.*)

Tўrannus, *ut quisque* maxĭme *lābōrāret* lŏcus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut ălĭquos mittēbat, *as each post was most in danger.*—Liv. (34, 38.)

Obs. But the Indicative may also be used: cf. with the last example, Liv. 22, 6, Consul, quăcunque in parte lăbōrāre *sensĕrat* suos, impigre fĕrēbat ŏpem. See also Liv. 3, 11, Qui obvius *fuĕrat*, mulcātus, nūdātus ăbībat, *Whoever encountered (them), went off beaten and stripped.*

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such expressions as sunt qui, *there are some who;* non dēsunt qui,

there are not wanting men who; rĕpĕriuntur qui, *there are found some who:* as,

Sunt qui discessum ănĭmi a corpŏre *pŭtent* esse mortem, *There are some who think death to be the parting of mind from body.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 18.)

Fuĕre qui crēdĕrent M. Crassum non ignārum ejus consĭlii fuisse, *There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.*—Sall. (C. 17.)

Obs. 1. But if certain definite persons or things are indicated, such phrases are followed by the Indicative: as,

Fuĕre tămen extra conjūrātiōnem complūres qui ad Cătilīnam *prŏfecti sunt, There were however a good many* [*whose names might be given*], *not in the plot, who went to join Catiline.*—Sall. (C. 39.)

Obs. 2. The poets and the later writers often construe *sunt qui* with the Indicative, treating it like a single word (cf. Hor. Od. 1, 1, *init.*).

§ 483. **Quum.**—The Conjunction quum takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causāle*); it may then generally be translated by *as, since,* or *although:* as,

Quum vīta sīne ămīcis insĭdiārum et mĕtūs plēna *sit,* rătio ipsa mŏnet ămīcĭtias compărāre, *Since life without friends is full of treachery and alarm, &c.*—Cic. (Fin. 1, 66.)

Fuit perpĕtuo pauper, *quum* dītissĭmus esse *posset, He was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*—Nep. (Phoc. 1.)

Obs. Quum like *qui* (§ 477) may be strengthened with *quippe:* as,

Nec reprēhendo (te): *quippe quum* ipse istam reprehensiōnem non *fūgĕrim, Nor do I blame you; inasmuch as I myself have not escaped that censure.*—Cic. (Att. 10, 3.)

§ 484. **Quum** also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative: as,

Quum trīdui viam *prŏfectus esset*—quos quum tristiōres *vīdisset*—quum jam in orbem *pugnārent*—imber quum *ferrētur* in ipsa ōra—quum Epămīnondas vīcisset Lăcĕdaemŏnios, etc. (*passim*).

Obs. The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin (comp. § 526).

§ 485. But quum is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote that something takes place at the same time as something else: as,

Făciunt ĭdem quum *exercentur* athlētae, *Athletes do the same* [*shout*] *when they are exercising.*—Cic. (Tusc. 2, 56.)

Quum meum factum cum tuo *compāro* . . . multo măgis meo facto dēlector quam tuo, *When I compare my conduct with yours, I am much more pleased with my own than with yours.*—Cic. (Fam. 3, 6, *init.*)

Quum haec *scribēbam*, in exspectātiōne erant omnia, *As I write this, all is expectation.*—Cic. (Fam. 12, 24.) [Epistolary style.]

Crēdo tum *quum* Sĭcĭlia *flōrēbat* ŏpĭbus et cōpiis, magna artĭfĭcia fuisse in eā insŭlā, *at the time when Sicily flourished in resources and military strength.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 46.)

The Indicative is sometimes used even when a repeated action is denoted (cf. § 481): as,

Quum autem ver esse *coepĕrat* . . dăbat se lăbōri atque ītĭnĕrĭbus, *But when it began to be spring-time, he then gave himself to labour and journeying.*—Cic. (Verr. 5, 27.)

§ 486. The Indicative is also used with quum after a clause indicating the time at which an event took place: as,

Jam ver appĕtēbat, quum Hannĭbal ex hībernis *mōvit*, *Spring was already approaching, when Hannibal broke up from his winter-quarters.*—Liv. (22, 1.)

Nondum centum et dĕcem anni sunt, quum . . . lex *lāta est*, *It is not yet* 110 *years since the law was brought forward.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 75.)

§ 487. Quod and quia.—The Conjunctions quod and quia, *because*, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,

Ideirco sum tardior *quod* non invĕnio fīdum tăbellārium, *I am the more backward because I find no trusty letter-carrier.*—Cic. (Att. 1, 13, 1.)

Parthos tĭmes, *quia* diffīdis cōpiis nostris, *You fear the Parthians, because you mistrust my troops.*—Cic. (Fam. 2, 10, 2.)

Obs. 1. *Quia* states a reason more directly and positively than *quod*. Hence, if the reason is merely an alleged or supposed one, the Subjunctive is used with *quod*: as,

Sōcrătes accūsātus est quod *corrumpĕret* jŭventūtem, *on the ground of his corrupting youth.*—Quint. (4, 4, 5.)

Obs. 2. Out of this use of *quod* arises such an expression as the following:

Quod rĕlĭgiōnĭbus sese *dīcĕret* impĕdīri, *Because, said he,* (alleged but false reason) "*he was prevented by religious scruples.*"—Caes. (B. G. 5, 6.)

The *diceret* here is brought under the government of *quod* (instead of *quod impediretur*), by attraction. The same construction occurs with the Relative: comp. Sall. Cat. 49: ĕmentiundo quae se ex Volturcio . . . audisse dīcĕrent.

§ 488. The difference between the use of quod with the Subjunctive and of quia or quod with the Indicative, is clearly seen in the following example:—

Pūgĭles ĕtiam quum fĕriunt adversārium ingĕmiscunt, *non quod dŏleant* ănĭmove *succumbant*, sed *quia* profundendā vōce omne corpus *intenditur*, *Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist,*

fetch a groan; not because they are in pain (supposed, but *false* reason), *but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension* (real reason).—Cic. (Tusc. 2, 56.)

Obs. Instead of *non quod*, we find also *non quo* (Cic. Fam. 5, 19, non quo cēlandus esses: . . sed quia vīdētur . .); and in negative sense, non quin: cf. Cic. Fam. 4, 7, *non quin* ab eo (consilio) *dissentiam*, sed quod ea te sapientia esse judicem, etc., *not that I do not dissent from your decision*, &c. (For judicem we might equally well have had judico.)

§ 489. In addition to the above cases, quod (not *quia*) is used as a causal Conjunction after such Verbs as grātŭlor, *I congratulate;* glōrior, *I boast;* quĕror, *I complain;* mīror, *I wonder;* laudo, *I praise;* and the like: when, as before (§ 487), the Indicative denotes that the ground of *rejoicing, grief, censure*, etc., is an *actual fact*, which the Subjunctive of course cannot do: as,

Tămen quod ăbes grātŭlor, *I congratulate you that you are out of the way* [as you are].—Cic. (Fam. 2, 5.)

Gaudeo *quod* te interpellāvi, *I am glad that I interrupted you* [as I did].—Cic. (Leg. 3, 1.)

Non tĭbi objĭcio *quod* hŏmĭnem . . omni argento *spŏliasti, I am not laying it to your charge that you robbed a man of all his plate* [which you did].—Cic. (Verr. 4, 37.)

Quod sit destĭtūtus quĕrĭtur, *He complains* [whether truly or not] *of having been left in the lurch.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 16.)

Obs. 1. In the last of the above examples, as in many similar, the Subjunctive may be regarded as belonging to oratio obliqua (§ 467).

Obs. 2. *Quod* may also form a Noun-Sentence with the Indicative, as Subject to quasi-impersonal expressions similar in meaning to those referred to in the preceding section: as,

Jūvat me [= gaudeo] *quod vĭgent* stŭdia, *It is a pleasure to me that intellectual pursuits flourish.*—Plin. (Ep. 1, 13, 1.)

§ 490. Quod has often simply a defining or explanatory force = '*that*,' '*in that*'; when it takes the Indicative Mood: as,

Fēcisti mihi pergrātum, *quod* Serapiōnis librum ad me mīsisti, *in that you have sent me, in sending me*, etc.—Cic. (Att. 2, 4.)

This is especially the case after proptĕreā:—'*for this reason, that*': as,

Egŏmet consōlandus ipse sum, proptĕrea quod nullam rem grăvius jam diu tŭli, *for this very reason, that for a long time I have felt nothing more deeply.*—Cic. (Fam. 5, 18.)

Also propterea quia occurs, but less frequently.

§ 491. **Quod** is originally a Relative Pronoun, and in some of its applications seems to waver between the use of the Relative Pronoun and of a Conjunction: it is on this principle we must explain such a sentence as the following:—

Cūjus corpus a me crĕmātum est, *quod* contra dĕcuit ab illo meum, *His body was laid by me on the funeral pile, whereas [which office] mine should rather have undergone that office from him.*—Cic. (Sen. 85.)

Obs. 1. *Quod* may sometimes be rendered, *as for the fact that:* e.g.—

Quod improvīso ūnum pagum adortus esset, *As for the fact of his having attacked a single canton . . .* —Caes. (B. G. 1, 13.)

Quod suā victōriā tam insŏlenter glōriārentur, *As for their being so overweeningly boastful about their victory.*—Caes. (ib. 14.)

Nam *quod* illi spērārent, effrēnātam licentiam ejus māgistrātus Patres lātūros, eos falli, etc., *As for what they hoped,* [or whereas they hoped] *that the Fathers would tolerate,* &c.—Liv. (5, 29.)

These examples may serve to show how the use of *quod* as Relative might readily pass into its use as Conjunction.

Obs. 2. The use of quod si, *but if;* quod nīsi (ni), *but if not,* &c., at the beginning of sentences, is to be explained by the fondness of the Latin language for connecting the parts of a narration by means of the Relative or a Relative particle.

§ 492. **Quippe**, *because, as being,* is chiefly used in connection with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, viz. *quum, quod, quia, quŏniam, ŭbi, ĕnim,* etc. It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood according as fact or hypothesis is indicated: as,

Ego vēro laudo: . . *quippe quia* magnārum saepe id rĕmĕdium aegrītūdĭnum est, *I do praise it, inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.*—Ter. (Heaut. 3, 2, 28.)

Quippe ubi nulla *fŏrent* aeterno corpŏre, *Inasmuch as in that case* (i.e. *on a certain hypothesis,* which is denied) *there would be no objects with eternal substance.*—Lucr. (1, 242.)

Lĕve nōmen hăbet utrăque res: *quippe* lĕve ĕnim est hoc tōtum, rīsum mŏvēre, *Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 218.)

§ 493. **Quippe** is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason:—

Quippe vĕtor fātis! *Because forsooth I am forbidden by the fates!*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 39.)

Mŏvet me *quippe* lūmen cūriae! *Forsooth that illuminator of the senate-house disturbs me!*—Cic. (Mil. 33.)

§ 494. **Quŏniam** (*quum jam*), *since,* is used in stating a fact as a reason, and regularly takes the Indicative: as,

Quŏniam res in id discrīmen adducta *est, Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis.*—Cic. (Ph. 3, 29.)

Quā me stultĭtiā (*quŏniam* non *est* gĕnus ūnum), insānīre pūtas? *What kind of folly (since there is more than one kind) do you think I am mad with?*—Hor. (S. 2, 3, 301.)

In later authors, **quŏniam** is used with the Subjunctive: as,

Itaque *quŏniam* ipse pro se dicĕre non *posset,* verba fēcit frāter ejus, *Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman.*—Nep. (Milt. 7.)

Obs. In the following example, the Subj. after *quoniam* indicates that such was the reason alleged by themselves:—

De suis prīvātim rēbus ab eo pĕtĕre coepērunt, *quŏniam* cīvĭtāti consūlĕre non *possent, They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state.*—Caes. (B. G. 5, 3.)

§ 495. **Quando** is sometimes used as a causal Conjunction, equivalent to *quŏniam*, especially in prae- or post-Ciceronian writers. It then takes the Indicative: as,

Quando ĭta tibi lŭbet, vāle, *Since such is your humour, Good-bye.*—Pl. (Cist. 1, 1, 117.)

Cur non sit ōrātor, quando, quod difficĭlĭus est, ōrātōrem *făcit? Why should not he be an orator, seeing that—what is harder,—he makes an orator?*—Quint. (12, 8, 5.)

§ 496. **Quoad**, *as long as, as far as, until,* takes the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as it refers to actual fact or not: as,

Jŭbeo te salvēre vōce summā, *quoad* vīres *vălent, I bid you good day at the top of my voice, as far as my powers avail.*—Pl. (As. 2, 2, 30.)

Ipse, *quoad pŏtuit,* fortissĭme restĭtit, *He himself, so long as he was able, resisted most valiantly.*—Caes. (B. G. 4, 12.)

Ipse intĕreā, *quoad* lĕgiōnes collŏcātas *cognōvisset,* in Galliā mōrāri constĭtuit, *He himself meanwhile resolved to remain in Gaul till he knew the legions had been got into winter quarters.*—Caes. (ib. 5, 24.)

§ 497. **Dum**, *whilst,* is construed with the Indicative; **dum**, *until,* with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,

Ea rĕdemptio mansit . . . . . *dum* jūdices *rejecti sunt, That bargain remained in force . . . . . until the judges were rejected.*—Cic. (Verr. Act. 1, 16.)

Obsĭdio deinde per paucos dies măgis quam oppugnātio fuit, *dum* vulnus dūcis *cūrārētur, The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile* (dum) *the general's wound might be treated.*—Liv. (21, 8.)

Irātis subtrăhendi sunt ii, in quos impĕtum făcĕre cōnantur, *dum* se ipsi *colligant, Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, to give them time to collect themselves.*—Cic. (Tusc. 4, 78.)

§ 498. **Dummŏdo** (also simply **dum** or **modo**), *provided that* (Hypothetical, § 424), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Omnia recta et hŏnesta neglĭgunt, *dummŏdo* pŏtentiam *consĕquantur, They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they may only obtain power.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 82.)

Ŏdĕrint, *dum mĕtuant, Let them hate provided only they fear.*—Att. in Cic. (Off. 1, 97.)

Obs. We also find *dummŏdo nē, dum nē, mŏdo nē:* as,

Sit summa in jūre dicendo sĕvērĭtas, *dummŏdo* ea *nē vărĭētur grātiā, Let there be the utmost severity in administering justice, so long as it does not fluctuate through partiality.*—Cic. (Q. Fr. 1, 7.)

§ 499. **Dōnec**, *whilst, until*, has the same construction as *dum* (§ 497).

Obs. 1. *Dōnec* is rare in Cicero, and is not found at all in Caesar or Sallust. It is frequent in the poets, as well as in Livy and Tacitus.

Obs. 2. Livy and Tacitus sometimes use *dōnec* with the Subjunctive, when speaking of simple facts: as,

Elĕphanti trĕpĭdātiōnis ălĭquantum ēdĕbant, *dōnec* quiētem ipse timor fēcisset, *The elephants made some disturbance, until their very fears rendered them quiet.*—Liv. (21, 28.) (The Subjunctive here may perhaps be due to the idea of repetition, § 481; there being many elephants to be managed.)

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, **antĕquam, priusquam**, *before that*, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case: as,

In omnĭbus nĕgōtiis, priusquam *aggrĕdiāre*, adhĭbenda est praepărātio dīlĭgens, *In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must make careful preparation.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 73.)

§ 501. When **antĕquam, priusquam** (ante . . quam, prius . . . quam), are used with reference to actual facts, denoting merely priority of time, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive: as,

(*a.*) *With Indicative.*

Omnia ista *ante* facta sunt, quam . . . iste Ităliam *attĭgit, All those things took place before he reached Italy.*—Cic. (Verr. 2, 161.) (Attingeret, N.)

Antĕquam de incommŏdis Sĭcĭliae dīco, *Before I speak of the grievances of Sicily.*—Cic. (Verr. 2, 2.)

Neque *ante* dimīsit eum *quam* fĭdem *dĕdit* ădŏlescens ab his sacris

se tempĕrāturum, *Nor did she leave him, till the young man gave his word that he would refrain from taking part in these rites.*—Liv. (39, 10.)

Dēcessit *post* annum quartum *quam* Thĕmistocles *expulsus ĕrat, He died four years after Themistocles had been banished.*—Nep. (Ar. *fin.*)

(*b.*) *With Subjunctive.* (Chiefly in later authors.)

Prius Placentiam pervēnere *quam* sătis *scīret* Hannĭbal ab Ticīno prŏfectos, *They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that they had left the Ticinus.*—Liv. (21, 47.)

Interfuit pugnae nāvāli apud Sălămīna, quae facta est *prius quam* poenā *lĭbĕrārētur, He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.*—Nep. (Ar. 2.)

(Posteaquam occurs with Plup. Subj.—Cic. Man. 9.)

Obs. 1. The Subjunctive is rare when only a specification of priority or subsequence of Time is indicated.

Obs. 2. Ante . . . quam, post . . . quam, are often separated from each other: see above examples.

§ 502. Quamvīs, *however much*, and lĭcet, *although*, used concessively, govern the Subjunctive: as,

Quamvis Ely̆sios *mīrētur* Graecia campos, *However much Greece may admire her Elysian plains.*—Virg. (G. 1, 38.)

Assentātio *quamvis* pernĭciōsa *sit*, nŏcēre tămen nēmĭni pŏtest, nisi ei, qui eam rĕcĭpit, *Flattery, however injurious it may be, can harm no one saving the man who takes it in.*—Cic. (Am. 97.)

Quamvis sit magna (exspectātio), tămen eam vinces, *Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.*—Cic. (Rep. 1, 23.)

Licet ipsa vĭtium *sit* ambĭtio, frĕquenter tămen causa virtūtum est, *Though ambition in itself be a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.*—Quint. (1, 2, 22.)

Vīta (brĕvis est) *licet* supra mille annos *exeat, Life (is short) even if it should exceed a thousand years.*—Sen. (Brev. V. 6.)

Obs. 1. *Quamvis* is most often found in connexion with an adjective.

Obs. 2. In the poets and later writers *quamvis* is often equivalent to *quanquam* (see foll. sect.), and takes the Indicative: as,

Erat inter eos dignītāte rēgiā, *quamvis cărēbat* nōmīne, *He enjoyed the rank of king amongst them, though he had not the title.*—Nep. (Milt. 2.)

§ 503. Quanquam, *how much soever, although*, and etsi, ĕtiamsi, *even if, although*, take either the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between these Moods: as,

Quanquam *est* scĕlestus, non committet, etc., *Rascal as he is, he will not*, &c.—Ter. (Ad. 2, 1, 5.)

Quanquam praesente L. Lucullo *lŏquor*, *Although I am speaking in the presence of L. Lucullus.*—Cic. (Mur. 20.—Cf. Dräger, ii. p. 737.)

Quanquam *festīnas*, non est mŏra longa, *However great your haste*, &c.—Hor. (Od. 1, 28, 35.)

Erant multi, qui, quanquam non īta sese rem hăbēre *arbitrārentur*, *however far they were from thinking*, &c.—Cic. (de Or. 2, *init.*)
(See also ib. 3, 27, quanquam omnĭbus par paene laus . . . *trĭbuātur.*)

Etsi mons Cevenna . . ĭter impĕdiēbat, *Although Mount Cevenna obstructed their march.*—Caes. (B. G. 7, 8.)

Quanquam,—*etsi* priōre foedĕre stārētur,—sātis cautum *ĕrat* de Saguntīnis, *Although*,—*even if the former treaty were adhered to*,—*sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.*—Liv. (21, 19.)

Obs. In the best authors *quanquam* is rarely used with the Subjunctive; that is, when an objective fact is indicated.

Later writers frequently make *quanquam* govern the Subjunctive, even when referring to an objective fact: as,

Phraātes, *quanquam* dĕpŭlisset exercītus dūcesque Rōmānos, cuncta vĕnĕrantium offĭcia ad Augustum vertĕrat, *though he had*, &c.—Tac. (A. 2, 1.)

Also the poets use quanquam with either Indic. or Subj. without difference of meaning: cf. Virg. Aen. 6, 394: quanquam . . invicti vīrĭbus *essent.*

Chapter XLVII.—The Infinitive Mood.

§ 504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Noun, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only—the latter less frequently. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive.

1. The Infinitive as Subject.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as jŭvat, dēlectat, (*it*) *delights*; or such phrases as pulchrum, dēcōrum est, (*it*) *is fine, becoming*, &c.: see § 515.

Sometimes it is treated as a true Noun, and takes an attributive: as,

Quum vīvĕre *ipsum* turpe sit nōbis, *When living itself is disgraceful to me.*—Cic. (Att. 13, 28.)

Ipsum Lătīne lŏqui, *The mere speaking (good) Latin.*—Cic. (Br. 140.)
See also Hor. Ep. 1, 7, 27.

2. The Infinitive as Object.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare and chiefly confined to the poets: as,

Quid sit fūtūrum cras fūge *quaerĕre, What is to be on the morrow forbear inquiring.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 9, 13.)

Pro nōbis mitte *prĕcāri, Give over praying for us!*—Ov. (M. 3, 614.)

Obs. 1. For the Infinitive after Verbs of *willingness, ability,* &c., see § 512.

Obs. 2. The Infinitive is sometimes used by the poets where a prose writer would employ the Gerund, or Gerundive: as,

Nequicquam . . vītābis . . *cĕlĕrem sĕqui* Ajācem, *In vain wilt thou try to avoid Ajax, swift to pursue.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 15, 18.)

(Celer sequi = celer *ad* sequendum.)

Obs. 3. Later writers even have the Infinitive after a Preposition: as, Multum intĕrest inter dăre et accīpĕre, *between giving and receiving.*—Sen. (Ben. 5, 10, 2.)

3. Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 507. Verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving, knowing, hearing,* and the like, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive, forming a Noun-Sentence which is the Direct Object of the principal Verb.

Among the most frequent of such Verbs are: sentio, vĭdeo, audio; intellĭgo, cognosco, compĕrio, scio (nescio), ănĭmadverto, invĕnio; pŭto, existĭmo, arbĭtror, censeo; mĕmĭni, rĕcordor, oblīviscor; spĕro, exspecto, confīdo, crēdo; vŏlo, cŭpio, stŭdeo: — dīco, āio, nĕgo, respondeo, clāmo, mĕmŏro, nuntio, fătеor, ostendo; prōmitto, pollĭceor, spondeo, rĕcĭpio, jūro; sĭmŭlo, fingo (rare with this constr.), mentior (rare). Familiar examples:—

Sentīmus ignem cālēre—audio te aegrōtum fuisse—scio tĭbi haec plăcēre—ănĭmadvertērunt omnes stătuas dējectas esse—Thales dixit ăquam esse ĭnĭtium rērum—nĕgavit deos esse—respondit castra esse tūta—fătеor me ex Graeca gente esse—sĭmŭlāvit se fŭrēre—Thrăsōnem esse auctōrem consĭlii mentītus (*falsely asserting that:* Liv. 24, 5).

Obs. Occasionally after a Verb of *saying,* the Nominative is found with *esse,* being descriptive of the subject. This is called *attraction:* as,

Ait esse părātus (= se părātum esse), *He declares himself to be ready.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 7, 22.)

This is a Greek construction (= φησὶν ἑτοῖμος εἶναι), and not found in good Latin prose. Similarly, Virgil (Aen. 2, 377) has, sensit dēlapsus (= se delapsum esse), *He perceived that he had fallen.* . . . (Gk. ᾐσθετ' ἐμπεσών). This construction is possible only when the Subject of the two Verbs is the same.

§ 508. Not only Verbs of the above kind, but Phrases equivalent or analogous to them are followed by a Noun-Sentence with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Ea *erat confessio*, căput rērum *Rōmam esse, That was a confession (= to confess) that Rome was at the head of affairs.*—Liv. (1, 45.)

Auctōres sŭmus tūtam ibi *mājestatem* Rōmāni nōmĭnis *fŏre, We will answer for it that the majesty of the Roman name shall be safe there.*—Liv. (2, 48.)

Caesărem *certiōrem făciunt sese* non făcĭle ab oppĭdis vim hostium *prōhĭbēre, They inform Cæsar that they find it no easy matter to beat off the violence of the enemy from their towns.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 11.)

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various *feelings* of the mind, as, *joy*, *grief*, *wonder*, etc., may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Salvum *te advĕnīre gaudeo, I rejoice that you come in safety.*—Pl. (Bac. 3, 3, 52.) See also Cic. Am. 14, *fin.*

Infĕrĭōres non *dŏlēre* (dēbent) *se* a suis *sŭpĕrāri, Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.*—Cic. (Am. 71.)

Mīror te ad me nĭhil *scrībere, I am surprised that you write nothing to me.*—Cn. Pomp. ap. Cic. (Att. 8, 12, B.)

Peccasse ĕnim *se* non *anguntur*, objurgāri mŏlestе fĕrunt, *They are not sorry that they have done wrong; they take it amiss that they are found fault with.*—Cic. (Am. 90.)

Obs. 1. But the above Verbs more frequently take *quod*, with Indicative or Subjunctive (v. § 489).

Obs. 2. Concerning the construction of *pŭdet, pĭget*, &c., v. § 241.

§ 510. Various quasi-impersonal phrases, as certum est, *it is certain;* mănifestum est, *it is manifest;* aequum, justum est, *it is fair* or *just;* ŏpus, nĕcesse est, *it is necessary;* sĕquĭtur, *it follows;* constat, *it is acknowledged;* expĕdit, *it is expedient*, have for their true Subject a Noun-Sentence with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

Certum est lībĕros a părentibus *ămāri, It is certain that children are loved by their parents.*—Quint. (See also Ter. Eun. 4, 4, 37.)

Quae lībĕrum *scīre aequum est ădŏlescentem, Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.*—Ter. (Eun. 3, 2, 25.)

Quăsi *constet* inter omnes eos esse deos, *As though all were agreed that those are gods.*—Cic. (N. D. 3, 11.)

Corpus mortāle ălĭquo tempŏre intĕrīre *nĕcesse est, It is necessary for a mortal body to perish sooner or later.*—Cic. (Inv. 2, 170.)

Sĭbi *quemque* pĕtĕre, quod pertĭneat ad ūsum, non ĭnīquum est; alĭĕri dērĭpĕre jus non est, *It is not unfair for each one to seek what is for his good*, etc.—Cic. (Off. 3, 42.)

Lēgem brĕvem esse *ŏportet, A law should be short.*—Sen. (Ep. 94, 38.)

Nec *sĕquĭtur* illĭco *esse causas* immūtābĭles, *Nor does it follow at once that there are immutable causes.*—Cic. (Fat. 12, 28.)

Obs. Restat, rĕlīquum est, *it remains;* proximum est, *the next thing is,* and the like; as also sometimes, sĕquĭtur, *it follows;* expĕdit, *it is expedient;* mos (mōris) est, *it is a custom,* are often followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive: as,

Restat ut aut . . . . aut . ., *The only remaining alternatives are that either . . . or . . .*—Cic. (Quint. 41.)

Proxĭmum est ut dŏceam deōrum prōvidentiā mundum admĭnistrāri, *The next thing is for me to show that the world is managed by the providence of the gods.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 73.)

Oportet is also sometimes found with Subj.: cf. Cic. Tusc. 1, 12, *sint* ŏportet, si mīsĕri sunt.

See also § 432, Exx. No. 3.

§ 511. Verbs signifying *willingness,* or *permission* and the like, with their contraries, may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive (see also § 512): as,

Jūdĭcem esse me non doctōrem *vŏlo, I desire (myself) to be a critic, not a teacher.*—Cic. (Or. 117.)

Princĭpem se esse *māvult* quam vĭdēri, *He had rather be a great man than seem one.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 65.)

Sĕnātui *plăcet,* Crassum Sўriam obtĭnēre, *It is the pleasure of the senate that Crassus should hold Syria.*—Cic. (Ph. 11, 30.)

Cŭpio me esse clēmentem, *I desire to be merciful.*—Cic. (Cat. 1, 4.)

Armāri cīvĭtātem *prōhĭbēre, To prevent the state from being put in a posture of defence.*—Liv. (4, 2.)

Castra vallo mūnīri *vĕtuit, He would not allow the camp to be fortified with a rampart.*—Caes. (B. C. 1, 41.)

Obs. 1. Verbs of *wishing* are in many cases followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive, or by the Subjunctive alone (v. § 447).

Obs. 2. *Impero* is sometimes used like *jubeo* with the Accusative and Infinitive: v. § 451, *Obs.* 3. Cf. Cic. Verr. 5, 69: eōdem cĕtĕros pīrātas contrūdi impĕrārat.

Obs. 3. *Vŏlo* is frequently followed by the Perf. Part. Pass., to denote what one would wish done; as, me excūsātum vŏlo, *I would fain have myself excused* (Cic. Verr. 2, 1, 103); factum velle, *to wish a thing done* (Ter.); etc.

4. Verbs which govern the Infinitive without the Accusative Case.

§ 512. Verbs signifying *willingness* or *determination, ability, duty,* or the like, with their contraries, are followed by the Infinitive: as,

Vŏlo discere—stūdeo ex te audīre—optat ărāre căballus—tum vēro ardēmus scītāri (poet.)—nec contĭnēre suos văluit (rare for potuit: Liv. 38, 23)—si scīret rēgĭbus ūti—bellum constĭtuit gĕrĕre—ĭta făcĕre dĕbui—injūriam făcĕre persĕvērāvit—nescīre Tarquĭnios prīvātos vīvĕre.

Obs. 1. When a wish respecting the *Subject* is expressed, either the Infinitive alone or the Accusative and Infinitive may be used: v. foll. sect.

Obs. 2. The Infinitive (Subject) is used with certain equivalent phrases: as, (mihi) in ănimo est, certum est, consĭlium est, *It is my purpose*, &c.: as,

Certum est (mihi) omnia audacter lībĕrēque *dīcĕre*, *It is my determination to say everything boldly and freely.*—Cic. (R. Am. 31.)

Obs. 3. The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive (as in English) is used after *debeo*, *oportet*, *licet*, and similar verbs: e.g. *I ought to have done so*, is ita *făcĕre* dĕbui, not *fēcisse.* ✓

§ 513. When a Verb of wishing is followed by the Verb *to be* or a similar verb in the Infinitive Mood, a predicative Noun or Adjective may be attached to the Infinitive, in the Nominative Case. See § 233.

But if the Subject of the Infinitive Mood is expressed, it becomes the Object of the preceding Verb, and must be in the Accusative; in which case the predicative Noun or Adjective must be in the Accusative likewise: as,

Cŭpio in tantis reipublĭcae pĕrīcŭlis, *me* non *dissolūtum* vĭdēri, *I am desirous in such perils to the state, that I may not seem lax.*—Cic. (Cat. 1, 4.)

Thus we may say either, vŏlo esse clēmens *or* vŏlo me esse clēmentem (§ 511, Ex. 4)—bŏnus esse quam vĭdēri mālĕbat *or* se bŏnum esse, etc.

§ 514. Verbs signifying *to begin*, *continue*, or *leave off*; also *to be* or *become accustomed*, take the Infinitive: as,

Incīpe, parve puer, rīsu *cognoscĕre* mātrem, *Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile!*—Virg. (E. 4, 60.)

Illud jam *mirāri* dēsĭno, *That I now cease to wonder at.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 59.)

Qui mentīri sŏlet, pējĕrāre consuēvit, *He who is in the habit of lying, has learned to be a perjurer.*—Cic. (Q. R. 46.)

Obs. The Passive of coepi is used before an Infinitive Passive: urbs *coepta est* oppugnari (not coepit): cf. Liv. 21, 15. ✓ עש.ל.לה

§ 515. The simple Infinitive is also often the Subject to various quasi-impersonal Verbs and phrases: as, est, *it is lawful* (Gk. ἔξεστιν); dĕcet, *it is becoming*; jŭvat, *it delights*; lĭbet, plăcet, *it pleases*; lĭcet, fas est, *it is lawful*; prōdest, *it does good*; sātius est, *it is better*; religio est, *it is a matter of scruple*; and other similar expressions: as,

Est vĭdēre, *One may see.*—Tac. (Ger. 5.)

Mĭhi jussa căpessĕre fas est, *It is my duty to carry out your orders.*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 77.)

Dulce et dĕcōrum est pro patriă *mŏri*, *It is sweet and glorious to die for one's country.*—Hor. (Od. 3, 2, 13.)

Ut castra oppugnāre ĭtĕrum religio fuĕrit, *They scrupled to attack the camp a second time.*—Liv. (2, 62.)

(Subjects: videre, capessere, mori, oppugnare.)

5. The Infinitive in exclamations.

§ 516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote *surprise*, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

Mĕnĕ incepto *dēsistĕre* victam, (*To think that*) *I should give up my enterprise as vanquished!*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 37.)

Nĭhilne *esse* prŏprium cuiquam! *Can one never call a thing one's own?*—Ter. (Andr. 4, 3, 1.)

O Aeschĭne! haeccĭne flāgĭtia *făcĕre* te, *O Aeschinus, to think that you should disgrace yourself in this way!*—Ter. (Ad. 3, 3, 54.)

Ădcōne rem *rĕdiisse*, *To think it should have come to this!*—Ter. (Heaut. 5, 2, 27.)

6. Historical Infinitive.

§ 517. Narrative writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative, the Subject remaining in the Nominative Case: as,

Interĭm quŏtīdie Caesar Haeduos frūmentum *flāgĭtāre*, *Meanwhile Cæsar was every day demanding corn of the Haedui.*—Caes. (B. G. 16.)

Intĕreā Manlius in Etrūriā plēbem *sollicĭtāre*, *Meanwhile Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.*—Sall. (C. 28.)

Suo quisque mĕtu pĕrīcŭla *mĕtīri*, *Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.*—Sall. (C. 31.)

Obs. 1. This use of the Infinitive is most frequent in descriptive passages: where it serves rather to place a circumstance in a lively manner before the eye, than merely to state that it took place.

Obs. 2. Tacitus uses the Historical Infinitive even after *ŭbi*, *postquam*, *quum*: as,

Ubi crūdescĕre sēdĭtio, *As the mutiny grew fiercer.*—(Hist. 3, 10.) See also Ann. 2, 31 and 40.

7. Circumlocution for the Future Infinitive.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, both in the Active and still more frequently in the Passive Voice, we also find fŏre ut with the Subjunctive: as,

Clāmābant *fŏre ut* ipsi se dii immortāles *ulciscĕrentur*, *They exclaimed, that the immortal gods themselves would avenge them.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 87.)

Othōni persuāserat fŏre ut in impĕrium asciscĕrētur, *He had persuaded Otho that he was destined to be raised to empire.*—Tac. (H. 1, 22.)

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,

Spero *fŏre ut contingat* id nobis, *I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 82.)

§ 519. The Perfect Participle of Passive or Deponent Verbs when used with fōre forms a Future-Perfect Infinitive: as,

Quod, cum haec lĕgĕres, jam *dēcrētum* arbitrābar *fore, will already have been decided.*—Cic. (Fam. 10, 10, *init.*)

Hoc possum dīcĕre, me sātis *ădeptum fore*, si . . . . nullum in me pĕrīculum rĕdundārit, *that I shall have gained enough, shall have reason to be satisfied.*—Cic. (Sull. 27.)

Chapter XLVIII.—Participles.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the notion of the Verb to which it belongs, in the form of an Adjective.

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong: as,

Diŏnȳsius cultros metuens — lăbōres tantos perpessus — omnia nausūrus—sĭbi fīdens—summa cŭlĕrĭtāte ūsus—his lăbōribus dēfunctus.

Obs. When a transitive Participle is used as an Adjective denoting *disposition* or *capacity for*, it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future*; and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity*. Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect*.

Obs. 1. Deponents are the only Verbs in Latin which regularly form a Perfect Participle with transitive sense: as, ădeptus, *having acquired*; ūsus, *having used*, &c. Some of these are used both actively and passively: see § 525.

Obs. 2. The lack of an Imperfect Participle Passive is often supplied by the use of *quum* with the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive: as,

Quum saepĭbus densissimis prospectus impĕdīrētur, *The view being obstructed by the very thick hedges.*—Caes. (B. G. 2, 22.)

Quae (nāves) tămen, quum fluctibus complērentur, *being (gradually) filled with water*, ib. (4, 28.)

Similarly with *dum* and Pres. Indic., see § 393.

§ 523. The *Imperfect* Participle Active represents thing as *going on* at the time spoken of.

Certain Verbs are without Imperfect Participle: viz., sum with its compounds except absum and praesum

(Imperf. Part. absens, praesens); also mālo, fīo, together with all true Impersonal Verbs. Some of these however have Imperfect participial forms used as Adjectives; e.g. paenĭtens, pŭdens.

Obs. Instead of the Imperfect Participle, *quum* with the Past-Imperfect is often used (cf. § 522, *Obs.* 2): as,
Audivi *quum diceret, I heard him saying.*—Cic. (Fam. 3, 7, 3.)

§ 524. The *Perfect* Participle with active sense represents a Person as *having done* something at the time spoken of. It is found only in Deponents and in certain Active Verbs. ✓

The following is a list of the principal Active Verbs which have a Perfect Participle with an Active sense:—

audeo	*I dare*	ausus	*having dared*
gaudeo	*I rejoice*	gāvīsus	*having rejoiced*
sŏleo	*I am wont*	sŏlĭtus	*having been wont*
fīdo (& comps.)	*I trust*	fīsus	*having trusted*
ădŏlesco	*I grow up*	ădultus	*full-grown*
(cf. exŏlētus *having ceased growing, grown up*)			
cresco	*I grow*	crētus	*having grown, sprung from*
(also comp. concrētus *grown together, fastened together*)			
jūro	*I swear*	jūrātus	*having sworn* ✓
plăceo	*I please*	plăcĭtus	*having pleased*
cēno	*I dine*	cēnātus	*having dined*
prandeo	*I breakfast*	prānsus	*having breakfasted*
pōto	*I drink*	pōtus	*having drunk, drunken*
nūbo	*I am married*	nupta	*having been married to*
ŏdi	*I hate*	ōsus	*having hated, hating*

Also Virg. has tĭtŭbāta vestīgia (Aen. 5, 332), *tottering steps* (tĭtŭbo), and prōruptum (mare), *bursting forth* (ib. 1, 246).

§ 525. Some Deponents use their Perfect Participle both in an Active and a Passive sense: the following are among the principal that do so:— ✓

ădīpiscor	*I attain to*	ădĕptus, *having attained, or having been attained*
confĭteor	*I confess*	confessus, &c.
effor	*I speak out, declare*	effātus (esp. subst. effātum, *a statement*), &c.
ēmentior	*I falsify*	ēmentītus, &c.
expĕrior	*I try*	expertus, &c.
interprĕtor	*I expound*	interprĕtātus, &c.
mĕdĭtor	*I practise*	mĕdĭtātus, &c.
mētor	*I lay out, plan*	mētātus, &c.
păciscor	*I bargain*	pactus, &c. ✓
perfungor	*I perform*	perfunctus, &c.
pĕrīclĭtor	*I make trial of*	pĕrīclĭtātus, &c.
testor	*I call to witness*	testātus, &c.
ulciscor	*I avenge*	ultus (rarely *pass.*), &c.

Obs. Besides the above, a good many Verbs usually found as Deponents, have also an Active form, to which the Passive sense of the Perfect Participle may be referred: e.g. cŏmĭtor, cŏmĭto; mŏdĕror, mŏdĕro; partior, partio; pŏpŭlor, pŏpŭlo; etc.

§ 526. The want of a Perfect Participle in other Verbs is supplied in two ways:—

(1.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Ablative Absolute:* as,

Cognĭto Caesăris *adventu*, Ariovistus lēgātos ad eum mittit, *Having heard of Caesar's arrival, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him.*—Caes. (B. G. I, 42.)—Here we might equally well have had: ubi cognovit adventum.

Dextrā Hercŭles *datā* (=quum dextram suam dedisset), ōmen se accĭpĕre ait, *Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the omen.*—Liv. (1, 7.)

(2.) By an adverbial sentence with **quum** (§ 484) and the Subjunctive Mood, or **ut, ūbi,** etc., with the Indicative (§ 401): as,

Epămīnondas *quum vicisset* Lăcĕdaemŏnios ăpud Mantĭnēam, quaesīvit, etc., *Epaminondas, having conquered the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, asked,* &c.—Cic. (Fin. 2, 97.)—Where we might almost equally well have had, Lacedaemoniis victis.

§ 527. The *Future Participle* Active is used to denote (1) simple *futurity;* (2) *intention* or *purpose:* as,

Mŏrĭtūre Delli, *who art doomed to die.*—Hor. (Od. 2, 3, 4.)

Perseus rĕdiit, belli cāsum de integro tentātūrus, *Perseus returned, intending to try the chances of war afresh.*—Liv. (42, 62.)

§ 528. The Neuter of the Perfect Participle is sometimes used as an Abstract Noun: as,

Nam et priusquam incĭpias *consulto;* et ŭbi consŭlŭĕris, mātūre *facto* ŏpus est, *For before you make a beginning, you want counsel; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action.*—Sall. (Cat. 1.)

Nĭhil *pensi* neque *mŏdĕrāti* hăbēre, *They exercised no reflection, no restraint.*—Sall. (Cat. 12.)

§ 529. The use of the *Gerundive Participle* is explained in the next chapter.

§ 530. *Frequent use of Participles.*—Participles are very often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of Conjunctions, where several predications are united in a sentence: as,

Rursus in obliquum *verso* perrumpit *ārātro, Again he turns the plough, and breaks up (the soil) in a cross direction.*—Virg. (G. 1, 98.)

Eā [phălange] disjectā, glădiis destrictis in eos impĕtum fēcērunt, *When they had broken the phalanx, they drew their swords and charged them.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 25.)

Rōmāni conversa signa bīpertīto intŭlērunt, *The Romans faced about and attacked them in two divisions.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 25.)

Chapter XLIX.—The Gerund and Gerundive Participle.

§ 531. The Gerund is a Verbal Noun used in all Cases except the Nominative and Vocative; as, rĕgendi, *of ruling;* rĕgendo, *to, for,* or *by ruling;* ad rĕgendum, *for the purpose of ruling.*

Obs. 1. Instead of a Nominative Case of the Gerund, the Infinitive Mood is used. See § 505.

Obs. 2. In such sentences as părendum est, *we must obey;* mŏriendum est, *we must die;* the form in -dum is the neuter of the Gerundive Participle, not the Gerund. See § 536.

§ 532. The Cases of Gerunds have, to a certain extent, the same construction as the corresponding Cases of ordinary Substantives: as,

(i) *Genitive.*

(*a*) After a Noun (§ 263):—praecepta lŏquendi—consuētūdo dispŭtandi—vĕrēcundia praetĕreundi, etc.

(*b*) After an Adjective (§ 276): stŭdiōsus discendi—cŭpĭdus audiendi, etc.

(The Gen. of the Gerund after a Verb is extremely rare. Dräger is able to find one example only:—mŏnuit . . . insectandi *put her in mind of attacking,* Tac. Ann. 2, 43.)

(ii) *Dative* (rare).

(*a*) After an Adjective (§ 298):—aptus scrībendo (Quint. 12, 10, 51)—ăqua ūtilis bĭbendo, i.e. *good for being drunk* (Plin. 31, 59)—a peculiar sense of Gerund: cf. Virg. E. 8, 71, cantando, *by being sung to.* Not in Cic.

(*b*) After *esse, adesse* (§ 296, foll.):—esse solvendo, *to be equal to paying one's debts, to be solvent* (Cic. Off. 2, 79)—ădesse scrībendo, *to be witness to a document* (Cic.), etc.

(iii) *Accusative.*

Only after Prepositions; most frequently *ad*, also *inter*:—tempus sătis longum ad bŏnĕ vīvendum—nātus ăd ăgendum—cĭbus făcĭlis ad concŏquendum; inter lūdendum (*whilst playing*)—inter bĭbendum, etc. (this latter constr. not in Cic.).

Also Virg. has ante dŏmandum (an isolated instance with this Prep.; G. 3, 206.—Dräger.)

(iv) *Ablative.*

(*a*) After Prepositions *in*, less frequently *cum*, and (rarely) some others (*never* with sĭnĕ):—in dando mūnĭfĭcus—in suum cuique trĭbuendo (Cic. Br. 85)—in jŏcando mŏdĕrātio (Cic. de Or. 2, 238)—scrĭbendi rătio conjuncta cum lŏquendo (Quint. 1, 4, 3)—vŏluptātem ex discendo căpĕre (Cic. Fin. 5, 48)—discrĕpat a tĭmendo confĭdĕre (id. Tusc. 3, 14).

(*b*) Of Means or Manner (311, foll.):—bĕnĕvŏlentiam blandĭtiis et assentando collĭgĕre (Cic. Am. 61)—mens discendo ălĭtur—flūmen nando trājĭcĕre (Liv.); etc.

(*c*) After a Verb compounded with *ab* (rare): absistĕre sĕquendo (Liv. 29, 33, *fin.*).

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund cannot be used as the direct object after a Transitive Verb.

§ 533. The Gerund, though virtually a Substantive, still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb (like English Verbal Nouns in *-ing*): as,

Ars *vēra* ac *falsa* dījūdĭcandi, *The art of distinguishing things false and true.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 157.)

Spătium *pīla* conjĭciendi, *Room for discharging their pila.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 52.)

Parsĭmōnia est scientia *vītandi sumptūs* sŭpervăcuos, *Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense.*—Sen. (Ben. 2, 34, 3.)

§ 534. The *Gerundive Participle* signifies that a thing is *necessary* or *proper* to be done. It is always Passive in meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly Passive or from a Deponent. It has the following modes of construction:—

(A.) It is used in the Nominative Case along with the Verb est, sunt, etc., in agreement with a personal subject, to signify that something *ought to be done.*

(B.) It is used (impersonally) in the *Neuter* Gender along with the Verb est, with the same force as in the former case.

(C.) It is used in all Cases except the Nominative or Vocative, in agreement with a Noun, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the Accusative.

N.B.—*The agent after the Gerundive is indicated by the Dative Case.*

§ 535. (A.) If the verb is Transitive, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative of the Subject: as,

Dīlĭgentia est cŏlenda, *we must practise diligence*—haec sunt observanda, *these things must be carefully observed*—consōlandus hic mihi est, *I must comfort this man;* etc.

§ 536. (B.) If the verb is Intransitive, the Gerundive can only be used impersonally with est in the Nominative Singular Neuter: as,

Rĕsistendum sĕnectūti est . . . . . *pugnandum* tanquam contra morbum, sic contra sĕnectūtem, *We must resist old-age; we must combat with old-age as with a disease.*—Cic. (Sen. 35.)

Obs. 1. In such cases the Gerundive Participle has the same construction as the Verb to which it belongs. The Dative of the Agent is frequently omitted.

Obs. 2. The use of this construction in the case of Transitive Verbs, as poenas tĭmendum est, *we must fear punishment* (Lucr. 1, 111), is exceptional, and borrowed from the Greek.

Obs. 3. The Gerundives of Deponent Verbs which govern the Ablative are used both impersonally and in agreement with Nouns in the Nominative Case: as,

Ūtendum tuo tĭbi jūdĭcio est, *You will have to use your own judgment.*—Cic. (Tusc. 2, 63.)

Non păranda nōbis sōlum săpientia sed ĕtiam *fruenda* est, *We must not only get wisdom, but also enjoy the use of it.*—Cic. (Fin. 1, 3.)

Obs. 4. Instead of the Dative of the agent, the Ablative with *a* or *ab* may be used to avoid confusion: as,

Quĭbus est *a vobis* consŭlendum, *Whose interests should be consulted by you.*—Cic. (Manil. 2, *extr.*) See more examples, Roby, § 1147.

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive participle of Transitive Verbs is frequently used instead of a Gerund followed by the Accusative. The Gerundive being a Passive Participle agrees with the Noun which would be the object of the Gerund, in gender, number, and case: as,

Nihil ei tam rēgāle vĭdētur, quam stŭdium *agri cŏlendi* (= colendi agrum), *the pursuit of tilling the soil.*—Cic. (Sen. 59.)

Rĕtĭnendi officii (= officium retinendi) causā crŭcĭātum sŭbīre vŏluntārium, *for the sake of keeping to duty.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 105.)

Obs. 1. So also are used the Gerundive Participles of *ūtor, fruor, pŏtior, vescor, fungor:* as,

Ad *agrum fruendum* invītat atque allectat sĕnectus, *Old age invites and tempts us to the enjoyment of the country.*—Cic. (Sen. 57.)

Hostes in spem *pŏtiundōrum castrōrum* vēnĕrant, *The enemy had got hopes of obtaining possession of the camp.*—Caes. (B. G. 3, 6.)

Obs. 2. The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Noun is a neuter Adjective: as,

In *trĭbuendo suum* (*not* tribuendo suo) cuique versātur, *In giving to every one his own.*—Cic. (Br. 85.)

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Noun to denote a *Purpose* or *Result:* as,

Cŏmĭtia *collēgae subrŏgando* hăbuit, *He held the elections for choosing himself a fresh colleague.*—Liv. (2, 8.)

Dĕcemvĭri *sacris făciundis, Decemvirs for performing sacred functions.*—Liv. (10, 8.) So frequently in the titles of officials: triumvĭri cŏlōniis dēdŭcendis—dĕcemvĭri lēgĭbus scrībundis—quattuorvĭri jūrī dīcundo, etc.

Tibĕrius quăsi *firmandae vălētūdĭni* in Campāniam concessit, *Tiberius withdrew into Campania ostensibly for the purpose of recruiting his health.*—Tac. (Ann. 3, 31.)

(But here Cic. would doubtless have written *ad firmandam valetudinem.*)

§ 539. The Gerundive is sometimes found after the Verb **sum**, with a similar meaning in the Genitive Case: as,

Rēgium impĕrium, quod ĭnĭtio *conservandae lĭbertātis* fuerat, *The kingly government, which at the outset had tended to the preservation of liberty.*—Sall. (Cat. 6.)

Obs. This is to be regarded as a *Genitive of Quality* (§ 276).

§ 540. When the Object of a Verbal Noun in the Genitive Case is a Personal Pronoun, instead of the Accusative of the Pronoun we often find the Genitive of the corresponding Pronominal Adjective, apparently in agreement with the Verbal Noun: as,

Sui conservandi causā, *For the sake of their own preservation* (*saving their own lives*).—Cic. (Cat. 1, 7.)

In castra vēnērunt . . . causā *purgandi sui, They came into the camp for the purpose of clearing themselves.*—Caes. (B. G. 4, 13.)

(In both which cases we might have expected *sese.*)

Non vĕrĕor nē quis hoc me *vestri adhortandi* causā magnĭfīce lŏqui existĭmet, *I have no fear that any one will think I am herein speaking boastfully for the sake of encouraging you.*—Liv. (21, 41.)

Similarly, a Gerund in the Genitive Case dependent upon a Noun is sometimes itself followed by a dependent Genitive: as,

Rĕlĭquōrum sīdĕrum quae causa collŏcandi fuĕrit, *What the cause of the arrangement of the remaining heavenly bodies has been.*—Cic. (Tim. 9.)

(Aliquid facere) *eorum* (=ea § 537, *Obs.* 2), quae sĕcundum nātūram sunt, *ădipiscendi* causā, *To do a thing for the sake of attaining (of) those things which are in accordance with nature.*—Cic. (Fin. 5, 19.)

Permissā . . . . . lĭcentiā *dīrĭpiendi* (= diripiendorum) *pōmōrum*, *Giving leave to pilfer the fruit.*—Suet. (Aug. 98.)

Obs. In such cases the Genitive seems to be rightly regarded by Drüger as forming a sort of compound Noun with the Noun upon which it depends: e.g. princĭpium-gĕnĕrandi ănīmālium, *The generative-principle of animals.*—Varr. (R. R. 2, 1.)

§ 541. The Gerund (or Gerundive) is sometimes used in the Ablative Case, after the manner of an *Ablative Absolute*, when it has the force of an *Imperfect* Tense: as,

L. Cornēlius, complexus Appium, non cui sĭmŭlābat *consŭlendo*, dīrēmit certāmen, *being concerned in reality not for the person for whom he pretended.*—Liv. (3, 41.)

Ut non pĕtisse Saguntīnos, sed sĕrie, fīnĭtĭmis dŏmĭtis gentĭbus, *jungendoque*, tractus ad id bellum vĭdēri posset, *as he was linking them together.*—Liv. (21, 5.)

(In the above examples, consulendo, jungendo = *quum* consulerct, jungeret: cf. § 523, *Obs.*)

Chapter L.—The Supines.

§ 542. The two Supines in **um** and **u** are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Nouns of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in **um** (or Accusative of Verbal Noun) is used only after Verbs signifying *motion*, and denotes a Purpose. It is thus equivalent to **ut** with the Subjunctive: as,

Cŭbĭtum īre, *to go to lie down*—ad ōrācŭlum missus est *scītātum*, *he was sent to enquire*—prŏfĭcisĭtur *obsessum* turrim (Sall. Jug. 103)—mīlĭtes *lignātum* et *ăquātum* missi erant—*perdĭtum* īre, *to set about to destroy*; etc.

§ 544. The Supine in ū (properly an Ablative of *Respect*, § 322) is used after such Adjectives as jūcundus, făcĭlis, hŏnestus, crēdĭbĭlis, mīrābĭlis, with their contraries, to denote *in what respect* they are predicated of anything: as,

Quid est tam *jūcundum cognĭtu* atque *audĭtu*? *What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing?*—Cic. (de Or. 1, 3.)

Id *dictu* quam re *făcĭlius*, *That were easier in the saying than in the doing* (i.e. *easier to be said than done*).—Liv. (31, 38.)

Nĕfas est *dictu*, *It would be impious to say.*—Cic. (Sen. 13.)

Obs. 1. Tacitus uses the Supine in *u* instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb *pŭdet*: as,

Pūdet dictu, *I am ashamed as I say* (= *to say*) *it!*—(Agr. 32.)

Obs. 2. The number of Supines used in the above manner is limited. The most frequent are these: *dictu*, *audītu*, *factu*, *mĕmŏrātu*, *cognĭtu*, *inventu* (Zumpt). See also Roby, § 1388.

Chapter LI.—Adverbs.

§ 545. Adverbs qualify Verbs, Adjectives, and (other) Adverbs. To these parts of speech they sustain a corresponding relation to that of the Adjective to the Substantive; as in the following examples:—

(i) Tantus ămor, *so great love.*
(Noun qualified by Adjective.)

(ii) Adeo ămāre, *to love to such a degree.*
Adeo ămans, *so loving (affectionate).*
Adeo ămanter, *so lovingly.*

(Verb, Adjective, and Adverb, qualified by corresponding Adverb.)

§ 546. In the following cases an Adverb is found joined with a Noun:

(1.) In the case of the Numeral Adverbs ĭtĕrum, tertium, quartum, etc., as denoting the number of times an office has been held: as,

Consul ĭtĕrum, tertium, *Consul for the second, third time*, etc.—Liv. (Where the Verb *to be* is implied in Participial sense. In Greek the word consul would appear as a participle: *ὑπατεύων, being consul.*)

(2.) In the case of some Adverbs of place: as, circā (often), and some others: as,

Multae *circa* cīvĭtātes, *Many surrounding states.*—Liv. (1, 17.)

Grăvĭbus *sŭpernĕ ictĭbus* conflictābantur, *They had to contend with severe blows from above.*—Tac. (Ann. 2, 20.)

(3.) Occasionally in the case of other Adverbs: as,

Inter duo *sĭmul* bella, *Between two wars going on at once.*—Liv. (7, 25.)

Nullā *magnŏpĕre* clāde acceptā, *No serious disaster having been suffered.*—Liv. (3, 26.)

(So perhaps, hĕri semper lēnĭtas, *continual suavity*, Ter. Andr. 1, 2, 4.)

(4.) With some Nouns used participially: as,

Pŏpŭlus lāte *rex*, *A nation widely ruling.*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 21). (A poetical construction.)

§ 547. **Partim.**—The Adverb partim (originally Accus. of pars) is often used as the Subject of a sentence; especially where partim . . . . partim = ălii . . . . ălii: as,

Eorum autem *partim* ejusmŏdi sunt ut ad ūnĭversos cīves pertĭneant, *partim* singŭlos ut attingant, *Some (benefits) are of a nature to extend to one's fellow-countrymen generally, others to affect individuals only.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 72.)

Obs. In the above example *partim* governs the Genitive according to § 271. In the following example *partim . . . partim* form Appositions to the Subject:—

Amīci *partim* dēsĕruērunt me, *partim* ĕtiam prōdĭdērunt, *My friends have some of them forsaken, and some even betrayed me.*—Cic. (Q. F. 1, 3, *med.*)

N.B. Concerning the use of a neuter Adjective as an Adverb, see § 235, *Obs.*

§ 548. The Comparative of Adverbs (except in certain phrases, see § 320, *Obs.* 3) is in prose usually followed by *quam;* rarely by the Ablative: as,

Vox me cĭtius dēfĕcĕrit quam nōmĭna (*not* nomĭnĭbus), *Voice would sooner fail me than names.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 59.)

Ŏdĕram multo *pējus* hunc *quam* illum ipsum Clōdium (rather than, Clodio illo ipso), *I hated him worse than that Clodius himself.*—Cic. (Fam. 7, 2.)

Obs. In verse the Ablative is more common: as, blandius Orpheo, *more bewitchingly than Orpheus* (Hor.); cautius sanguĭne vīpĕrīno, *(to avoid anything) more carefully than viper's blood* (id.): see § 320, *Obs.* 3.

§ 549. Qualities indicated by Adverbs are compared together in the same way as those indicated by Adjectives (see § 350): as,

Fortĭus quam fēlīcius, *More valiantly than successfully.*—Liv. (5, 43.) See also § 696, 2.

§ 550. Some Adverbs derived from Adjectives govern a Dative: see § 299.

§ 551. Sīc, ĭtă.—Sic is more emphatically demonstrative than ita. Hence sic takes the place of a description, while ĭta simply makes reference to something in the context, and often forms a correlative to ŭt: e.g.—

Sic vertĭce caeli constĭtit, *While so engaged, he paused,* &c.—Virg. (Aen. 1, 225.) (Cf. Gk. οὕτως.)

Sic ītur ad astra, *Thus do men go heavenwards.*—Virg. (Aen. 9, 641.)

Ut bīnae rēgum făcies, *ita* corpŏra gentis, *As there are two species of kings* [queen-bees], *so there are sorts among their subjects.*—Virg. (G. 4, 95.)

Est ĭta ut dīcĭtur, *It is as it is said to be.*—Cic. (Verr. 4, 117.)

(N.B.—Concerning the elliptical use of *ita*, see § 644.)

§ 552. An Adverb occasionally appears as Predicate after the Verb *to be;* as in the Phrases, rectē est, bĕnĕ est.

Chapter LII.—Prepositions.

§ 553. Prepositions serve to show the relation of one Noun to another, or to some other word in the sentence.

§ 554. Some Prepositions are found with the Accusative only; others with the Ablative only; some with the Accusative or Ablative, according to the sense; and a very few with either the Accusative or Ablative indifferently.

Obs. Tĕnus is sometimes found with the Genitive: see § 557.

§ 555. Lists of the Prepositions, with the cases they govern, are given in §§ 165, foll. The following are the principal uses of the several Prepositions. For further details the student is referred to the Dictionary.

§ 556.—I. With the Accusative only.

1. Ăd.—*To, at,* or *near; for, in relation to, in comparison with:* as,

Vĕnīre ad urbem, *To come to the city.*—Cic.

Ventum ĕrat ad Vestae (*sc.* aedem), *We had come to the temple of Vesta.*—Hor.

Ad Veios, *Before the walls of Veii.*—Liv.

Omnes ad ūnum, *All to a single man.*—Cic.

Ad unguem, *To the very nail,* i.e. *perfectly.*—Hor.

Ad nuptias cŏquĕre, *To cook for a wedding-feast.*—Plaut.

Nātus ad ăgendum, *Born for action.*—Cic.

Agĕre ad praescriptum, *according to express rule.*—Caes.

Vir bŏnus et non illīttĕrātus, sed nĭhil ad Persium, *nothing (in comparison) to Persius.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 25.)

Obs. 1. Ad Rōmam, *before the walls of Rome, in the vicinity of Rome,* must be distinguished from Rōmae, *actually at Rome.*

Obs. 2. Before numerals ad is occasionally an Adverb; as,

Occīsis ad homīnum millĭbus quattuor, *up to* or *about* 4000 *being slain.*—Caes. (B. G. 2, 33.)

Ad duo millia et trĕcenti, *As many as* 2300.—Liv. (10, 17.)

2. Adversus, adversum.—Used of motion, direction, disposition, *towards,* or *against:* as,

Adversus montem, *Towards* or *up a hill.*—Caes.

Pietas justĭtia adversus deos (est), *Piety is justice in relation to the gods.*—Cic.

Adversus lēges, *Contrary to the laws.*—Cic.

Adversus vĕtĕrem impĕrātōrem compărābĭtur, *He will be matched against a veteran general.*—Liv.

Obs. Adversus differs from contra in that it does not, like the latter, always signify *opposition;* from erga, in having a greater variety of applications (see No. 9).

3. Antĕ.—*Before;* of place, time, comparison: as,

Ante ostium stāre, *To stand before the door.*—Ter.

Ante urbem condĭtam, *Before the building of the city.*—Cic.

Ante omnes cārissimus, *Before all most beloved.*—Nep.

Obs. Note especially the phrase ante diem (a.d.) in giving the day of the month: as, ante diem XIII Kălendas Jānuārias (*the 20th of December*), where the preposition strictly belongs to Kalendas, but is made to govern diem also.

4. Ăpŭd.—*Near; in the presence of; in the writings of:* as,

Apud Mantĭnēam, *In the neighbourhood of Mantinea.*—Nep.

Apud Laecam, *In the house of Laeca.*—Cic.

Verba ăpud sĕnātum făcĕre, *To make a speech before the senate.*—Cic.

Apud ălĭquem jūrāre, *To take the oath before any one (he administering it).*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 7.)

Apud Xĕnŏphontem, *In (the writings of) Xenophon.*—Cic.

Obs. In late writers, apud is sometimes used with names of towns in the sense of *at* or *in:* as,

Apud urbem Nōlam, *In the city of Nola.*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 5.)

5. Circum, circā.—*Around, about, near about.* These forms are used somewhat differently.

(*a.*) circum.—Usually more precise than circa, *all round:* as,

Urbes quae circum Cāpuam sunt, *The cities which lie round about Capua.*—Cic.

Terra circum axem se convertit, *The earth turns round upon its axis.*—Cic.

Lĭgāto circum collum sūdārio, *With a handkerchief tied round one's neck.*—Suet.

Omnium flāgĭtĭōrum (= flagitiosorum) circum se cătervas hăbēbat, *about his person.*—Sall.

(*b.*) circā.—Of place; *round, about, in the neighbourhood of:* of time; *about, towards:* of number (= circĭter); *near about:* of relation; *about, respecting:* as,

Circa montem Ămānum, *In the vicinity of Mount Amanus.*—Caes.

Lēgātōs circa vīcīnas gentes mīsit, *He dispatched ambassadors round to the neighbouring nations.*—Liv. (In earlier writers circa is not used after a verb of motion.—Dräger.)

Circa eandem hōram, *About the same hour.*—Liv.

Circa quingentos Rōmānorum, *About 500 of the Romans.*—Liv.

Circa verba dissensio, *A dispute about words.*—Quint.

Obs. Circa in the sense of *concerning* (usually de with *abl.*) is chiefly found in late authors.

6. Circĭter.—*About:* as a preposition, used only with numerals: as,

Octāvam circĭter hōram, *About the eighth hour.*—Hor.

(N.B. But circiter is usually an Adverb.)

7. Cis, citrā.—*On this side of;* hence, *short of, without* (rare and late): as,

Citra or cis Rhēnum, *On this side the Rhine.*—Caes.

Citra spĕciem, *Without regard for beauty.*—Tac. (G. 16.)

Citra fĭdem, *Prejudicial to belief.*—Tac. (Agr. 1.)

Obs. The form citra alone is used in the latter (figurative) sense. [Not so used in Cic.]

8. Contrā.—*Opposite to; against:* as,

Insŭlae tertium lătus est contra septentriōnes, *The third side of the island is opposite to (faces) the north.*—Caes.

Contra nātūram, offĭcium, *Contrary to nature, duty.*—Cic.

Contra Pŏpŭlum Rōmānum conjūrāre, *To conspire against the Roman people.*—Caes.

Obs. For the distinction between contra and adversus see above. No. 2, *obs.*

9. Ergā.—*Towards:* of feeling or conduct: as,

Dīvīna bŏnĭtas erga hŏmĭnes, *The divine goodness towards man.*—Cic.

Obs. In the best authors erga is always used of *friendly* feelings or conduct; contra being used of hostility.

10. Extrā.—*Outside of, free from; except* (rare): as,

Extra portam Collīnam, *Outside the Colline gate.*—Cic.

Extra noxiam, *Free from guilt.*—Ter.

Extra dŭcem paucosque praetĕrea, *Excepting the leader and a few besides.*—Cic.

11. Infrā.—*Beneath;* of place or relation: as,

Infra caelum ĕt sīdĕra, *Beneath the sky and stars.*—Tac.

Infra se, *Beneath oneself* (in figurative sense).—Cic.

12. Inter.—*Between, among; during* (esp. with gerunds: cf. § 532, iii.): as,

Inter Pădum atque Alpes, *Between the Po and the Alps.*—Liv.

Inter tēla versāri, *To be in the midst of weapons.*—Cic.

Inter falcārios vĕnīre, *To go into the street of the scythe-makers.*—Cic. (Cat. 1, 8.)

Inter hōram tertiam et quartam, *Between the third and fourth hour.*—Liv.

Haec inter cēnam dictāvi, *The above I dictated in the course of supper.*—Cic.

Inter bĭbendum, *During drinking.*—Just.

Hi omnes ĭnter se differunt, *These all differ from one another.*—Caes.

Inter se ămāre, *To love each other.*—Cic. (Att. 6, 1, *med.*)

Quod inter nos lĭceat, "*between ourselves.*"—Cic. (N. D. 1, 74.)

13. Intrā.—*Within;* of place, time, or any other relation: as,

Intra mūros, *Within the walls.*—Cic.

Intra hōs sex menses, *Within the last six months.*—Phaedr.

Intra centum, *Within one hundred.*—Liv.

ntra lēgem, *Within the law* (the limit prescribed by law).—Cic.

14. Juxtā.—*Hard by; next to:* as,

Juxta mūrum, *Close to the wall.*—Caes.

Hŏmo juxta Varrōnem doctissĭmus, *The most learned man after Varro.*—Gell.

Obs. Juxta denotes closer proximity than ad or prope.

15. Ŏb.—*Before* (of place); *on account of:* as,

Follem obstringĕre ob gŭlam, *To fasten a bladder over one's throat.*—Pl.

Mors ob ŏcŭlos saepe versāta est, *Death was often before his eyes.*—Cic.

Ob rem jūdĭcandam pĕcūniam accĭpĕre, *To take a bribe for one's judicial vote.*—Cic.

Mortem ob rempublĭcam ŏbīre, *To encounter death on account of the state.*—Tac.

16. Pĕnĕs.—*In the possession or power of:* as,

Quem pĕnes 'st virtus, *Who possesses virtue.*—Pl.

Pĕnes te es, *Are you in your senses?*—Hor.

Hi centum dies pĕnes accūsātorem (erant), *These (slaves) remained in the hands of the accuser one hundred days.*—Cic.

Obs. Penes is sometimes put after its case (appy. never in Cic.), especially when it governs a Relative (Pl. Ter. Hor.).

17. Pĕr.—*Through, throughout, during; by means of; in the way of; on account of; as far as* (*something is concerned*); *by* (in oaths): as,

Per agros văgāri, *To roam over the country.*—Liv.

Per mănus tractus, *Passed from hand to hand.*—Cic.

Per hiĕmem, *Throughout the winter.*—Cato.

Per indūtias, *In time of truce.*—Liv.

Per explōrātōres cognoscĕre, *By means of scouts.*—Caes.

Per īram făcĕre (aliquid), *To do anything in anger.*—Cic.

Per summum dēdĕcus vītam āmittĕre, *To lose life in circumstances of extreme disgrace.*—Cic. (R. Am. 30.)

Si per commŏdum reipublicae fĭĕri posset, *consistently with the public welfare.*—Liv.

Per aetātem (esp. with a negative; but also generally), *By reason of age.*—Cic. (Man. 1.)

Per causam exercendōrum rēmĭgum, *Under pretext of exercising the rowers.*—Caes. (B. C. 3, 24.)

Per me vel stertas lĭcet, *You may (even) snore, as far as I am concerned.*—Cic. (Ac. 2, 93.)

Per deos atque hŏmĭnes, *By gods and men.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The meaning *on account of* is rare, and chiefly confined to a certain class of phrases: per mĕtum, per invĭdiam, etc. Only in later authors quite = propter.

Obs. 2. In adjurations, *per* is often separated from its case: as,

Per ĕgo te deos ōro, *By the gods I entreat you.*—Ter. (Andr. 3, 3, 6.)

Per ego te, inquit, fīli, quaecunque jūra lĭbĕros jungunt părentibus, prĕcor, *By whatever claims bind children to their parents, I entreat thee, my son!*—Liv. (23, 9, *init.*)

18. Pōnĕ.—*Behind* (rare; once in Cic., as Adv.): as,

Pōne castra, *Behind (in the rear of) the camp.*—Liv.

Vinctae pōne tergum mānus, *bound behind the back.*—Tac.

19. Post.—*Behind* (in lit. and fig. sense); *after:* as,

Post me ĕrat Aegīna, ante Mĕgăra, *Behind me was Aegina, before me Megara.*—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Post tergum, *Behind one's back.*—Caes.

Nĕque ĕrat Lȳdia post Chloen, *Nor was Lydia behind Chloe (in favour).*—Hor.

Post M. Brūtum prōconsŭlem, *After the proconsulate of M. Brutus.*—Cic.

Maxĭma post hŏmĭnum mĕmŏriam classis, *The largest fleet in* (lit. *since*) *the memory of men.*—Nep.

20. Praetĕr.—*Along, past* (of motion); *besides, except, contrary to:* as,

Praeter castra Caesăris cōpias suas transduxit, *He marched his forces past the camp of Caesar.*—Caes.

Praeter cētĕros lăbōrāre, *beyond (more than) the rest.*—Cic.

Amīcum tĭbi nēmĭnem esse praeter Lucullum, *I see you have no friend except Lucullus.*—Cic.

Praeter spem, ŏpīnĭōnem, *Contrary to expectation.*—Cic.

Praeter sŏlĭtum, *Unwontedly.*—Hor.

21. **Prŏpĕ.**—*Near to;* usually of *place:* strictly an Adverb. The Comp. prŏpius and Sup. proxĭmē are also followed by Acc. as,

Prŏpe oppĭdum, *Near to the town.*—Caes.

Prŏpe lūcem, *Towards daybreak.*—Suet.

Prŏpe sēdĭtiōnem, (*It came*) *very near to a mutiny.*—Tac.

Prŏpius tŭmŭlum, *Nearer the hill.*—Caes.

Proxĭme Pompēium sĕdēbam, *I sat next to Pompey.*—Cic.

Obs.—Prŏpĕ is often followed by the Preposition *ab;* as also is prŏpius, and less frequently proxĭme. Prŏpius and proxĭme are also foll. by Dat.

22. **Propter** (same stem as prŏpe).—*Near* (*close*) *to; on account of* (the most frequent meaning); *by means of* (rare), *as far as* (*some one*) *is concerned* (rare): as,

Propter Plātōnis stātuam consēdĭmus. *We sat down close to the statue of Plato.*—Cic. (Br. 24.)

Pārēre lēgĭbus propter mĕtum, *To obey the laws on account of fear.*—Cic.

(Ii) propter quos vīvit, *Those to whom he owes his life.*—Cic. (Mil. 58.) See also Cic. R. Am. 63.

Non est aequom me propter vos dēcĭpi, *It is not right that I should be defrauded by your fault.*—Ter. (Ph. 5, 7, 34.)

23. **Sĕcundum.**—*By, along; directly after, following upon; according to, in favour of:* as,

Iter sĕcundum māre făcĕre, *along the sea-coast.*—Cic.

Sĕcundum vindēmiam, *Directly after the vintage.*—Cato.

Vivĕre sĕcundum nātūram, *To live according to nature.*—Cic.

Sĕcundum lĭbertātem vindĭcias dăre, *To grant a claim in favour of personal freedom.*—Liv. (3, 44.)

24. **Suprā.**—*Above* (in lit. or fig. sense), *beyond:* as,

Supra me Attĭcus (accŭbuerat), infra Verrius, *Next above me sat Atticus, below me Verrius.*—Cic.

Ille supra sĕgĕtes nāvĭgat, *over the tops of corn-fields.*—Ov.

Dux hostium cum exercĭtu supra căput est. *The enemy hovers over our head* (*threatens us*) *with an army.*—Sall.

Supra millia vīginti, *Beyond* (*more than*) 20,000.—Liv.

Supra mŏdum, *Beyond measure.*—Liv.

Obs. Supra is rarely used of time; as,

Paullo supra hanc mĕmŏriam, *A little before the present date.*—Caes. (B. G. 6, 19.)

25. **Trans.**—*Across, on the farther side of:* as,

Trans măre currunt, *They hurry across the sea.*—Hor.

Trans Tĭbĕrim hăbĭtat, *on the farther side of the Tiber.*—Hor.

26. **Ultrā.**—*Beyond:* as,

Cis Pădum ultrāque, *On the nearer and farther sides of the Po.*—Liv. (For this constr. see § 648.)

Ultra mŏdum, *Beyond a (certain) limit.*—Cic.

Ultra fās, *Beyond what is right.*—Hor.

27. **Versŭs** (follows its case).—Of local direction *towards:* as,

Arpīnum versus, *Towards Arpinum.*—Cic.

Itălĭam versus năvĭgāre, *To sail in the direction of Italy.*—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Obs. Versus is often used in combination with *ad* or *in:* as,

T. Labiēnum ad Oceānum versus prŏfĭcisci jŭbet, *in the direction of the Ocean.*—Caes. (B. G. 6, 33.)

§ 557.—II. With the Ablative only.

1. **Ăb, ā.**—Of separation or origin, *from, by;* of proximity, *on the side of, in a certain quarter;* to denote the agent after a Passive Verb, *by;* also of the impelling motive of an action, *from, out of;* and of time, (*directly*) *after*: as,

Non longe a fīnĭbus Tŏlōsātium absunt, *They are not far from the territories of the Tolosates.*—Caes.

Rem omnem a princĭpio audies, *From the beginning.*—Ter.

A puĕro, *From a boy* (=*from boyhood*).—Cic.

Cornix est ab laeva, *on the left.*—Plaut.

Haec a nōbis sunt, *These things are on our side.*—Cic.

Nĭhil est ab omni parte beātum, *in every respect* (*from every point of view*).—Hor.

Ab ĕquĭtātu firmus, *Strong in cavalry.*—Plancus ap. Cic. (Fam. 10, 15.)

A frīgŏre lăbōrare, *To suffer from cold.*—Plin.

A mănu servus, *An amanuensis.*—Suet.

Ab īra, ăb ŏdio, (*to do anything*) *from anger, hatred,* etc.—Liv.

Stătim a prīma lūce, *Immediately after daybreak.*—Col.

Obs. 1. Sometimes only the context can determine whether *ab* is used in the sense of *by* or *from:* thus, postŭlātur a pŏpŭlo, may be either *the demand is made by*, or *from, the people.*

Obs. 2. In such expressions as a manu (servus), ab epistŏlis, etc., the preposition denotes the *quarter* or *province in which* service is rendered.

Obs. 3. *A* is used chiefly before consonants and *ab* before vowels (including *h*) only: *abs* (the ancient form) is rare, except in compounds.

2. Absquĕ (rare).—*Without;* chiefly in Plaut. and Ter., and in conditional clauses: as,

Absque te esset, *Without you; were it not for you.*—Plaut.

Obs. Absque occurs but once in Cicero (Att. 1, 19, *init.*), and there apparently only for the sake of euphony (see the place).

3. Cōram.—*In the presence of* (in Cic. usually as Adv.): as,

Cantābit văcuus cōram lātrōne viātor, *in the presence of the highwayman.*—Hor.

4. Cum.—*With, along with;* also of *manner* (see § 312): as,

Esse cum tēlo, *To be (provided) with a weapon; to carry arms.*—Cic.

Cum pāce laxior annōna rĕdiit, *Along with peace returned greater cheapness of provisions.*—Liv.

Ex sēmĭne cum dĕcimo rĕdit, *There is a tenfold* (lit. *with a tenth*) *return from the seed.*—Varr.

Obs. 1. *Cum* is not used to introduce the *instrument* of an action: which is expressed by the simple Ablative: see § 311.

Obs. 2. With the Ablatives of Pronouns cum is written as an enclitic: as, *mecum, tecum, nobiscum, quibuscum,* etc.

5. Dē.—*Down from, from;* of time, *during, in the course of;* of material, *made of; concerning:* also sometimes, *according to:* as,

De mūro se prōjēcit, *down from the wall.*—Caes.

Caupo de viā Lătīnā, *An innkeeper from the Latin way.*—Cic.

Pauci de nostris cădunt, *A few from amongst our men.*—Caes.

De meo, tuo, suo, *At my, thy, his own expense.*—Cic.

Diem de die prōferre, *To put off from day to day.*—Liv.

De die, de nocte, *By day, by night.*—Cic.

De tertiā vĭgĭliā, *In the course of the third watch.*—Caes.

Nĭveo factum de marmŏre signum, *A statue made of snow-white marble.*—Ov.

De republĭcā (scripti libri), *Books written on the subject of the commonwealth.*—Cic.

De mōre, *According to custom.*—Virg.

Obs. The adverbial phrases, de novo, de integro, *anew, afresh* (*starting 'from the new'*); de improvīso, *unexpectedly*; de industria, *of set purpose*; should be noted: also, de (Gallis, &c.) triumphare, *to triumph for victories won from* or *gained over* (*the Gauls*, &c.).

6. **Ex**, ē.—*Out of, from*; of time, *immediately after*; of material, *made out of*; *on account of*; *in pursuance of, in accordance with*: as,

Sōlem e mundo tollĕre, *To take the sun out of the world.*—Cic.

Ex ĕquo cădĕre, *To fall from one's horse.*—Cic.

Ex ĕquo (ĕquis) pugnāre, *To fight (from) on horseback.*—Caes.

Ex ītĭnĕre littĕras mittĕre, *To dispatch a letter en route (while travelling).*—Sall. (Cat. 34.)

Cotta ex consŭlātu est prŏfectus in Galliam, *Immediately after his consulate.*—Cic.

Stătim e somno lăvantur, *They* (the Germans) *bathe immediately on rising from sleep.*—Tac.

Quīdam ex mīlĭtĭbus, (*A certain*) *one of the soldiers.*—Caes.

Stătua ex aere facta, *A statue made of bronze.*—Cic.

Urbem e suo nōmĭne Rōmam jussit nōmĭnāri, *He directed the city to be called Rome from his own name.*—Cic.

Quum esset ex aere ălienō commōta cīvĭtas, *The city being in a commotion on account of debt.*—Cic.

Ex lĭttĕris Caesāris supplĭcātio dēcrēta est, *in accordance with Caesar's despatch.*—Caes.

Magna ex parte, *To a large extent; in great measure.*—Cic.

E re nātā, *Under the given circumstances.*—Ter. (Ad. 3, 1, 8.)

Obs. Note also the phrases, e rĕgiōne, *over against*; ex aequo, *in an equal degree*; ex improvīso, *unexpectedly*, &c.; and the legal expressions, hēres ex asse, ex dōdrante, etc., *heir to the whole, three-fourths, etc., of a property*,

7. **Prae.**—*Before* (locally); *because of* (see *Obs.*); *in comparison with*: as,

Prae se grĕgem ăgens, *Driving the herd before him.*—Liv.

Prae se ferre, *To make a public show of.*—Cic.

Nec lŏqui prae maerōre pŏtuit, *And could not speak for grief.*—Cic. (Planc. 99.)

Prae cētĕris Cāto in sĕnectūte flōruit, *Cato was distinguished above all others in the character of an old man.*—Cic.

Obs. Prae in the sense of *because of* chiefly occurs in negative sentences (as above). Plautus, however, has such sentences as, Prae laetĭtiā lacrīmae praesĭliunt mihi, *Tears start to my eyes for joy.* (Stich. 3, 2, 13.)

8. Prō.—*Before, in front of; instead of, on behalf of; in consideration of; in proportion to:* as,

Castra pro moenĭbus lŏcāta erant, *In front of the walls.*—Liv.

Pro suggestu (dīcĕre), *From the front of the platform.*—Caes.

Ego pro te mŏlam, *I will grind for you.*—Ter.

Pro patria mŏri, *To die on behalf of one's country.*—Hor.

Pro vectūrā solvĕre, *To pay for freight.*—Cic.

Pro Caesăris in se bĕnĕfĭciis, *In consideration of Caesar's favours done to him.*—Caes.

Proelium atrōcius quam pro nūmĕro pugnantium, *A battle more sanguinary than might have been expected from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

9. Sĭnĕ.—*Without:* as,

Non sĭne dis, *Not without the help of the gods.*—Hor.

In Hor. found after its Object: e.g. flammā sĭne, *without fire* (Sat. 1, 5, 99).

Obs. Sine is never used with the Ablative of the Gerund.

10. Tĕnŭs.—*Up to, as far as;* always after its Object: as,

Cāpŭlo tĕnus abdĭdit ensem, *up to the hilt.*—Virg.

Tauro tĕnus, *As far as Mount Taurus.*—Cic.

Verbo tĕnus, *As far as words are concerned (only).*—Cic

Obs. Tenus is sometimes found with the Genitive: as,
Crūrum tĕnus, *Up to the legs.*—Virg.

§ 558.—III. With Accusative or Ablative.

1. In.—*In, into; towards, until; against.*

(*a.*) With the Accusative: always implying motion or direction towards: as,

In caelum ascendĕre, *To ascend into heaven.*—Cic.

In ĕquŭleum impŏsĭtus, *Put upon the rack.*—Cic.

In septentriōnes spectāre, *To face the north.*—Caes.

Dormiet in lūcem, *He will sleep till broad day.*—Hor.

Sōlis dēfectiōnes praedīcuntur in multos annos, *for many years to come.*—Cic.

In lĭbĕros nostros indulgentia, *towards our children.*—Cic.

In utramque partem dispūtare, *To argue on both sides.*—Cic.

In dŏmĭnum de servo quaerĕre, *To examine a slave as a witness against his master.*—Cic. (Mil. 59.)

In antrum, (*Hollowed out*) *in the form of a cave.*—Virg. (Aen. 6, 42.)

Obs. 1. Note the adverbial phrases, in commūne, *for the common good;* in ūniversum, *in general;* in pējus, *for the worse.*

Obs. 2. Occasionally, in certain phrases, the Accusative after *in* has the force of the Ablative: as,

Eam optīmam rempublīcam esse dūco, quae sit *in pŏtestatem* optimātium, *in the power of the aristocracy.*—Cic. (Leg. 3, 37.) See also Cic. Div. Verr. 66, in āmīcītiam P. R.

Obs. 3. After verbs of *placing* or *putting*, *in* is found both with Accusative and Ablative.

(*b.*) With the Ablative: of rest or action *in a place; in* or *during; among:* as,

Caedes in Appia via facta (est), *A murder was committed on the Appian road.*—Cic.

Sĕdēre in ĕquo, *To sit on horseback.*—Cic.

In omni vīta, *In the whole of one's life.*—Cic.

Thăles qui săpientissimus in septem fuit, *the wisest among the seven.*—Cic.

Obs. In is never used of a point of time or date; nor with the Ablative of modal Nouns: see § 312.

2. Sŭb.—*Under, up to, near;* of place or time: also of other analogous relations:

(*a.*) With the Accusative: *under, up to* (of motion); of time, *just after* or *before:* as,

Exercĭtum sub jŭgum mittĕre, *To pass an army under the yoke.*—Caes.

Sub montem succēdunt mīlĭtes, *The soldiers make their way up the hill.*—Caes.

Ocŭlos sub astra tĕnēbat, *He kept his eyes on the stars.*—Virg.

Sub noctem, *At nightfall.*—Caes.

Sub galli cantum, *Just about cock-crow.*—Hor.

Sub eas (lĭttĕras) stătim recĭtātae sunt tuae, *Directly after that letter was read yours.*—Cic.

Sub lēgum pŏtestātem cădĕre, *To fall under the power of the laws.*—Cic.

(*b.*) With the Ablative: *under* (usually without motion); of time, *just upon, during:* as,

Sub pellĭbus, *Under skins* (or *tents*).—Caes.

Sub dīvo, *Under the open sky.*—Hor.

Sub hoc jŭgo Dictātor Aequos mīsit, *Under this kind of yoke the Dictator made the Aequians pass.*—Liv.

Sub dĭcione ălĭcujus, *under any one's power.*—Caes.

Adhuc sub jūdĭce lis est, *The matter is still before the judge* (undecided).—Hor.

Sub ipsā prŏfectiōne, *Just at the time of his departure.*—Caes. (B. C. 1, 27.)

3. Sŭper.—*Above, beyond, concerning.*

(*a.*) With the Accusative: *above*, whether of place or some other relation: as,

Sŭpĕr vallum praecĭpĭtātus est, *He was pitched headlong over the ramparts.*—Sall.

Nōmentānus ĕrat sŭper ipsum, *next above* (*our host*) *himself.*—Hor.

Sŭper omnia, *Above all things.*—Liv.

(*b.*) With the Ablative: *above*, of place; *concerning* (only in the poets): as,

Ensis (illī) sŭper cervīce pendet, *A sword hangs suspended over his neck.*—Hor.

Multa sŭper Priămo rŏgĭtans, *concerning Priam.*—Virg.

4. Subtĕr.—*Under:* in Prose almost always with the Accusative: as,

Mănum subter tŏgam exsĕrĕre, *To thrust the hand out from under the toga.*—Liv.

Rhoetēo subter lītŏre, *'Neath the Rhoetean shore.*—Cat.

5. Clam.—*Without the knowledge of:* used indifferently with the Accusative or the Ablative: as,

Clam patrem, *Without a father's knowledge.*—Ter.

Clam vōbis, *Without your knowledge.*—Caes.

Obs. *Clam* is properly rather an Adverb than a Preposition. It is once found with Gen. in Pl.: clam patris (Merc. prol. 43.)

Chapter LIII.—Conjunctions.

§ 559. Conjunctions connect sentences together and show the relation between them. They thus sustain the same relation towards sentences which Prepositions sustain towards single words (see § 553).

Obs. Sometimes Conjunctions appear to connect words; where however it may generally be shown that they virtually connect sentences: as,

Ĕgo et tu crēdīmus, *I and you believe* = ego crĕdo et tu crēdis.

§ 560. Conjunctions are arranged in the following classes: Connective, Adversative, Hypothetical, Concessive, Causal, Conclusive, Final, Temporal.

N.B. For lists of the above, see § 16[illegible]

1. Connective Conjunctions.

§ 561. **Et** is the Conjunction most used simply to connect words and sentences: as,

Brūtus et Cassius—tu et frāter—ego et Cĭcĕro—bĕnĕ et compŏsĭtē—instĭtuendo et persuādendo—cāri esse et dīlĭgi.

N.B.—When several members are connected together, the Conjunction may either be repeated after each one except the last (*Polysyndĕton*), or it may be omitted altogether (*Asyndĕton*).

(i) *Polysyndeton.*

In quaestūra *et* lēgātiōne Asiātica *et* praetūra urbāna—virtus *et* hŏnestas *et* prŏbĭtas—*et* juris *et* littĕrārum *et* antĭquĭtātis perītus—sōlem *et* lūnam *et* vāgas stellas *et* ĭnerrantes, *et* caelum, *et* mundum ipsum (all from Cic.).

(ii) *Asyndeton.*

Nos lēges, jūdĭcia, lībertātem, conjŭges, lībĕros, patriam dĕfendĭmus—ădĕrant ămīci, prŏpinqui—multi fīlii, fīliae, nĕpōtes, neptes—in tūtēlis, fīdūciis, māndātis, etc.—a templis, dēlūbris, urbe (all from Cic.).

The last member, however, is not unfrequently attached by means of the enclitic *que* (cf. § 563), especially when it stands closely related to the preceding member, or when it serves to sum up a series: as,

Pācem, tranquillĭtātem, ōtium concordiamque—fausto fēlĭcĭter prospĕreque—ab hujus hŏnōre, fāma, fortunisque omnibus—agri insŭlae lĭtŏraque—sŏcii consĭliorum mĭnistri cōmĭtesque—suā bĕnĕvŏlentiā, praesĭdio, custōdiāque—offĭcio, fĭde, misĕrĭcordiā, multorum bŏnorum exemplo, vĕtĕre consuētūdine, instĭtūtoque majorum (all from Cic.).

N.B.—*Atque* is not used in this way, and *et* very rarely.

§ 562. **Et** often introduces the first member as well as subsequent ones: it may then be translated by *both .... and, in the first place .... and then, not only .... but also:* as,

Te *et* mŏneo *et* rŏgo, ut rĕcordēre . . ., *I both advise you and request you to call to mind . . .*—Cic. (Q. Fr. 3, 8, *init.*)

Ōrātiuncŭlas *et* quas postŭlas, *et* plūres etiam mittam, *not only the little speeches you ask for, but others too.*—Cic. (Att. 2, 1.)

Sed *et* ipse errābat, *et* ălios ĕtiam errāre cōgēbat, *But in the first place he was himself in error, and then he forced others likewise to err.*—Cic. (Br. 284.)

Obs. Very often the introductory *et* is not translated in English: as,

Hoc *et* rătio doctis, *et* nĕcessĭtas barbăris, praescripsit, *This lesson reason has taught the civilised and necessity the uncivilised.*—Cic. (Mil. 30.)

(Concerning the Concord of the Predicate in such cases, see § 220.)

§ 563. The enclitic quĕ is used in preference to et when things are closely connected, whether by affinity or by contrast: as,

Pĕdestres nāvālesque pugnae—arma vĭrumque cāno—dŏmī mīlĭtiaeque—contra deos ārasque—in făcie vultuque—terrā mārique—res sātis amplae magnĭfĭcaeque—indocti incultique—ingĕnio mālo prāvoque—coepĕre se quisque extollĕre magisque ingĕnium in prompto hăbĕre.

§ 564. Et . . . . nĕque (nĕc).—When two propositions are connected, one of which is positive and the other negative, the following arrangements are found:

et . . . . . nĕque (nec) . . . et non
nĕque (nec), et non . . . et
nĕque (nec) . . . . . que

Intellĭgĭtis *et* ănĭmum ei praesto fuisse, *nec* consĭlium dĕfuisse, *You see that not only had he presence of mind, but that counsel was not lacking.*—Cic. (Phil. 13, 13.)

Sextus *et* rem agnoscit, *neque* hŏmĭnem ignōrat, *Sextus is [both] acquainted with the affair, and no stranger to the man.*—Cic. (Fl. 46.)

Ut *nĕque* cessāret unquam, *et* interdum collŏquio altĕrius *non* ĕgēret, *That not only he was never idle, but at times could do without the intercourse of another.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 1.)

Is lŏcus mĕlior quem *et non* cŏquit sol *et* tangit ros, *Where on the one hand the sun does not scorch, and (yet) the dew reaches.*—Varr. (R. R. 3, 14.)

Sed *nec* illa exstincta sunt, ălunturque pŏtius et augentur cōgĭtātione et mĕmŏria, *But in the first place those things are not dead; and then*, etc.—Cic. (Am. 104.)

Obs. In such cases the *neque* (*nec*) is usually resolved in English into *and not, on the* { *one* / *other* } *hand, . . . not*, or the like.

§ 565. Atque (āc before consonants only) is a slightly more emphatic que (see § 563), and is mostly used when a second member is at the same time to be brought into comparison or contrast with the preceding one: as,

Dīvīna atque hūmāna—ūsus ac disciplīna—vectīgālibus ac sŏciis—ĭdem velle atque ĭdem nolle—innŏcentes ac noxios juxta caedĕre, &c.

Not unfrequently the word or clause attached by means of atque is emphatic = *and in fact, and especially*: as,

Diis immortālibus . . *atque* huic Jŏvi Stātōri, *To the immortal gods (in general) . . and in particular to this Jupiter Stator* [in whose temple the senate had met].—Cic. (Cat. 1, 11.)

§ 566. **Quum . . . . tum**, *whilst, not only . . . . but also in particular*, are used chiefly in introducing different particulars respecting the same thing: as,

Impărātus *quum* a mīlĭtĭbŭs *tum* a pĕcūnia, *Unprepared not only in the article of men but also of money.*—Cic. (Att. 7, 15.)

Quum multis in rebus *tum* in ămīcĭtia, *As in many things, so in particular in friendship.*—Cic. (Am. 48.)

§ 567. **Tum . . . tum**, *at one time . . . at another time*, is to be carefully distinguished from quum . . tum, though sometimes confused with it in MSS. and editions: e.g.—

Non *tum* hoc, *tum* illud, sed ĭdem semper . . ., *Not first one thing and then another, but*, &c.—Cic. (Am. 13.)

[Hae stellae] *tum* occultantur, *tum* rursus ăpĕriuntur, *tum* ădeunt, *tum* rĕcēdunt, etc., *at one time . . . at another time* (or, *now . . . now*), &c. —Cic. (N. D. 2, 51.)

Dissĕro in utramque partem, *tum* Graecē *tum* Lătīnē, *I debate on both sides, now in Greek, now in Latin.*—Cic. (Att. 9, 4, *fin.*)

(Only in late writers, *tum . . . tum = et . . . et.*)

§ 568. **Non mŏdo (sōlum) . . . . vērum (sed) ĕtiam**, *not only . . . . but also*, are used to give emphasis to a statement: as,

Non sōlum nātūrā et mōribus, vērum ĕtiam stŭdio et doctrīna, *Not only by nature and character, but also by industry and learning.*—Cic. (Am. 6.)

Obs. When there is a double negative in the sentence, as, *not only not excellent, but not even middling*, the negative particle may be omitted from the former member, the latter being usually expressed by sed ne . . . . quĭdem (§ 656): non mŏdo praestantes, sed ne mĕdiocres quĭdem. (Cf. Cic. Rep. 2, 15, quae non sōlum facta, sed ne fīĕri quĭdem pŏtuisse, *not only not actual facts, but not even possible.*) But the negative is quite as often expressed in both members, and must be used unless the sense of the passage is sufficiently obvious without it.

§ 569. **Nĕque (nĕc)**, *neither . . . . nor.*—When two or more Singular Subjects of the Third Person are connected by neque (nec) . . . neque (nec), the Verb is usually Singular; but if they are of different Numbers, it usually agrees with the Subject nearest to it: as,

[Vōbis] nec aetas, neque hŏnōres, neque virtus . . . . dulcēdĭnem vīvendi mīnŭĕre *potuĕrit*, *For you neither years, nor honours, nor worth, will avail to lessen your fondness for life.*—Cic. (Br. Ep. 1, 16, *ad fin.*)

See also § 220, *Obs.* 5.

§ 570. **Aut, vēl (-vĕ)**, *or*.—Aut is a disjunctive word, and introduces something quite different from what has gone before: vel is copulative, and implies not so much a new alternative as a modification of the preceding one: as,

Omne ēnuntiātum *aut* vērum *aut* falsum est, *Every proposition is either true or false*.—Cic. (Fat. 19.) (New alternative "*false*," exclusive of the other.)

Pācĕ *vel* Quĭrīni *vel* Rōmŭli dixĕrim, *By favour of Quirinus or (shall I call him) Romulus, &c.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 42.) (i.e. either will do.)

Ordo *vel* pāci dĕcōrus *vel* bello, *An order seemly whether for peace or war*.—Liv. (1, 42.) (Both alternatives included.)

Obs. 1. The above distinction cannot however be always traced.

Obs. 2. *Ve* is abbreviated from *vel*, and has a similar use: as,

Bis terve summum, *Twice or thrice at most*.—Cic. (Fam. 2, 1.)

Obs. 3. *Ve* is also found in the compound *sīve* (seu): as,

Sīve cāsu *sive* consĭlio deorum immortālium, *Whether by accident or by the counsel of the immortal gods*.—Caes. (B. G. 1, 12.)

2. Adversative Conjunctions.

§ 571. Adversative Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a proposition in some way opposed to what has preceded. They are the following: **sĕd, autem, vērum, vēro, ăt, ast, atqui, cētĕrum, tămen, attămen, vēruntămen**, *but, yet*. They do not affect the structure of a sentence.

§ 572. **Sĕd, autem**, *but*.—Sed denotes a more direct and emphatic opposition than autem, and therefore stands at the head of its sentence, while autem takes the second place: as,

Non ĕgo hĕrus tĭbi, *sed* servus sum, *I am not your master, but your slave*.—Plaut. (Cap. 2, 1, 44.)

Difficĭle factu est, *sed* cōnābor tamen, *It is a difficult task, but yet I will try*.—Cic. (Rep. 1, 43.)

Gyges a nullo vĭdēbātur, ipse *autem* omnia vĭdēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, while he himself, on the other hand, saw everything*.—Cic. (Off. 3, 38.)

Ōrātiōnes ejus mĭhi vĕhĕmenter prŏbantur; lēgi *autem* complūres. *His speeches have my warm admiration; and I have read a good many of them*.—Cic. (Br. 262.)

§ 573. **Vērum** and **vēro** (as an Adversative Conjunction), *but*, are used with the same distinction as *sed* and *autem*. **Cētĕrum** is similar in its use to *vērum* or *sed*.

§ 574. Vēro is often used as an affirmative particle: as,

Ego vēro cŭpio te ad me vĕnīre, *I do in truth desire you to come to me.*—Cic. (Fam. 16, 10.)

Immo vēro, inquit, vīvunt, *Yea, verily, they live.*—Cic. (Rep. 6, 14.)

Especially in marking an emphasis or climax: as,

Tum vero, *Then verily—then if never before—then more than ever.*—(Virg. Liv. *pass.*)

Sometimes it is used where in English we say *yes:* as,

Fuisti, crēdo, in schŏlis phĭlŏsŏphorum? *Vēro*, ac lĭbenter quĭdem, *You have attended the schools of the philosophers, I believe?—Yes, and with pleasure too.*—Cic. (Tusc. 2, 26.)

§ 575. Ăt, *but; on the other hand; but, you say;* is especially used in stating objections: as,

At mĕmŏria mĭnuĭtur: crēdo, nĭsi eam exerceas, *But, say you, memory decays.—I dare say (it does), if you do not practise it.*—Cic. (Sen. 20.)

Obs. In stating an objection, *at* is often strengthened by *ĕnim:* as,

At ĕnim cur a me pŏtissĭmum hoc praesĭdium pĕtīvērunt, *But, you say, why have they come to me rather than any other for this protection?*—Cic. (Div. Verr. 15.)

§ 576. Ăt is idiomatically used in sudden transitions, vehement exclamations of displeasure, etc.: as,

Consurgit Turnus in ensem et fĕrit. . . . . At perfĭdus ensis frangĭtur in mĕdio, *But lo! the faithless sword snaps in two.*—Virg. (Aen. 12, 731.)

Una māter . . . . oppugnat. *At* quae mater, *His mother is his only assailant. But then what a mother!*—Cic. (Clu. 199.)

At o deorum quidquid in caelo rĕgit, . . . quid iste fert tŭmultus, *Why, in the name of all the gods that rule above, what means this to-do?*—Hor. (Epod. 5, *init.*)

§ 577. Atqui, *and yet,* is similar to at: as,

Magnum narras et vix crēdĭbile. Atqui sic hăbet, *What you say is astonishing and hardly credible.—And yet so it is.*—Hor. (Sat. 1, 9, 52.)

§ 578. Quodsi, better quod si (negative quod ni, quod nisi), *but if, and if,* is about equivalent to sin autem: sometimes the quod is a pure connective (cf. § 491, *Obs.* 2): as,

Quod si te sors Afris . . . praefĕcisset, *Now if fortune had placed you over Africa.*—Cic. (Q. Fr. 1, 1, 9.)

Quod si quis illorum vĕtĕrānorum lĕgat acta, *But if* (or *now if*) *anyone would read the actions of those veterans.*—Nep. (Eum. 8, 3.)

3. Hypothetical Conjunctions.

§ 579. Hypothetical Conjunctions are those which are used in stating an hypothesis: concerning their syntax see §§ 424, sqq.

4. Concessive Conjunctions.

§ 580. Concessive Conjunctions are those which may be rendered in English by *although, even if, granting that.* They are **etsi, ĕtiamsi, tămetsi, (tămenetsi), quanquam, quamvis, lĭcet, ŭt, quum.** They are discussed in treating of the use of the Subjunctive Mood. (See § 503.)

5. Causal Conjunctions.

§ 581. Causal Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a reason: they can mostly be translated by *because, since, for, seeing that.* (For a list of them see p. 137.) Their syntax, with the exception of **nam** and **ēnim**, which have no effect upon the Mood of the Verb, is treated under the *Subjunctive* Mood (§§ 483, foll.).

Nam (namque) is more emphatic than **ĕnim**, and begins its own clause; **ĕnim** stands second, and is often used without direct logical force (see § 654): as,

Percontātōrem fŭgīto; *nam* garrŭlus īdem est, *Shun an inquisitive person; for he is also a gossip.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 18, 69.)

[Scrībe] ad me quam saepissīme: nonnĭhil *ĕnim* me lĕvant tuae lĭttĕrae, *Write to me as often as possible, for your letters relieve me a little.*—Cic. (Att. 11, 8.)

Obs. 1. *Nam* is often used elliptically, where the thought is readily supplied: as,

Nam quid ego de Cicĕrōne dīcam, [I will not], *for why need I? speak of Cicero.*—Cic. (Fam. 14, 1.)

Obs. 2. *Namque* sometimes stands after the first word in a sentence, especially in Livy: see § 691.

6. Conclusive Conjunctions.

§ 582. Conclusive Conjunctions are those which are used in drawing a conclusion, and may be translated by *therefore, accordingly, wherefore.* (For a list of them see p. 137.) They have no effect upon the structure of a sentence.

§ 583. Ergō, *therefore*, stands usually, though not always, at the head of its sentence: as,

Ergo āvārus (is) crit sed fīnīte, *Accordingly such a person will be covetous, but to a limited degree.*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 27.)

Ergo Quintĭlium perpĕtuus sŏpor urget, *So then perpetual slumber weighs upon Quintilius!*—Hor. (Od. 1, 24, 5.)

Obs. Ergo is also used after a Genitive = causâ: see § 263, *Obs.*

§ 584. Ĭgĭtur, *accordingly, then*, is less emphatic than ergo, being rather a particle to express transition; and does not regularly stand at the head of a sentence: as,

Est *ĭgĭtur* id quo illa conflciuntur hŏmĭne mĕlius, *That power, then, by which those things are done, is superior to man.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 16.)

Obs. Sallust often begins with *igitur:* v. § 668.

§ 585. Ĭtăque, *and so, accordingly*, is similar to ĭgĭtur, but denotes a consequence in action rather than in reasoning: as,

Ităque rem suscĭpit, *Accordingly he undertakes the business.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 9.)

It is sometimes used with ergo: as,

Ităque ergo, ut măgistrātu ăbiēre, etc., *Accordingly, therefore, when they had retired from their office*, &c.—Liv. (3, 31.)

7. Final Conjunctions.

§ 586. Final Conjunctions are such as are used to denote the purpose or consequence of an action. They are treated in dealing with the Subjunctive Mood (§§ 449–463).

8. Temporal Conjunctions.

§ 587. Concerning antĕquam, priusquam, postquam, see §§ 500, 501. Concerning ut, ut primum, sĭmul atque (ac), *as soon as*, see § 401.

PART II. (SYNTAX).—*Continued.*

BOOK II.

§ 588. The preceding portion of the Syntax comprises the ordinary grammatical rules: the following is devoted chiefly to peculiarities of Latin diction.

CHAPTER LIV.—NOUNS.

1. Common Nouns.

§ 589. *Concrete for Abstract.*—Concrete Nouns are often used in preference to abstract to denote,

(1.) The period of a person's life during which something happens: as,

A puĕro (or, of more than one person, a puĕris), *From boyhood.*—Cic. (But also a puerĭtia, ab ĭneunte ădŏlescentia.)

Obs. Similarly, in later writers, sexāgēnārius, octōgēnārius, *in one's sixtieth or eightieth year:* as,

Quod sexāgēnārius Publĭlium virgĭnem duxisset, *had married at sixty.*—Quint. (6, 3, 75.) (But Cic. would undoubtedly have said septuāginta annos nātus, or septuāginta annorum homo.)

(2.) An office or function: as,

L. Tullo, M' Lĕpĭdo consŭlibus, *In the consulate of . . .* —Sall. (C. 18); et *pass.*

In this way are used dux, auctor, auspex (poet.): e.g. te dŭce, *under your leadership;* me auctōre, *by my advice* or *authority;* auspĭce Teucro, *under the auspices of Teucer* (Hor. Od. 1, 7, 27).

§ 590. *Collective for Plural.*—Singular Nouns are not unfrequently used in a collective sense: as,

Ager . . . . *arbŏre* infēcundus, *unproductive in trees.*—Sall. (Jug. 17.)

Pulvīnus *rŏsā* fartus, *stuffed with roses.*—Cic. (Verr. 5, 27.)

Armāto mīlĭte, *with armed men.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 20.)

§ 591. *Generalization of Nouns.*—Abstract Nouns denoting a particular act or feature are sometimes generalized,

especially in the plural, so as to denote a corresponding quality, or the whole of such features collectively.

EXAMPLES:—mos, *custom;* mōres, *morality, morals;* also, with reference to a person, *character:*—offĭcium, *an act of kindness, a duty;* hence, *kindness, the sense of duty* (cf. Cic. Fin. 2, 99, isto tuo cĕgrĕgio offĭcio et tanta fĭde, *kindness and fidelity;* tanta offĭcia, *so lively a sense of duty,* ib.): vĭtium, *a fault;* vĭtia, *vices,* or collectively, *vice:* sordes, *squalor;* plur. *meanness, baseness:* flāgĭtium, *a disgraceful act;* flāgĭtia, *profligacy.*

§ 592. *Abstract for Concrete.*—The use of abstract Nouns for concrete occurs chiefly in the following cases:

(1.) Some Nouns denoting *age, rank in life* or *office,* are used as *Collectives:* as jŭventus, *a body of young men;* nōbĭlitas, *the nobility;* servĭtium (esp. *pl.* servĭtia), *slaves;* impĕria (*pl.*), *commanding officers, governors* (Cic. Leg. 3, 9; Caes. B. C. 1, 31); lĕvis, grăvis armātūra, *light* or *heavy-armed troops:* also less frequently, advŏcātio, *the body of* advocati; sălūtātio, *morning callers* (Cic. Fam. 9, 20); rēmĭgium, *the rowers;* mĭnistĕrium (esp. *pl.*), *servants* (late); lātrōcĭnium, *banditti,* etc.

(2.) Nouns denoting a *quality* or *character* are used for the persons to which they apply: as,

Neque ego per *ignāviam* aut vāna ingĕnia incerta pro certis captārem, *by the help of cowardly men.*—Sall. (Cat. 20.)

Omnium *flāgĭtiōrum* atque *făcĭnŏrum* circa se cătervas hăbēbat, *of profligate fellows and desperadoes.*—Sall. (Cat. 14.)

§ 593. *Generic Plural.*—Sometimes the plural of an abstract Noun may be rendered by "*kinds of:*" as,

Quattuor *perturbātiones* sunt, tres *constantiae, four kinds of mental disturbance, three of tranquillity.*—Cic. (Tusc. 4, 14.)

Somno et *quiētibus* cētĕris, *kinds of repose.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 103.)

§ 594. Similarly the plural is used to denote *repeated manifestations* of a quality: as,

Utilitātibus tuis possum cărēre, *I can dispense with your services.*—Cic. (Fam. 16, 3.)

Ipsōrum Deōrum saepe *praesentiae, repeated appearances.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 166.)

Cūrātiones ejus non prŏbo, *modes of* (*medical*) *treatment.*—Cic. (Fam. 16, 4.)

So crūdēlĭtātes, *acts of cruelty;* perfĭdiae, *of treachery;* bŏnĭtātes, *of goodness,* etc.

§ 595. *Generalization of Verbal Nouns.*—A Verbal Noun is often generalised by the addition of rērum, i.e. *of things in general* (not needing to be expressed in English): as,

Cognĭtio rērum, *The pursuit of knowledge.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 155.)

Nĭmis cĕlĕri *despērātiōne* rērum, *By too hasty despair.*—Liv. (21, 1.)

Nātūra rērum, *Nature* (in widest sense).—Cic. (*freq.*)

§ 596. Instead of a Verbal Noun we not unfrequently find used a Perfect Participle Passive, especially after a Preposition (see § 528): as,

Post Hasdrŭbălis exercĭtum *dēlētum*, *After the destruction of Hasdrubal's army.*—Liv. (28, 12.)

Propter crēbrius de cælo *lapidātum*, *On account of unusually frequent showers of stones.*—Liv. (29, 10.)

Obs. Rarely as the Subject of a sentence however (never in Cic.). Such an example as the following is exceptional—

Quum *occīsus dictator* . . . . pulcherrimum făcĭnus vīdērētur, *When the assassination of the dictator seemed a most glorious achievement.*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 8, *fin.*)

§ 597. *Verbal Nouns governing the same case as the Verbs.*—This takes place occasionally with Nouns derived from Verbs governing the Dative: as,

Justĭtĭa est obtempĕrātio *lēgĭbus*, *Justice is obedience to the laws.*—Cic. (Leg. 1, 42.) (See § 291, 6.)

Obs. The above construction is, however, exceptional. Still more rare is the Accusative after Nouns derived from a Transitive Verb: as,

Quid tibi *hanc* dīgĭto *tactio* est, *What right have you to touch this woman with your finger?*—Pl. (Poen. 5, 5, 29.)

(For such a construction as *id* dare operam, see § 253.)

§ 598. *Nouns as Adjectives.*—Nouns denoting an *agent*, especially those derived from Verbs, are sometimes used as Adjectives: as,

Contemptor ănĭmus, *A scornful temper.*—Sall. (Jug. 64.)

Fœdĕrum *ruptor* dux et pŏpŭlus, *The treaty-breaking general and his people.*—Liv. (21, 40, *fin.*)

Illa scĕlĕrāta et paene *dēlētrix* hujus impĕrii sīca, *That accursed dagger* [*and*] *well nigh fatal to this empire.*—Auct. Har. Resp. 49.

Plēbĭcŏla trĭbūnus, *A popularity-courting tribune.*—Cic. (Agr. 2, 84.)

Pŏpŭlus lāte rex, *ruling far and wide.*—Virg. (Aen. 1, 21.)

Exercĭtus tīro, *A raw army.*—Liv. (21, 39.)

§ 599. **Nēmo.**—Instead of *nullus*, nēmo is used in apposition with Nouns denoting *men:* as,

Nēmo vir bŏnus, nēmo ădŏlescens, nēmo pictor, *No good man, no youth, no painter.*—(all in Cic.)

Obs. In the same manner we find *quisquam homo, quisquam civis*, etc.

§ 600. *Diminutives.*—These are used with great variety of signification; implying *affection, pity, contempt*, and kindred feelings (cf. § 680, ii.): as,

Hac tămen oblectābar *spĕcŭlā, However I pleased myself with this gleam of hope.*—Cic. (Fam. 2, 16, *ad fin.*)

Mercēdulā adducti, *Induced by paltry gain.*—Cic. (de Or. 1, 198.)

Graecŭlus ēsŭriens, *The poor half-starved Greek.*—Juv. (3, 78.)

Illa aurĕola ōrātiuncŭla, *That golden little speech.*—Cic. (N. D. 3, 43.) (In this example, note that both Adjective and Noun are diminutives.)

§ 601. *Ellipsis.*—Many Nouns are often left to be understood from the Gender of Adjectives used with them: see § 341.

§ 602. *Hendiadys* (cf. § 699, 2).—Sometimes two Nouns are used to convey a single notion (ἓν διὰ δυοῖν): as,

Păterīs lībāmus et *auro, from bowls of* (Lit. *and*) *gold.*—Virg. (G. 2, 192.)

Nātūra pŭdorque meus, *My natural bashfulness.*—Cic. (R. Am. 9.)

Dēlectātiōnis atque aurium causā, *For the purpose of gratifying the ear.*—Cic. (de Or. 3, 173.)

Obs. Dräger remarks that many of the instances of this mode of speech commonly cited are apparent rather than real; and that true Hendiadys is comparatively rare. (Cf. Cic. R. Am. 149, ad dicendum impedimento est *aetas et pudor*, qui ornat aetatem, where aetas et pudor have been rendered, '*Youthful modesty*,' whereas the following clause shows that pudor must be taken separately. *Hist. Syn.* ii. p. 12.)

§ 603. *Plural equivalent to Singular.*—The following Plurals among others are used (especially in poetry) without considerable difference from Singulars:

pectŏra,	*the breast.*	regna,	*realms, a kingdom.*
cervīces,	*the (back of the) neck.*	tecta,	*abode.*
colla,	*the neck.*	ōtia,	*repose.*
ōra	*the face.*	sīlentia,	*silence.*
terga,	*the back.*	pondĕra,	*weight.*

Obs. This usage is especially frequent in the case of words whose singular would be less manageable in verse.

§ 604. *Metonymy.*—Sometimes a Noun is by a figure of speech used to denote something with which it is closely connected: as,

Bacchus	*god of wine*	is used for	*wine.*
căput	*head*	,,	*life; civil status.*
Cĕres	*goddess of corn*	,,	*corn.*
fasces	*the fasces*	,,	*the consulate.*
Jūpĭter	*god of the heavens*	,,	*the sky.*
mănus	*the hand*	,,	*violence; ownership.*
Mars	*god of war*	,,	*war, strife.*
Mĭnerva	*goddess of art*	,,	*art, genius, wit.*
nōmen	*name*	,,	*nation; debt.*
practōrium	*general's tent*	,,	*council of war; office of commander.*
săgum	*a war-cloak*	,,	*a state of war.*
sĕcūres	*axes*	,,	*power of life and death.*
sīca	*a dagger*	,,	*assassination.*
stĭlus	*a writing-style*	,,	*writing; style.*
stōla	*a matron's gown*	,,	*a matron.*
tăbella	*a voting ticket*	,,	*ballot.*
tŏga	*the gown of peace*	,,	*the state and arts of peace.*
venter	*the belly*	,,	*gluttony.*
Vĕnus	*goddess of love and beauty*	,,	*love, beauty.*
Vulcānus	*god of fire*		*fire.*

§ 605. *Synecdŏchē.*—Sometimes a characteristic *part* of a thing is put for the whole. The following Nouns among others are so used:

cărīna	*a keel*	is used for	*a ship.*
căput	*a head*	,,	*a man* or *woman.*
pecten	*a quill or stick for a lyre*	,,	*the lyre.*
puppis	*a stern*	,,	*a ship.*
tectum	*a roof*	,,	*a house.*

2. Proper Names.

§ 606. *Names of tribes for countries.*—The names of tribes and nations, especially those less known, are often used for the country in which they live. Thus in Caesar we continually meet with such expressions as, ex Menăpiis, *out of the country of the Menapii;* in Nantuātibus, *in the country of the Nantuates;* etc. In the case of less civilized tribes, there often exists no separate name for the country.

§ 607. The singular of a national name, as Rōmānus, Poenus, Graecus, is often used in narrative where the sense requires the plural (comp. § 590): as,

Romanus consĕrĕre pugnam . . . . . contra ēlūdĕre *Poenus, The Romans . . . . the Carthaginians . . .*—Liv. (21, 50.)

§ 608. Names of nations, and even of persons, are sometimes used adjectively by the poets: as,

Galla (= Gallĭca) crūdēlĭtas, *Gallic cruelty.*—Mart. (5, 1, 10.)
Sўra (= Syrĭăca) vīna, *Syrian wines.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 31, 12.)
Rōmŭla (= Romulea) tellus, *The land of Romulus.*—Virg. (Aen. 6, 876.)

§ 609. *Patronymics.*—The use of these, being borrowed from the Greek poets, is strictly limited to poetry. Sometimes a Proper name and a Patronymic are used together—as Priămĭdes Hĕlĕnus, *Helenus, son of Priam*—Atlantis Maia, *Maia, daughter of Atlas.* But ordinarily the Patronymic is used alone, as being itself a Proper name.

Chapter LV.—Adjectives.

§ 610. The Syntax and ordinary uses of Adjectives have been already explained (Chap. XXXVI., Second Concord; and Chap. XLII.). It only remains to notice a few peculiarities.

§ 611. A derivative Adjective is often equivalent to a Noun in the Genitive Case: as,

Pĕcūniae *alĭēnae* (= aliorum), *The money of others.*—Cic. (R. A. 137.)
Dĕcemvĭrālē (= decemvirorum, *Obj. Gen.* see § 268) ŏdium, *The hatred entertained for the Decemviri.*—Liv. (3, 42.)

Obs. Occasionally a relative pronoun is made to agree with an antecedent implied in such a derivative Adjective: as,

Factum ĕtiam nūper in Itălia *servīli* (= servōrum) tŭmultu *quos*, etc., *in the rebellion of the slaves, whom*, etc.—Caes. (B. G. 1, 40, 5.)

§ 612. **Nullus.**—The Adjective *nullus* in colloquial language is sometimes used adverbially (= non, but more emphatic): as,

Lĭbĕrātus sum hŏdie . . . Ac *nullus* quidem, *I have been saved today.—Not you indeed* ('*not a bit of it*').—Ter. (Andr. 2, 2, 33.)
Si non quaerit, *nullus* dixĕris, *If he does not ask, don't you say.*—Ter. (Hec. 1, 2, 4.)
Phĭlōtīmus non mŏdo *nullus* vĕnit, sed, etc., *Philotimus not only does not come* (*I never see anything of him*), *but, &c.*—Cic. (Att. 11, 24.)

Obs. Except in colloquial language, the proper force of *nullus* may always be seen: e.g.—

Nōlīte existīmāre, me quum a vōbis discessĕro, nusquam aut *nullum* fŏre, *Do not suppose that when I have left you I shall not exist any where or at all* (= *be a person at all*).—Cic. (Sen. 79.)
Haec bŏna in tăbŭlas publĭcas *nulla* rĕdiĕrunt, *No such goods have been entered in the public books at all.*—Cic. (R. Am. 128.)

§ 613. Sexcenti.—This numeral is used to denote an indefinitely large number: as,

Sexcentae ĕpistŭlae, *An immense number of letters.*—Cic. (Att. 7, 2.)
Sexcenta ejusmŏdi, *Any number of things of the kind.*—Cic. (Div. 2, 34.)

Chapter LVI.—Pronouns.

§ 614. *Strengthening of Pronouns.*—It has been already observed (§ 357) that the Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of sentences, unless for the sake of emphasis. They may be rendered still more emphatic by the following means:

(1.) By the addition of **ipse** (see § 377); with which however the words ĕgo, tu, etc., are not usually expressed.

(2.) By the suffixes **mĕt, tĕ** (see § 76, *Obs.* 1): as ĕgŏmet, tēmet, nosmet, etc. The suffix met may be added to all cases of the pronouns ĕgo, tu, sui, excepting the Gen. Pl. of ĕgo, tu, and the Nom. Sing. of tu: -te is only used with tu (tūtĕ).

Obs. These suffixes are often combined with ipse: hence, *nosmĕtĭpsos, nolismetipsis*, etc.

(3.) By the addition of the emphatic particle **ădeo**: see § 653.

§ 615. Sometimes a Pronoun (especially ille) is redundant in the second member of a double sentence, when it has been expressed or implied in the former. It then adds vivacity to the expression: as,

Nunc dextra ingĕmĭnans ictus, nunc *ille* sĭnistra, *Now with his right hand redoubling his blows; now* [doing it] *with his left.*—Virg. (Aen. 5, 457.)

Nec dulces ămōres Sperne puer, neque *tu* chŏrĕas, *Nor scorn in youth sweet loves, nor scorn* [thou] *the dance.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 9, 16.)

Obs. This idiom appears to be imitated from the Greek. Compare

Ἦ τινας ἐκ Πύλου ἄξει ἀμύντορας . . . .
Ἦ ὅγε καὶ Σπάρτηθεν.—Hom. Od. 2, 327.

§ 616. Ille (quĭdem) is also used idiomatically with an appositive Adjective, to which it gives emphasis: as,

Phĭlŏsŏphi quīdam, mĭnīme măli *illi* quĭdem, sed non sătis ăcūti, *far from bad men they, indeed, but not very acute.*—Cic. (Off. 3, 39.)

Similarly with an Adverb: as,

Enucleāte *ille* quĭdem et pŏlīte, sed . . . ., *Clearly it is true* [he speaks], *and with polish, but*, &c.—Cic. (Br. 115.)

§ 617. **Ipse.**—The ordinary rule for the case of ipse has been already given (§ 377). The following special observations are borrowed from Zumpt (L. G. § 696):

(1.) Cicero is partial to construing ipse as the Subject even when the emphasis belongs to the Object: as,

Ut non mŏdo pŏpŭlo Rōmāno sed ĕtiam sĭbi *ipse* condemnātus vĭdērētur, *not only to the Roman people, but even* [himself] *to himself*.—Cic. (Verr. Act. 1, 17.)

(Compare the foll.: non ita ăbundo ingĕnio ut te consōler, quum *ipse* me non possim, id. Fam. 4, 8: quid est nĕgōtii contĭnēre eos quibus praesis, si te *ipse* contĭneas, id. Q. Fr. 1, 1, 2.)

(2.) When joined to a possessive pronoun in a reflexive clause, ipse usually takes the case of the Subject: as, meam ipse lēgem negligo, tuam *ipse* lēgem neglĭgis, not meam *ipsius*, tuam *ipsius*, etc. The genitive is necessary only where ipse refers to another than the Subject: as, tuā *ipsius* causā [ego] hoc fēci, etc. But exceptions to this rule occur both in Cic. and elsewhere.

§ 618. **Et ipse** is used when a new Subject is added to a predicate already expressed or implied: as,

Cornēlio mĭnus cōpiarum dătum, quia L. Manlius *et ipse* . . . . in Galliam mittēbātur, *because L. Manlius was* also *being sent into Gaul*.—Liv. (21, 17.) (It having been already mentioned that Cornelius was going into Gaul.)

Is *et ipse* Alpīnus amnis . . . . difficillimus transĭtu est. *This (the Durance) being* also *an Alpine stream* . . .—Liv. (ib. 31.) (Two Alpine streams having been before mentioned.)

§ 619. The neuter of is (et id, idque) is used without reference to any particular Noun (comp. § 374), when an additional particular is stated (= "*and that*"): as,

Doctum hŏmĭnem cognōvi, et stŭdiis optĭmis dēdĭtum, *idque* a puĕro, *I have known him* . . ., and that *from a boy*.—Cic. (Fam. 13, 16.)

(Similarly in Greek καὶ ταῦτα.)

§ 620. **Idem.**—The ordinary correlative of idem is qui (see § 379). Instead of the Relative we also find atque (ac), et; more rarely ut, cum; and (in poetry only) the Dative: as,

Anĭmus (est) te erga *ĭdem ac* fuit, *Her feelings towards you are the same as they were*.—Ter. (Heaut. 2, 3, 24.)

Si quaerātur *ĭdem*ne sit pertĭnācia *et* persĕvērantia, *If the question be asked whether obstinacy is the same as perseverance*.—Cic. (Top. 87.)

Utrique *ĭdem* făciunt, *ut* si laevam partem neglĕgĕrent, dextĕram tuērentur, *as if they were to neglect*, &c.—Cic. (Fin. 4, 36.)

Eōdem *mecum* patre gĕnĭtus, *Born of the same father with me.*—Tac. (A. 15, 2.)

Invītum qui servat *īdem* făcit *occĭdenti, does the same as one who should murder him.*—Hor. A. P. (467.) (Comp. Gr. ταὐτὰ ἐμοὶ βούλει.)

§ 621. Qui is used in parenthetical clauses to state the ground of something: as,

Si mihi permīsisses, *qui meus ămor in te est*, confĕcissem, etc., *such is my affection for you.*—Cic. (Fam. 7, 2.)

Qua prūdentĭa es, nĭhil te fŭgiet, *Being a person of such sagacity as you are*, etc.—Brut. ap. Cic. (Fam. 11, 13.)

(Qua prudentia, Abl. of Quality: see § 319.)

§ 622. Quis is sometimes used in a tone of impatience or indignation (Gr. ποιός): as,

Quem tu mĭhi Stăseam, *quem* Peripătētĭcum narras? *Don't talk to me of your Staseas, your Peripatetics!*—Cic. (de Or. 1, 105.)

§ 623. The interrogative quid is used in animated language to pass from one point to another ("*what of this?*"), where it may be approximately rendered by "*and then:*" as,

Quid lēges vĕtĕres mōresque mājōrum? *quid* auspĭcia? etc., And then, *the laws and customs of our ancestors;* and then *the auspices*, etc.—Cic. (de Or. 1, 39.)

Quid in lĕvĭōrĭbus stŭdiis? And then *in less serious pursuits*, etc.—Cic. (Sen. 50.)

Obs. The expression is elliptical, *dicam* or some other word being understood.

§ 624. The neuter quid is often used interrogatively where persons are concerned: as,

Quid nōbis duōbus lăbōrĭōsius dīci aut fingi pŏtest? *What can be mentioned or conceived more overwhelmed with trouble than we two?*—Cic. (Mil. 5.)

Obs. Similarly *nĭhil:* cf. Cic. Fam. 4, 4, victor quo *nĭhil* ĕrat mŏdĕrātius: and with a partitive genitive, quantum (e.g. hŏmĭnum, Ter. Ph. 5, 6, 13): quicquid (e.g. deōrum, Hor. Epod. 5, *init.*).

§ 625. It has been already stated that quis, as an Indefinite Pronoun, is chiefly found after si, nē, num, or in composition (see § 383). But it is sometimes used alone as the least emphatic *any* (= Gr. τίς), when it is generally an enclitic: as,

Simplĭcior *quis* est? *Is* one *simpler than ordinary?*—Hor. (S. 1, 3, 63.)

Morbus aut ĕgestas aut *quid* ejusmŏdi, *Disease or privation or* anything *of that kind* (= τοιοῦτόν τι).—Cic. (Off. 3, 30.)

§ 626. Nescio quĭs, *I know not who*, i. e. *some one or other* (nearly = aliquis, but usually with the accessory idea of the person being unimportant), is treated as if it were a compound of quis, the nescio having no effect upon the syntax: as,

Pacōnii nescio *cūjus* quĕrēlis, *By the complaints of one Paconius, whoever he may be.*—Cic. (Q. Fr. 1, 1, 6.)

Prŏpe me hīc nescio *quis* lŏquĭtur, *Some one* or other *is speaking here close to me.*—Pl. (Pers. 1, 3, 19.)

Similarly, nescio quid = aliquid (nearly); and may be used adverbially: nescio quid perturbātus, *somewhat alarmed:* Cic. (Ph. 2, 36.)

Obs. Strictly *nescio quis* forms a parenthesis, the verb to *quis* being supplied from the other part of the sentence.

§ 627. Si quis, *if any*, is sometimes nearly equivalent to quicunque, *whosoever, whatsoever* (like Gr. εἴ τις = ὅστις): as,

Nūda fĕre Alpium căcūmĭna sūnt, et *si quid* est pābŭli, obruunt nĭves, *if there is any pasture* (= *what little pasture there is*).—Liv. (21, 37.)

Arāneŏlae quāsi rēte contexunt, ut *si quid* inhaesĕrit, conficiant, *whatever has stuck in it.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 123.)

Illi ĕtiam, *si quos* fūdĭmus, appārent, *those whom we put to rout.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 420.)

§ 628. Quŏtus, *what number?* is an ordinal, belonging to the series primus, secundus, etc. It is used idiomatically, so as to include the other persons or things not expressly mentioned (cf. Gk. αὐτὸς τέταρτος, *himself the fourth*, i.e. *himself and three others*): as,

Tu *quŏtus* esse vĕlis rescrībe, *Write back what number you would like there to be* (*including yourself*).—Hor. (Ep. 1, 5, 30.)

Quŏtus erit iste dēnārius, qui non sit fĕrendus, *What shall be the precise number of denarii that is not to be allowed?*—Cic. (Verr. 3, 220.)

Quŏtusquisque (or as two words) is used when it is implied that the number is very small: as,

Quŏtus ĕnim *quisque* formōsus est, *For what a small proportion of men are handsome!*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 79.)

§ 629. Ălius.—The use of alius .... alius, alter ... alter, has already been noted (§ 390). Alius is often repeated in a different case (= *one .... another*): as,

Sardos vēnāles, ălium ălio nēquiorem, *one worse than another.*—Cic. (Fam. 7, 24.)

Alius ălio mōre vīventes, *Living one in one way, another in another.*—Sall. (Cat. 6.)

Obs. So with an adverb in the second place, as alius alio, alius aliter, *one in one way, another in another*, etc.

Also alter . . altĕrĭus, altĕrum supplies the place of a reciprocal Pronoun (Gk. ἀλλήλους), which is wanting in Latin: as,

Deinde aequĭtate justĭtiaque gaudēbunt, omniaque *alter* pro *altero* susclpiet, neque . . . . postŭlabit: neque sōlum cŏlent, etc., *will undertake anything in the world for each other*.—Cic. (Am. 82). (Observe the sing. verb after the introduction of alter; the plural being resumed directly afterwards.)

§ 630. Alius is followed by atque (ac), nīsi (the latter after a negative), praeter, quam: as,

Longe *ălia* nōbis *ac* tu scripseras narrantur, *Very different news is brought me from what you had written*.—Cic. (Att. 11, 10.)

Erat hĭstŏria nĭhil *ăliud nīsi* confectio annālium, *nothing more than*.—Cic. (de Or. 2, 52.)

So, Quid est *ăliud* . . bellāre cum dis, *nisi* nātūrae repugnāre (quid est aliud being a virtual negative = nihil aliud)?—Cic. (Sen. 5.)

Rŏgāvit num quid *ăliud* ferret *praeter* arcam, *anything else besides the box*.—Cato ap. Cic. (de Or. 2, 279.)

Lȳsander nĭhil *ăliud* mōlītus *quam* ut omnes cīvĭtātes in suā tĕnĕret pŏtestāte, *nothing short of holding*, etc.—Nep. (Lys. 1.) (Rare and dub. in Cic.)

Obs. 1. The use of *et* after alius (= atque, ac) is very doubtful. In Cic. Cael. 67, Lux longe *alia* est sōlis et lychnorum, the *et* is simply copulative: '*sunlight is one thing and lamplight another*.' (See the place.)

Obs. 2. The Ablative (of comparison, § 320) after alius is altogether exceptional:

Nēve pūtes *ălium săpiente* bŏnoque beātum, *And deem none happy other than the wise and good*.—Hor. (Ep. 1, 16, 20.)

Chapter LVII.—Verbs.

§ 631. The principal uses of the Moods and Tenses have been already explained. The following observations are of a miscellaneous character.

§ 632. *Impersonal use of the Passive*.—This construction (see § 291, *Obs.* 1) is very frequent in the best writers, and is often preferred even where the same sense might be expressed by the Active Voice: especially—(1) When the Subject, being obvious, is readily supplied; (2) When it is indefinite or unimportant: as,

(1.) De Tărentīnis magnā contentiōne in sĕnātu *actum*, *The case of the Tarentines was warmly debated in* [and by] *the senate.*—Liv. (27, 25.)

Huic consŭli *permissum* ut duas lĕgiones scrīberet novas, *The consul was empowered* [by the Senate] *to raise*, etc.—Liv. (35, 20.)

(2.) Quum *tŭmultuātum* in castris scīret, *that there had been a disturbance made* [by some persons] *in the camp.*—id. (25, 21.)

So frequently, allātum est, *News was brought.*—Liv.: Tac.

De quo pŭtas ad me *missum esse*, *sit missum* necne nescio, *As to the point you think word has been sent me about* [name of the sender, perhaps, purposely kept back], *whether it has been sent or no, I know not.*—Cic. (Att. 12, 28.)

Obs. In such cases, for the most part, attention is called rather to the action than the agent.

§ 633. *Passive as Middle or Reflexive* (see also § 252).—Passive Verbs have not unfrequently a reflexive sense, like the Greek Middle Voice: as, mŏvēri, *to move* (oneself); verti, *to turn* (oneself), *revolve;* prĕmi, *to depress* (oneself), *sink*: e.g.—

Quod semper *mŏvētur* aeternum est, *That which moves for ever is eternal.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 53.)

Vertĭtur interĕā caelum, *Meantime the heavens revolve.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 250.)

Mundus . . . . *prĕmĭtur* Lĭbўae *dēvexus* ad Austros, *The world sinks and slopes downwards towards the south of Africa.*—id. (G. 1, 241).

§ 634. *Perfect used ἀορίστως* [like the Aorist in Greek].—The Perfect Indicative is often used, especially in poetry, of that which regularly or repeatedly takes place: as,

Illĭus immensae *rūpērunt* horrea messes, *That man's enormous crops burst his barns* (i.e. *are sure to do so*).—Virg. (G. 1, 49.)

Saepe ĕtiam stĕrĭles incendĕre *prōfuit* agros, *Often too it does good to fire the barren fields.*—(ib. 84.)

Hinc ăpĭcem Fortūna *sustŭlit*, illic *pŏsuisse* gaudet, *From one head Fortune removes the diadem, on another she is pleased to rest it.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 34, *fin.*)

Obs. In the last example, the Perfect Infinitive is used in the same way.

§ 635. *Ellipsis of the Verb.*—This of course occurs only where the verb may be without difficulty supplied. The following cases may be noted:—

(1.) The 3rd Pers. Sing. and Plur. of sum are very often omitted in short aphoristic sentences: as,

Omnia praeclāra rāra, *All fine things* [*are*] *rare.*—Cic. (Am. 79.)

Quot hŏmĭnes, tot sententiae, *There are as many minds as men.*—Ter. (Ph. 2, 4, 14.)

Also in descriptions: as,

Animus audax, subdŏlus, vărius, etc., *His spirit* [*was*] *daring, crafty, versatile.*—Sall. (C. 5.) (Compare § 664, *Obs.*)

Obs. 1. This ellipsis chiefly occurs where the Verb would be in the Present Tense (including the *Praesens Historicum:* § 393).

Obs. 2. **Esse** is more frequently omitted than expressed in the Future Infinitive Active.

(2.) Inquam, inquit, or some such Verb, is frequently omitted when the words spoken follow. Especially in such phrases as—

Tum Cotta, tum Crassus, *Then* [*said*] *Cotta, Crassus,* etc.—Cic. de Or. (passim).

Obs. 1. After *tum* the verb is very often presently added: as,

Tum rīdens, Scaevŏla, non luctābor, *inquit,* tecum, Crasse, amplius, *Thereupon with a smile, says Scaevola,* &c.—id. (Or. 1, 74.)

Obs. 2. To this head belongs the common superscription of letters, sălūtem (*sc.* dicit), Cic. Ep. (passim).

(3.) In dedications, dĭcat, or some such word: as,

Aenēas *haec* de Dănăis victōribus arma, *Aeneas this trophy* [*dedicates*] *from the victorious Greeks.*—Virg. (Aen. 3, 288.)

Obs. So in titles of books: as,

Cicĕrōnis de Offĭciis ad fīlium suum lĭber [scriptus], *A work of Cicero concerning moral duties, addressed to his son.*

(4.) Dent, duint, in prayers: as,

Di mĕliōra, *The gods* [*grant*] *a better lot* (like our *God forbid!*) —Cic. (freq.)

(5.) In colloquial language, any Verb that may be readily supplied: as,

De Lollio [*sc.* quod fecisti], sānus non es, [*As for what you have done*] *about Lollius, you must be out of your mind.*—Cic. (Att. 2, 2.)

Inde cōgĭto Arpīnum (*sc.* ire), *After that I purpose* [*going*] *to Arpinum.*—id. (Att. 2, 8.)

A me Caesar *pĕcūniam* (*sc.* postulat), *Caesar* [*expects*] *money from me!*—id. (Phil. 2, 72.)

Quid multa [*sc.* dīcam]; clāmōres [*sc.* sĕcūti sunt], *Not to make a long story of it, acclamations* [*followed*].—id. (Att. 1, 14, 5.)

Verbum cāve [*sc.* dicas] de nuptiis, ne ad morbum hoc ĕtiam [*sc.* accēdat], *Take care not* [*to say*] *a word about the wedding, lest in addition to her illness* [*there be added*] *this further shock.*—Ter. (And. 1, 5, 65.)

(6.) When it may be supplied from another Verb in the same sentence: as,

Nĭhil ălĭud nĭsi hoc *narrasse* fertur, *He is said to have* [*done*] *nothing but relate the following story.*—Liv. (2, 32.)

Ventrem nĭhil ălĭud [făcĕre] quam dătis vŏluptātibus *frui*, *The belly* (*they said*) [*did*] *nothing else than enjoy the pleasures afforded it.*—ib.

§ 636. *Repetition of Verb.*—This takes place—

(1.) In answering a question (where in English "Yes" or "No" would be used): as,

Nempe *nĕgas* ad beāte vīvendum sătis posse virtūtem?—Prorsus *nĕgo*, *You deny then that virtue is of sufficient avail for a happy life?—Yes, I do, altogether.*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 12.)

*Da*sne aut mănēre ănĭmos post mortem, aut morte ipsā intĕrīre?—*Do* vĕro, *Do you grant that the soul either survives after death, or perishes at the moment of death?—Yes, I do.*—Cic. (ib. 1, 25.)

Obs. But the Verb is not always repeated: as,

An tu haec non crēdis?—Mīnīme vĕro, *Don't you believe in those things?—No, indeed!*—(ib. 1, 10.)

(2.) When a second action is represented as performed on the same object, the preceding Verb is often repeated as a participle: as,

Quum urbem vi *cēpissent*, *captam*que dīrĭpuissent, *Having taken the city by storm, and then pillaged it.*—Liv. (22, 20.)

Eam rem consŭles ad Patres *dētŭlērunt*; sed *dēlātam* consŭlĕre ordĭne non lĭcuit, *The consuls laid the matter before the senate, but they were not allowed to consider it* [the matter as *laid before them*] *in a regular way.*—id. (2, 28.)

§ 637. **Substantival Use of Participles.**—What has been said (§ 339) respecting the substantival use of Adjectives, applies generally to Participles. The following observations are of a more special nature.

§ 638. *Imperfect Participle.*—The substantival use of this Participle is most frequent in the Plural. It is less frequent in the oblique cases of the Singular, and in the Nom. Sing. does not occur at all. Examples—

Addĭdit et ălĭam *fidentis* spĕciem, *He added an additional token of confidence* [Lit. *of one feeling confidence*].—Liv. (27, 2.)

Erranti monstrāre viam, *To point out the way to one who has strayed.*—Enn. ap. Cic.

[Quisque] acūtius atque acrius vĭtia *in dicente* quam recta vĭdet, *in a speaker.*—Cic. (Or. 1, 116.)

Sōli rātione *ūtentes* jūre ac lēge vīvunt, *those who make use of reason.*—id. (N. D. 2, 154.)

Hoc gĕnus *dēlĭbĕrantium* pellātur e mĕdio, *this class of questioners.*—id. (Off. 3, 37.)

Quid est tam commūne quam .... māre *fluctuantibus, to those tossed on the waves.*—id. (Rosc. A. 72.)

Multae bestiae *insectantes* ŏdōris intŏlĕrābĭli fœdĭtāte dēpellunt, *drive away their pursuers.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 127.)

Obs. 1. Instead of the Nom. Sing., and often of the Nom. Plur. of the Participle, we find either the verbal substantive in -tor, or a Relative clause.

Obs. 2. Some participles, as ănĭmans, *an animal;* āmans, *a lover,* having become true Substantives, are used in all Cases.

Obs. 3. Sometimes, especially in the Gen. Plur., the Imperfect Participle is so used as to have the effect of an abstract Noun: as,

Dīversĭtas *trādentium, Disagreement of tradition* (lit. *of those handing down,* viz. *the accounts*).—Suet. (Cal. 8.)

§ 639. *Future Participle.*—The substantival use of this participle is less frequent, and belongs chiefly to later writers: as,

Illud quod tantum pĕrĭtūri vĭdent, *An object which only the doomed to death behold.*—Tac. (G. 40.)

Mire *auditūrum dictūri* cūra dēlectat, *Care on the part of one about to speak greatly pleases him who is to hear.*—Quint. (11, 3, 157.)

Tam vărie se gessit, ut nec *laudātūrum* magna, nec *vĭtŭpĕrātūrum* mĕdiocris mātĕria dēfĭciat, *He conducted himself in such different ways that while to the eulogist ample material, to the censor what is not inconsiderable is afforded.*—Vell. (2, 101.)

§ 640. *Perfect Participle Passive.*—This participle is used substantively, both in the Masculine of *persons,* and in the Neuter of *things* or *acts.*

§ 641. The *Masculine* is so used chiefly in

Nūmĕrum jūre *caesōrum* obtĭnēre, *To be put justly slain.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 43.)

Ut de vi et mājestāte *damnāti* ad pŏpŭl *demned for violence and treason.*—id. (Phil. 1

§ 642. The *Neuter* is so used—

(1.) To denote *a thing done:* most frequently in the Plural, but also in the Singular: as,

Facta illustria et glōriōsa, *Deeds distinguished and glorious.*—Cic. (Fin. 1, 37.)

Cētĕrōrum nĕque *dictum* obscūrum pŏtest esse, ... nĕque tĕmĕre *dicto* concēdi, *As for the rest, neither can what they say remain in the dark, nor what they say indiscreetly be condoned.*—id. (Rosc. A. 3.)

Obs. Sometimes the use of such words fluctuates between that of Nouns and that of Participles; as in the second of the above examples; where *dictum* is a true Noun, while *dicto* is a Participle, and as such modified by an Adverb. So we find *recte* facta (Cic. Leg. 2, 9), as well as facta *illustria, fortia,* etc. In the following example the two usages are combined in the case of one and the same word:

Mŏvēmur saepe ălĭquo ācūte *conclūso, We are often affected by some acute argument.*—Cic. (Tusc. 1, 78.)

(2.) In the Neut. Sing. (but not in the Nom. Case), with the force of an abstract Noun: v. § 528. Especially in such phrases as ex compŏsīto, *by agreement;* ex empto, ex vendĭto, *by purchase, by sale,* etc.

§ 643. **Zeugma.**—Sometimes a Verb which is strictly appropriate only in one connexion, is by a modification of its meaning made to serve in another : as,

Rōmānis Germānisque ĭdem condūcĕre [pŭtābam], et pācem quam bellum *prŏbābam, I deemed the interests of Romans and Germans to be the same, and approved of peace rather than war.*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 58.)

(Here probabam has to be taken in the modified sense of putabam in the first member of the sentence.)

Nos Maurĭci Rustĭcīque vīsus, nos innŏcenti sanguĭne Sĕnĕcio *perfūdit, Us the sight of Mauricus and Rusticus* [horrified], *us Senecio drenched with guiltless blood.*—Tac. (Agr. 45.)

(See also Virg. G. 1, 93, where the predicate adūrat has to be taken with three Subjects—plŭviae . . . pŏtentia sōlis . . . . frīgus, [redacted] modified accordingly.)

Chapter LVIII.—Adverbs and Prepositions.

§ 644. **Adverbs.**—Ĭta, *so*, is often used elliptically, the correlative to it being too obvious to need expressing. This is the case—

(1.) After non, haud, when it is equivalent to admŏdum, *very* (*not so much so as might have been expected*): as,

Sunt ea (sĭmŭlācra) pĕrampla et praeclāra, sed non *ita* antīqua, *of no very great antiquity*.—Cic. (Verr. 4, 109.)

Nec *ita* multo post, *And not very long after*.—Liv. (10, 12.)

(2.) In adjurations: as,

Ita me dii ăment, hŏnestus est, *So may heaven love me, (as) he is a fine gentleman!*—Ter. (Eun. 3, 2, 21.)

Obs. In the same way *sic* is used: see Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.

§ 645. **Mĭnus, părum, mălĕ.**—These three Adverbs are often used with a negative force, when they are equivalent to a softened *non*: as,

Tĕrentia *mĭnus* belle hăbuit, *has not been very well*.—Cic. (Fam. 9, 9.)

L. Cotta . . . . *mĭnus* in Sĕnātum vĕnit, *hardly ever*.—(ib. 12, 2.)

Părum succēdit quod ăgo, *My business is not getting on much*.—Ter. (And. 4, 1, 56.)

Părum clāris (=obscūris) lūcem dăre cōget, *to throw light on what is not clear*.—Hor. (A. P. 448.)

Ego illum *măle* sānum (= insānum) semper pŭtāvi, *of unsound mind*.—Cic. (Att. 9, 15.)

Măle grātus (=ingrātus), *ungrateful*.—Ov. (Her. 7, 27.)

§ 646. *Prepositions in Compound Verbs repeated.*—When a Verb is compounded with a Preposition, the Preposition is often repeated before the dependent Noun. This construction occurs more or less frequently in the case of the following Prepositions:—

1) **ad**:—as, accĕdĕre, accĭdĕre (ad pedes alicujus), ădĕquĭtāre, [illegible]e, adnāre, annīti, appropinquāre, advŏlāre.

2) **in** with *Acc.* = *into, against*:—as, incurrĕre, ingrĕdi, ĭnīre, [illegible]ītāre, innīti, irruĕre, irrumpĕre, insĭlīre, invādĕre, invĕhi; in[illegible]ĕre, inferre, infīgĕre, injĭcĕre, impōnĕre.

(3) **in** with *Abl.* denoting rest *in* a place:—as, īnesse, inhaerēre, insīdēre, insistĕre.

(4) **inter** (rare):—see § 650.

(5) **per** (infrequent):—as, pervādĕre (per agros, Cic.), perrumpĕre, pertīnēre (Cic.); percurrĕre, perfluĕre, perlābi, permānāre (last four, Lucr.).

(6) **trans**: only after a transitive Verb with double Object: multitudinem . . trans Rhēnum traducere, Caes. B. G. 1, 35.

(7) **ab**:—as, ābesse, āberrāre, abscēdĕre; abdūcĕre, āmŏvēre.

(8) **con** or **cum**:—as, coīre, cŏhaerēre, confligĕre, congrĕdi, congruĕre; conjungĕre, compōnĕre.

(9) **de**:—as, dēcēdĕre, dēgrĕdi, dĕerrāre, dēlābi, descendĕre, dēsīlīre; dēdūcĕre (de via, sententia), dējĭcĕre, dēmŏvēre, dēpellĕre, dēturbāre, dēvolvĕre.

(10) **ex, e**:—as, exīre, ēgrĕdi, effŭgĕre, ēlābi, ēmergĕre, ēruĕre, ērumpĕre, ēvādĕre, excīdĕre, exsistĕre; ēdūcĕre, efferre, ēmittĕre, ēvŏcāre, exĭgĕre, exĭmĕre, expellĕre, exprīmĕre, extermināre, exturbāre.

Obs. Sometimes a different Preposition is used: as, exire de navi, a patria, &c. Moreover, all the above Verbs are capable of different constructions, which can only be learned from the Lexicon or from works specially devoted to the subject.

§ 647. When two Prepositions governing different Cases, stand related to the same Noun, the Noun is usually repeated: as,

Haec quum *contra* lēgem *pro*que lēge dicta essent, *both for and against the law.*—Liv. (34, 8.)

Dārīus dēcēdit; rĕlictis fīliis et *in* regno et *ante* regnum susceptis, *both during his reign, and before he became king.*—Just. (2, 10.)

§ 648. When the two Prepositions govern the same Case, the construction may be as in English: as,

Intrā extrāque mūnītiōnes, *Within and without the fortifications.*—Caes. (B. C. 3, 72.)

Suprā subterque terram, *Above and below ground.*—Liv. (39, 4.)

§ 649. In the case of Prepositions which are capable being used as Adverbs, the Noun may be expressed v one Preposition and understood with the other: as,

Sŭper theātrum circāque, *Above and round the theatre.*— (24, 39.)

Iliăcos intra mūros et extra, *Within the Trojan walls and wi them.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 2, 16.)

§ 650. Inter is sometimes repeated where it cannot be translated in English: as,

Inter Pēlīden et *inter* Atridam, *Between the son of Peleus and the son of Atreus.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 2, 12.) So Cic. Am. 95, quid intersit inter pŏpŭlārem . . . . . et inter constantem, grāvem, etc.

Nĭhil *inter* te atque *inter* quadrŭpĕdem intĕresse (pŭtas), *You think there is no difference between you and a brute.*—Cic. (Par. 1, 14.)

Certātum *inter* Ap. Claudium maxĭme, et *inter* P. Dēcium Mūrem, *between Ap. Claudius and P. Decius Mus.*—Liv. (10, 7.)

§ 651. When the *same* Preposition belongs in English to two Substantives, the corresponding Preposition in Latin is repeated with the latter Substantive only when it denotes something quite distinct from the former: as,

Lēgāti *ab* Aeduis et *ab* Trĕvīris vĕnĭēbant, *Embassies arrived* [separately] *from the Aedui and from the Treviri.*—Caes. (B. G. 1, 37.)

Cur *de* suā virtūte aut *de* ipsīus dīlĭgentiā dēspērārent, *Why did they despair either of their own valour, or of his conduct?*—(ib. 40, 4.)

Otherwise it is not repeated: as,

In Caesăre pŏpŭlōque Rōmāno, *In Caesar and the Roman people.*—(Caes. B. G. 1, 31.)

Apud Arĭŏvistum et Sĕquānos, *In the hands of Ariovistus and the Sequani.*—(ib. 33.)

Chapter LIX.—Conjunctions and other Words as Particles.

§ 652. The following observations relate to the use of Conjunctions, and other short words as particles.

Obs. The term *particle* (see § 11) is especially applied to uninflected words without any syntactical power, but serving to call attention to some particular part of a sentence.

§ 653. Ădeo.—This particle is attached to single words for the sake of emphasis. In this way it is used after Pronouns and other words, including the Conjunction atque: as,

Tuque ădeo, *And thou above all!*—(Virg. G. 1, 24.)
(Compare Cat. 64, 25.)

Id ădeo, si plăcet, consīdĕrāte, *That very point.*—Cic. (Caec. 87.)

Multum adeo [is] . . . arva jŭvat, *Much, very much, does such an one improve the soil.*—Virg. (G. 1, 94.)

Hoc signĭfĭcant, *atque ădeo* ăperte ostendunt, *This they hint, nay more, they openly show.*—Cic. (Verr. 2, 148.)

§ 654. Ĕnim, though often used elliptically, for the most part retains its logical sense of *for* (see § 581). It is however sometimes merely a particle of emphasis = *indeed, in fact:* as,

Tum Metilius, Tr. Pl., id *ĕnim* fĕrendum esse nĕgat, *Thereupon Metilius, tribune of the commons, declares that that is* really *not to be put up with!*—Liv. (22, 25.)

Quid tute tēcum?—Nĭhil *ĕnim*, *What were you saying to yourself?—Nothing indeed* (or, *why, nothing!*).—Pl. (Most. 3, 1, 19.)

Illa *ĕnim* se nĕgat (factūram), *The woman in fact declares she will not do so.*—Ter. (Ph. 1, 2, 63.)

Obs. In the same way is sometimes used nam and also the compound ĕtĕnim (= Gk. καὶ γάρ).

§ 655. Nempe (= nam-pe), *forsooth, so it seems, why,* occurs at the beginning of a sentence, and gives animation: as,

Nempe dixi, *I said, did I?*—Hor. (S. 1, 10, *init.*)

Nempe nĕgas ad beāte vīvendum sātis posse virtūtem, *You deny* then, it seems, *that virtue is sufficient for a happy life?*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 12.)

In quā tandem urbe . . . . ? *Nempe* in eā quae, etc., *In what city pray?* Why (or *forsooth*) *in that which, &c.*—Cic. (Mil. 7.)

§ 656. Quĭdem, *indeed, at least, even,* is usually placed next after the most emphatic word of a sentence, which it serves to mark: as,

Sibi quĭdem persuādēri, etc., *He for his part was convinced, etc.*—Cic. (B. G. 1, 40, 3.)

Nĭhil sāne ex *me* quĭdem audīre pŏtuisses, *You would not have been able to hear a word from me,* at any rate.—Cic. (N. D. 1, 57.)

Especially in connexion with nē: when ne . . . . quidem = *not even* (see also § 568, *Obs.*): as,

Glōriae jactūra *ne* mĭnĭma *quidem*, *Not the very least sacrifice of glory.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 84.)

Obs. 1. Quidem is often equivalent to the Gk. γέ. When ne . . . quidem = *not even*, the emphatic word is put between the two particles.

Obs. 2. For the use of quĭdem after ille, see § 616.

Obs. 3. With the first person singular, quĭdem is used: also sometimes with other persons, see Lat. Dict. s.

§ 657. **Ŭtĭque** (= γέ, γοῦν) is formed from ŭtī, ŭt; and signifies *anyhow, at all events.* It sometimes precedes and sometimes follows the word or clause which it serves to emphasize: as,

Nunquam aequis, *ŭtĭque* nunquam *nostris* lŏcis lăbōrāvimus, *We have never been worsted on a fair field, at all events never on a field of our own choosing.*—Liv. (9, 19, *fin.*)

Non *ŭtĭque se*, sed quem vĕlit dĕvŏvēre, *Not necessarily himself, but anyone, etc.*—Liv. (8, 10, *fin.*) ✓

Utĭque is sometimes found in conjunction with other particles of emphasis (probably only in familiar, epistolary style): as,

Illud *vĕro ŭtique* scīre cŭpio, *One thing, however, I should at all events like to know.*—Cic. (Att. 13, 13.)

Annum *quĭdem ŭtique* tĕnēto, *You must at any rate maintain the limit of a year only.*—(ib. 5, 9.)

§ 658. **Dumtaxat**, (i) *just so much, not more than, only;* also, (ii) *if it be only, at least, at all events.*—In the former sense it precedes the word to which it belongs, in the latter it follows it: as, ✓

(i) Consŭles duos, bŏnos quĭdem, sed *dumtaxat bonos*, āmīsimus, *good indeed, but that was all.*—Cic. (Ep. Br. 1, 3.)

Dumtaxat hactĕnus, *Thus far and no further.*—Cic. (de Or. 2, 119.)

Līnĕāmentis *dumtaxat extrēmis*, *With merely the external outlines.*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 123.)

(ii) Cŏluntur tamen *sĭmŭlātione dumtaxat* ad tempus, *in pretence at least.*—Cic. (Am. 53.) [According to Long, dumtaxat is here to be taken both with simulatione and ad tempus.] ✓

Ad hoc dumtaxat, *For this at least.*—Cic. (de Or. 1, 249.)

In *circŭlis dumtaxat* et convīviis, *In companies at all events and at banquets (whatever may be the case elsewhere).*—Cic. (Att. 2, 18.) ✓

§ 659. **Certē, certo.**—The use of the Adverb certe = *certainly, at least*, must be distinguished from that of certo, *for certain, of a truth.* The former is subjective (i.e. it conveys the belief of the speaker), the latter is objective (i.e. it represents a matter as a known fact): as,

Certe captus est, *Surely he is caught!*—Ter. (Andr. 1, 1, 55.)

Si me tanti făcis, quanti *certe* făcis, *If you care as much for me, as you I am sure do.*—Cic. (Fam. 11, 16.)

Certo scio, *I know it for a fact.*—Cic. (Sen. 1.)

Certo compĕri, *I have ascertained it as a fact (beyond a doubt).*—Ter. (Eun. 5, 1, 9.)

§ 660. **Vēro, dēmum,** *indeed, at length,* are used for the sake of giving a strong emphasis to the words to which they are attached: especially in the phrases, **is dēmum,** *that and nothing short of it;* **tum vēro** (Gr. τότε δή), *then if never before, then verily* (denoting a kind of climax): as,

Id *dēmum* aut pŏtius id sōlum, *Just that or rather that only.*—Cic. (Att. 8, 8.)

Tum vēro ardēmus scītāri, *Then* more than ever *we are fired with curiosity.*—Virg. (Aen. 2, 105.)

§ 661. **Cunque** (see § 197, 10) is rarely found alone; occurring for the most part in such compounds as quicunque, ubicunque, etc. When it does occur alone, it is equivalent to the Greek ποτέ, *ever, at any time:* as,

Mĭhi *cunque* salve rītĕ vŏcanti, *Be gracious to me* whensoever *duly invoking thee.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 32, 15.)

Obs. In poetry cunque is not unfrequently separated from the word to which it belongs by *Tmesis:* as,

Quae dēmant cunque dōlōrem, *whatever things.*—Lucr. (2, 21.)

PART II. (SYNTAX)—*Continued.*

BOOK III.—REMARKS ON THE STYLES OF SALLUST, CAESAR, CICERO, LIVY AND TACITUS.

CHAPTER LX.—STYLE OF SALLUST.

§ 662. The style of Sallust is marked by brevity and frequent use of antithesis; also by the recurrence or peculiar use of certain words and constructions; and by some archaisms.

Obs. There is something artificial about the style of Sallust. This is most apparent in the moralising introductions with which he has prefaced his Catiline and Jugurtha. In simple narrative or description he is often exceedingly vigorous and animated: see for example his delineation of the character of Catiline (c. 5); his account of the seizure of the dispatches of the Allobrogian embassy (ib. 44, 45); of the siege of Zama (Jug. 60); of the legend of the Philaeni (ib. 79).

§ 663. *Brevity.*—This is a general feature of the style of Sallust, and is seen most strikingly in such concise expressions as the following:—

Vītam sĭlentio transīre, *to go through life without causing one's name to be heard of* (Cat. 1);—ingĕnium, corpus, *the entire faculties of the human mind or body* (ib. 2);—quae hŏmĭnes ărant, nāvĭgant, aedĭfĭcant, *the different kinds of activity put forth in husbandry, navigation, and building or architecture* (ib. 2);—ămāre, pōtāre, *to indulge in the pleasures of licentiousness or intoxication* (ib. 11);—mănus, venter, *gambling, gluttony* (ib. 14); virtus, *all kinds of excellent qualities*; especially *of the mind* (passim);—ars, *any kind of occupation or couers* (passim).

§ 664. *Asyndeton* (§ 560).—In accordance with his love of brevity, Sallust is fond of dispensing with connectives; as in the following examples:

Quĭbus prŏfecto contra nātūram, corpus vŏluptāti, ănĭmus ŏnĕri fuit, *To whom—unquestionably in opposition to what nature intended,—the body was a source of pleasure, the mind a burden.*—(Cat. 2.)

Mărе saevum, importuōsum; ăger frūgum fertĭlis, bŏnus pĕcŏri, arbŏre infēcundus: caelo terrāque pēnūria ăquārum, *The sea* [is] *rough* [and] *without harbours; the soil fertile* [and] *good for stock,* [though] *unproductive in trees; sky and earth* [are alike] *deficient in supply of water.*—(Jug. 17.)

(Compare also Cat. 5.)

Obs. Sallust is equally partial to the omission of the Verb *to be*; as in the latter of the above examples.

§ 665. *Antithesis.*—The following may serve as specimens of the very frequent use of this figure by Sallust:—

Nam pro pŭdōre, pro abstĭnentiā, pro virtūte, audācia, largītio, ăvārĭtia vĭgēbant, *For in place of modesty, of integrity, of virtue, flourished effrontery, corruption, covetousness.*—(Cat. 3.)

Laudis ăvĭdi, pĕcūniae lĭbĕrāles, *Covetous of praise; liberal with money.*—(ib. 7.)

Concordia maxĭma, mĭnĭma ăvārĭtia ĕrat, *There was the utmost degree of harmony, the least of covetousness.*—(ib. 9.)

(Compare the whole of the last-named chapter: also Cat. 54, etc.)

§ 666. *Historical Infinitive.*—Sallust makes very frequent use of this construction (§ 517), which is particularly suited to animated description. This is well seen in his vivid picture of the state of Rome during the panic caused by the conspiracy (Cat. 31), and of the restlessness and insecurity of the guilty Jugurtha (Jug. 72).

§ 667. *Alius .... ăliud.*—This concise idiom (see § 629) is probably more frequent in Sallust than in any other writer. Thus we find—

Aliud ălio ferri.—(Cat. 2.)
Aliud ălii nātūra ĭter monstrat.—(same chapter.)
Alius ălio mōre vīventes.—(ib. 6.)
Alius ălium hortāri.—(same chapter.)
Praetĕrea *ălium ălio* [mittit].—(ib. 27.)
Alios in *ălia* lŏca [praemīsisse].—(same chapter.)

And so in many other places.

§ 668. *Sed, nam, ĭgĭtur.*—Sallust begins a great many of his sentences with one or other of these conjunctions (probably after the model of the Greek δὲ or ἀλλὰ—γὰρ—οὖν). This has a somewhat bald and monotonous effect. Thus in the first short chapter of the Catiline, nam and sed each begin two sentences; and in five consecutive chapters (ib. 7—11), sed begins *nine* sentences; ĭgĭtur, *four*; and nam (or namque), *three*.

Obs. By other authors igitur is placed second in a sentence, not first.

§ 669. *Favourite or peculiar words.*—There are some words (1) which Sallust is fond of repeating; others (2) which are rarely used by other writers or not in the same sense: the following are the principal of these:

(1.) **Mortāles** in sense of hŏmĭnes (passim).

Pŏpŭlāres, for *accomplices* (Cat. 22, 24).

Tempestas for (*particular*) *time* (Gr. καιρός): as,

Eā tempestāte (Cat. 7, 17, 22, 36; Jug. 8, &c.); quā tempestāte (Jug. 79).

Ăgo and its frequentative **ăgĭto,** in various senses: as,

Cīvĭtas laeta *ăgere*, *The whole city showed itself* (acted as) *full of joy.*—(Jug. 55.)

Incultius *ăgĕre*, To live *in a more uncivilized manner.*—(id. 89.)

Multa *ăgĭtāre*, To turn over, meditate upon *many things.*—(Cat. 53.)

Agĭtāre (absol.), *To move, gesticulate.*—(Jug. 60.)

Vărius incertusque *ăgĭtābat*, He acted *in an inconstant and hesitating way.*—(ib. 74.)

Hăbeo, in various senses: as,

Virtus clāra aeternaque *hăbētur*, *Virtue is a glorious and imperishable* possession.—(Cat. 1.)

Aequābĭlius *sēse* res hūmānae *hăbērent*, *Human affairs would* go on *more steadily.*—(ib. 2.)

Aetātem prŏcul a rēpublĭca *hăbēre*, To spend *one's life aloof from public affairs.*—(ib. 4.)

Nĕque quicquam pensi *hăbēbat*, Nor had he *any consideration.*—(ib. 5.)

So, condĭdēre atque *hăbuēre* (ib. 6)—sīcŭti plērăque mortālium *hăbentur* (ib.)—nōmen rēgium *hăbēbant* (ib. 6)—in promptu *hăbēre* (ib. 7)—lĭbīdĭnem *hăbēbant* (ib. 7), *etc.*

(2.) Peculiar uses of words:

Mĕdiocris, in sense of *equitable, good* (Gr. ἐπιεικής): Jug. 6.

Gignentia, for *plants, vegetation:* Jug. 79, *med.*

§ 670. *Archaisms.*—Sallust somewhat affects these: the following may be noted:—

(1.) Accusative pl. of Substantives and Adjectives in es and is, in **is** rather than **es**: as, omnīs, etc.

(2.) Genitive sing. of 4th Decl. in **i** for us: as, sĕnāti (Cat. 30, 36, 51, *ad fin.*).

(3.) Gerundive and Gerundive Participle of 3rd and 4th Conj. in **undus** (which continued to be the prevailing form in legal phraseology: e. g. de rĕpĕtundis, agro dīvĭdundo, etc.): as, căpiundae (Cat. 5), opprĭmundae (ib. 16), largiundo (ib. 38), ēmentiundo (ib. 49), ērĭpiundum, rĕfĕrundum (ib. 50): dīcundo (Jug. 32), gĕrundi (ib. 35).

N.B.—Not however after *u* or *v*: cf. exstruendo (Cat. 20), mĭnuendae (Jug. 19, *init.*), persĕquendo (ib. 50, *fin.*): also ūtendum (Cat. 51, *ad init.*).

(4.) **o** preferred to **e** after **v** in verto and its derivatives: as, advorsus = adversus (Cat. 3), convortit (ib. 6, *fin.*), dīvorsissimas (Jug. 85, *med.*), etc.

Chapter LXI.—Style of Caesar.

§ 671. The style of Caesar has few peculiarities. It is clear, direct, and unaffected. He is said to have carefully avoided unusual words or expressions.

Obs. The 'Commentaries' of Caesar were designed, as the name implies, to serve as "notes" or memoranda for history (see Suet. Caes. 56). But Cicero remarks that while "silly persons" (inepti) might think the unadorned materials of Caesar a good field to show off their fine writing, sensible people would shrink from meddling with what was in itself so excellent ("sanos quidem homines a scribendo deterruit:" Brut. 262).

§ 672. Caesar is generally brief and concise, though evidently without studying to be so like Sallust. Perspicuity is more consulted than brevity. Hence perhaps, he often repeats the antecedent along with the Relative pronoun; as in the following:

Erant omnīno duo *ītĭnĕra*, quĭbus *ītĭnĕribus* dŏmo exīre posset.—(B. G. 1, 6.)

Diem dīcunt quā *die* ad rīpam Rhŏdăni omnes convĕniant.—(Same chapter.)

Re frūmentārĭā compărātā ĕquĭtĭbusque dēlectis, ĭter in ea *lŏca* făcĕre coepit, quĭbus in *lŏcis* esse Germānos audiēbat.—(ib. 4, 7.)

§ 673. He is partial to the construction of the *Ablative Absolute*. Thus many passages begin with some such phrase as "Quĭbus rēbus cognĭtis" (B. G. 1, 19, etc.), "bello confecto" (ib. 30), "eo consĭlio dīmisso" (ib. 31), "hac ōrātiōne hăbĭtā" (ib. 32), "his rēbus cognĭtis" (ib. 33), &c.

§ 674. A great many particulars are often gathered up in one sentence. Thus some of Caesar's periods contain perhaps more members than those of any other narrative writer: as,

Quod ŭbi Caesar compĕrit, omnĭbus his rēbus confectis quarum causā transdūcĕre exercĭtum constĭtuĕrat, ut Germānis mĕtum injĭcĕret, ut Sigambros ulciscĕrētur, ut Ubios obsĭdiōne lĭbĕraret,—diēbus omnīno dĕcem et octo consumptis,—sātis et ad laudem et ad ūtĭlĭtātem prōfectum arbitrātus,—se in Galliam rĕcēpit pontemque rescĭdit, *When Caesar was informed of this, as he had accomplished all the objects he had in view in crossing [the Rhine],—namely, to strike terror into the Germans, to inflict vengeance on the Sigambri, and to raise the blockade of the Ubii—having spent in all eighteen days and no more; thinking that enough had been achieved whether for his credit or his ends, he betook himself back into Gaul and broke down the bridge.*—(B. G. iv. 19.)

Obs. These inconveniently long periods doubtless owe their origin to haste of writing (see § 671, *Obs.*). For other examples see B. G. ii. 25; vii. 33, 34, 36.

CHAPTER LXII.—STYLE OF CICERO.

§ 675. The style of Cicero is that of a man who has at his command all the resources of the language. In his speeches, every period is a work of art, and the cadences are full and sonorous. A distinct and peculiar charm attaches to his letters. In these Cicero allows himself more liberty in the use and coining of words, as well as in the structure of his sentences.

Only a few points will be noticed here, since the peculiarities of Cicero are mostly rhetorical rather than grammatical.

§ 676. He is fond of doubling his words; that is to say, he often uses together two or more words of nearly identical meaning, in order to convey a fuller or more precise sense. Thus we often meet with such combinations as the following:

Amīcus nĕcessārĭusque—sŭperbia atque arrŏgantia—sermo atque fāma—ignōmĭnia et turpĭtūdo—lĕvĭtas et inconstantia—cūra atque ŏpĕra—sīne jūdĭcio contrōversĭāque—rĕgĕre et admĭnistrare—mŏlestе grăvĭterque ferre—committĕre et crēdĕre—structūre et mōlīri, etc. (all from the Cluentius).

Obs. In his frequent use of such parallel words, Cicero was no doubt studying partly a more complete and exhaustive expression, and partly the cadence of his sentences.

§ 677. In his more rhetorical passages Cicero makes a bold use of Abstracts for Concretes (§ 592, 2): as,

Prōvinciam ad summam *stultĭtĭam nēquĭtĭam*que vēnisse, *The province had fallen into the hands of the greatest fools and knaves.*—Verr. (5, 38.)

Exercĭtus collectus ex sĕnĭbus despĕrātis, ex agresti *luxŭrĭā, from all the profligates of the country.*—(Cat. 2, 5.)

§ 678. *Diminutives.*—He makes a free use of these, and coins them when it suits his purpose (see also § 680): as,

Contortŭlae quaedam et mĭnūtae *conclūsiuncŭlae*, Paltry *little quibbling arguments.*—(Tusc. 2, 42.)

Nummŭlis acceptis, *Having received some paltry coins.*—(Att. 1, 16.)

Brūti nostri *vulticŭlus*, *The* dear (*little*) *face of our Brutus.*—Att. (14, 20, *fin.*)

Quintus fīlius Antōnii est *dextella*, *My nephew Quintus is Antony's right-hand man* (perhaps implying some contempt).—(ib.)

§ 679. *Vĭdēri.*—Cicero is partial to the use of this verb, and sometimes uses it to soften a statement, where in English it cannot be translated: as,

Restat ut de impĕrātōre ad id bellum dēlĭgendo dīcendum *vīdeātur*, *It remains for me to speak respecting the choice of a commander for the said war.*—(Manil. 27.)

(Compare ib. 59, where the same phrase is repeated.)

Obs. This use of videor corresponds to that of δοκέω in Greek (cf. Xen. Anab. 1, 3, 12); and sometimes occurs in other authors besides Cicero: as,

Nĕque id sīne causā arbitrāri *vīdēbantur*, *Nor were they* [did they seem to be] *without reason for that opinion.*—Nep. (Alc. 6.)

§ 680. The style of the Letters has special features:—

(i) The structure of sentences is freer and less elaborate than in his set prose works. The order of words, too, savours less of deliberate arrangement, and at times approaches closely to that of English and other modern languages. (Compare Att. 2, 12, emerseram commode ex Antiati, &c.: also ib. 2, 20, Varro satisfacit nobis, &c.)

(ii) There is also greater freedom in the choice and use of words; some being in fact coined on the spur of the moment. The list of words found once only (ἅπαξ εἰρημένα) or peculiar to the Letters is large. Among them are many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs strengthened by *per*, or softened by *sub*, so as to convey more delicate shades of meaning: as, per-accommodatus, per-amans (-ter), per-belle (also bellissime), per-humanus (-iter), per-incommode, per-odiosus, per-officiose, per-gaudere; sub-impudens, sub-inanis, sub-odiosus, sub-turpiculus; sub-diffidere, sub-dubitare;—very many Diminutive words, admirably adapted to a light and playful treatment of social topics: as, commotiuncula (*slight indisposition*), ambulatiuncula, delici-olae, dextella (cf. § 678), nause-ola (*a touch of sickness*), vindemi-olae (*petty-incomings*), Pulchellus (nickname for P. Clodius *Pulcher*), etc.; facetious desideratives, as Sullaturit

(§ 191), proscriptŭrit, petitŭrit; one curious coinage of a Verbal Adjective by means of a Greek suffix (*-τέον*) attached to a Latin root, fac-teon (Att. 1, 16, *ad fin.*); with many miscellaneous words. (See *Correspondence of Cicero*, Tyrrell, i. 59, foll. 2nd ed. The same writer calls attention to certain points of correspondence between the colloquial style of the Letters and the diction of the Comic drama.)

(iii) Ellipsis is very freely used; especially in the more familiar letters: e. g.: miror te nihildum cum Tigellio, *sc.* locutum esse (Att. 13, 50) —nec mirabamur nihil a te litterarum, *sc.* missum esse (Fam. 16, 7). See also § 635.

(iv) The more familiar letters are perpetually interlarded with Greek words—employed either as being more expressive, or as helping to light up ordinary topics by some play of humour or allusion. The latter is more frequently the case; as is curiously illustrated by the fact that Bk. III. to Atticus, consisting of letters written in exile and under great depression, contains no single Greek word from beginning to end.

CHAPTER LXIII.—STYLE OF LIVY.

§ 681. Livy is the greatest master of prose narrative. The periods of Cicero are those of a public speaker; those of Livy combine the stateliness of a historian with the copious flow and artistic grouping suitable to descriptive narration.

Obs. Livy was charged by his contemporaries with a certain provincialism (*Patavinitas*); but it is not known wherein the alleged peculiarities consisted.

§ 682. *Figurative language.*—Livy makes frequent use of metonymy (§ 604), and other figures of speech. Thus we find Mars for bellum (*passim*); mĭnistĕria, servĭtia, for *ministri*, *servi* (§ 592); praetōrium, not only for *the office of commander-in-chief* (21, 3); but also for *a commander-in-chief's council of war* (21, 54); praerŏgātīva, for *a prior election* (21, 3); agrestium fŭga, for *agrestes fŭgientes* (3, 69); rōbŏra vīrorum for *rōbusti vĭri* (21, 54); etc.

§ 683. *Genitive.*—Livy uses the Genitive after Adjectives with more freedom than earlier writers: as,

Trĕpĭdi rērum suārum (= de rebus suis), *In alarm about their own interests.*—(5, 11.)

(See remarks on style of Tacitus: § 696.)

§ 684. *Singular used collectively for Plural.*—This use has been already noticed (§ 607).

§ 685. *Indicative for Subjunctive.*—Instead of the Subjunctive in Relative clauses of the *oratio obliqua* (§ 467), Livy not unfrequently uses the Indicative (even when such usage cannot be explained by 467, *Obs.*): as,

Proconsŭlem P. Cornēlium, multōrum exemplo qui in măgistrātu non *triumphāvērunt* (= triumphaverint), triumphātūrum esse, *P. Cornelius might* (he said) *enjoy his triumph as proconsul, after the precedent of a number who had not done so while actually in office.*—(36, 39.)

Q. Făbium dīcĕre, se .... ab Rōmā Aequis bellum afferre, eādem dextrā armātā, quam pācātam ille antea *dĕdĕrat* (= dedisset), *Q. Fabius said, he brought war from Rome to the Aequians, with the same right hand armed which he had before offered them in peace.*—(3, 2.)

§ 686. The *Subjunctive* is often *preferred to the Indicative* after dōnec, antĕquam, priusquam, even when simple facts are spoken of: see §§ 499, 501.

§ 687. *Perfect Subjunctive after Past Tenses.*—This construction is perhaps more frequent in Livy than in any other writer. Compare the following:

Eo *fuit* (*past-indef.*) hăbĭtu ōris, ut .... rīdentis ĕtiam spĕciem *praebuĕrit, He wore such an expression on his features as to present the appearance of one laughing.*—(21, 2.)

Haud dŭbium [fuit], quin nĭsi firmāta extrēma agmĭnis fuissent, ingens in eo saltu accĭpienda clādes *fuĕrit, There was no doubt that had not the rear-guard been strengthened, a serious defeat must have been sustained in that pass.*—(21, 34.)

For more examples, see § 423, Note.

§ 688. *Hypothetical use of Future Participle.*—Other writers use the Imperfect participle active and Perfect participle passive hypothetically: Livy extends this use to the Future participle in **-rus**: as,

Dēdĭturis se Hannĭbăli non fuisse arcessendum Rōmānōrum praesĭdium, *If they had intended to give themselves up to Hannibal, they ought not to have sent for a Roman garrison.*—(23, 44.)

§ 689. *Gerund and Gerundive.*—Livy is partial to the use of these verbal forms, which he uses with greater freedom than any other writer. (Compare § 541.) The following examples of his use of the Gerundive may be useful:—

[Sāguntīnis] oppugnandis (*Abl. Absol.*) haud dŭbie Rōmāna arma mŏvēbantur, *By the attack upon Saguntum there was no question that a war with Rome would be provoked.*—(21, 5.)

(Cicero would probably have said Saguntinis oppugnatis.)

Possĭdendis agris (= possessiōne agrorum) contentus, *Content with holding the* (*public*) *lands.*—(6, 14.)

Quum vix mŏvendis armis (= ad arma mŏvenda) spătium esset, *There being hardly room to move their arms.*—(23, 27.)

Ubi prōmŏvendo adjunctam (= promotam atque adjunctam) mūro vīdērunt turrem, *When they saw that the tower*, by being gradually pushed forward, *had been brought close to the wall.*—(23, 37.)

His āvertendis terrōrĭbus (= ad hos avertendos terrores: cf. § 538), in trīduum fēriae indictae, *To avert these terrors, a holiday of three days was notified.*—(3, 5, *fin.*)

Ante condĭtam *condendam*ve urbem, *Before the city was founded or designed to be founded.*—(Pref.)

§ 690. *Prepositions.*—Livy is somewhat peculiar in his use of certain Prepositions, especially **ab** (a), **ad**, as seen in the following examples:

(1.) **Ab, a.**—*Directly after; by way of: on the part of* (cf. § 557, 1): as,

Ab (= ex) his praeceptis contiōnem dīmīsit, *Immediately after (giving) these instructions, he dismissed the assembly.*—(44, 34.)

Ab irrīsu (= per irrisum) linguam exsĕrĕre, *To put out the tongue in ridicule.*—(7, 10.)

Ab rēgiis, *On the part of the royalists.*—(37, 23.)

Ad exsolvendam fĭdem a consŭle (*al.* consulis), *To the making good of a promise on the part of the consul.*—(27, 5.)

Mettus Curtius ab Sābīnis (= Sabinorum) princeps, *Mettus Curtius leader on the part of the Sabines.*—(1, 12.)

(2.) **Ad.**—*At the instance of; in the department of:* as,

Ad (= propter) mĕtum, ad spem vĕniae dēdĕre se, *To surrender in (at the promptings of) fear, or of hope of pardon.*—(36, 13.)

Ad dēsīdĕrium rĕlictārum (*sc.* bŏum) mūgīre, *To bellow at missing the heifers that had been left behind.*—(1, 7.)

Trĭbūni mīlĭtum ad lĕgiōnes (= legionum), *The military tribunes of the legions.*—(7, 5.)

§ 691. **Namque** is frequently placed by Livy (as by later writers generally) second instead of first in a sentence: as,

Omnium *namque* lăborum, etc. (5, 11.)

Ibi *namque* in tăbernis, etc., (3, 44.)

Chapter LXIV.—Style of Tacitus.

§ 692. Tacitus lived a century after the latest of the aforementioned masters of Latin prose. The language had then lost somewhat of its original chasteness and severity, but from an increased vocabulary and greater freedom of expression, it was perhaps better fitted to express the conceptions of so original and vehement a writer.

§ 693. Tacitus delights to express himself in striking and original ways. He has great variety of phraseology; his turns of thought are often abrupt and even startling; and he frequently suggests much more than he expresses. He uses freely many idioms rarely or never found in writers of the preceding century, and his language has much of a poetical complexion.

§ 694. The scale of this work does not admit of a full treatment of so various a subject as the style of Tacitus. For fuller particulars the student is referred elsewhere.* Only the more prominent points are here noticed.

§ 695. (A.) VARIETY.—This is shown chiefly in the following particulars:

(1.) *Different forms of the same word:* as,

Plebs and plēbes—sĕnectus and sĕnecta—oblīvium and oblīvio—quŏtiens and quŏties—tĕgūmen, tĕgĭmen and tegmen—pārentum (*gen. pl.*) and părentium, &c.

(2.) *Different grammatical constructions without difference of meaning:* as,

(Lĕgiōnem .... pro rīpā compōnĕret), *subsĭdio* (Dat. of Purpose or Result: § 297) victis et *terrōrem* (Apposition) adversus victōres, *As an assistance to them if conquered, and a terror to their conquerors.*—(Ann. 12, 29.)

Corpŏre ingens, *ănĭmi* (§ 278) immŏdĭcus, *In body huge, in mind (ambition) unmeasured.*—(Hist. 1, 53.)

Cum *Parthus* (§ 607) distrăhĕret turmas, *Sarmătae* irrŭĕrent, *While the Parthians tried to separate the squadrons, and the Sarmatians rushed, &c.*—(Ann. 6, 35.)

Especially in comparisons (§ 350):

Vĕhĕmentius quam caute.—(Agr. 4.)

Clāris mājōrĭbus quam vĕtustis.—(Ann. 4, 61.)

Quanto inŏpīna, tanto mājōra.—(Ann. 1, 68.)

Quanto quis clārior, mĭnus fīdus.—(Hist. 3, 58.)

(3.) Various words and phrases employed to denote the same thing: as,

Fīnis sponte sumptus—quaesīta mors—suo ictu mortem invĕnīre—fīnem vītae sĭbi pōnĕre—vŏluntārio exĭtu cădĕre—vītam rĕlinquĕre—etc.—all to denote *self-destruction.*

Vēnas, bracchia exsolvĕre, rĕsolvĕre, abrumpĕre, interscindĕre, abscindĕre, incīdĕre—lĕvem ictum vēnis inferre—all of *opening the veins in order to cause death.*

* See Bötticher's 'Remarks on the Style of Tacitus,' prefixed to Dr. Wm. Smith's Tacitus, from which the present sections are partly taken.

(4.) *Peculiar uses of words.*—Tacitus not only uses (*a*) many new words, but also (*b*) old ones in rarer meanings: the following may serve as examples:

(*a*) Centŭriōnātus, exstĭmŭlātor, instīgātrix, inturbĭdus, quinquĕplĭcāre, praeposse, prōvīvĕre, pervĭgĕre, sŭperstagnāre, sŭperurgēre.

(*b*) Adductus (*drawn-to; tight*), in sense of *severe*: hence adductius regnāri, *to be under stricter rule.*—(Ger. 43.)

Expĕdīre, *to go on an expedition* (Gr. στρατεύεσθαι).—(Hist. 1, 88.)

Externus, *hostile*: hence externa mōlīri, *to make hostile movements.*—(Hist. 3, 5.)

Dīversus, also *hostile*: as dīversa ăcies, *the enemy's line.*—(Ann. 14, 30.)

Annus, *yearly crop.*—(Ger. 14.)

Sĭnister = mălus.—(Agr. 5.)

§ 696. (B.) Peculiar Idioms.—Under this head fall—

(1.) *His use of the Genitive* (see §§ 285, 286):

(*a*) After Adjectives; as, immŏdĭcus ănĭmi, ingens animi, vĕtus ŏpĕris ac lăbōris, virtūtum stĕrĭlis, &c. &c.

(*b*) With the Gerundive, to denote a purpose (see § 539): as,

Aegyptum prŏfĭciscĭtur cognoscendae antīquĭtātis, *He sets out for Egypt in order to study its antiquities.*—(Ann. 2, 59.)

Vitandae suspiciōnis, an quia păvĭdis consĭlia in incerto sunt, *Either in order to avoid suspicion, or else because the plans of the timid fluctuate.*—(Ann. 3, 9.)

(2.) His free use of the Dative of *purpose* (see §§ 297, 538); as,

Cur vēnisset, nĕque augendis mīlĭtum stīpendiis, nĕque adlĕvandis lăbōrĭbus, *neither for the purpose of increasing the pay of the soldiers, nor*, &c.—(1, 26.)

Rĕpertus est nūdus . . . . exercĭtando corpŏri, *He was found stripped for exercise.*—(Ann. 14, 59.)

Num . . . . cētĕra expugnandis urbĭbus attŭlissent, (He asked) *whether they had brought the other (appliances) for taking cities.*—(Hist. 3, 20.)

(3.) Of the Accusative without a Preposition after verbs of motion: as,

Rīpam accēdĕre—oppĭdum irrumpĕre—advolvi gĕnua—incĭdere lŏcum, &c.; in which cases a Preposition is mostly used by Cicero.

(Compare § 239.)

(4.) Of the Ablative Absolute (see § 333, *Obs.*): as, juxta pĕrīcŭlōso ficta seu vēra prōmĕret, *It being equally dangerous.*—(Ann. 1, 6.)

(5.) His frequent use of an Adjective instead of the Genitive of a Noun: as,

Lolliānas Vāriānasque clādes, *the defeats of Lollius and of Varus.*—Ann. (1, 10.); Caiānae expĕdītiōnes, *the expeditions of Caius (Caligula).*—(Hist. 4, 15.); mĕtus hostīlis, *fear of the enemy.*—(Ann. 12, 51.)

(6.) Of the plural of Abstract Nouns: as, audāciae (Ann. 1, 74), īrācundiae (14, 4), etc., where the use of the plural indicates *separate manifestations* of the abstract quality (see § 594): also of the plural of proper names to denote men of the class indicated: as, Nĕrōnes, Drūsi (Ann. 1, 28); Varrōnes, Egnātios, Iūlos (ib. 10).

(7.) *Zeugma* (see § 643).

§ 697. (C.) Abruptness, &c.—This is seen in the sudden and unexpected turns often given by Tacitus to a sentence: as,

Ferrum ēlātum *dēfĕrēbat* in pectus—*ni* proxĭmi dextram vi attĭnuissent, *He raised his sword, and was in the act of plunging it into his bosom*—[and would have done so] *had not the bystanders held his hand by main force.*—(Ann. 1, 35.) (See also Ann. 13, 2, *init.*)

Germānia a Sarmātis Dācisque mūtuo *mĕtu aut montibus* sēpărātur, *Germany is bounded on the side of the Sarmatians and Dacians* by fear of each other or by mountains.—(Ger. 1.)

Cibos et *hortāmĭna* pugnantĭbus gestant, *They carry to the combatants provisions and* encouragement.—(Ger. 7.)

§ 698. Tacitus is a writer who suggests more than he says, and his brief comments are frequently marked by bitterness and irony. This is seen in the following sentences:

Nec corrumpĕre et corrumpi *saecŭlum* vŏcātur, *Nor is the conduct of seducer and seduced there called* "the [fashion of] the age."—(Ger. 19.)

Sōlum Mĕphītis templum stĕtit ante moenia, lŏco seu nūmĭne dēfensum, *whether protected by situation or by providence.*—(Hist. 3, 33, *fin.*)

Sanctiusque ac rĕverentius vīsum de actis deōrum *crēdĕre quam scīre, it seemed more pious and devout to* believe *in the doings of the gods than to* know *about them.*—(Ger. 34.)

§ 699. (D.) Poetical Complexion.—This is felt throughout in reading Tacitus; and depends mainly on his habitual use of elevated and figurative language. The general effect is heightened by the frequent recurrence of rhythmical combinations of words and syllables.

(1) Use of elevated and figurative language:—

Glōria frontis, *Pride of aspect (of the tall, handsome horns of cattle).*—(Ger. 5.)

Nūdi aut sāgŭlo lĕves, *Naked or lightly [clad in] a soldier's mantle.*—(ib. 6.)

Sēra jŭvĕnum Vĕnus, *Their youth are late in arriving at the age of puberty.*—(ib. 20.)

Dŏmĭtae gentes, capti rēges, et monstrātus fātis Vespāsiānus, *Tribes were subdued; kings led captive; and Vespasian pointed out (by the finger of) destiny.*—(Agr. 13.)

Urbs incendiis vastāta; . . . . plēnum exsĭliis māre; infecti caedĭbus scōpŭli, *The capital was ravaged by fire; the sea crowded with exiles; the cliffs stained with carnage.*—(H. 1, 2.)

Non tūmultus, non quies: quāle magni mĕtus et magnae īrae sĭlentium est, *There was neither uproar nor calm; like the stillness of deep dread or deep wrath.*—(ib. 1, 40.)

Noctem sīdĕrĭbus illustrem et plăcĭdo mări quĭētam, *A star-lit night and calm with tranquil sea.*—(Ann. 14, 5.)

(2) Rhythmical Combinations.—These are chiefly suggestive of the Hexameter; the style of Tacitus being largely epical. It has been stated that 'the very key-note of the prose of Tacitus is the imitation of Virgil' (Tyrrell, *Correspondence of Cicero*, 1. p. 61); and such fragments of dactylic rhythm as the following, with their occasional echoes of Virgilian phraseology, certainly support this view:—

. . . destringerĕt gladĭum caedĕmque păträret. — (Ann. 15, 58.)

Et erānt quos [varia] fŏrs rerūm lacrimaéque [et misericordia] subíret.—(H. 2, 70.) [Here we are irresistibly reminded of Virg. A. 1, 462, sunt lacrimae rerum . .; moreover the omission of the bracketed words leaves an almost perfect hexameter.]

Silvam | aúguriís patrum ĕt priscá formídine sácram.—G. 39.) [A perfect hexameter.]

. . cónsensú sed plúrima stráges.—(H. 2, 88.) [cf. Virg. Aen. 2, 369, plurima mortis imago.]

Plus praédae ac sánguinis [Caécina] haúsit.—(H. 1, 67.)

Quibus cruda ac viridis senectus.—(Agr. 29.) [cf. Virg. Aen. 6, 304, cruda deo viridisque senectus.—A very slight change is here needed to convert the prose to verse.]

aliquándo etiám victís ira virtusque.—(Agr. 37.) [cf. Virg. Aen. 2, 367, quondam etiam victis redit in praecordia virtus.]

(The two preceding examples are taken from a paper by Mr. Brady, in *Hermathena*, No. 1.)

míscuerát se légatís Musónius Rúfus.—(H. 3, 81.)

cónvulsís portís, reliquís globus.—(ib. 84.)

ílle incómpositum ĕt praedae.—(ib. 48.)

dístulerúnt, tanquám majóra.—(ib. 51.)

The following are more fragmentary: their number might be largely increased:—

> Ípse in súspensó tenuít (H. 1, 78)—qui procul ádstiterânt (ib. 2, 46)—ést Judaéum intér Syriámque (ib. 48)—nec únquam | satis fída pótentia (ib. 92: cf. Virg. Aen. 2, 377)—Gállorúmque obnóxia morbis (H. 2, 93)—ímpatiéns solís (ib. 99)—móx in perniciém vertére (ib. 3, 6)—pár scelus íncidérat (ib. 51)—át rursús nova | laborúm faciés (ib. 30)—séd quia fámosaé (ib. 5, 2); etc.
>
> (Examples seem to abound more in the Histories than in the Annals.)

N.B.—The book entitled *Dialogus de Oratoribus* differs greatly in style from the other works ascribed to Tacitus; being characterised by a fluent rhetorical diction. It seems probable that it was one of the historian's juvenile productions.

BOOK IV.

CHAPTER LXV.—ON THE ORDER OF WORDS.

§ 700. The terminations of the *inflected* words in Latin show at once their relation to each other; and the arrangement of these may therefore be varied without affecting the sense. Thus the words,

Scīpio Hannĭbălem vīcit

will have the same meaning whether they are arranged thus or in any other way: as,

Hannibalem Scipio vicit,
Hannibalem vicit Scipio, etc.

In English, from the Subject being chiefly known by its position at the beginning of the sentence, only one arrangement usually yields a certain sense.

Obs. But the *uninflected* words have in general the same positions as in English: see §§ 678, sqq.

§ 701. In general, the precision of the grammatical and inflexional system of the Latin language renders possible great freedom and play of arrangement, whether used for the sake of emphasis, or merely as conducing to variety and brightness of style. In ordinary language, however, the arrangement of words is pretty regular; the Subject leading off the sentence, and the Predicate following: as, Alexander mortuus est; nix est alba, et

§ 702. *Object.*—When a sentence consists of Subject, Verb, Object, the usual order is,

1	2	3
Subject	Object	Verb

EXAMPLES.—Semiramis Babyloniam condidit—Darius classem comparavit—Persae castra petierunt—ira multis obfuit.

(i) The adjuncts of the different members are brought as close to them as possible: e.g.—

Hannibal urbem tripartito aggreditur (Liv. 21, 7)—ingratus unus omnibus miseris nocet (P. Syr.)—Calpurnius . . multos mortales et urbes aliquot pugnando cepit (Sall. J. 28).—Athenienses Cyrsilum quendam lapidibus cooperuerunt (Cic. Off. 3, 48).

(Here observe *tripartito* is an adjunct of the verb aggreditur, *unus* of ingratus, *omnibus* of miseris, *multos* of mortales, *aliquot* of urbes, *pugnando* of cepit, *quendam* of Cyrsilum, and *lapidibus* of cooperuerunt; and in each case the adjunct is in immediate contact with the word which it qualifies.)

(ii) When the Direct and Indirect Object are combined, the Accusative usually precedes the Dative, unless there is an emphasis on the latter:—

(*a*) *Accusative before Dative.*—Injuriam cui facere (Cic. Fin. 3, 71)—quod classem praedonibus prodidisset (id. Verr. 5, 106)—quum fossam latam cubiculari lecto circumdedisset (id. Tusc. 5, 59)—flaminem Jovi . . . creant (Liv. 1, 20)—ut videatur honorem debitum patri praestitisse (Cic. Ph. 9, 12)—leges civitati per vim imposuit (ib. 7, 15).

(*b*) *Dative* [emphatic] *before Accusative.*—Ne *tonsori* collum committeret (Cic. Tusc. 5, 58).—Pythagoras *Musis* bovem immolasse dicitur . . . *ne Apollini quidem* Delio hostiam immolare voluit (id. N. D. 3, 88)—jubet ille *sibi* legem recitari (id. Verr. 2, 127)—ut *aliis* causam calamitatis attribueret (ib. 5, 106).

§ 703. When the Predicate or Object is emphatic, it may be brought to the beginning, the Subject often coming last. In such cases, a corresponding emphasis can seldom be obtained in English, except by a paraphrase or by the use of the Passive for the Active Voice: as,

Vicit pudorem libido . . rationem amentia (as we might say, *The victory was gained over modesty*, &c.)—Cic. Clu. 15. So in following clause—

Tulit hoc commune dedecus familiae . . . graviter filius, i.e. *it was felt and that deeply, by the son.*

Quum praetoris nequissimi inertissimique oculos praedonum *remi* respergerent, *When this most profligate and indolent governor's eyes were (actually) dashed with the spray from the pirates' oars!*—C (Verr. 5, 100.)

Tantum licentiae dabat gloria, *Such licence was allowed him renown.*—(id. Sen. 44.)

§ 704. The *first place* in a sentence being the most prominent, it is, where special emphasis is needed, assigned to the most emphatic word: as,

Multas ad res perutiles Xenophontis libri sunt (Cic. Sen. 59)—*fuit, fuit,* ista quondam in republica virtus (Cic. Cat. 1, 3)—*ad mortem* te Catilina duci jampridem oportebat (ib. § 2)—*elephanto* nulla beluarum prudentior est (Cic. N. D. 1, 97)—*praeclaram* vero Populo Romano refers gratiam! (id. Cat. 1, 28).

Obs. In such cases, a similar emphasis is obtained in English by beginning with '*it is*': e.g.

Karthagini nunc Hannibal vineas turresque admovet; Karthaginis moenia quatit ariete, *It is against Carthage that Hannibal is now advancing his batteries, etc.*—(Liv. 21, 10, *mod.*)

§ 705. Also *the last place* in a sentence may become strikingly emphatic for any word whose ordinary place would have been earlier: as,

Arbŏres sĕrit dīlĭgens agrĭcŏla quārum adspĭciet bācam ipse ***nunquam*** (Cic. Tusc. 1, 31)—prōvinciam cēpisti *dūram* (Ter. Ph. 1, 2, 22)—apud Helvētios longe dītissimus fuit *Orgetŏrix* (Caes. B. G. 1, 2)—Maecēnas ătăvis ēdīte *rēgibus*! (Hor. Od. 1, 1, 1)—jam vero . . . concursabat urbe totā maxima *multitudo* (Cic. Verr. 5, 93)—in urbem dico atque in urbis intĭmam partem venisse *pīrātas* (ib. § 96).

Especially, sometimes, the last word of an Hexameter: as,

Tantum relĭgio pŏtuit suādēre *mălōrum* (Lucr. 1, 101)—partūriunt montes, nascētur rīdĭcŭlus *mus!* (Hor. A. P. 139)—Albānique patres atque altae moenia *Rōmae* (Virg. Aen. 1, 7).

§ 706. A Noun in Apposition follows the word to which it refers: as,

Urbs Rōma, Cĭcĕro ōrātor, Consul Tullius, etc.

Obs. 1. *Consul Tullius* or *Tullius consul* might be equally correct. The former would inform us that *the consul's name was Tullius;* the latter that *Tullius held the office of consul.*

Obs. 2. Any adjuncts serving to qualify either word, may separate the two; as,

Attus Navius, *inclītus eā tempestāte* augur, *A. Navius, a famous augur of the time.*—Liv. (1, 36).

Obs. 3. Sometimes one or more unemphatic or quasi-enclitic words not adjuncts of either, are allowed to stand between: as,

Evander *tum ea* prōfŭgus ex Pĕlŏponnēso rĕgēbat lŏca.—Liv. (1, 7).

§ 707. A *Dependent Genitive* (1) usually stands next after the governing noun; unless (2) it is emphatic, when it generally precedes: as,

(1.) Agnītio *ănīmi,*—nātūra *Deōrum,*—fīgūrae *Deōrum*—actio *vitae,* cūrātio et admĭnistrātio *rērum*—(from one chapter of Cic.: 1, 1.)

(2.) *Doctissĭmōrum* (*hŏmĭnum*) sententiae,—*săpientis* grăvĭtas atque constantia,—*maxĭmārum* (*rērum*) ignōrātio.—(Cic. same chapter.)

Obs. 1. Also the Genitive often precedes, when the other Noun has an attributive: as, summa phĭlŏsŏphōrum dissensio (Cic.), hoc ōrācŭli responso (Nep.), mīrābilis pugnandi cūpīdĭtas (Nep.), nulla nŏvandi res causa (Liv.), triste dictātōris impĕrium (Liv.).

Obs. 2. The Genitive may be made still more emphatic by being separated from the Noun on which it depends: as,

Quod Darĭi regno *ipsorum* nītērētur dŏmĭnātio, *Because on the rule of Darius depended* THEIR OWN *authority*.—Nep. (Milt. 3.)

§ 708. When the Subjective and Objective Genitive are combined, the former generally precedes and the latter follows the Noun: as,

Cognoscĭte *hŏmĭnis* (Subj. Gen.) princĭpium *măgistrātuum gĕrendorum* (Obj. Gen.), *the man's commencement of holding office*.—Cic. (Verr. 2, 1, 34.)

Cur *eōrum* (Subj. Gen.) spem rĕlĭquam *fortūnārum* (Obj. Gen.) vī extorquēre cōnāris, *their (only) remaining hope of recovering their fortunes*.—Cic. (Div. in Q. Caecil. 21).

§ 709. *Adjectives.*—The ordinary position for an attributive Adjective appears to be immediately *before* its Noun.

Compare the following examples—

Grandem et nubilem filiam—brevi tempore—nefaria libido—hostili odio—singulare scelus—majore odio—omnibus rebus—illa aetas—communi dolore—tanti mali—amantissimi sui fratris—subitum divortium—illa egregia et praeclara mater—nullis auspiciis—funestis ominibus—commune dedecus—quotidianis querimoniis—assiduo fletu—tantis injuriis—summo animi dolore—nullum periculum (all from Cic. Clu. §§ 12-18).

Sex mensibus—unius viri—haec altera victoria—pari modo—parvo numero—Phalerico portu—praecipuo suo periculo—duabus victoriis—tantam gloriam—omnes gentes—reliqui legati—summum imperium—summis honoribus—communi jure gentium—universae Graeciae—majore religione—tam propinquo loco—clarissimi viri—illorum temporum—plurima mala—omnium Graecorum—cuncta Graecia—talem virum—magnis muneribus—quinquaginta talenta (all from Nep. Them. 5-10).

Ingens multĭtūdo—tam longi ŏpĕris—amplissĭmis verbis—publĭca laetĭtia—insĕquens annus—consŭlāris pōtestas—Fidēnāti bello—ancĭpiti proelio—ex mūjōrĭbus castris (all from Liv. 5. 8, 9); etc.

Obs. 1. Some of the Adjectives in the above examples are emphatic; but the position does not render them so. On the contrary, the place next *after* the Substantive, as being less usual, is not unfrequently more emphatic: as, O audaciam singularem! (Cic. Clu. 15)—horâ undecimâ, *at the very eleventh hour* (ib. 27)—spe optima (ib. 28)—decuriones universi, *all to a man* (ib. 41)—tempestate maximâ (Nep. Them. 8), donum amplum (Liv. 5, 16)—O puerum pulchrum (Cic. Off. 1, 144), etc.

Obs. 2. A monosyllabic Substantive more frequently precedes its Adjective: as, res rustĭcae, res nāvālis, di immortales. Yet Cic. has magna spes, omnis spes, etc.

§ 710. Great emphasis may be given to an Adjective by separating it from its Substantive, so as to let it produce a more independent impression: as,

Num tĭbi haec *parva* vĭdentur adjūmenta (Cic. Mur. 38)—māter nĭhil măli *mĭsera* suspĭcans (id. Clu. 27)—sit ĭdem *magnĭfĭcentissĭmos* et *nullos* unquam fēcisse lūdos (id. Mur. 41)—fīlĭam ejus *parvŭlam* arrīpuit (Nep. Them. 8)—quod *summâ* cŏlēbātur rĕvĕrentiâ (ib.)—*trĭbus* in ūnum bellis collātis (Liv. 5, 13).

Especially if the Adjective becomes in this way either the first (§ 704) or the last word in a sentence: as,

Lăbor omnia vincit | *Improbus* (Virg. G. 1, 146)—quod ăliud ĭter hăbērent *nullum* (Caes. B. G. 1, 7).

§ 711. The place immediately *before* a Noun is for the pronominal Adjectives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester* (which are usually quasi-enclitic), an emphatic position: as,

Clāmōres maxĭmos pro *vestrā* sălūte neglexit (Cic. Mil. 3)—per vos, ac per *vestram* fĭdem (ib. 4)—quum *suā* mănu sōrōrem esse interfectam fătērētur (ib. 7)—*meam* pŏtentiam invĭdiōse crīmĭnābatur (ib. 12).

§ 712. Different Cases of the same Adjective or other word, purposely repeated in order to indicate some correspondence or reciprocity, are put close to each other: as,

Magnăque cum *magno* vĕniet trītūra călōre (Virg. G. 1, 190)—(saxum) *magnum magno* cōnāmĭne mīsit (Ov. Met. 3, 60)—*mănus mănum* lăvat (Vet. Prov. ap. Sen., de morte Imp. Claud. 9, *fin.*)—haeret *pĕde pes* densusque *vīro vir* (Virg. Aen. 10, 361).

§ 713. The **ille** of celebrity usually follows the Noun to which it refers: as,

Mēdēa illa, Acădēmĭa illa (Cic.), testŭla illa, *the (fatal) oyster-shell used in ostracism* (Nep.): comp. § 365.

§ 714. Some Adjectives regularly *follow* the Nouns to which they refer. So do especially those which are equivalent to a dependent Genitive, or may be rendered in English by a Noun and a Preposition: as,

Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus, Pŏpŭlus Albānus; vincŭla publĭca (= pŏpŭli), *the prison of state;* dii publĭci, *the gods of one's country* (Nep.); mōtus cīvĭcus (= civium), *a commotion amongst citizens;* pontifex maximus, aes ălienum; etc.

Obs. But we find always trĭbūni mīlĭtum consŭlāri pŏtestāte, not potestate consulari; and in the case of some words the usage varies, as pugna nāvālis or navalis pugna; cīvĭtas mărĭtima or maritima civitas.

§ 715. Sometimes an Adjective or other word is brought to the end of its clause, because of its close connexion with what immediately follows: as,

Cāvendum est ne tarditātibus ūtāmur in ingressu *molliōribus, ut* [= adeo molles ut] pompārum fercŭlis simīles esse videāmur (Cic. Off. 1, 131). (Here the Adjective mollioribus, which would under other circumstances accompany the Noun tarditatibus, is brought later because of its close connection with the clause introduced by ut—'*so very slow and unmanly as to resemble*,' &c.)

Quum in fānum vēnisset *Jŏvis Olympii*, aureum ei detraxit *ămicŭlum*, grāvi pondĕre, quo . . . etc. (Cic. N. D. 3, 83). (Here in the first place, the Gen. Jovis Olympii follows instead of preceding the verb, so as to be closer to the ei immediately succeeding; and again the Acc. amiculum follows its governing Verb, because of its close connexion with the succeeding phrase gravi pondere, etc.)

§ 716. *Adverbs* are usually placed immediately before the word they qualify: as, sātis magnus, dilĭgenter cūrāre, etc. But they also may be emphasised by position: e.g.—

Ita enim senectus honesta est, si se ipsa defendit, etc. (Cic. Sen. 38)—*divine* enim Plato escam malorum voluptatem appellat (ib. 44)—*semper* enim boni assiduique domini referta cella, etc. (ib. 56)—*facilius* in morbos incidunt adolescentes (ib. 67).

(For nunquam at the end of a sentence, see § 705.)

Obs. Non when it refers to a single word, stands immediately before it: as,

Ut ĕnim *non omne* vīnum, sic *non omnis* aetas vetustāte coacescit. —Cic. (Sen. 65.)

But when it refers to the entire proposition, it often stands at the beginning: as,

Non, si Opīmium dēfendisti, Carbo, idcirco te isti bŏnum cīvem pūtābant (where *non* negatives the entire conclusion).—Cic. (de Or. 2, 170.)

§ 717. When two words stand in the same relation to another word, they usually either both precede or both follow it: as,

Divīnĭtus dātum atque oblātum (*not* datum divinitus atque oblatum); —suā spe ac praedīcātiōne (*not* spe sua, &c.); cum summa vŏluntāte et exspectātiōne Pŏpŭli Rōmāni (*not* cum voluntate summa P. R., &c.); —sĕvērē relĭgiōsēque dīcĕre;—ămīcōrum stŭdio offĭcĭōque;—hŏmo audācissĭmus atque āmentissĭmus.—(From Verr. Act. 1.) Bŏne custos defensorque prōvinciae — bŏnōrum ăcerba atque indigna dīreptio — scĕlĕris conjūrātiōnisque damnātus, etc. (ib. 5.)

§ 718. *Prepositions.*—The ordinary position of the different Prepositions has been explained above (Chap. LII.). Concerning the connexion of two Prepositions with the same Substantive see § 647, foll.

A Preposition may be separated from its Case by an attributive (as, ex mărītĭmis cīvītātibus, ad bĕne vīvendum), or by a dependent

Genitive (as, ex Caesăris castris): also (1) by the enclitic *que* (rare); (2) by an Accusative of the object governed by a transitive participle or gerund; or (3) by any lightly pronounced or quasi-enclitic word immediately following an attributive.

(1) *Preposition with enclitic* -que.—This is most frequent when the Preposition itself is repeated: e.g.—

Per amicitiam *perque* rempublicam (Sall. J. 58)—pro nobis *proque* iis qui absunt (Liv. 22, 59, *fin.*)—pro patria . . . *proque* parente ac penatibus (id. 29, 23, *fin.*).

But it also occurs, though rarely, without this condition: e.g.—

Exque his (Cic. Off. 1, 122)—*exque* eo tempore (ib. 2, 80)—*inque* eam rem (Caes. B. G. 5, 36)—*cumque* eo (Cic. Sen. 10)—and frequently in Liv.; also in the poets.

But the regular position for the *que* in such cases, is in attachment to the Noun: e.g. de provinciaque decessit (Cic. Verr. 2, 48)—in convivioque (id. Deiot. 26).

(2) Nec enim in constĭtuentibus rempublĭcam, nec in *bella* gerentibus, etc. (Cic. Br. 45)—in *suum cuique* trĭbuendo (ib. 85).

(3) Ne in istis *quidem* voluptatibus (Cic. Sen. 46)—ne ab omnibus *eam* vitiis videar vindicare (ib. 55)—in quocunque *fuerit* actu (ib. 70)—in eum *saepe* locum (ib. 75)—ad centum *enim* quinquaginta millia (Liv. 21, 8).

Obs. 1. Sometimes when the governed Noun has an attributive, the Preposition stands between the two. This is very frequent in the case of the Relative, also of Indefinite Pronouns and similar words: as, cujus a morte—quam ad suavitatem—ceteris in rebus—quam in partem—alia in parte—aliam in partem—omnibus in locis—una ex re (all from Cic.)

Obs. 2. Concerning *per* separated from its Noun in adjurations, see § 556, 17, *Obs.*

§ 719. *Conjunctions*, as connecting and showing the relation between sentences, naturally precede the members they serve to introduce: for examples see Chap. LIV. Concerning ne . . . . . quidem, see § 656.

Also some Adverbs of Time and Place, as, **intĕrim, intĕrea, sĭmul, jam, nunc, tunc, tum, ĭbi, hīc, illīc**, etc., when they contain a reference to what has preceded, stand at the beginning.

Obs. Inde is very often treated as an enclitic: as,

Dēdi *inde* īnermes coepti—agi *inde* de Apollĭnis dōno—obsīdio *inde* urbis, &c.—Liv.

§ 720. *Subordinate clauses.*—Participial or adverbial clauses and clauses with quum (see § 484), also Adjectival and Adverbial clauses serving the purpose of definition or explanation, are let into the body of a period: as,

At Xerxes, *Thermŏpўlis expugnātis*, prōtĭnus accessit astu (Nep. Them. 4)—jamque, *nuntiāto augŭrio, quum duplex nŭmĕrus Rōmŭlo se*

ostendisset, utrumque rēgem sua multĭtūdo consălūtāverat (Liv. 1, 7) —Pălātium prīmum, *in quo ipse erat ēdŭcātus* (Adj. clause), mūnīit: sacra diis ălĭis *Albāno rĭtu* (Adverb. clause), Graeco Hercŭli *ut ab Evandro instĭtūta ĕrant* (Adv. clause), făcit (ib.)—Magna pars [virgĭnum] forte, *ut in quem quaeque incĭdĕrat* (Adv. clause), raptae (ib. 9) —Athēnienses [dixit] suo consĭlio, ... deos publĭcos suosque, patrios ac pĕnātes, *quo făcilius ab hoste possent dēfendĕre* (Adv. clause), mūris saepsisse (Nep. Them. 7).

Also a Relative clause conveying the reason of what is to be stated, is let into the body of the sentence or even placed first; e.g.

Qui nĭhil mĕtŭĕrent, nĭhil suspĭcārentur, accurrunt, *As they feared nothing and suspected nothing.*—Cic. (Verr. 5, 106): see also ib. 95.

§ 721. But when a Relative clause expresses a purpose, it usually follows the Principal sentence; also, of course, when it introduces an entirely fresh predication: as,

Postquam audiĕrunt mūros instrui, lēgātos Athēnas mīsĕrunt, *qui id fiĕri vĕtārent* [Purpose].—Nep. (Them. 6)—Inde non prius ēgressus est quam rex eum, dătā dextrā, in fĭdem rĕcēpit; *Quam* [= ut hanc] *praestĭtit* (ib. 8).

§ 722. Also a Subjunctive clause with **ut** or **ne**, denoting a Purpose, or (in the case of **ut**) a Consequence, usually follows the sentence to which it is attached.

But in such cases as the following, the clause with **ut** or **ne** serving to explain and give a reason for something, in a sort of parenthetical manner, naturally precedes the main Predicate:—

Sed quia in cīvĭtāte bellĭcōsā plūres Rōmŭli quam Numae sīmĭles rēges pūtābat fŏre, *ne sacra rēgiae vĭcis dēsĕrĕrentur*, flāmĭnem Jŏvi assĭduum săcerdōtem creāvit.—Liv. (1, 20)—His, *ut assĭduae templi antistites essent*, stīpendium de publĭco stătuit.—(ib.)

§ 723. All periods are capable of being divided into shorter members, each of which is arranged according to the general principles laid down.

Obs. After the enunciation of an emphatic word, the remaining words *in the same member* are unemphatic.

§ 724. Regard must in all cases be had to euphony, concerning which it is impossible to lay down precise rules. It may however be remarked that a trochaic ending (‒ ⏑) for a sentence is preferable to an iambic or dactylic one. Thus the following endings occur in the first chapter of the De Oratore:

Esse póssent, constĭtísset, fefellĕrunt, exstĭtĕrunt, recŏlēndas, discrímen, redundārunt, rōgānti, vŏluntāti; the only iambic ending in the same chapter being confĕram (a *creticus*).

PART III.—PROSODY.

§ 725. PROSODY treats of the *Quantity* of Syllables, of *Metre*, and of the laws of Verse.

Obs. Prosody is a Greek word (προσῳδία), which literally signifies the tone or accent of a syllable.

CHAPTER LXVI.—QUANTITY.

§ 726. The quantity of a Syllable is either long (–), short (⏑), or doubtful (⏓).

(A.) GENERAL RULES.

§ 727. All diphthongs are long: as, aurum, poena, cui.

EXCEPTION.—*Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel: as, prăe-ustus (Virg. A. 7, 524), prăe-acutus (Ov. Met. 7, 131).

Obs. 1. A vowel arising from a diphthong remains long: as, oc-cīdo, *to kill*, from caedo, *to strike;* con-clūdo, *to shut up*, from claudo, *to shut.*

Obs. 2. Some Greek diphthongs are shortened: as, pŏesis (ποίησις), platĕa (πλατεῖα) as well as platēa.

§ 728. All contracted syllables are long: as, cōgo from cŏăgo, bōbus from bŏvĭbus, jūnior from jŭvĕnior, prūdens from prōvĭdens.

§ 729. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants, or by a double consonant (*x*, *z*); as, pēnsum, dūx, Amāzon.

Obs. In Prosody, quantity is for the sake of convenience regarded as belonging only to Vowels. Thus in the word nūx (*a nut*), root nūc-, the vowel *u* is said to be long (by position): though strictly speaking, it is the *syllable* which is made long by the addition of the consonant *s*, the *vowel* retaining its quantity as in other cases; nūc-i, nūc-em, nūc-es, etc.

Obs. 1. *Qu* is a single consonant: hence, ăqua. *H* is a simple breathing: hence, ădhuc.

Obs. 2. A syllable is also long by position when one consonant ends a word, and another consonant begins the next word: as, īn mare; fruitūr vita.

Obs. 3. But if a word ends in a short vowel, and the following word begins with two consonants, the vowel *usually* remains short: as,

In solio Phoebus claris lucĕntĕ smăragdis.—Ov. (Met. 2, 24).

Obs. 4. But a short vowel rarely stands before sc, sm, sp, sq, and st. 'Virg. has only one instance of the lengthening of a short vowel in such a position—date telā, scandite (A. 9, 37), and once only leaves the vowel short—ponitĕ: spes (A. 11, 309); and in each case the license seems to be used for effect.' (K.) [In the former place, K. himself reads *ascendite*.]

Exception 2. Before a mute and either of the liquids *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes doubtful: as, dŭplex or dūplex, pătris or pātris. It generally remains short before *tl*, as, Ătlas; *cl*, as assĕcla; and *fl*, as, mellĭfluus, *flowing-with-honey*.

Obs. 1. It is only in Greek words that a vowel remains short before a mute and either of the liquids *m* or *n*: as, Tĕcmessa or Tēcmessa, Prŏcne or Prōcne, cўcnus or cȳcnus, *a swan*. In words like tegmen, agmen, the first syllable is always long.

Obs. 2. A vowel *naturally long* remains long before a mute and a liquid: as, ācres from ācer, *sharp*.

Obs. 3. In composition, if one syllable ends with a mute, and the other begins with a liquid, the vowel is long by position: as, ŏb-ruo, not ŏb-ruo, *to overwhelm*, sūb-latum, not sūb-latum, *lifted up*.

§ 730. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: as, pĭus, flĕo, pŭer: or if *h* intervenes between the vowels, as trăho, vĕho.

Exceptions.—The following vowels are long before another vowel:

1. The a in the old Genitive of the First Declension: as, aquāĭ.
2. The a and e of proper names in -aius, eius: as, Cāius, Pompēius (Cājus, Pompējus); also a in āio, § 113.
3. The e in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: as, diēi: but rĕi and fidĕi, except in archaic poets.
4. The e in the Interjection ēheu.
5. The i in the Genitive alīus (but always short in alterĭus). In the other Genitives in ius, the *i* is doubtful: as, illĭus, ipsĭus, unĭus. (The *i* in illius, etc., appears to have been short in the time of Cicero: see de Or. 3, 183.)
6. The i in fio when not followed by *r*: as, fīo, fīebam, fīam, but fĭerem, fĭeri.
7. The i in dīa (δῖα), *divine*.
8. The i in Diāna is doubtful: Dĭana and Dīana.
9. The o in the Interjection ohe is doubtful: ōhe and ŏhe.

10. All vowels long in the original Greek words: as, āër (ἀήρ), Aenēas (Αἰνείας), Alexandrīa (Ἀλεξάνδρεια), Briscēis (Βρισηΐς). Academia is found with penult. short in later poets.

Obs. The case of certain compounds of jăcio is peculiar. In these jacio often becomes ĭcio, as, abicio, eicio, reicio, but the *i* was probably doubled in pronunciation. 'We can thus account for the quantity of rēicio, where the *i* formed a diphthong with the *e* of *re*, and also a separate syllable. On the other hand eicit, reicit, are sometimes disyllabic, and ābĭcit, ădĭcit are found with their first syll. short.' (K.)

§ 731. *Radical Vowels.*—No rules can be given for the quantity of Root Vowels, which is only to be learnt from the poets or from the Dictionary: as, lĕv-is, *light*, lēv-is, *smooth*; lĕg-o, *I pick, read*, lēg-o, *I depute*, etc.

§ 732. The Root Vowel is sometimes lengthened in the Present Tense (§ 124, 5): as, dūco, *I lead*, root dŭc (compare dux, dŭcis: ēdŭco, *I educate*); dīco, *I say*, root dĭc (compare index, -dĭcis, mălĕdĭcus, etc.).

§ 733. Vowels used in connecting two or more roots are *short:* as, rēg-ĭ-fŭgium (name of a festival), rēg-ĭ-fĭcus, *kingly* (rex, fŭgo, făcio); ŏp-ĭ-fĕr, *aid-bringing* (ops, fĕro); lān-ĭ-ger, *wool-bearing* (lāna, gĕro); magn-ĭ-lŏquus, *grandly speaking* (magnus, lŏquor), etc.

Obs. In levāmentum, instrūmentum, lenīmentum, etc., *a*, *u*, *i* are Stem Vowels; in lānĭger, magnĭloquus, the Stem vowel has been displaced by the connective Vowel.

§ 734. Derivative or Compound words retain the quantity of the words from which they are derived: as,

gĕr-ēbam, gĕr-ens, lānĭ-gĕr, from gĕr-o.
rēg-ius, rēg-īna, rēg-ĭ-fŭgium, from rex, rēg-is.

EXCEPTIONS.

cŭrūlis (sella)	*the curule chair*	from	currus (?)
rēgŭla	*a rule*	„	rĕgo
sēdes	*a seat*	„	sĕd-eo
lūcerna	*a lantern*	„	lūc-co (v. Sm. L Dict. s.v. lux)
sēcius	*otherwise*	„	sēcus (?)
prōnŭba	*match-maker*	„	nūbo
jūcundus (contr. for jŭvĭcundus)	*pleasant*	„	jŭvo
hūmānus	*human*	„	homo
pējĕro and dējĕro	compounds of jūro		

with some others.

Obs. 1. Some exceptions are rather apparent than real: as, index, -dĭcis, *an informer;* prædīco, *I affirm;* mălēdĭcus, *evil-speaking* (all with i *short*); compared with dīco, *I say,* addīco, *I assign to,* etc. Here all the words must alike be referred to the root dīc, which is lengthened by vowel extension in the Present Tense of dīco (Gk. δείκ-νυμι), but keeps its natural quantity in the other derivatives.

Obs. 2. In cognĭtum, agnĭtum (from nōtum), the Prefix has led to the abbreviation of the Vowel. Compare căpio, accĭpio, etc., *i* being a lighter vowel sound than *a*.

§ 735. In dissyllabic Perfects and Supines the first syllable is long: as,

lăvo	lāvi	lōtum	*to wash*
vĭdeo	vīdi	vīsum	*to see*
mŏveo	mōvi	mōtum	*to move*
jŭvo	jūvi	jūtum	*to assist*

Exceptions.—1. A vowel before a vowel remains short: as, rŭi.

2. The following Perfects have the first syllable short:

bĭbi, dĕdi, fŭi, tŭli,
stĕti, stĭti, fĭdi, scĭdi.

3. The following Supines have the first syllable short:

dătum, rătum, sătum, rŭtum,
ĭtum, cĭtum, lĭtum, sĭtum, quĭtum

From sto comes stātum: from sisto comes stătum.

§ 736. The first syllable of a reduplicated Perfect is short: as pŏposci from posco, *to demand;* tĕtĭgi, from tango, *to touch;* cĕcīdi from caedo, *to cut.*

§ 737. The prefix pro is *short* in prŏcella, *a storm,* prŏcul, *far off,* prŏfanus, *profane,* prŏfestus, *not kept as a holiday,* prŏficiscor, *to set out,* prŏfecto, *truly,* prŏfiteor, *to profess,* prŏfugio, *to flee to a distance,* with prŏfugus, *banished,* prŏfundus, *deep,* prŏfundo, *to pour forth* (with a few exceptions, *e.g.:* "has postquam maesto prōfudit pectore voces," Cat.), prŏnepos, *great-grandson* (but prōnepos once in Sidonius), prŏpitius, *propitious,* prŏtervus, *wanton:* it is doubtful in procuro, *to manage another's affairs,* propāgo, *layer, offspring,* propăgo, *to propagate,* propino, *to drink to another,* propello, *to push forward* (ŏ in Lucr. only): it is long in all other words: as, prōcedo, *to go forward,* prōcurro, *to run forward,* &c.

Obs. Prōpago, in sense of *layer;* prŏpago, *offspring* (Virg.).

§ 738. **Dis** is short only in dĭrimo (disimo), *to separate*, dĭribeo, *to sort out*, dĭsertus, *eloquent* (etym. uncertain). **Di** is always long.

§ 739. **Ne** is short only in nĕque, *neither;* nĕqueo, *to be unable;* nĕfas (and its derivatives), *unlawful;* nĕfandus, *abominable:* long in other words, as, nēmo (ne-hemo or homo), *no one;* nēquicquam, *in vain.*

§ 740. **O** for **ob** is short in ŏmitto, *to let go by*, and ŏperio, *to cover up.*

§ 741. **Si** is short in sĭquidem (Ov. M. 10, 104, etc.).

§ 742. **Re** is always short, except in rēfert (= rem fert), *it concerns* (but rĕfert from rĕfero).

§ 743. **Ve** is long, as, vē-sanus.

§ 744. Monosyllabic words (not enclitic) ending in a *vowel* are long: as, sī, tū, tē, mē, sē, nē, ē, dē.

Exceptions.—All enclitics are short: as, quĕ, vĕ, nĕ, cĕ, tĕ (tutĕ) psĕ (reapsĕ), ptĕ (suoptĕ): also (according to § 745) quă (usu. preceded by si, num, etc.), *Nom. Sing. Fem.* and *Nom. Acc. Pl. Neut.* from quis.

(B.) RULES RESPECTING FINAL SYLLABLES

I. Final Vowels.

§ 745. **a** is *long:*

1. In Ablative Sing. of 1 Decl.: as, mensā.
2. In Voc. Sing. of 1 Decl. of Greek Nouns in as and es (excepting tes, Gr. της): as, Aeneā, Anchisā. Also sometimes in Nom. and Voc. Sing. of Nouns in a (Gr. ᾱ): see § 18.

Obs. But those in *es* (excepting *tes*, which makes ă) more frequently make ē: see § 746, 2.

3. In the Imperative Active of the 1 Conj.: as, amā. (But pŭtă, parenthetically.)
4. In most Prepositions, Adverbs, and Numerals: as, ā (ăb), contrā, suprā: anteā, posteā, frustrā; trigintā, quinquagintā.

(For exceptions, see next paragraph: 4.)

a is *short:*

1. In Nom. and Voc. Sing. of 1 Decl.: as, mensă, illă, aliquă.
2. In Voc. of Greek nouns in tes, as Orestă.
3. In Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur. of all Neuters: as, regnă, mariă, cornuă.
4. In the Adverb ită, the Conjunction quiă, and the Interjection ejă.

§ 746. e is *long:*

1. In Abl. Sing. of 5 Decl.: as, diē: and consequently in hodiē, quarē. Also in the contracted forms of Gen. and Dat.: as, fidē (= fidēi).
2. In Greek words of 1 Decl.: as, epitomē, Anchisiadē (Voc. of Anchisiades); and in Greek Neuters Plural contracted: as, Tempē, cetē.
3. In the Imperative Act. 2 Per. Sing. of 2 Conj.: as, monē. But the following are doubtful: vidĕ, valĕ, cavĕ; and sometimes (only in the comic poets), habĕ, tacĕ, manĕ, jubĕ.
4. In Adverbs derived from Adjectives of 2 Decl.: as, doctē, aegrē: except benĕ, malĕ, supernĕ, infernĕ (in Lucr. and Auson.), internĕ (Aus. Epist. 5, 19). Also in Adverbs ferē, fermē, and the Interjection ohē. The quantity of the final e of abunde and temere is uncertain.

Obs. Concerning monosyllables in e, *see* 744.

e is *short* in all other words: as, dominĕ, regĕ (noun and verb), fuerĕ, impunĕ.

§ 747. i is generally *long:* as, puerī, corporī, dieī, audī, docuistī, vigintī.

i is *short:*

1. In nisĭ, quasĭ, sicubĭ, necubĭ, and in the very rare form cŭĭ for cuī.
2. In the Dative and Vocative of Greek Nouns of 3 Decl. as, Dat. Paridĭ, Voc. Alexĭ.

i is *doubtful* in mihĭ, tibĭ, sibĭ, ibĭ, ubĭ.

Obs. ūtĭque always; but always ibīdem, ubīque. We find also cūĭque.

§ 748. o is mostly common: as, amŏ, amatŏ, leŏ, octŏ.

But o is *long*:

1. In Dat. and Abl. of 2 Decl.: as, dominō, deō.
2. When it represents Gr. ω: as, Didō, Plutō.
3. In monosyllables: as, dō, prō.

o is *short* in egŏ, duŏ, modŏ, *only* (modō, egō, archaic), putŏ, *I think*, and cedŏ, *tell me* (both used parenthetically), nesciŏ, *I know not* (in the phrase nesciŏ quis), and quando when compounded with quidem: as, quandŏquidem.

Obs. Virg. has duŏ (masc. or neut.) a good many times, and only once duō (Ec. 5, 66, where however Kennedy and Conington after Ribb. read duās). Auson. has duŏ once (Epist. 19, 11). Ambo properly has ŏ, though ō also occurs.

§ 749. u is always *long:* as, cornū, auditū.

II. Final Consonants.

§ 750. as is almost always *long:* as, mensās, civitās, laudās.

as is *short* only:

1. In anăs, anătis, *a duck*. Also Gr. Nouns in ăs, Gen. ădis, as lampăs.
2. Acc. Plur. of Greek Nouns of 3 Decl.: as, Arcadăs.

Obs. In vas (vădis) the Nom. is probably short.

§ 751. es is almost always *long:* as, vulpēs, *a fox*, leonēs.

But es is *short:*

1. In Nom. and Voc. Sing. of some dissyllabic and polysyllabic Nouns in *es*, which have the penultima short in Gen.: as, milĕs, ĭtis, interprĕs, ĕtis: and *adj.* praepĕs, ĕtis: but it is long in pēs, pĕdis, and compounds; also in, abiēs, ariēs, pariēs, Cerēs.
2. In Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Gk. Nouns: as, Arcadĕs: also hippomanĕs (*Nom. Sing. Neut.*).
3. From esse, *to be;* as, ĕs dĕs, potĕs.
4. In the Preposition penĕs.

§ 752. is is usually *short:* as, navĭs, lapidĭs, regĭs, regerĭs. (Sanguis, pulvis, doubtful.)

But is is *long:*

1. In Dat. and Abl. Plur. of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns: as, musīs, dominīs (contr. forms), nobīs, vobīs (see § 892).
2. In Acc. Plur. of 3 Decl. (see § 39); as, omnīs for omnēs.
3. In 2 Pers. Sing. of Pres. Ind. of 4 Conj.: as, audīs (= audi + is: see § 121).
4. Also in the contracted forms velīs, nolīs, malīs, sīs, possīs.

Obs. 1. For *is* in 2 Pers. Sing. of Fut. Perf. Indicative, see § 93, *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 2. Monosyllables are mostly long: as, vīs (noun and verb), glīs: but ĭs, quĭs (prons.), are short.

§ 753. os is almost always *long:* as, puerōs, honōs (Virg. Aen. 7, 332), arbōs (Virg. G. 2, 66), bōs. (But arbŏr, honŏr, etc.: see § 760.)

os is *short* only:

1. In Nom. Sing. (archaic) of 2 Decl.: as, avŏs, servŏs (= avus, servus).
2. In ŏs (ossis), impŏs (ŏtis), compŏs (ŏtis).
3. In Gen. Sing. of Gk. Nouns: as, Thetidŏs: and in some Greek Noms., as Argŏs (neut.).

§ 754. us is usually *short:* as, dominŭs, gradŭs, sumŭs.

It is *long:*

1. In Nom. Sing. of Nouns of 3 Decl. which have long *u* in penultima of Gen.: as, virtūs, ūtis (Hor. however has palŭs, A. P. 65). In pecus, pecŭdis, the quantity of the us is uncertain.
2. In Gen. Sing. and Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur. of 4 Decl.: as, manūs.
3. In contractions from the Greek, as Sapphūs (= Σαπφοῦς): but we have polypŭs, Oedipŭs, from πούς.

§ 755. ys in Greek words is *short:* as Phorcўs, Erinnўs, Capўs. In Tethўs it is common.

§ 756. Final syllables in **b**, **d**, **t** are short; as ăb, apŭd, amăt.

EXCEPTIONS.—Some (rare) contracted forms of verbs ending in *t*; as irritât for irritavit (Lucr. 1, 71): see § 128, 1.

§ 757. **c.** Final syllables in **c** are mostly long: except nĕc, donĕc; also făc (for făcĕ). The pronoun hic is doubtful, but the Adverb hīc (heic) is long.

§ 758. **l.** Final syllables in **l** are short: as, semĕl, animăl.

EXCEPTIONS.—Monosyllables: as, sōl, sāl, nīl.

§ 759. **n.** Final syllables in **n** are short: as, carmĕn, tamĕn, ăn.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Monosyllables: as, rēn (*a kidney*), sīn (= si ne, *but if not*), splēn (*the spleen*), ēn (*lo*), nōn (*not*).

2. Greek Accusatives from nouns in *as*, *es* and *e* (First Decl.): as, Aeneān, Anchisēn, Penelopēn; also sometimes from Fems. in *a* (Gk. ᾱ): see § 18.

3. Greek Nominatives of the Third Declension; as, Lacedaemōn, Titān, Actaeōn.

§ 760. **r.** Final syllables in **r** are short: as, puĕr, vĭr, sempĕr.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Most monosyllables: as, fūr (*a thief*), pār (noun and adject.), lār, vēr, cūr. (But cŏr, *the heart*, is short.)

2. A few Nouns in *er* taken from the Greek: as, aĕr (ἀήρ), *the air*; aethĕr (αἰθήρ), *the sky*. Celtibĕr is common. (Mart.)

CHAPTER LXVII.—METRE.

§ 761. RHYTHM (ῥέω, ῥυθμός) consists in the recurrence of a stress of voice at regulated intervals; as in the following lines:

quădrŭpĕ|dăntĕ pŭ|trĕm sŏnĭ|tŭ quătĭt | ŭngŭlă | cămpum.—Virg.

pāssĕr | dēlĭcĭ|ae mĕ|ae pu|ēllae.—Cat.

flūmĭnă | cōnstĭtĕ|rĭnt ă|cūtō.—Hor.

§ 762. This stress of the voice is called arsis (ἄρσις, ictus), and is denoted by the sign ′. It nearly always falls on a long syllable: as, vĭdimus, ārma. The unaccented

part of the foot is called thesis (*θέσις*), and is denoted by the sign ˋ: as, ārmà.

Obs. Sometimes, though rarely, the arsis falls upon a short syllable, which is thereby often made long: as, Ītălĭam (Virg. Aen. i. 2).

§ 763. The subdivisions or measures of a metrical line are called *feet* (pĕdēs): thus the first of the above lines contains *six* feet; the second, *five;* and the third, *four*.

The following feet have distinctive names.

1. Of two syllables.

⏑ ⏑ Pyrrhĭchius (Pyrrhic) . . . *pătĕr, bŏnĕ.*
⏑ – Iambus . . . . . *ădēst, mĕō.*
– ⏑ Trŏchaeus (Trochee) . . . . *ārmă, flēbĭt.*
– – Spondēus (Spondee) . . . . *ōrās, ēmī.*

2. Of three syllables.

⏑ ⏑ ⏑ Tribrăchys . . . . . *hŏmĭnĭs, rĕcĭpĕ.*
– ⏑ ⏑ Dactўlus (Dactyl) . . . . . *ōmnĭă, fēcĭmŭs.*
⏑ ⏑ – Anapaestus (Anapaest) . . *ămēō, lĕgĕrēs.*
⏑ – ⏑ Amphibrăchys . . . . . *ămābăt, dĭēbŭs.*
– ⏑ – Creticus or Amphimăcrus *ēxplēō, sērvĭtūs.*
⏑ – – Bacchīus . . . . . *ămīcōs, sŭpēllēx.*
– – ⏑ Antibacchīus . . . . . *aūdīrĕ, rēxīssĕ.*
– – – Molossus . . . . . *haūsīstī, dīvīnaē.*

3. Of four syllables.

⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ Proceleusmaticus . . . . . *ĭnĭtĭă, cĕlĕrĭtĕr.*
⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ Ionicus a Minore . . . . . *ŏnĕrābūnt, gĕnĕrōsī.*
– – ⏑ ⏑ ——— a Majore . . . . . *ūlcīscĭtŭr, sōlāmĭnĕ.*
– ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ Choriambus . . . . . *ērĭpĭūnt, sīmplĭcĭtās.*
⏑ – – ⏑ Antispastus . . . . . *ĭnēxhaūstŭs, pĕrīllūstrĭs.*
– ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ Paeon primus . . . . . *ēxĭgŭŭs, rēspĭcĭăt.*
⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ ——— secundus . . . . . *ŏbēdĭĕt, dŏmēstĭcŭs.*
⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ——— tertius . . . . . *ĭnĭmĭcus, pĕpŭlĕrĕ.*
⏑ ⏑ ⏑ – ——— quartus . . . . . *ĭnĭtĭŏ, mĭsĕrĭcōrs.*
⏑ – – – Epitrītus primus . . . . . *lăbōrāndō, sălūtāntēs.*
⏑ ⏑ – – ——— secundus . . . . . *ādmĭnīstrāns, ĭmpĕrātrĭx.*
⏑ ⏑ ⏑ – ——— tertius . . . . . *āuctōrĭtās, ĭntēllĭgēns.*
⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ⏑ ——— quartus . . . . . *āssērtātŏr, ĭnfĭnĭtŭs.*

Obs. Two iambi, trochees or spondees together, are sometimes called diiambus, ditrochaeus, and dispondeus respectively.

§ 764. Verses are called Monometer, Dimeter, Trimeter, Tetrameter, Pentameter, or Hexameter, according to the number of measures (*μέτρα*) which they contain. Hence a line consisting of six dactyls is called *Hexameter* (*ἕξ, six*); while a line consisting of the same number of iambi or trochees, is called *Trimeter* (*τρεῖς, three*); and a line consisting of four anapaests, *Dimeter* (*δίς, twice*).

§ 765. Elision (ēlīsio) or synăloepha (*συναλοιφή*) is the striking out of a vowel or a syllable ending with *m*, at the end of a word, when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*. It is indicated by the sign ⁀: as,

cōntĭcŭĕrĕ ōmnes (*scanned*, cōntĭcŭ|ĕr'ōmn|ēs)

mē mĭsĕrum ēxclāmăt (mē mĭsĕr'|ēxclām|ăt)

pērque hĭĕmēs (pērqu'hĭĕ|m|ēs)

ūmbrārum haec sēdēs (ūmbrār'|haec sēd|ēs)

Obs. 1. Monosyllabic words are rarely elided, and least of all at the beginning of a verse. Si ad vitulam spectas (Virg. E. 48) must be read sy-ad vitulam, etc.

Obs. 2. The elision of a long vowel before a short one is very rare.

Obs. 3. If *est* follows a final vowel, the *e* of est is elided, and not the final vowel: thus,

nostra est, nostri est, nostrum est, should be written and read nostra'st, nostri'st, nostrum'st.

Obs. 4. Sometimes a final long vowel, in the *arsis* of a foot, and consequently receiving the *ictus*, remains unelided and long before a word beginning with a vowel: as,

ter sunt | cona|tī im|ponere | Pēlĭō | Ossam.—Virg. (G. 1, 281.)

Also sometimes a final long vowel in *thesis* remains unelided, but is shortened before a word beginning with a vowel; as the *o* of *Pēlĭŏ* (properly Pēlĭō) in the foregoing line. Similarly īnsŭlăĕ, Aen. 3, 211; in both which cases the word would otherwise be incapable of forming part of an Hexameter.

Obs. 5. The Interjections o, heu, ah, proh, are not elided: as,

ō pater | ō hŏmīn|um dī|vumque aet|erna pot|estas.—Virg.

āh ĕgŏ | non alit|er trist|es e|vincere | morbos.—Tib.

Obs. 6. A final short vowel on which the *ictus* rests is sometimes lengthened before a single consonant: e.g. aberāt (Virg. E. 1, 39)—gravidūs autumno (ib. G. 2, 5). See Kennedy, Virg. p. 623.

Obs. 7. Earlier writers sometimes elide *s*: as,

nam si de nihilo fierent, ex omnibu' rebus.—Lucr.

§ 766. Synaerĕsis (*συναίρεσις*) is the combination of two vowels into one. It is admissible only in the case of words which metrical laws would otherwise exclude, and more especially in the case of proper names: as,

seu len|to fue|rint al|vĕâria | vimine | texta.—Virg.
Caucase|asque re|fert volu|cres fur|tumque Pro|metheî.—Virg.
So Orphĕa, Typhoĕa.

Synaeresis is chiefly found in the following words: dĕînde, prŏînde, abĭête, arĭête, dĕêsse and its derivatives, antĕhāc, and the whole verb antĕîre.

§ 767. Diaerĕsis (*διαίρεσις*) indicates the separation of two vowels which might otherwise form a diphthong: aërius.

I. Dactylic Hexameter Metre.

§ 768. The Dactylic Hexameter, usually called simply Hexameter, is employed especially in epic poetry, whence it is also termed Heroic Verse. It consists properly of six dactyls (– ⏑ ⏑), the last of which is shortened by one syllable, so that the place of the last syllable is supplied by a trochee (– ⏑), or, as the final syllable of each verse is common, by a spondee (– –). Instead of any one of the first four dactyls, a spondee may be used, but the fifth foot is regularly a dactyl. Hence, the following is the scheme of the verse:

1	2	3	4	5	6
– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑ ⏑	– ⏑
– –	– –	– –	– –		– –

§ 769. The following are examples of the different combinations of the first four feet:

1. *Four dactyls.*

(*a*) rădĭt ĭtĕr lĭquĭdăm cĕlĕrĕs nĕquĕ commovet alas

2. *One spondee and three dactyls.*

(*b*) ĭmpĕnsăquĕ sŭî pŏtĕrĭt sŭpĕrare cruoris
(*c*) tĕmpŏră lăbūntŭr tăcĭtĭsquĕ sĕnescimus annis
(*d*) nĭtĭmŭr ĭn vĕtĭtŭm sēmpĕr cŭpĭmusque negata
(*e*) ăspĭcĭūnt ŏcŭlĭs sŭpĕrî mŏrtalia justis

3. *Two spondees and two dactyls.*

(*f*) dūm vīrēs ānnĭquĕ sĭnūnt tŏlĕrate labores
(*g*) quārūm quae mĕdĭŭ'st nōn ēst hābĭtabilis aestu
(*h*) cūrvārĭquĕ mănūs ĕt ădūncōs crescer' in ungues
(*i*) ūt pătĕr ūt tĕrtās mūndūmquĕ rūbescere vidit
(*k*) nūmĭnă nēc spērnĭ sĭnĕ poenā nostra sinamus
(*l*) cōntĭgĕrānt răpĭdās lĭmōsī Phasidos undas

4. *Three spondees and one dactyl.*

(*m*) nātūram ēxpēllās fūrcā tămĕn usque recurret
(*n*) ūt dēsĭnt vīrēs tămĕn ēst laudanda voluntas
(*o*) aut prōdēssĕ vŏlūnt aūt dēlectare poetae
(*p*) pārtūrĭūnt mōntēs nāscētur ridiculus mus

5. *Four spondees.*

(*q*) ēx aequŏ cāptīs ārdēbānt mentibus ambo

§ 770. Sometimes, but rarely, the fifth foot is a spondee, but then the fourth foot is a dactyl. Such a verse is called spondaic. It usually concludes with a word either of four syllables or of one syllable: as,

constitit atque oculis Phrygia ăgmĭnă circūmspéxit
cara deum soboles, magnūm Jŏvĭs ĭncrēmēntum
cum patribus populoque, penātĭbŭs ĕt māgnĭs dis

Obs. Very rarely indeed do we find such a line as,
aut le|vis ocre|as len|tō dū|cūnt ār|gento (Virg. Aen. 7, 634).

§ 771. A caesura (from *caedo*, "to cut") is a division of the foot, so that one part of it is in one word, and another part of it in another word. Every Hexameter line must have at least one caesura. The following line has five:

dónec || erís || felíx || multós || numerábis || amícos

§ 772. The caesura may be either strong or weak. The *strong caesura* is when the foot is cut after its first *long* syllable: as,

árma vi|rúmque ca|nó || Tro|jaé qui | prímus ab | óris

The *weak caesura* is when the foot is cut after the first *short* syllable of a dactyl: as,

ó pas|sí gravi|óra || da|bít deus | hís quoque | fínem

§ 773. The caesuras are named after the number of half feet preceding them (in Greek ἡμι- and μέρος); trihemimeral, after the first three half feet; penthemimeral, after the first five half feet; hephthemimeral, after the first seven half feet; ennehemimeral, after the first nine half feet.

§ 774. Every Hexameter verse has either the *penthemimeral*, or *hephthemimeral* caesura. The penthemimeral strong caesura is the most characteristic and most frequent. The hephthemimeral is generally used along with the trihemimeral: as,

fáma malūm ‖ quo nón aliūd ‖ velócius úllum

§ 775. Besides the pause, or pauses, of the caesura, an Hexameter usually has at least one other pause, where a foot terminates with a word. Thus, in the following line, there are two such pauses in addition to the penthemimeral caesura: as,

táutae | mólis erāt ‖ Románam | cóndere géntem

§ 776. The last word of an Hexameter line usually consists of either two or three syllables. But a foreign word of four or more syllables is occasionally found in this position; especially if difficult to introduce elsewhere. Compare Virg. Aen. 3, 680 (cўpă | rīssī); Ec. 8, 1 (Ālphĕsī | bōēī).

Obs. 1. A monosyllable may end a line if it is closely connected with the word immediately preceding it, or if it partakes of the nature of an enclitic.

Hence such endings as laūs est (Hor.), ūsa est (Virg.), are admissible.

Obs. 2. Also an accented monosyllable may be chosen to end a line, with a view to a particular effect: as,

vértitur íntereā caelum, ét ruit óceanó Nóx (Virg. Aen. 2, 250).
párturiúnt montés nascétur rídiculús mús (Hor. A. P. 139).

§ 777. It is not usual, except for the conveyance of a particular idea, to make the first four feet of an Hexameter exclusively dactyls or exclusively spondees. An accumulation of dactyls produces a rapid movement: an accumulation of spondees a heavy movement. These opposite effects are designedly produced by Virgil in the following lines:

quádrupedánte putrém sonitú quatit úngula campum (Aen. 8, 596).
íllī intér sesé magnā́ vi brácchia tóllunt (G. 4, 174).

§ 778. *Hypermeter.*—Lines are thus designated which have a syllable over the full measure (*ὑπὲρ μέτρον*). But this is only allowed when the redundant syllable ends in a vowel (also very rarely in *m*), and the following line begins with a vowel. The redundant syllable in Virgil is in the great majority of cases the enclitic -que. See G. 2, 344 and 443, etc. 'We also find tecta La|tīnōrum (Aen. 7, 160); and decoquit | hūmōrem (G. 1, 295).' K.

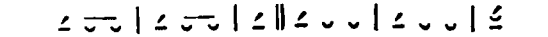
When a line of verse ends with an imperfect foot, it is called *catalectic* (*καταλήγειν, to leave off*). When the last foot is perfect, the verse is *acatalectic*. The term *hypercatalectic* is sometimes applied to hypermetrical lines.

II. Dactylic Pentameter.

§ 779. The Dactylic Pentameter is found only in conjunction with the Hexameter, the distich thus formed being called an Elegiac couplet: as,

Póstera lúx oritúr. Linguís animísque favéte,
Núnc dicénda bonā̆ ‖ súnt bona verba diē̆.—Ov.

It has the following scheme:



Here observe:

1. It consists of two members, separated by a pause (the penthemimeral).
2. Each member consists of two *entire* feet, originally dactyls, followed by an imperfect or *half* foot, consisting of a monosyllable. ($2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$. Hence the name Pentameter.)
3. The first two dactyls only may be replaced by spondees.
4. It has six arses, but only four theses (§ 762).
5. The last syllable of the verse is common.

Obs. The most accurate poets, however, generally take care that a short syllable at the close shall end with a consonant: as,

vix Priamús tantí ‖ tótaque Trója fuít.—Ov.

§ 780. The two dactyls in the latter half of the verse are unalterable: the first half admits of the following four varieties:

1. Two dactyls: as,

Crēdĭdĭmŭs gĕnĕrī ‖ nŏminibŭsque tuīs

2. A combination of a spondee and a dactyl: as,

trājĕctăm glădĭŏ ‖ mŏrte perīre juvāt
cŭm mălă pĕr lōngās ‖ cŏnvălŭĕre morās (most usual form)

3. Two spondees: as,

sŭprēmăm bēllīs ‖ ĭmposuīsse manum

§ 781. The following additional rules are observed by the most accurate poets (especially Ovid) in the structure of Pentameter Verse:

(1.) The last word of the line is regularly a dissyllable.

Obs. Catullus, Propertius, and others, employ quadrisyllabic, and *less frequently*, trisyllabic endings.

(2.) A monosyllable at the close of either half of the line is avoided.

(3.) Elision is avoided both at the end of the first half and altogether in the second.

III. Iambic Metres.

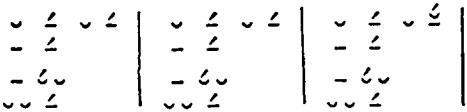
§ 782. *Iambic Trimeter.*—The Roman grammarians called this verse *senarius* from its six feet; it originally consisted of three double-iambi or iambic dipodies (*διποδίαι ἰαμβικαί*).

§ 783. The characteristic foot of each dipody is the second, and this is mostly kept pure, or simply resolved into a tribrach. The first syllable in each dipody may be either long or short: whence the common rule—spondees in the odd places (1, 3, 5), but not in the even. (Cf. Hor. A. P. 257, 'non ut de sede secunda Cederet aut quarta socialiter.')

Then, either syllable of the spondee may be resolved into two short syllables; thus allowing a dactyl or an anapaest in the odd places, only with iambic ictus—i. e. with the rhythmic stress on the latter part of the foot.

Further, the long syllable of each iambus being resolvable into two short syllables, a tribrach becomes possible

in any foot (except the last ⏑ –). Thus the scheme of Iambic Trimeter or Iambic Senarius is as follows:



§ 784. These licences, borrowed from Greek versification, are freely used by Plautus and Terence; also by Phaedrus and by Seneca the tragic writer. Horace, who employs this metre in the greater part of his 'Epodes' (see § 807), has no instance of a dactyl later than the 3rd place.

Plautus and Terence admit spondees, with their equivalents, not only to the odd places, but also to the even; excepting the sixth: e. g.

ăpūd | mē jūsta | ēt clĕ|mēns fŭĕ|rīt sĕr|vĭtūs |
scīs fĕc|*i* ē sērv|*ō* ŭt ēs|sēs lī|bĕrtūs | mĭhī |
prōptĕrĕ|ā quŏd | sērvī|bās lī|bĕrā|lĭtĕr |
quŏd hăbŭ|ī sŭm|mūm prĕtĭ|ūm pĕr|sōlvī | tĭbī |

A penthemimeral or a hephthemimeral caesura is essential to the effect of this verse.

§ 785. *Other Iambic Metres.*—Of these, Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic corresponds to the foregoing minus the first dipody. It is also found with a hypermetrical syllable—Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter or Hypercatalectic.

The senarius is also found with the last foot imperfect—Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (§ 811). In general it must be understood, that both the iambic and trochaic metres, when used in lyric composition, admit of far fewer licences than when used by dramatic writers.

§ 786. *Choliambus.*—A kind of *limping* movement is given to the senarius, by substituting a trochee for an iambus in the sixth foot. Being at the end of a line, a spondee (– –) may be used for the trochee. Such a verse is called choliambus (*halt-iambus*), scazôn (σκάζω, *to limp*), or senarius claudus (Gr. χωλός, *limping* senarius).

1 2 3 4 5 6

⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ ‖ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | – ⏑

quae tŭ volébās ‖ néc puélla nólébat
ăn aémulátŭr ‖ ímprobí jocós Phaedrī

The *iambus* is indispensable in the 2nd, 4th, and 5th feet.

Obs. 1. The choliambus is only adapted for use in short poems.

Obs. 2. Rarely, instead of the penthemimeral caesura, we find a principal pause at the end of the *iambus* in the 2nd place and a foot-caesura before the fourth *arsis*, as,

Quodcúmque agít ‖ renídet húnc habét mórbum (Cat. 39, 7).

Obs. 3. The resolution of a long syllable into two short is allowed only at the commencement of a line or in the *arsis* of the first four feet. Catullus has once a dactyl in the first place (nōn mihī, 44, 20), and once a tribrach in the second (quem non | īn ălĭ|quă rĕ, 22, 19); but no other resolutions. Martial uses them more freely: as,

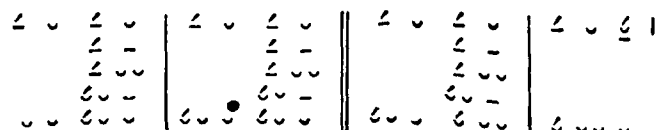
ămēthўs|tĭnās|*quĕ mŭlt*|ĕrūm | vŏcāt | vĕstēs (1, 96, 7.)
sĕdĕt ām|bŭlāt|vĕ liber, etc. (3, 20, 14.)
ăn rū|rĕ Tŭl|*lĭ frŭī*|tŭr ăt|quĕ Lū|cāni (ib. 17.)
vĭdŭā|*quĕ plătă*|no, etc. (3, 58, 3.)

N.B. The metre is also called *Hipponactius* from its reputed inventor Hippōnax, and was employed in Greek by Babrius in his fables.

IV. Trochaic Metres.

§ 787. *Comic Tetrameter.*—This verse is also called *Quadratus* from having four measures (see § 764), *Octonarius Catalecticus* from having eight feet all but a syllable, and *Septenarius* from having only seven *full* feet.

The law of the trochaic metres is the reverse of that of the iambic. In the iambic, the odd places freely admit spondees or their equivalents: in the trochaic, it is the first foot of each dipody which gives a character to the metre; and consequently the odd places of the Trochaic Tetrameter, especially the 1st and 7th, are for the most part kept pure, or simply admit a resolution of the long syllable. In the 2nd, 4th, and 6th places, spondees or their equivalents, dactyls and anapaests—each with trochaic ictus—are freely admitted. The Comic writers Plautus and Terence, who chiefly use this metre, admit other licences beside those mentioned above. Apart from such, the scheme of the Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic is as follows:—



(For examples, see Ter. Andr. 1. 2. 7, 8; 1. 4. 1–6; 1. 5. 6, 7, 10–16, 19–25.)

There is a pause or division in the middle of the line, after the 4th foot.

Trochaic Tetrameter Acatalectic, i.e. with the last foot a complete trochee, is also used by Plautus and Terence.

§ 788. *Other Trochaic Metres.*—Dimeter Catalectic is once used by Horace (Od. 2, 18). He has admitted no substitution of foot whatever, using the scheme—

– ⏑ – ⏑ | – ⏑ –

When used by the Comic writers, it admits the same kinds of licence as the Tetrameter. Trochaic Monometer, catalectic or acatalectic, also occurs occasionally in comedy.

Obs. Sometimes a metre of a Trochaic character is introduced by an unaccented syllable called an *anacrúsis* (*ἀνάκρουσις, up-stroke*). Such lines may however mostly be scanned as Iambic; see § 802, *Obs.*

V. Anapaestic Dimeter.

§ 789. Anapaestic Dimeter Acatalectic Verse consists regularly of *four* anapaests (which are interchangeable with spondees), and has always a division in the middle of the line.

The spondees in the 1st and 3rd feet (but not elsewhere) may be resolved into dactyls (which dactyls, however, must not be immediately followed by an anapaest), so that we obtain the following scheme:—

⏑⏑ – ⏑⏑ – | ⏑⏑ – ⏑⏑ –
– – – – | – – – –
– ⏑⏑ – – | – ⏑⏑ – –

§ 790. The last syllable of each line is *not* common as in dactylic, iambic and trochaic metres. In the anapaestic system there exists a *synaphēa* (*συναφεια*) or *connexion* of all the verses, so that a short syllable at the end of one line may become long by position, from being followed by a word in the next line beginning with a consonant: as,

grege dímissó pabúla carpít
ludít prató, etc.

§ 791. A series of Dimeter Anapaestics is usually closed by a monometer which very often takes the form of the *versus Adonius* (⏑ ⏑ – | – ⏑), of course with anapaestic ictus: as,

nos é tantó visí populó
digné premerét quos ínversó
cārdĭnĕ mūndŭs. (Sen. Thy. 878–880.)

But the other forms of the Anapaestic dipody are equally admissible. A monometer may be introduced at any point of a series.

VI. Hendecasyllabic or Phalæcian Verse.

§ 792. The Hendecasyllabic ('eleven-syllable') Verse is trochaic in its general character. It consists of five feet; but the second, instead of being a trochee, is a dactyl (rarely a spondee). This gives a graceful, tripping movement to the line.

– ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ |

The first foot is regularly a spondee, but a trochee is admissible, and even an iambus.

Examples.

pásser déliciaé meaé puéllae
Ácmen Séptimiús suós amóres
sólūs ín Libya Índiáque tósta
caésió veniam óbviús leóni
át Acmé levitér caput refléctens (Cat.)

§ 793. No fixed rules can be laid down for caesural or other pauses in this metre. Most frequently the first syllable of the dactyl forms the beginning of a word, but from the examples given above, it will be seen that this is not so always. The favourite caesura is after the long syllable of the 3rd foot.

Obs. 1. The substitution of a spondee for the dactyl in the 2nd place is destructive of the character of the verse, and is not found in Catullus or Martial. (No. 55, Cat. stands by itself. Of 32 lines, only about half are true Hendecasyllabics; the rest have a spondee in the second place. It was probably an experiment in versification which was not thought worthy of repetition.) A neat imitation of the metre of Catullus is given by Tennyson: 'O you chorus of indolent reviewers.'

Obs. 2. Hypermeter lines (for the conditions relating to which see § 778) occur occasionally in this metre: as,

quaenam te mala mens miselle Rāvīde
agit praecipitem. (Cat. 40, 1.)

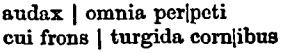
VII. Choriambic Verse.

§ 794. Choriambic Verse has usually a spondaic commencement or base and an iambic conclusion. The principal forms of it are—

1. With one *choriambus* [Glyconian]:

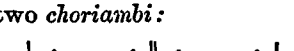
audax | omnia per|peti
cui frons | turgida corn|ibus

2. With two *choriambi:*



seu ru|pit teretes || Marsus aper | plagas
Myrto|um pavidus || nauta secet | mare

3. With three *choriambi:*



morda|ces aliter || diffugiunt || sollicitu|dines
quae mens | est hodie || cur eadem || non puero | fuit

Obs. 1. Nos. 2 and 3 are called Asclepiadean (from the grammarian Asclepiades). The latter is called long Asclepiadean.

Obs. 2. Catullus has the first form with trochaic or iambic base: e.g.

mōntĭ|um domina ut | fores
pŭel|lae et pueri in|tegri (34, 9 & 2)

Obs. 3. A variety of form 1, with monosyllabic conclusion, is called Pherecratean. See foll. section.

§ 795. Horace uses the first form, whether Glyconian or Pherecratean, only in connection with other rhythms, as in the following stanzas:—

(1.) Ō fōns | Bāndūsĭaē | splēndĭdĭōr | vĭtrō } (2nd chor. form or
Dūlcī | dĭgnē mĕrō | nōn sĭnĕ flō|rĭbŭs } Asclepiadean)
Crās dō|nābĕrĭs haē|dō (Pherecratean)
Cuī frōns | tūrgĭdă cōr|nĭbŭs (Glyconian).

(2.) Scrĭbē|rĭs Vărĭō | fortĭs ĕt hŏs|tĭum } (2nd chor. form)
Victōr, | Maeŏnĭī | cărmĭnĭs ā|lītē
Quām rēm | cūnquĕ fĕrōx | nāvĭbŭs aut | ĕquīs
Mīlēs | tē dŭcĕ, gĕs|sĕrīt (1st chor. form: Glyc.).

and (3) in the couplet,

Quēm tu | Mĕlpŏmĕnē | sĕmĕl (1st chor. form: Glyc.)
Nāscēn|tēm plăcĭdō | lūmĭnĕ vī|dĕrĭs (2nd chor. form).

Obs. There is regularly a division of the line at the end of a foot, in the second and third forms. Such lines as the following are quite exceptional:—

dum flagrantia de—torquet ad oscula (Hor. Od. 2, 12, 25.)

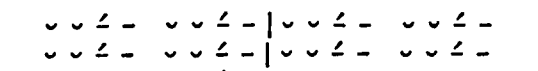
arcanique fides || prodiga per—lucidior vitro (ib. 1, 18, 16.)

non incendia Car—thaginis impiae (ib. 4, 8, 17.)

In the two former instances, the prefixes (de, per) may be regarded as distinct words. In the third, the departure from the general rule is probably due to the proper name (K.)

VIII. Minor Iambic and Galliambic Verse.

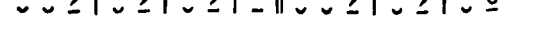
§ 796. There is but one ode in Roman literature written in *Ionic à minori* verses (Hor. Od. iii. 12): it appears to have four divisions, each consisting of ten connected *Ionic à minori* feet without *hiatus* or *common* syllable at the end of a foot: the scheme is



Miserárum est neque amóri | dare lúdum neque dúlci
mala víno lavere; aút ex|animári metuéntes
patruáe verbera línguae.

One short ode is not sufficient to enable us to ascertain the laws of this metre.

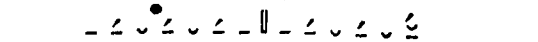
§ 797. Akin to the *Ionic à minori* verse is the Galliambic (so named from the Galli or priests of Cybele, for whose movements its animated rhythm was well adapted). The general scheme is,



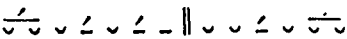
Examples.

ítaque út domúm Cybébes || tetigéro lassulae
aliéna quáe peténtes || velut éxulés locá

The two short syllables at the beginning of each half-verse are sometimes exchanged for a long, and the long syllable at the 1st, 2nd, 4th, and (especially) the 5th *arsis* may be resolved into two short syllables: thus—



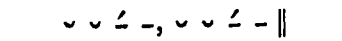
jám jám dolét quod égi || jám jámque paénitét



ego vĭrĭdis álgida Ídae || nive amícta lŏcă colám

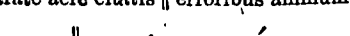
dea mágna dĕă Cybébe || dea dŏmĭna Díndymí.

Lastly, there occurs, but rarely, a partial return to the original *Ionic à minori* form, by changing the *iambus* after the first *beat* (ictus) in each half-verse into a trochee (never, however, in both halves at once), so that we obtain either



for the first half, as in

hĭlărâte aerĕ cĭtâtīs || errŏribús animúm; or



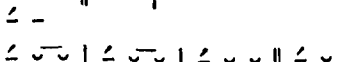
for the second half, as in

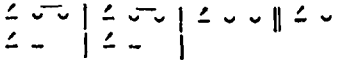
aberó foro palaéstra || stădĭo ét gymnăsĭís.

Obs. The above examples are taken from the 'Atys' of Catullus: Carm. 63.

IX. Logaoedic Verse.

§ 798. Logaoedic Verse (λόγος, ἀοιδή) consists of dactyls succeeded by trochees. The following species are used by Horace:—

(1) 

(2) 

frónde nová puer || úm palúmbes

sólvitur ácris hiéms gratá vice || véris ét Favóni

It will be seen that in the latter, the first three dactyls may be replaced by spondees, but not the fourth; which moreover must end with a word. The final trochee may be replaced by a spondee.

The Logaoedic metres are found only in combination with others. (§§ 802, 811.)

X. Asynartete Verse.

§ 799. An asynartete (*ἀσυνάρτητος*) or heterogeneous verse is one combining two dissimilar rhythms; as Dactylic and Iambic, or Iambic and Trochaic. The following kinds occur, but only in combination with other metres:—

(1) Iambic rhythm followed by dactylic: thus,

˘ ´ ˘ – | ⏑ ´ ˘ ⏓ ‖ ´ ˘ ˘ | ´ ˘ ˘ | ⏓

(2) Dactylic rhythm followed by iambic: thus,

´ ˘ ˘ | ´ ˘ ˘ | ⏓ ‖ ⏑ ´ ˘ ´ | ⏑ ´ ˘ ⏓

(1) nivésque deducúnt Jovem ‖ núnc mare núnc siluae
(Hor. Epod. 13, alternate lines.)

(2) scríbere vérsiculós ‖ amóre pérculsúm gravi
(ib. 11, alternate lines.)

Obs. The Logaoedic is less correctly regarded as an asynartete metre; the dactylic and trochaic rhythms being very similar to each other.

XI. Sapphic Verse.

§ 800. The Sapphic Stanza consists of four lines. The first three are alike, and consist each of five feet, with trochaic rhythm, only with a dactyl instead of a trochee in the 3rd place (cf. § 792, Hendecasyllabics); followed by a Versus Adonius (´˘˘ ´⏓). Horace adopted this stanza from Sappho of Lesbos, with the substitution of a spondee for a trochee in the 2nd place; a change which rendered it fitter for lofty subjects, but at some sacrifice of lightness and grace. The Horatian Sapphic scheme is—

´ ˘ | ´ – | ´ ˘ ˘ | ´ ˘ | ´ ⏓ (thrice)
– ˘ ˘ | ´ –

Cláre | Maécc|nás eques | út pa|térni
Flúmi|nis ri|pae simul | ét jŏ|cósă
Rĕdder|et laud|és tibi | Váti|cání
Móntis | imágo.

§ 801. The following are illustrations of the caesura —

1. cláre Maécenás ‖ eques út patérni (penth.)
2. Mércurí ‖ facúndĕ nĕpós ‖ Atlántis (tri. and hephth.)
3. laúreá ‖ donándŭs Ápóllinári (tri.)

4. férvet ímmensús-quĕ rŭít ‖ profúndo (hephth.)
5. lénis Ilíthyîă ‖ tŭére mátres (penth. *weak.*)

Obs. 1. The caesura with elision occurs occasionally, but the effect is hardly agreeable:

ímbriúm divína avis imminentum (Od. 3, 27, 104).

Obs. 2. Once a short syllable is lengthened by *arsis* at the caesura:

ángulus ridĕt, ubi non Hymetto (Od. 2, 6, 14).

Obs. 3. Hypermeter lines occur not unfrequently: e.g.—

Rómulaé gentí date rémque prŏlēmquŏ
ét decus ómne.
múgiúnt vaccaé tibi tóllit hínnītum
ápta quádrigís equa.
díssidéns plebí numeró bĕātórum
éximít virtús.

Obs. 4. There is a close connexion between the third line and the Versus Adonius: Horace sometimes divides a word between them: as,

lábitúr ripá Jove nón probánte uxórius ámnis.
Thráció bacchánte magís sub ínterlúnia vénto.

XII. Alcaic Verse.

§ 802. The Alcaic Strophe or Stanza consists of four lines, and was so called from Alcaeus of Lesbos. It has the following scheme:—

⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ – ‖ – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ – (twice) (Alcaic line).
⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ – | – ⏑ | – ⏑ – | (Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis ⏑)
– ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ | – ⏑ – (Logaoedic).

The *long* anacrusis is preferred in each of the two first lines; and the concluding syllable of each is usually long: as,

Nōn | sémper | ímbres ‖ núbibus | híspidōs
Mā|nánt in | ágros ‖ aút mare | Cáspiūm
Vēx|ánt in|aéqua|lés pro|cellāe
Úsque nec | Ármeni|ís in órīs.

But a short syllable is found in both places: as,

Fă|vóte | línguis ‖ cármina | nŏn prĭūs
Audíta ..... (Hor. Od. 3. 1, 2.)

Obs. The third line may also be scanned as Iambic Dimeter Hypercatalectic:—

⏑ ⏓ ⏑ – | – ⏓ ⏑ – | ⏑

The fifth syllable is invariably long.

§ 803. The following are the most frequent caesural divisions:

1. In the first two lines:—

Dissolve frigus || ligna super foco (penth.)

Obs. An elision may take place here in spite of the caesura: as,

Regum timendor‖um in proprios greges (Hor. Od. 3, 1, 5).

2. In the third:

(*a.*) non vultus instantis || tyranni

(*b.*) spargent || olivetis || cupressi

(*c.*) si fractus illabatur || orbis

3. In the fourth, in order of frequency:

(*a.*) impavidum || ferient || ruinae

(*b.*) flumina constiterint || acuto

(*c.*) aut digito || male || pertinaci

(*d.*) levia personuere || saxa

(*e.*) cuncta || supercilio || moventis

Obs. 1. Once a short syllable is made long by *arsis* in the fourth line:

caeca timét aliunde fata (ib. 2, 13, 16).

Obs. 2. A monosyllable at the place of the caesura in the first two lines is unusual, but is sometimes used very effectively by Horace:

Carthagini jam || non ego nuntios
quid debeas, o || Roma Neronibus

A monosyllable in the last place is rare, and only admissible when the connexion with the following line is very close: e.g.—

cur non sub alta vel platano vel hac
pinu . . . (ib. 2, 11, 13.)

Obs. 3. The division in the middle of the 1st and 2nd lines is an important feature, and as such is hardly ever neglected: such a line as

mentémque lýmphat—ám Mareótico (ib. 1, 37, 14)

is altogether exceptional.

Obs. 4. Hypermeter lines (with elision) are occasionally admitted: e.g.—

sors exitura et nos in aeternum
exilium, etc. (ib. 2, 3, *fin.*)

XIII. Double or Alternating Verses.

§ 804. This system, to which the Elegiac verse belongs, has been carried out by Horace in great variety.

§ 805. *Trimeter Logaoedic* and *Long Sapphic.*—There is one ode (I. 8) in which the odd lines have the following scheme (logaoedic: dactyl followed by two trochees):

– ◡ ◡ – ◡ – ⏑, as:
Lȳdĭă dīc pĕr | ōmnēs:

and the even, the following (choriambic, with Trochaic Dimeter base: called *long Sapphic*):

– ◡ | – – | – ◡ ◡ – ‖ – ◡ ◡ – | ◡ – ⏑, as:
tē dĕ|ōs ōr|ō Sȳbărīn ‖ cūr prōpĕrās | ămāndo

§ 806. *Trochaic Dimeter* and *Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.*—This combination occurs in one ode only (II, 18). The trimeter has such a pause that the rhythm of the latter half becomes trochaic. The scheme is:

– ◡ – ◡ | – ◡ ⏑
⏑ – ◡ ◡– ⏑ ‖ – ◡ – ◡ – ⏑, as:
nŏn ĕbūr nĕq|ue aŭrĕum
mĕă rĕnīdĕt ‖ ĭn dŏmō lăcūnăr.

Obs. The last syllable of each line is common; and there is no metrical connection between the lines (synaphea), as may be seen from the following example:—

rapacis Orci ‖ fine destinata
aula divitem manet (ib. 30, 31.)

§ 807. Horace has imitated Archilochus, the inventor of Iambic Verse (Hor. *A. P.* 79) in many instances. In the first ten Epodes, we have Iambic Trimeter alternating with Iambic Dimeter, both Acatalectic. The usual variants occur in the Trimeter (§ 783); in the Dimeter (with the single exception of one tribrach in the 2nd place, Epod. 2, 62), only that of a spondee for an iambus at

the beginning of each dipody. The following are examples of the structure of both:—

(1) Iambic Trimeter—odd lines.

bĕā|tus īll|ĭ ‖ quī | prŏcŭl | nĕgō|tĭīs
pŏsĭtōs|que ver|nās ‖ dī|tis ex|āmēn | domus
nēc mū|nŭs hŭmĕ|rīs ‖ ēff|ica|cis Her|culis
păvĭdŭm|quĕ lĕpŏ|rem et ‖ ad|venam | lăquĕō | gruem
āūt ăvĭ|te le|vī ‖ rā|ra ten|dīt rē|tia
quid dix|it aut | quīd ‖ tăcŭ|it? O | rēbūs | meis
quod si | pudi|că ‖ mŭlĭ|er in | pūrtēm | juvat

(2) Iambic Dimeter—even lines.

ūt prīs|că ‖ gĕns | mōrtā|lĭūm
seni|le ‖ gut|tur frē|gerit
vīdĕ|rĕ ‖ prŏpĕ|rāntēs | domum
jūcūn|dă ‖ cap|tāt prāĕ|mia

Obs. A diphthong is once shortened before another vowel (Epod. 5, 100), as:

ĕt Ĕsquīlīnæ ālites (§ 765, *Obs.* 4.)

§ 808. Another combination, after Archilochus (used once only, IV. 7), is formed by the *second* half of a Pentameter appended to an Hexameter verse, as:

díffugére nivés; redeúnt jam gramina cámpis
árboribúsque comae.

Obs. The Hexameter may be varied according to the rules of that verse; but the alternate lines exclude spondees.

§ 809. Another, after Archilochus (Epod. 13), consists of an Hexameter, alternating with an asynartete line made up of a dimeter iambic and the second half of a Pentameter (§ 799): as,

horrida tempestas caelum contraxit, et imbres
nívesque dedúcunt Jóvem ‖ núnc mare, núnc siluae.

Obs. The even line of the above is the even line *reversed* of Epod. 11 see foll. §.

§ 810. Another, after Archilochus (Epod. 11), consists of a *senarius* alternating with an *asynartete* line made up of the *second half* of a Pentameter together with an Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic (see § 785).

The scheme of the alternate (asynartete) line is as follows:—

⏑ – ⏑ – ⏑ ⏓ ‖ ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ – | ⏑ ⏓

mōllĭbŭs | īn pŭĕr|īs ‖ aut ĭn pŭĕll|īs ūrĕrĕ
Inachia fure|rĕ, ‖ silvis honorem decutit
libera consili|ă ‖ nec contumeliae graves

Obs. The short syllable at the caesural pause, and the hiatus in

vincere mollitie ‖ amor Lycisci me tenet (v. 24),

are explained by the fact of the two halves of the line being composed in distinct measures, in each of which the last syllable of the verse is common.

§ 811. Another (I. 4), after Archilochus, consists of a logaoedic line (§ 798, 2), followed by an Iambic Trimeter Catalectic: as,

Pāllĭdă | mōrs aeq|uō pūls|āt pĕdĕ ‖ pau|pĕrūm tăbĕrnās,
Rēgŭmqŭe tūrrēs. Ō bĕātĕ Sĕxtī:
Alterno terr|am quati|unt pede ‖ dum graves Cyclopum
Volcanus ardens urit officinas.

§ 812. Horace has another combination consisting of Dactylic Hexameter alternating with Dactylic Tetrameter —the latter corresponding to the last four feet of an ordinary Hexameter, and consequently having the ending ⏑ – – ⏓ (Od. 1, 7 and 28; Epod. 12). Thus the scheme of the Tetrameter is:—

⏑ – ⏑ | ⏑ – ⏑ | ⏑ – – | ⏑ ⏓, as:

Laudabunt alii claram Rhodon aut Mitylenen,
Aut Ephĕs|ōn bĭmăr|īsvĕ Cŏr|ĭnthī;
Moenia, vel Baccho Thebas vel Apolline Delphos
Insign|ēs, aut | Thēssălă | Tempē.

§ 813. And, lastly, Horace has in two odes (Epod. 14 and 15) an Hexameter followed by an Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic: as,

Nox erat et caelo fulgebat luna sereno
Intér minóra sídera;

and in one other ode by a pure senarius (Epod. 16): as,

Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus aetas
Suís et ípsa Róma víribús ruít.

XIV. The Priapean Verse.

§ 814. The Priapean verse (Catull. 17, 18 and 19) consists of the placing together, in one line but unintermingled, of a Glyconic and Pherecratean verse. The spondaic base of both halves of the verse, however, becomes more frequently than not a trochee, so that the scheme is:

– ⏑ | ´ ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ ´ ‖ – ˇ | – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑

paupĕr|ís tŭgŭrī | pătér ‖ fīlī|ús-quĕ cŏlō|nī
hūjūs | nām dŏmĭnī | cŏlūnt ‖ mē dĕ|ūmquĕ sălū|tānt
quĕrĕŭs | ūrĭdă rūst|ĭcā ‖ cōnfōrmātă sĕcū|rī
altĕr | āssĭdŭā | cŏlēns ‖ dīlĭg|éntĭa ŭt hĕr|bă

Obs. A short syllable may reckon as long at the pause: e.g.:—
nutrio magis et magis ‖ et beabo quotannis.

XV. The Saturnian Verse.

§ 815. The Saturnian was the old native Roman verse, and it remained in use till the hexameter was introduced by Ennius. Its rhythm is controlled not by the quantity of syllables as long or short, but by word-accent.

It consists of two members, each of which has three accents. The first member has a monosyllabic anacrusis. The following two lines may serve as specimens; the former ascribed to the poet Naevius, the latter a retort upon him by one of the 'Metelli:'—

fató Romae Metélli ‖ fíunt cónsulés
dabúnt malúm Metélli ‖ Naévió poétae

§ 816. The Saturnian line has been described as Iambic Trimeter Hypermeter, or Trochaic Trimeter with anacrusis; but it is better to regard it as a distich written in a single line, as in the old English ballad metre.

Obs. The oldest English metre consists in like manner of a distich regulated only by word-accent, often treated as a single line: as,

Ín a sómer séson, when sófte wás the sónne. (Piers Plowman.)

§ 817. It was in the Saturnian metre that Naevius wrote his poem on the First Punic War, the first line of which was,

virúm mihí Caména ‖ ínsecé (*i.e.* insequere) versútum.

The song of the Arval Brothers (Wordsworth, *Early Latin*, p. 158), some fragments of Salian hymns, and probably certain inscriptions and epitaphs are also in this metre.

XVI. THE TELIAMBIC OR MIURIC VERSE (*dock-tailed;* from μειῶ, οὐρά).

§ 818. The Teliambic verse is an hexameter terminated by an iambus (τέλος, ἴαμβος) instead of a spondee (⏑ ⏓ for ⏓ ⏑). As the last syllable of the line is common, the iambus may become a Pyrrhic, but with iambic ictus (⏑ ⏑). Examples:—

Dīrĭgĕ ŏd|ōrĭs ĕq|uōs ‖ ād | cērtă cŭb|ĭlĭă | cănĕs.
Ĭtĕ dŏ|mūm sătŭ|rāe ‖ vĕnĭt | Hĕspĕrŭs | ītĕ să|tŭrŭ.

Obs. The effect of this line is similar to that of the Choliambic (§ 786), the rhythm being suddenly interrupted. See Terentianus Maurus, *de metris.*

PART IV.—PHILOLOGICAL.

CHAPTER LXVIII.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 819. The Latin Language is a member of that great family of languages known by the name of Indo-European or Aryan. At some remote period a race migrated from the East, embracing the ancestors of both the Greeks and Italians. From this race the Italians branched off, and were themselves divided into two stocks, the *Latins* on the west, and the *Umbro-Samnites* on the east, the latter including the Umbrians, Sabines, Samnites, and their numerous colonies.

Obs. 1. The term *Indo-European* points to the eastern and western limits of the languages so designated. It includes the Indian, Persian, Slavonian, Lithuanian, Greek, Latin, Gothic or German, and Celtic languages. The term *Aryan* is derived from one of the most ancient names of nations included in the above family (*Gr.* Ἄριοι, *Lat.* Arii), and contains the root Ar- (*ἀρετή*), *noble, brave.*

Obs. 2. The *Umbro-Samnite* branch, though more closely related to Latin than to Greek, was distinct from the Latin. It was itself divided into two main dialects, the *Umbrian* and the *Oscan*, the latter being spoken by the Samnites. Of both of these dialects some remains have come down to us.

§ 820. The Latin Alphabet was derived from the Dorian Greeks of Cumae and Sicily. Of the 24 letters of the Grecian Alphabet, the Latins omitted *θ*, *φ*, and *χ*, and changed the Digamma or Vau (ϝ), having the power of V or W, into F. The Latin Alphabet consisted originally of 20 letters, to which X, making the whole number 21, was added at a very early period:

1. A.	8. H.	15. P.
2. B.	9. I (J).	16. Q.
3. C.	10. K.	17. R.
4. D.	11. L.	18. S.
5. E.	12. M.	19. T.
6. F.	13. N.	20. V (U).
7. Z.	14. O.	21. X.

Hence Cicero mentions an alphabet of 21 letters, of which *x* was the last (*N. D.* 2, 93).

Obs. It appears that when the Dorian Alphabet was introduced among the Latins, C was the Guttural Media, corresponding to the Greek γ, and K the Guttural Tenuis, corresponding to the Greek κ. But at a very early stage of the Latin Alphabet, the difference between the Guttural Media and Tenuis seems to have almost disappeared; C being used to express both the Tenuis and Media. Hence on the Columna Rostrata we find the forms *leciones, macistratos, ecfociont, pucnandod, Cartocinienses,* equivalent to *legiones, magistratus, exfugiunt, pugnando, Carthaginienses.* In like manner C. and Cn., the ancient representatives of Gaius and Gnaeus, were retained down to the latest times. K gradually went out of use, being only retained in a few words, of which the chief were *Kaeso, Kalendae, kalumnia, kaput;* and to mark the comparatively slight difference between the Tenuis and Media, a new letter G, formed from C by adding a tail to the latter, was introduced to indicate the Media. This letter is found in the time of the First Punic War, on the sarcophagus of L. Scipio Barbatus; and it was placed in the alphabet between F and H by a freedman of Sp. Carvilius Ruga, the old letter Z having by this time become obsolete. (Plut. *Quaest. Rom.* c. 59.)

§ 821. The Emperor Claudius introduced three new letters; namely, an inverted Digamma, Ⅎ, to distinguish the consonant *v* from the vowel *u;* the Antisigma, Ↄ, to express the sounds *bs* and *ps*, answering to the Greek ψ; and the sign of the Greek aspirate ⊦, to express the intermediate sound between the vowels *i* and *u* (v. § 840, 3). These letters were used in inscriptions, some of which are extant; but they soon went out of use (Tacit. *Annal.* xi. 14); and Priscian and the other grammarians mention therefore an alphabet of only twenty-three letters, in which *g, x* and *y* are included.

(A.) THE CONSONANTS.

I. Gutturals.

§ 822. **K. C.** (1) The early history of these letters has been already explained (§ 820, *Obs.*). The Latin C, except at an early period, had the same sound as *k* in the cognate languages. Hence it stands in place of *g* and *h* before *t* and the sharp sibilant *s:*

rectum	rexi [rec-si]	from rego
auctum	auxi [auc-si]	„ augeo
tractum	traxi [trac-si]	„ traho
vectum	vexi [vec-si]	„ veho

C is assimilated to *d* in composition before a guttural tenuis: as,

iccirco	for idcirco	quicquam	for quidquam
quicquid	„ quidquid	nequicquam	„ nequidquam.

Obs. The forms with *c* are the orthography of the best MSS.; but we generally find quidquid.

(2) C disappears:—

i. Before *n*: as,

ara-nea	[=arac-nea]	comp.	ἀράχνη	de-ni	[=dec-ni]	comp.	decem
la-na	[=lac-na]	„	λάχνη	qui-ni	[quinc-ni]	„	quinque.
lu-na	[=luc-na]	„	luceo				

ii. Before *t*, when the nasal precedes: as,

quin-tus [=quinc-tus] Quin-tius [=Quinc-tius].

iii. Before *t* and *s*, if C is preceded by the liquids *r* or *l* or the diphthong *au*:

ar-tus	[=arc-tus]	comp.	arceo
fartus	[=farc-tus]	„	farcio
tortus	[=torc-tus]	„	torqueo
mul-si	[=mulc-si]	„	mulceo
mul-ta	[=mulc-ta]	„	mulco
au-tor	[=auc-tor]	„	augeo
au-tumnus	[=auct-umnus]	„	augeo

(3) C appears to have had its hard or K sound even before *e* and *i* (with the exception mentioned below), and was not sibilated as in English. Hence we find that C in Latin words before *e* and *i* is always expressed in Greek by K: as, *censor*, κήνσωρ: *Cicero*, Κικέρων; and that the Romans, in writing Greek words in Latin, always expressed K by C: as, *Cecrops*, *Cilix*, *Cineas*, *Cybele*.

On the other hand, the fact that in several Latin words *ci* and *ti* were written indifferently, proves that these combinations of letters must at the time have been pronounced similarly. Thus we find in inscriptions, *tribunitiae* and *tribuniciae*; *mundiciei* for *munditiei*; etc.; the sound being in either case that of a sibilant. So likewise in inscriptions we have both forms in proper names: as,

Larcius	and	Lartia	Accius	and	Attius
Marcius	„	Martia	Abucius	„	Abutius
Mucius	„	Mutius	Neracius	„	Neratius

In the oldest MSS. we have a similar fluctuation: thus we find,

solacium	and solatium,	suspicio	and suspitio,
convicium	„ convitium	secius	„ setius

It must be observed, however, that this interchange of *ci* and *ti* takes place only *before a vowel:* we never find, for instance, *milicis* instead of *militis*, or *felitis* instead of *felicis*. From the sibilant sound of *ti* arose in modern Italian such forms as *palazzo* from *palatium*; *Piacenza* from *Placentia*, &c.

A similar sibilation before *i* occurs in Greek: thus *πάσσων*, *θάσσων*, *μάσσων*, represent *παχίων*, *ταχίων*, *μακίων*; and *κρέσσων* or *κρείσσων*, *κρετίων*: in like manner *φυλάσσω*, *ταράσσω* represent *φυλακίω*, *ταραχίω*. (See Curtius, *Gr. Gr.* § 57.)

Obs. This fluctuation between *ci* and *ti* with a vowel following did not really occur in many words in which it is usually given in Lexicons. For example:

1. *Contio* (not *concio*) is the only form found in the oldest MSS. of Plautus and Gaius. The former orthography is in accordance with the etymology; for the form *coventionid* (=conventione) in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus proves that *contio* is a contraction of *co(n)ventio*.
2. *Nuntius* (not *nuncius*) alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS. This form also is in accordance with the etymology. (Prob. contr. from novi-ventius, *new-comer*.)
3. *Indutiae* (not *induciae*). (Gell. i. 25.)
   Fetialis (not *fecialis*), comp. Gr. *φετιάλιοι*.
   Otium and *negotium* are the only correct forms.
4. *Condicio*, on the other hand, alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS., indicating derivation from *condicere*.

§ 823. **Q.**—Q is, as a general rule, used only in the combination of QV, followed by a vowel, with which it forms one syllable. It is a Guttural tenuis followed by a labial semivowel, and forms a transition between the Guttural tenuis *k* and the Labial tenuis *p*. The close connection of QV with these sounds is seen by a comparison of the same word in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and the Italian dialects:—

K (C)		Q V		P	
Sansk.	kis	*Lat.*	quis	*Oscan*	pis
„	kat	„	quod	„	pod
Gr.	*κόση*	„	quanta	*Umbrian*	panta
				Gr.	*πόση*
Sansk.	çatvar	„	quattuor	*Umbrian*	petur
				Gr.	*πίσυρες*
Sansk.	pançan	„	quinque	„	*πέμπε*
Lat.	cocus	„	coquo	*Lat.*	popina
„	secundus	„	sequor	*Gr.*	*ἕπομαι*

Obs. 1. In inscriptions of the Republican period, the relative venerally has QV in forms written subsequently with a C: as, quoius, quoiei, quom: later, cujus, cui, cum, &c. It must not, nowever, be inferred from this, that QV was more ancient than C. In many Latin words C appears in the roots and QV in the derivatives: as,

Quirites	from	Cures (curis)
inquilinus	,,	incola
sterquilinium	,,	stercus
querquetulanus	,,	quercetum
inquinare	,,	cunire.

Obs. 2. Instead of QV, when the letter *u* followed, Q was frequently written alone, especially from about the time of the Gracchi: thus we find in inscriptions:

qura	instead of	cura	pequdes	instead of	pecudes
pequnia	,,	pecunia	persequtio	,,	persecutio
pequlatu	,,	peculatu			

§ 824. G.—(1) The late introduction of the medial G into the Latin Alphabet has been already mentioned (§ 820, *Obs.*).

In many words *c* is softened into *g* before vowels and the liquids *l, m, n, r:* e.g.

1. Before vowels:

Sigambri	for	Sicambri	gurgulio	for	curculio
negotium	,,	nec-otium	triginta comp.		τριάκοντα

2. Before liquids:

neglego	for	nec-lego	Gnossus	for	Cnossus
gloria (see *Obs.*) comp.		κλέος (κλέϝος)	Gnidus	,,	Cnidus

Obs. From the Stem *clevos*, with suffix *ia*, was probably formed *clevosia* or *clovosia*, shortened into *closia* or *cloria* (*gloria*).

(2) G often disappears:—

i. At the beginning of words when followed by a liquid: as,

lactis compare		γάλακτος	navus compare		i-gnavus
natus	,,	gnatus	nosco	,,	co-gnosco

ii. Before *s*, when it is preceded by the liquid *r* or *l:* as,

spar-si, spar-sum,	from	spargo	mul-si	from	mulgeo
ter-si, ter-sum	,,	tergeo	ful-si	,,	fulgeo
al-si	,,	algeo			

iii. Sometimes before *m:* as,

conta-minare from ca(n)go	exa-men from exago

In other words, as *agmen, tegmen,* the *g* remains.

iv. Often before *v*: as,

nives (nigves)	compare	ninguo
fruor (fruguor)	„	fruges, fructus
fluvius (flugvius)	„	fluxi
conniveo (connigveo)	„	connixus; cf. nico, nicto
vivo (vigvo)	„	vixi, victus

Obs. 1. In the same way, the following words seem to have had originally a G, which disappeared before *v*:

brevis comp.	*Gr.* βραχύς		
levis „ „	ἐλαχύς	*Sansk.*	laghu
pravus „		„	prahvas
malva „ „	μαλάχη		

Obs. 2. G followed by the semivowel *i* with an accompanying vowel often disappears (the *i* in such cases was pronounced as a *y*, though written *j* in English): as,

ma-ior, major	(orig. mag-ior)	comp.	mag-is
Ma-ius	(orig. Mag-ius)	„	mag-nus
me-io	(orig. mig-io)	„	mingo, ὀμίχω.

Ma-ius signifies the "growing-month," as the root *mag*, Sansk. *mah*, signifies originally "to grow."

Obs. 3. In like manner *d* disappears, when followed by the semivowel *i* and an accompanying vowel, as *Jovis* instead of *Diovis*, *Janus* instead of *Dianus*.

§ 825. **H.**—(1) H was originally a Guttural aspirate; the traces of which are still retained in *traxi*, *tractum*, from *traho*, and *vexi*, *vectum*, from *veho*.

(2) H often represents *f*, a sound peculiar to the Italian languages: as,

hoedus	for	foedus	haba	for	faba
hordus	„	fordus	hircus	„	fircus
hostis	„	fostis	hariolus	„	fariolus
horreum	„	farreum	hebris	„	febris, &c.

(3) H at an early period was often dropped in pronunciation. Hence we find in Inscriptions and MSS. the following words written both with and without the aspirate:

harundo	and	arundo	heres	and	eres
haruspex	„	aruspex	hora	„	ora
hoedus	„	oedus	humerus	„	umerus
hasta	„	asta	Hamilcar	„	Amilcar
harena	„	arena	Hasdrubal	„	Asdruba
hedera	„	edera	Hannibal	„	Annibal
herciscere	„	erciscere	Hammon	„	Ammon

The form without the aspirate is in most cases the more correct. The tendency was to drop the *h*, until at length it completely disappeared, as in the modern Italian.

(4) H in the middle of words between two vowels was frequently dropped, as *nemo* for *nehemo*; but the older form was retained along with the more modern. Thus we find in use at the same time:

Ahala	nd	Ala	nihil	and	nil
vehemens	„	vemens	cohors	„	cors
prehendo	„	prendo	dehibeo	„	debeo
mihi	„	mi	praehibeo	„	praebeo

II. Labials.

§ 826. **P.**—(1) It has been already remarked that in the Indo-European languages the Guttural Tenuis C or K frequently passes into the Labial Tenuis P; and that the Latin QV, which is a Guttural with a Labial semivowel attached, formed the transition between them (§ 823).

Obs. In the Oscan and Umbrian *p* often represents an original *k*: see examples in § 823. In Latin this is rarely the case; and even the few Latin words which have *p* instead of the original *c*, are perhaps all borrowed from other dialects. Thus *popina* is the Oscan form of *coquina*, from *coquo*; *palumbes* probably comes from the Oscan, *columba* being the pure Latin form. *Epona*, which is usually derived from *equus*, is unquestionably a Celtic word. *Lupus* is the Greek λύκος, but it probably comes immediately from an Italian dialect. If *limpidus* be the same as *liquidus*, the former must be regarded as a dialectical variety, *liquidus* being the pure Latin form.

(2) P at the end of a word, when the final vowel was dropped, was, as a general rule, softened into the medial *b*: as,

ab	*Gr.*	ἀπό	*Sansk.*	apa	
sub	„	ὑπό	„	upa	
ob	„	ἐπί	„	api	

(3) B before the tenuis *t* and the sharp sibilant *s*, was pronounced as *p*. Hence there arises a fluctuation in the orthography, some writing *ps*, *pt* according to the pronunciation, and others *bs*, *bt*, according to the etymology. Down to the Augustan age, the orthography according to the pronunciation was the more usual; and hence we find, in the inscriptions of the last two centuries of the Republic, such forms as *apstulit*, *apstinere*, *opsignetur*, *opsidione*,

optinebit, supsignent. In the perfects and supines the orthography according to pronunciation prevailed: as,

nub-o	nup-si	nup-tum
scrib-o	scrip-si	scrip-tum

(4) P is sometimes inserted between *m* and *s* or *t* to facilitate the sound: as,

emptus	from	emo
sumpsi, sumptus	„	sumo
comptus	„	como
contempsi, contemptus	„	contemno
hiemps (sometimes)	„	hiems

Obs. The form *tempto*, which also occurs in the best MSS. instead of *tento*, is opposed to both etymology and analogy. *Tento* comes from *tentus*, the participle of *tendo*; consequently no *m* precedes requiring the insertion of a *p* to facilitate the sound. It would seem that a confusion was made between the participle *temptus* from *temno* and the participle *tentus* from *tendo*; and that the orthography of the former word was erroneously transferred to the latter.

§ 827. **B.**—(1) B was pronounced as *p* before *s* and *t*, as already remarked (v. § 826).

(2) By loss of the dental, *du* of the older language became *b*: as,

duellum	..	..	bellum
duis	..	..	bis
duidens	..	..	bidens
duonus	..	..	bonus

So *dv* became *v* in the words:

dvi-ginti (comp. duo)	..	..	..	..	viginti
suadvis (comp. suadeo, *Gr.* ἡδύς)	..	..			suavis

But these examples do not prove that *b* and *v* simply were interchangeable, since the preceding *d* exercises a disturbing influence.

(3) The Romans avoided the juxtaposition of *b* and *f*, as the forms *aufero* and *aufugio* shew. Hence *afui, afuturus, afore*, &c., are strictly the correct forms, not *abfui, abfuturus, abfore*, &c.

§ 828. **F.**—(1) F was a sound peculiar to the Italian languages, and may be described as the Labial Spirant (§ 4, ii.). In the Etruscan, Umbrian, and Oscan alphabets it was represented by a peculiar character, 8; but in Latin it was expressed by the so-called Aeolic digamma (Ϝ or **F**).

In the middle of Latin words, *f*, or rather the original *bh* from which it arose, underwent one of two changes: (1) the aspirate was lost and the labial alone remained; or (2) the labial sound was lost and the aspirate only remained.

(1) *Loss of the aspirate in f:*

Gr.	ἄμφω	comp. with *Lat.*	ambo
	ὄμφαλος	,,	umbilicus

In the same way the Sanskrit suffix *-bhyam* (as in *tu-bhyam, Dat.* sing. of 2nd personal pronoun) corresponds to Gr. *-φι*, Oscan *-fe*, and Latin *-bi*.

So also *b* has arisen out of *f* in the terminations *-bam* and *-bo* of the Imperfect and Future, which come from the root FU in *fui*, as *eram* and *ero* come from the root ES in *est*.

In the Perfect terminations *-vi*, and *-ui*, for *fui*, the *f* has been disturbed by the following semivowel, like the *d* in *viginti* (v. § 827) and the *g* in *nives* (v. § 824).

(2) *Loss of the labial in f:* as, *hoedus* for *fœdus*, &c.: see examples in § 825 (2).

In *mi-hi* the aspirated labial has become a mere aspirate, while in the corresponding forms it has become *b*: as *ti-bi, si-bi*, &c.

So also in the pronominal adverbs in *-im*, as *ill-im, ist-im*, &c., the original termination was probably *-fim*, corresponding to the Sanskrit *bhyam*. See § 194.

III. Dentals.

§ 829. T.—T had a weaker sound at the end than at the beginning and middle of words. Hence we find the *t* of the 3rd Person of verbs sometimes dropped in Latin, as it regularly is in Greek. Even in old Latin inscriptions we have the 3rd persons *dede, dedro, dederi, censuere*. In the 3rd Person Plural of the Perf. Active the termination *ere*, instead of *erunt*, occurs in the best period of the language.

On the sibilation of *t* followed by *i* and another vowel, see § 822 (3).

§ 830. D.—(1) The Dental Media D at the end of words was pronounced nearly like the Tenuis *t* (comp. Quint. i. 7, 5). Hence we find in the best MSS., *t* at the end of words instead of *d*, and in the same MS. both forms often occur side by side: as,

it	and	id		at	and ad
quot	,,	quod		aput	,, apud

quit	and quid	set	and sed
istut	„ istud	haut	„ haud
aliut	„ aliud		

(2) By a comparison with the Sanskrit, we learn that *t* was the original termination of the Neuter of the Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives: thus *quod* corresponds to the Sanskrit *kat*. The termination of the Ablative Singular in Sanskrit is *t*, which was in like manner softened in old Latin into *d*, and finally dropped. Hence we find on the Columna Rostrata, the old Ablatives *altod*, *marid*, *dictatored*, *navaled*; and similar forms in other inscriptions.

(3) The softening of a final *t* into *d*, and then the disappearance of the latter, appears in many other Latin words.

1. We have the three forms *haut*, *haud*, and *hau*.

2. In the Imperative, the *d* arising out of *t* is regularly dropped in Latin: comp.

esto	with the Oscan	estud	facito	with the Oscan	factud
agito	„	actud	liceto	„	licitud

Obs. It has been already noticed that the *t* of the 3rd Person of Verbs is frequently dropped (v. § 829). That the *t* was in such cases first softened into *d* appears from forms found in inscriptions, such as the Latin *fecid*, *exead*, and the Oscan *fefacid*, *hipid*, *fuid*, &c.

In the middle of Latin words there was also a fluctuation in the pronunciation and orthography of *d* and *t*, especially after *r* and *n*.

Compare	quattuor	and quadratus
	quatriduum	„ quadraginta
	mentiri	„ mendax

(4) On the disappearance of *d* followed by *v* at the beginning of words, as *duellum* (bellum), *duis* (bis), *duonus* (bonus), *dviginti* (viginti); and on its disappearance followed by *i*, as *Janus* (Dianus), *Diovis* (Jovis), v. §§ 827, 824, iv. *Obs.* 3.

(5) On the change of *d* into *l* and *r*, v. §§ 831, No. 2; 832, No. 2.

IV. Liquids.

§ 831. **L.**—(1) L had its *fullest* sound at the end of words, like *sal*, *mel*, *consul*, *vigil*. Hence *l* always retains its place at the end of Latin words, while so many other consonants in the same position disappear.

(2) L appears to have had a *lighter* sound at the beginning of words, as in *latere, laetari,* &c., and in the middle of words between vowels, as in *talis, fidelis, facilis, hostilis.* In this position it was frequently interchanged with *r.* Thus the suffixes *-alis* and *-aris* (§ 182, No. 5) are the same; *-alis* being used when *r* precedes, and *-aris* when *l* precedes: as,

austr-alis	vall-aris	mur-alis	proeli-aris
rur-alis	sol-aris	corpor-alis	regul-aris

For the same reason we have *caeruleus* instead of *caeluleus* from *caelum,* and *Parilia* instead of *Palilia* from *Pales.*

In the beginning and middle of words, it is found representing *d:* as,

lacrima instead of dacrima, *Gr.* δάκρυον
levir corresponding to „ δάϝηρ
lautia instead of dautia (Paulus Diac. ex Fest. s.v. dacrimas)
lingua „ dingua *Goth.* tuggo, *Eng.* tongue
oleo comp. odor *Gr.* ὄδωδα

(3) L had its lightest sound when it was the second *l* of *ll.* The difference in sound between *l* and *ll* seems to have been slight; and in inscriptions many Proper Names are written sometimes with one *l* and sometimes with two: as, *Ofilius* and *Ofillius, Silius* and *Sillius,* &c.

Similarly we find in the best MSS. both *mille* and *mile, millia* and *milia.* The more correct orthography of those two words is probably *mille* and *milia.* The reason for this is that *i* before *a* was pronounced as *y;* and as the second *l* seems to have had nearly the same sound (like a second *l* in French), the combination of sound *millia* (= milyya) was nearly impossible.

Obs. 1. On the same principle, we may understand how in Greek βάλλω arises from βαλιω, τίλλω from τιλιω, &c. (See Curtius, *Gr. Gr.* § 252.) In the same way in Latin:

percello arises from	percelio	*Perf.*	perculi
pello „	pelio		pepuli
tollo „	tolio		tetuli.

Obs. 2. Words in *-ela,* when a short vowel precedes, are more correctly written with a double *l:* as,

loquella *not* loquela		luella *not* luela	
querella „ querela		fugella „ fugela.	
sequella „ sequela			

But when a long vowel precedes the *-ela,* the single *l* is the correct orthography: as, *custodela, clientela, suadela, candela,* &c. See Lachmann, Lucr. 3, 1015.

§ 832. **R.**—Of all the liquids, and indeed of all the consonants, *R* is the most closely related to the vowels. In Sanskrit there is a vowel *r* sound distinguished by a separate character from the consonantal *r*.

(1) In Latin an original *s* constantly becomes *r* between two vowels (cf. § 25, *Obs.* 2): as,

Lares	for Lases	Valerius	for Valesius
arae	„ asae	Papirius	„ Papisius
feriae	„ fesiae	quaero	„ quaeso
arena	„ asena		

In the same way:

aeris	from aes	Veneris	from Venus
cruris	„ crus	Cereris	„ Ceres
generis	„ genus	pulveris	„ pulvis
temporis	„ tempus	cineris	„ cinis

So also in composition:

dir-imere for dis-imere dir-ibere for dis-hibere.

The termination *-rum* of the Genitive Plural is instead of *-sum*: v. § 889, *Obs.*

Even at the end of words *s* sometimes becomes *r*: as,

arbor	for arbos	honor	for honos
labor	„ labos	lepor	„ lepos

The *r*, which is the sign of the Passive, perhaps arises in like manner from the *s* of the Reflexive Pronoun *se*.

Obs. The time at which *s* began to be changed into *r*, is partly indicated by the statement of Cicero (*ad Fam.* ix. 21), that L. Papirius Cursor, who was consul B.C. 336 (consequently in the time of the Samnite wars), was the first of his family named Papirius, while all his ancestors were called Papisii. Compare Livy, iii. 4, *init.*: Furios Fusios scripsere quidam (B.C. 462).

(2) *D* was also changed into *r*, especially in the preposition *ad* in composition. Thus we find in the grammarians and in inscriptions

arvenae	for advenae	arfines	for adfines
arvocati	„ advocati	arfuisse	„ adfuisse
arvorsum	„ advorsum		

So also in the usual forms:

arbiter for adbiter (comp. adbitere)
arcesso „ adcesso
meridies „ medidies (from medius dies)

§ 833. **N.**—(1) N, at the beginning of all words, had a sharp, clear sound. Hence we find no examples in which N in this position undergoes any change.

(2) N, at the end of words, was pronounced more feebly, as is clear from its frequent disappearance in this position; as, for instance, in the Nominative case of all Stems in *on:* as *leo* from *leon, homo* from *homon,* &c. So also in such forms as *ceteroqui* for *ceteroquin, alioqui* for *alioquin.*

(3) N, in the middle of words, when it represents *m* and stands before *d* and *t,* had a full sound; as, *eorundem, tandem, duntaxat, septentrio.* It had the same sound in the middle of words between two vowels. Hence the orthography in this position often fluctuates between a single and double N: as, *Porsena* and *Porsenna, Caecina* and *Caecinna,* &c. In the oldest MSS. of Plautus, Virgil, Lucretius, and Gaius, words are sometimes written with a single *n,* where etymology would require two: as, *conubium, conectere, conexus;* forms which are most readily explained on the supposition, that N in this position had so full a sound as to render the two letters unnecessary.

(4) But N, in the middle of words, appears to have had a very faint sound before the aspirate *h,* the semivowels *j* (= *y*) and *v,* and the sibilant *s,* and it frequently disappears before these letters:

i. Before *h*: as,

cohaereo	cohors
coheres	cohortari
cohibere	

ii. Before *j* (= *y*) and *v:* as,

coicio	compared with	conicio (conjicio)
cojectura	„	conjectura
cojunx	„	conjunx
cojuncti (whence cuncti)	„	conjuncti
coventionid (in S. C. de Bacch.)	„	conventio (whence contio, v. § 822, *Obs.* 1).

iii. Before *s,* which occurs still more frequently:

(*a.*) In the Suffix *-iens:* as,

quoties	instead of	quotiens
toties	„	totiens
quinquies	„	quinquiens

(*b.*) In the Suffix of the Ordinal Numbers *-esimus* for *-ensumus*: as,

vicesimus instead of vicensumus
quadragesimus „ quadragensumus

(*c.*) In the Suffix of the Gentile Adjectives in *-ensis*: as,

Apulesis instead of Apulensis
Ostesis „ Ostensis
Narbonesis „ Narbonensis

(*d.*) In the Stems of some words: as,

cesor instead of censor
cosul „ consul
mesis „ mensis
mostrum „ monstrum
tosor „ tonsor

(*e.*) According to the best MSS. of Lucretius and Plautus, and early Inscriptions, the *n* of the *nt* of the termination of the Imperfect Participle sometimes disappears, when the *t* of the Stem has been dropped before *s*, the sign of the Nominative: as,

animas instead of animans — lacrimas instead of lacrimans
cogitas „ cogitans — dormies „ dormiens
curas „ curans — obedies „ obediens

(See Neue, *Formenl.* ii. 410.)

(5) N had a guttural sound before the gutturals *c*, *g*, *ch*, *x*, and was probably pronounced like the French *n*. Some of the ancient writers, as we learn from Varro (ap. Prisc. i. 39), sought to express this sound by *g*, as in Greek, writing

Agchises instead of Anchises
agceps „ anceps
aggulus „ angulus

Hence we can explain the forms

ec-ce instead of en-ce
ec-quis „ en-quis
ec-quando „ en-quando

(6) N is changed into *m* before labials, and is assimilated before the liquids, *l*, *r*: as,

im-peritus instead of in-peritus
im-modicus „ in-modicus

col-laudo	instead of	con-laudo
col-ligo	,,	con-ligo
cor-ripio	,,	con-ripio
cor-ruo	,,	con-ruo.

§ 834. **M.**—(1) M, at the beginning of Latin words, had the same full sound as it had in the cognate languages.

(2) M had a weaker sound in the middle of words before the labial consonants, as in *umbra*. In the middle of words M was changed into:—

i. The guttural *n*, before the guttural *c*: as, *anceps* (for *ambiceps*).

Obs. On the other hand, *m* generally remained before *q*: as, *quomquam*, *tamquam*.

ii. Into the dental *n*, before the dentals *d*, *t*: as, *tantundem*, *eundem*. The only exception to this rule is *circumdo*.

iii. Into a faint nasal sound written as *n* (but frequently omitted), before *j* (= *y*), *v*, and *s*: as, *conjunx* or *cojunx*, *consul* or *cosul*, &c. (v. § 833, No. 4).

iv. In composition, the *m* of *circum* and of *com* frequently disappears before a vowel: as,

circuire, circuitus	coagulum	coactus
coemptio	coire	cooptare, &c.

(3) M, at the end of words, was pronounced so faintly as to be almost inaudible. In Latin verse, a word ending in a vowel and M, was for metrical purposes regarded as ending only in a vowel. Hence M was frequently not written at the end of words. Its disappearance is of importance for the history of the Latin Declensions and Conjugations.

Obs. 1. In the Verb, the *m*, which is the sign of the first Person Sing., is dropped in most tenses of the Indicative, but retained in the Subjunctive. This *m* must have disappeared very early, as it is also dropped in Greek in the present tense of verbs in -ω, and retained only in verbs in -μι. In Latin, the *m* is preserved in two verbs only, in the Present Indicative, *s-u-m* (=*es-u-m*, comp. Gr. ἐσ-μί, Sanskr. *as-mi*) and *inqua-m*.

Obs. 2. In Nouns, the final *m* is sometimes written and sometimes omitted in inscriptions of the time of the Punic wars: thus we find such forms as *dono* and *donom*, *viro* and *sacrom*, &c. From the time of the S. C. de Bacchanalibus, the final *m* of the nouns regularly appears. But that it still continued to be omitted in the popular dialect, is evident from the inscriptions scribbled by the

populace on the walls of Pompeii, in which the *m* of the Accusative is usually wanting: as, *tota, puella*, &c., for *totam, puellam*, &c. From the third century A.D., the *m* of nouns and other words is constantly omitted in inscriptions, because it had by this time ceased to be pronounced in the popular dialect. This dropping of the *m* first in pronunciation and then in writing, seems to have been one of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions in the popular language.

V. Sibilants.

§ 835. **S.**—(1) The grammarians give us hardly any information respecting the pronunciation of S; but it clearly had more than one sound in Latin.

(2) S, at the beginning of words, had a sharp sound. In this position, it is found, before consonants only, in the combinations *sp, sc, st*: as, *spargere, scindere, stare*. On account of its sharp sound, it disappeared before *f* at the beginning of words: as, *fallo* compared with *σφάλλω*, *fungus* with *σφόγγος*, *funda* with *σφενδόνη*, *fidis* with *σφίδη*.

(3) S, in the middle of words, was pronounced sharply both before and after consonants. This is shown by the change of the Labial Media into the Tenuis before *s*: as, *nup-si, lap-sus*, &c. (v. § 826, No. 3): and also by the fact that *s* is retained only before sharp sounds, while it is dropped before *m, n, l, d*: as,

ca-mena	ce-na	corpu-lentus	ju-dex
(cas-mena)	(ces-na)	(corpos-lentus)	(jus-dex)
o-men	ahe-neus		i-dem
(os-men)	(ahes-neus)		(is-dem)
(po-moerium)	vide-n'		di-duco
(pos-moerium),	(vides-n')		(dis-duco)
du-mus)			tre-decim
(dus-mus)			(tres-decim)

Obs. In the same way *s* disappears before *b*: as, *ju-beo*, which is probably a contraction of *jus-hibeo*.

Sometimes S is changed into *r* before the same sounds: as,

car-men	veter-nus)	diur-nus
(cas-men),	(vetes-nus)	(dius-nus)

(4) S, in the middle of words, had a softer sound between two vowels, as it has in the Romance languages: as, Lat. *rosa*, Ital. *rosa*, French *rose*. This is also shown by the change of *s* into *r*

between two vowels (v. § 832, No. 1), which could not have been of such frequent occurrence had not the *s* in this position been the softer sibilant.

Obs. In *spes* and *dies*, the *s* belongs to the Stem, and has been dropped in the Gen. and Dat. cases Sing., *spe-i*=*spes-i*, *die-i*=*dies-i*. That the *s* of *spes* belongs to the Stem is proved by the Nom. and Acc. Pl. *speres* in Ennius, and by the verb *spero*. That the *s* of *dies* belongs to the Stem appears from the forms *diur-nus* (=dius-nus), *ho-dier-nus* (=ho-dies-nus), and *Dies-piter*.

(5) S, at the end of words, was from the earliest times very faintly sounded in Latin. In many of the Case-endings, *s* was dropped altogether. Thus it disappeared in the Nom. Sing. of such words as *Numa*, *poeta*, *puer*, *vigil*; and in the Nom. Plur. of the 1st and 2nd Declensions, where *a-is* and *o-is* were the original forms of the later *ae* and *i*. In the Imperative Mood of verbs, in like manner, the *s*, which was the sign of the 2nd Person Sing. was dropped (§ 123, 1). So also in the 2nd Person Sing. of the Imperf. Tenses Passive, we have the forms *amare*, *amere*, *amabare*, *amarere*, *amabere*, together with *amaris*, *ameris*, &c. The adverb *magis* and adjective *potis* were also at an early period written *mage* and *pote*.

Obs. In inscriptions of the time of the Punic wars, we find words of the 2nd declension in the Nominative case without *s*: as, *Terentio*, *Albanio*, &c. In the Roman poets down to the time of Cicero, a final *s* in words like *optimus*, *omnibus*, was not sounded before a word beginning with a consonant. Hence the frequency of such Dactylic endings as, *omnibu' princeps*, *omnibu' rebus*, *infantibu' parvis*, etc. Cicero styles this pronunciation *subrusticum* (*Or.* 161), which shows that the *s* was still dropped in his time in the country dialect. In the later Imperial inscriptions, the final *s* in the case-endings usually disappears. This omission of the final *s* was another of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions. (Cf. § 834, *fin.*)

§ 836. **Z.**—(1) Z was found in the oldest Roman Alphabet and occurred in the Carmen Saliare. At what time it disappeared is unknown. It is not found in the Twelve Tables, and we are told that the tragic poet Attius did not use it. It came back into use again in Cicero's time, but only in Greek words.

(2) The Romans, in the time of Plautus and Pacuvius, expressed the Greek *z* at the beginning of words by *s*, and in the middle of words by *ss*: hence they wrote and pronounced *Saguntum*, *Sethus*, *sona*, *badisso*, *Atticisso*, &c. Such forms in the present MSS. of Plautus, as *zona*, *Zacynthus*, *badizo*, *trapezita* were introduced in the recension of the text by the grammarians, in accordance with the orthography of their time.

Obs. It would seem that at a later period the Roman *z* had in it something of a *d* sound as well as of a sibilant. Hence in the Imperial times, when *di* followed by a vowel was sibilated, it was sometimes expressed by *z*: thus we find *diabolus, diaconus*, &c., written *zabolus, zaconus*, &c.

§ 837. **X.**—(1) Whether X is classed among the gutturals or the sibilants is immaterial, as it represented both sounds united. It is here placed with the sibilants, because in course of time it degenerated into a mere sibilant.

Obs. The Latins originally wrote CS for X, and that letter appears to have come into use in the time between the Decemviral legislation and the capture of Veii. It first appears in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus in the words: *exdeicendum, exdeicatis, extrad.*

(2) From the time of the Gracchi, that is from the time of Lucilius and Attius, who did much to fix the Latin orthography, X was frequently written *xs*: as, *saxsum, maxsume, proxsimum, deduxsit, lexs*, &c. This orthography is found even in monuments of the Augustan age. Hence it is clear that the sibilant was pronounced very strongly. From this predominance of the sibilant we may account for the fact, that before consonants, the guttural part of *x* disappeared and the sibilant *s* alone remained; whence we find in inscriptions *sescentas, Sestius, praetestati*. The remaining *s* then disappeared before those consonants with which it did not harmonize, that is, before *d, n, m, v* (v. § 835, No. 3): as, *se-decim, se-ni, se-mestris, se-vir*.

VI. Semivowels.

§ 838. **J.**—(1) The same character, namely I, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *i* and the semivowel *j*.

The semivowel J had its simplest sound at the beginning of simple words, and at the beginning of the second member of compound words: as,

ab-judico	ad-jungo	con-jectus
e-juro	de-jectus	di-judico

In such cases J was pronounced like the English *y*. If the J was followed by *i*, the J was dropped: therefore the correct orthography is—

eicit *not* ejicit	proicit *not* projicit
reicit „ rejicit	coicit „ cojicit

A short vowel thus preceding J in composition remained short, just as before a simple consonant: as,

bĭjugus quadrĭjugus trĭjugus altĭjugus

(2) J in the middle of simple words between two vowels had a fuller sound. In this position, as we learn from Quintilian (1, 4, 11), its sound was represented by a double *i* by Cicero, who wrote, for example, *aiio* and *Maiia* (cf. Prisc. i. 18; vii. 19). We find in inscriptions such forms as *Pompeiius, eiIus, cuiIus, maiIorum,* the second I in some cases being written higher than the other letters.

(3) The guttural is omitted before J in

mājor, mājus	for măgior
Mājus (Māius)	„ Măgius
pulējum	„ pulĕgium
mējo	„ mĭgio (cf. mingo)
āio	„ ăgio (cf. Sansk. *ah*, "dicere")

v is omitted before J in Gājus (Gāius) for Gavius.
r „ „ pē-jero for perjero (cf. perjurium).
s „ „ dī-judico for disjudico.
s with *n* preceding is omitted before J in trā-jicio for transjicio.

Obs. In the later popular pronunciation J was sibilated and pronounced nearly like the English *j* and the Italian *gi* by which it is regularly represented in Italian words; as, *giunto, giovane, giogo* from *junctum, juvenem, jugum.*

§ 839. **V.**—(1) The same character, namely V, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *u* and the semivowel *v*.

Obs. The semivowel *v* was reckoned by Cicero among the labial consonants. (Mar. Victorin. p. 2462.) The Emperor Claudius, as already remarked (§ 82), introduced for this sound the character Ⅎ, which, however, after his death fell into disuse.

(2) Many Greek words, which originally began with the so-called Digamma (i. e. *Vau*), begin in Latin with a *v*: as,

vomo	ἐμέω	vitulus	ἴταλος
voco	εἶπον, rt. ἐπ-	ver	ἦρ
volvo	εἴλω	vestis	ἑσθής
vinum	οἶνος	vespera	ἑσπέρα
viola	ἴον	Vesta	Ἑστία

Obs. The Latin *v* was expressed in Greek, after the disappearance of the Digamma, by either *ου* or *β*; and the same word is sometimes written indifferently in either way; as,

Varro	Οὐάρρων	or	Βάρρων
Vala	Οὐάλης	„	Βάλης
Valentia	Οὐαλεντία	„	Βαλητία
Valerius	Οὐαλέριος	„	Βαλέριος
Venusia	Οὐενουσία	„	Βενουσία.

This fluctuation in the orthography between *ου* and *β* proves that *v* in Latin occupied an intermediate sound between the vowel sound *ου* and the consonant *β* in Greek, as was the case with the Greek F. Cf. § 6.

V rarely comes into contact with a preceding consonant, except the liquids *r* and *l*. It either (1) drives out the preceding consonant, or (2) is changed into *u*, or (3) disappears altogether.

(1) D disappears before *v* (v. § 827, No. 2) in:

viginti suavis

G disappears before *v* (v. § 824, No. 2, iv.) in:

nives fruor fluvius coniveo vivo

F, having previously become *h*, disappears before *v* (v. § 828) in:

proba-vi for proba-fui, &c.

(2) V is changed into *u* in the suffix *-vus* after Mutes and *n*: as,

vacuus	perpetuus
mortuus	ingenuus

But if *r* or *l* precedes, the suffix *-vus* retains its original form: as,

alvus	acervus
calvus	curvus

(3) V disappears altogether after *t* and *s*: as,

te, tibi, comp. tu, tuus . .		Sansk.	tvam
se, sibi, „	sui, suus. .	„	svas

Obs. A comparison of these pronouns with the Sanskrit shows that *v* was part of the original form, subsequently changed into *u*, and then dropped.

(4) In like manner V rarely comes into contact with a consonant following; for, when a vowel following is dropped, *v* becomes *u*, and then coalesces with the preceding vowel into a diphthong. Thus *av* becomes *au*, when the vowel following is dropped: as

fautor	from	favitor
auceps	„	aviceps
audeo	„	avideo; comp. avidus.

So *ov* becomes *ou* (afterwards written *u*), when the vowel following is dropped: as,

nuper	for	noviper
Jupiter	„	Jovipiter

Juno	for	Jovino
jucundus	„	juvicundus
prudens	„	providens

It must be borne in mind that *v* was probably pronounced like the English *w*.

Obs. In *nuper* for *novum-per*, the preposition is added as an enclitic, like *parum-per, sem-per, paullis-per, tantis-per, aliquantis-per.*

(5) V between vowels is frequently dropped: as,

petii	for	petivi	malo	for	mavolo
commorunt	„	commoverunt	aetas	„	aevitas
amarunt	„	amaverunt	ditior	„	divitior
nolo	„	nevolo	vita	„	vivita

The *v* in the Perfect of the First Conjugation seems to have been usually omitted in the popular pronunciation; hence the perfect forms of the modern Italian *lavorai, amai, chiamai,* &c.

(B.) THE VOWELS.

§ 840.—(1) The vowels appear to have been pronounced in Latin much as they are in the modern Italian. Concerning their classification, see § 3.

(2) We learn from Quintilian that *e* in some cases had an intermediate sound between *e* and *i* ("in here neque *e* plane neque *i* auditur," 1, 4, 18).

(3) There was in Latin also an intermediate sound between *i* and *u*, very nearly equivalent to the sound of the Greek *υ*, French *u*, German *ü*. It is stated by Latin grammarians to have occurred in the following amongst other words:—

Before *m* in:

maxumus	pulcherrumus	sumus
intumus	acerrumus	contumax
extumus	justissumus	contumelia
lacrumae	volumus	existumat
optumus	nolumus	monumentum
minumus	possumus	alumenta.

Before *b, p,* and *f* in:

manubiae	aucupium	aurufex.
lubido	mancupium	
intubus	aucupare	
artubus	manupretium	
manubus		

This variation in orthography is found chiefly before Labials. In old inscriptions all such words appear with *u*, but in those of the time of Caesar and Augustus, usually with *i*. We are expressly told by the ancient grammarians that Caesar and Cicero employed *i*, though the country people used the more ancient pronunciation with *u*.

The Emperor Claudius attempted to introduce the new character Ⅎ, for this intermediate sound between *i* and *u* (§ 821); but it is curious that, in inscriptions, this character does not occur in any of the words already mentioned, but only as a representative of the Greek *v*, as Aeg Ⅎ pti, C Ⅎ cnus, Bath Ⅎ llus, &c.

Even in late inscriptions we sometimes find the *u* in such words; so that the intermediate sound between *u* and *i* seems never to have passed completely into *i*. In modern Italian *i* is the more frequent, as in *ottimo, massimo, prossimo, intimo, libidine*, &c. But the *u* is still retained in *monumento* and *documento*.

Chapter LXIX.—Formation of the Cases.

§ 841. There appears to have been originally but one mode of declining Nouns in Latin—namely, by adding to the Stem a certain suffix for each case. The present "Five Declensions" have arisen through the changes undergone by these suffixes in combination with the final letter or letters of the Stem. In the following chapter it is shown in what way these changes were probably developed.

The origin of the case-suffixes is for the most part quite unknown. Their ultimate form is ascertained by comparison of the oldest known languages of the Indo-European or Aryan family. Yet it must not be supposed that Latin, any more than Greek, is *derived* from Sanskrit or any other known language. Only by approaching nearer to the source from which the streams of the Indo-European languages have diverged, we obtain their original elements in a less altered and corrupt form.

§ 842. Instead of the ordinary "Five Declensions," nouns may be classed according to the final letter of their Stem into Two Principal Declensions:

I. The Consonant Declension;

II. The Vowel Declension: the latter being subdivided into the

A = Declension
E = „
I = „
O = „
U = „

§ 843. The "Five Declensions" correspond to these in the following way:—

1 Declension.	2 Declension.	3 Declension.	4 Declension.	5 Declension.
A Decl.	O Decl.	Consonant and I Decl.	U Decl.	E Decl.

The case-endings appear most clearly in the Consonant Declension; while in the Vowel Declensions they undergo various changes through the combination of the vowels of the Stems with the vowels of the case-endings.

1. The Nominative Singular.

A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

§ 844. The suffix of the Nominative Singular of Masculine and (in most cases) Feminine Nouns is **s**, added immediately to the Stem: as,

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
(Aenea-s)	avo-s	duc-s, avi-s	gradu-s	re-s.

§ 845. *Third Declension.*—(1) In the Consonantal Stems, the ordinary euphonic changes occur. Thus: **cs, gs = x**; while **t, d,** and **s** disappear before the suffix; as, dux = duc + s; lex = leg + s; aetās = aetat + s; vas (*surety*) = vad + s.

Obs. In *nix, nivis*, the Stem was NIGV: see § 23, *Obs.*

(2) Stems ending in **n** mostly reject **s**: as tubĭcen, for tubicen + s; flamen, for flamen + s. But in some cases the *s* is retained and the *n* dropped: as, sanguis for sanguin + s.

(3) Stems ending in **on** reject both *n* and *s*: as, natio, for nation + s; virgo, for virgon + s; homo, for homon + s.

(4) Stems ending in **l** and **r**, reject the suffix: as, pater, dator, fur, consul, vigil.

Obs. Stems ending in *ant* and *ent* frequently reject the *n* as well as the *t* before *s* in the more ancient writers, as: *cogitas* instead of *cogitans*. For further examples, v. § 833, No. 4, iii.

(5) Many Stems have changed the earlier **s** of their Stem into **r**: see § 25, *Obs.* 2.

§ 846. *Third Declension*:—I-stems.—(1) Many Stems in I have lost the *i* before the *s* of the Nominative, so that they appear to belong to the Consonant Declension ('Pseudo-Consonant Stems,' § 28); but the majority have *-i* before *um* in the Genitive Plural. Stems of Adjectives in *-ati, -eti, -iti, -ti*, mostly formed from Nouns, and signifying 'belonging to a place,' had in the time of Naevius, Ennius, Plautus, and Cato, the full Nominative forms in *-atis, -etis, -itis, -tis*; subsequently contracted to *-as, -es, -is, -s*, the *i* disappearing, and the *t* being then elided according to euphonic laws: as,

Later Forms.	Old Forms.	Later Forms	Old Forms.
Arpinas	Arpinatis	infimas	infimatis
Capenas	Capenatis	nostras	nostratis
Ardeas	Ardeatis	cujas	cujatis
Ferentinas	Ferentinatis	Samnis	Samnitis
Ravennas	Ravennatis	Quiris	Quiritis
Lavinas	Lavinatis	Caeres	Caeretis
primas	primatis	,,	Caeritis
optimas	optimatis	Laurens	Laurentis
summas	summatis	Tiburs	Tiburtis

§ 847. In like manner a great number of Nouns formed by the addition of the suffix *ti*, drop the *i* before the *s* of the Nominative 28): as,

mens	mons	ars
dens	pons	pars
ingens	sons	mors
fons	frons	cohors, &c.

Obs. In the case of many of these words, the Nom. in *is* occurs in old writers: e. g. Nom. *mentis* in Ennius quoted by Varr. *L. L.* v. 59; Nom. *sortis* in Pl. *Cas.* ii. 6, 28.

§ 848. If a liquid precedes the *i*, the *s* of the Nominative is usually dropped as well as the *i*: as,

mugil for mugilis
pugil ,, pugilis
vigil ,, vigilis
linter ,, linteris

Arar for Araris (Prisc. v. 13)
par „ paris (Prisc. vii. 64)
vomer „ vomeris (Cat. *R. R.* 135)
caro(n) „ carnis (Prisc. vi. 17).

Obs. The original form of the Nom. of *caro* must have been *caroni-s*, becoming both *caro* and *carnis*.

§ 849. Adjectives ending in the Nominative Masculine and Feminine in *er, ris* (§ 58), as, acer, acris; pedester, pedestris, have Stems ending in *eri*. In such forms as acer and pedester, the *is* is dropped altogether; while in acri-s and pedestr-is, the *e* disappears before the *r* as in the oblique cases.

§ 850. *First or A Declension.*—The Nominative of Masculine nouns of the A Declension must have originally ended in Latin in *s*, as it does in Sanskrit and Greek; but the frequent disappearance of *s* at the end of words is a characteristic feature of Latin pronunciation (§ 835, No. 5). S appears never to have been added to form the Nominative of Feminine Nouns of this Declension, as it is not found either in Sanskrit or Greek in Feminine Nouns in A. (Cf. Sanskr. Masc. *śiv-a-s*, Fem. *śiv-â*.) The final *a* of Feminine Stems was originally long in the Indo-European languages, as it is always in Sanskrit, and usually in Greek. In Latin, it is short in the later period of the Republic, and in the Augustan age; but it was long in the earlier poets, as in Ennius (*Annal.* 484, ed. Vahlen)—

Multa foro ponit et agcâ longa repletur.

§ 851. *Second or O Declension.*—The Nominative of Masculine Nouns originally ended in *o-s* (Sanskr. *a-s*), whence we find in inscriptions such forms as *filios* and *primos* in the Nominative Subsequently this *o* was softened into *u* (cf. § 3, *fin.*); but the combination *vu* or *uu* was avoided in Latin, and the final *o* was retained when preceded by *v* or *u*, even in the time of Augustus: see p. 12, *Obs.* 1.

§ 852. If *r* precedes the final *o* of the Stem, both the *o* and the *s* of the Nom. are usually dropped: as puer for puerus: see p. 11, *Obs.* 1.

§ 853. The same omission takes place in one instance, where the *o* is preceded by *l*: as *famul* (Oscan *famel*) instead of *famulus* (Enn. *Ann.* 317; Lucr. iii. 1035, ed. Lach.). Compare the omission

of *is* in I nouns, when the final *i* of the Stem is preceded by *r* or *l* (§ 848).

Obs. Only a few Nouns and Adjectives retain *us* after *r*: see p. 11, *Obs.* 1.

§ 854. In some of the pronominal Stems in *o*, the Nom. *s* is omitted, and the *o* or *u* softened into *e*: e. g. ille, iste. In like manner the *o* of the Vocative of Nouns is softened into *e*.

B. Neuter Nouns.

§ 855. All Neuter Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns have the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative cases alike in each number. In the Sing. these cases are either (1) the same as the Stem; or (2) formed by adding *m*; or (3) formed by adding *d*, a suffix which is confined to pronouns.

§ 856. *Nom. Acc. and Voc. the same as the Stem.*—This is the case with Nouns of the Consonant and U Declensions: as, Stem and Nom. *fulgur, genu.* In such Nominatives as *corpus* and *crus*, the *s* is part of the Stem and not the sign of the Nom., as is proved by the Gen. *corpor-is* and *crur-is*, in which the *r* represents the original *s*. In *corpus*, the *o* of the Stem is softened into *u*, as in the Nom. of the O Declension. In like manner, in such words as, *genus, gener-is*, the original Stem was *genos* as in Greek (γενος-, softened γενες-), the *o* being softened into *u* in the Nom., and into *e* in the oblique cases. In Greek, the σ disappeared between two vowels, which were then contracted according to the usual rules.

So also the *o* has been softened into *u* in *ebur, femur*, the suffix *-ur* being a weakened form of *-os* and *-us*.

Obs. In such Adjectives as *capax* (=*capaci-s*), *amans* (=*amanti-s*), the Neuter, contrary to all analogy, retains in the Nom. the sign of the Masc. and Fem. Nom.; and the same form is used for the Neut. Acc.

In Stems in I, the final *i* either sank into *e*: as, *mare, facile*; or it was dropped altogether, especially in the terminations *ali* or *ari*. In the following words both forms occur:

animal	animale	cochlear	cochleare
tribunal	tribunale	torcular	torculare
puteal	puteale	exemplar	exemplare
pulvinar	pulvinare	lacunar	lacunare

§ 857. *Nom. Acc. and Voc. with case-ending* **m.**—This occurs only in the 2nd or O Declension: as, *dono-m* or *don-um* (cf. Sanskr. Neut.

śiv-a-m; from Stem *śiva*). It is evidently the sign of the Accusative transferred to the Nominative; probably on the ground that a Neuter Substantive cannot be a true Subject, but is naturally regarded as Object.

§ 858. *Nom. Acc. and Voc. with case-ending* **d**.—This is confined to pronominal stems, ending in *o*, *u*, or *i*: as, *istu-d*, *illu-d*, *quo-d*, *aliu-d*, *i-d*, *qui-d*. See § 902.

2. The Vocative Singular.

§ 859. The Vocative seems to have been originally the same as the stem, since in merely calling a person there was no occasion for a case-suffix to mark the relation of the word to other words in the sentence. But this form of the Vocative is retained only in the 2nd or O Declension, in which, moreover, the *o* either sinks into *e* or is lost: as, domine, vir. In all the other Declensions the Voc. is the same as the Nom.; and even in the 2nd Declension the old Latin often exhibits the termination *us* in the *Voc.*: as, Populus Albanus, *O thou people of Alba.* Also, deus is used as a *Voc.* (comp. Gr. Θεός, Voc. Θεός, later, Θεέ, N. Test.).

3. The Accusative Singular.

§ 860. The suffix of the Accusative Singular of all masculine and feminine nouns is **m**. When the stem ends in a vowel, the **m** is added to it immediately; when it ends in a consonant, a connecting vowel (ŭ) is used: as,

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musa-m	avo-m dominu-m	reg-em navi-m.	gradu-m	re-m

Obs. On the change of *o* into *u* in the 2nd Declension, see § 851.

§ 861. In the I Declension the old form *-im* is for the most part softened into *em*, though some words uniformly, and others generally, retain the *i* (§ 33).

Obs. 1. The termination *im* is retained in Accusatives in *tim* and *sim*, used as adverbs: see § 196.

Obs. 2. In the Accusative of consonant stems, the Latin preserves an older form than the Greek. Cf. Lat. *dent-em*, Sanskr. *dant-am*, with Gk. *ὀ-δόντ-α*. The Greek sometimes even drops the *ν* after stems in *ο* or *ω* of the 3rd Declension: as, *αἰδώς*, *shame*; Acc. *αἰδόα* (contr. *αἰδῶ*).

4. The Genitive Singular.

§ 862. The original suffix of the Genitive Case in Latin appears to have been *as*; or in modified and lightened forms (see § 3), *os*, *us*, and finally *is*, in all Declensions. In Sanskrit the form of this suffix is *as*, which is added to all consonant-stems; feminine stems in *â*, corresponding to Lat. 1st Decl., having Gen. in *-âyâs*, and Masculine stems in *a*, corresponding to Latin Nouns in *us* of the 2nd Declension having Gen. in *asya*. The suffix *as* appears in the old Genitive in ās of the 1st Declension.

§ 863. A Genitive form in *os* (cf. Gk. *-ος*) is occasionally found in Nouns of the 4th or U Declension: e. g.

senatu-os magistratu-os domu-os

Of these, *senatu-os* occurs several times in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus; and *magistratu-os* in an early inscription. *Domu-os* is conjectured to have been the form referred to by Suetonius as used by Augustus for domūs (Suet. Aug. 87: domos, MSS.)

§ 864. Genitive forms in *us* (= *os*) are found in early inscriptions, in Nouns of the 3rd Declension: e. g. homin-us, nomin-us, Castor-us, etc. But this suffix at a very early date assumed the form *is*, which in Consonant Stems is added to the Stem without change: in I Stems, the final vowel is dropped, and the syllable not lengthened; as, nav-īs.

§ 865. In early inscriptions is found also a Gen. in *es*: as,

Salut-es Apollon-es;

but the form in *is* was at all known periods of the language the usual one in this Declension. The form in *es* seems to have survived in the popular dialect; for in late inscriptions we find such Genitives as Caesar-es, campestr-es, pag-es (A.D. 508) for pac-is.

§ 866. *First or A Declension.*—In the 1st, 2nd, and 5th Declensions the Genitive has apparently been replaced by the Locative. The oldest known form of the Genitive of the 1st Declension is that in *ās*, as famili-ās; which may be compared with Sanskr. *āyās* (§ 862).

§ 867. According to another view, the *ae* of the Genitive of the 1st Declension is derived from an original *-aos*; the successive steps being *-aos*, *a-is* (*a-es*), *āī*, *ae*. But no forms in *aos* or *ais* appear to have been found, with the solitary exception of 'Proserpnais' on a mirror found at Cosa; and those in *aes* occur only in comparatively

modern inscriptions. (See Wordsworth, *Early Latin*, p. 15.) Further, on this hypothesis, the long *i* in *āī* remains unaccounted for.

§ 868. *Second or O Declension.*—The oldest form of the Genitive from O stems appears to be that in *īus*; now found only in Pronominal Stems, as un-īus, sol-īus, etc. This ending doubtless arose from the coalescence of the Stem vowel with the suffix *ios* or *ius*; and may be compared with Sanskr. *asya*, § 862. Concerning the lengthened *i*, see § 905.

The current forms in *i* (for *oi*), like those in *ae* (for *ai*) of the 1st Declension, were no doubt originally Locatives, *i* being the regular suffix in the Locative Singular.

§ 869. *Fourth or U Declension.*—It has been seen that the original suffix of the Genitive occurs in the case of some U Stems in the form of *os* (§ 863). The transition from *uos* to *uis* is easy and natural, and the uncontracted form is seen in the Gen. Sing. of grus, sus; also in anu-is from anus (Ter. *Heaut.* 2, 3, 44), and other similar instances. The ordinary Genitive in *ūs* is an immediate contraction of this.

In this Declension also the Locative seems to have to some extent displaced the true Genitive; such forms as senati, tumulti, being common in early writers. See p. 36, *Obs.* 3.

§ 870. *Fifth or E Declension.*—From the original form *e-is*, representing Sanskr. *âyas* (as in Stem *rai-* = Lat. rē, Gen. *râyas*), comes the old Genitive in *ēs*; which may be compared with Gen. *ās* in 1st Declension. Here again the functions of the Genitive have been assumed by the Locative: e. g. re-i from res = Sanskr. *râyi*.

§ 871. The *Gen.* in *-es* is found in the old writers and grammarians: die-s (Enn. *Annal.* 401, Vahlen), facie-s (Claudius Quadrig. ap. Gell. 9, 14), rabie-s (Lucret. 4, 1083, Lachmann); and Gellius (*l.c.*) also found die-s in old MSS. of Cicero and Virgil. Other instances quoted by grammarians from old writers are pernicie-s, luxurie-s.

5. The Dative Singular.

§ 872. The Suffix of the Dative Singular was -I for all Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musa-i	avo-i	reg-i	manu-i	re-i
musae	avō	nav(i)-i		

§ 873. There was, however, a still older form *-bi*, which appears in pronominal Stems only: viz., ti-bi, si-bi, u-bi, alicu-bi, i-bi. This Suffix corresponds to the Sanskrit *-bhyâm*, to the Greek φι or *-φιν*, and the Oscan *fe* (v. § 828, 2). The same Suffix appears in a weakened form in mi-hi. It has been already seen that, as the aspirate has been lost in *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, &c., so the labial has disappeared in mi-hi (v. § 828).

This Suffix, with Plural characteristic *s*, is seen in the *Dat. Pl. -bus*. Sanskr. *bhyas* ✓

§ 874. *Consonant or I Declension.*—Instead of ĭ, in the earliest inscriptions, is often found *ei* (corresponding to Sanskr. *ê*, i. e. *ai*); which renders it probable that the Dative Singular is simply a strengthened form of the Locative. Examples: Apolen-ei (Apollini), Jounon-ei, virtut-ei, Mart-ei (B.C. 211), hered-ei (B.C. 217).

This suffix appears in a weakened form as *e*; which is found not only in inscriptions, but also in some old legal formulae, as jure dicundo, aere flando, etc. ✓

§ 875. *First or A Declension.*—The original form *a-i* was softened into *ae*, as in the Genitive. But the form *ai* frequently appears in inscriptions even in the time of Augustus and subsequently: as, colonia-i, Julia-i, dea-i, Agrippina-i.

§ 876. *Second or O Declension.*—The lengthened *o* (cf. Greek ω) is the only remaining trace of the original Suffix.

But *o-i* is preserved in inscriptions and by the grammarians: as,

populo-i	quo-i (for cui)
Romano-i	ho-i-c (for hui-c)

Obs. *Quoi* and *hoi-c* became *cui* and *hui-c*, because the U sound is more nearly related to *i* than to *o*. ✓

§ 877. A form *ei* occurs in inscriptions in words which form their genitives in *-ius*: as,

quoiei = cui
eiei = ei
ipsei = ipsi

§ 878. *Fourth or U Declension.*—(1) Instead of the common form in *u-i*, there occurs in an inscription senatu-ei.

(2) As *ui* passed easily into *u*, the latter form, which Caesar is said to have declared the preferable one (Gell. iv. 16), is met with in all periods of the language: e.g.

Sallust	Virgil	Livy	Tacitus
luxu	metu	exercitu	luxu
exercitu	victu	usu	
usu	concubitu		

It is the regular form in the Neuters: as,

cornu gelu.

§ 879. *Fifth or E Declension.*—In the same way in this Declension *ei* passed into *e*. Thus we find in classical writers such forms as, facie, fide, pernicie: see § 47, *Obs.* 2.

6. The Ablative Singular.

§ 880. The oldest Suffix of the Ablative in Latin was **d**. This is a softened form of *t*, the termination of the Ablative Singular in Sanskrit in Nouns corresponding to the Latin 2nd Declension: e. g. Stem *śiva*, Nom. Masc. *śivas*, Abl. *śivāt*. In other Noun-Stems the Ablative is in Sanskrit identical with the Genitive. On the Columna Rostrata and in other ancient inscriptions are found the following forms:

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.
Hinnad	poplicod	dictatorid	senatud
ead	Gnaivod	conventionid	
sententiad	altod	marid	

The range of the Ablative suffix *d* is wider in Latin than in Sanskrit; but no example is found from a Noun of the 5th Declension The *d* was subsequently dropped, the long final vowel being retained except in consonant Stems: as,

musā avō navī manū rē

The final *e* of the Ablative of Consonant-Stems is short in the poets of the Augustan age, but it is long in Ennius, and is represented by *ei* or *i* in the early Latin. Thus Plautus and Terence have lucī as Abl. of lux; Lucretius also has lucī (in luci, 4, 232), lapidī (1, 884), etc. In Greek this Ablative Suffix is preserved in Adverbs in **-ωs** (= **ωτ**), as **ὁμῶs** from the Stem **ὁμο**, with the long vowel, as in Sanskr.

Obs. 1. This old Ablative form is preserved in Latin in other words. *Mēd* and *tēd* are found in Plautus as Ablatives of *ego* and *tu*. *Sēd* (*sē*) is also an Ablative of *sui*, signifying originally "by one's self," and then "apart," "but:" in composition the *d* is dropped before consonants, as *sē-cerno*, *sē-cedo*, &c. In the same way *prō*, originally *prōd* (cf. *prōd-eo*, *prōd-igus*), was once an Ablative.

Obs. 2. Adverbs in *e* formed from Stems in O were originally Ablatives, which have lost their final *d*. This appears from the form *facilumed*, which occurs in the Senatusconsultum de Bacchanalibus.

7. The Locative Singular.

§ 881. This Case, like the Instrumental, has disappeared from the ordinary grammar of the Latin language. The suffix of the Locative Singular was *i*; as seen in the so-called Genitives domi, Romai, Sagunti, and the so-called Adverbs hi-c, illi-c, isti-c (§ 906). The only Noun which has retained a recognized Locative form, distinct from both the Genitive and the Dative, is domus, Loc. domi.

(i) *First or A Declension.*—Here a-i becomes ae: see p. 8, *Observations on the Cases.*

(ii) *Second or O Declension.*—Here o-i becomes i: see § 868. This suffix appears in inscriptions in the form *ei:* as, Romanei Populei, etc. Stems in *io* form the Genitive in i for ii: see p. 12, *Obss. on the Cases*, No. 3.

(iii) *Consonant and I Declension.*—Here the Locative suffix *i* has for the most part either been shortened to *e*, as in the Ablative, or identified with that of the Dative. Forms like Carthagini, *at Carthage*; Tiburi, *at Tibur*; are doubtless true Locatives; also, ruri, *in the country.*

(iv) *Fourth or U Declension.*—Here the Stem vowel seems to have been elided in the Locative: comp. Gen. senati (§ 869) = senatu-i.

(v) *Fifth or E Declension.*—Here the combination *ē-i* appears unchanged; except that the *e* is sometimes shortened. See § 47, *Obs.* 2. Also sometimes the *e* of the Stem was suppressed before *i:* see § 47, *Obs.* 3.

8. Nominative and Vocative Plural.

Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

§ 882. The Suffix of the Nom. Pl. is **s**, with a connecting vowel; being perhaps originally a simple doubling of the Singular suffix: as, avi-s, *pl.* avis-ĕs contracted into avēs; rex (i.e. reg-s), *pl.* regs-ĕs, contr. regēs; gradu-s, *pl.* gradŭs-ĕs, contr. gradūs.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
[musa-is]	[avos-is]	[regs-es]	[gradus-es]	[res-es]
musai	avis	reg-es	gradū-s	res.
musae	avi	avis-es		
		av(i)-es		

§ 883. *Consonant and I Declension.*—In both these classes of Stems, besides the current Suffix *es*, we have *eis* and *is*, though these terminations are more common in the Accusative than in the Nominative. Varro (*L. L.* viii. 66, Müller) expressly states that the *Nom. Pl.* puppis and restis were used as well as puppes and restes; and the *Nom. Pl.* in *is* is found in the best MSS.

§ 884. *First or A Declension.*—The original Suffix appears to have been *as* as in Sanskrit (cf. Vedic Sanskr. Plur. suffix *-âsas;* explained by Bopp as a double Plural). By natural attenuation of the vowel, *as* would become *is*: as, musa-is. It is true the form *a-is* as a Nom. Plur. is conjectural; but the loss of the *s* in a final unaccented syllable is in accordance with the tendencies of Latin pronunciation, and forms in *-ai* (cf. Gk. *αι*) occur in early Latin: e. g. tabelai datai erunt, i. e. tabulae datae erunt (S. C. de Bacch. *extr.*).

Obs. It is supposed that a Nom. Plur. in *-as* formerly existed; and a form of this kind has even been introduced into Plautus by a modern editor (sunt alternas arbores, Trin. 2, 4, 138, Ritschl; alternae, Fl.); but no certain example is known except in provincial dialects.

§ 885. *The Second or O Declension.*—The Nominative Plural is here seen in two forms; *oe, e, ei* (whence *i*), and *eis, es, is*, resembling the Consonant-Declension. The former type prevailed; but the *s* of the original suffix is preserved in inscriptions down to the time of the Social War. Examples in inscriptions:

oe = oi.	es	eis	is
pilumnoe	magistre-s	magistrei-s	magistri-s
poploe	duomvire-s	gnatei-s	ministri-s
(both in	modie-s	liberei-s	
Carmen			
Saliare)			
ploirume			
plurume			
filiei			
oinvorsei			

Obs. From the diphthong OI arose the sound EI, which was intermediate between *ī* and *ē*, and which was sometimes written with simple I or E.

9. The Accusative Plural.

(1) Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

§ 886. The Accusative Plural appears to have been originally formed by the addition of **s** to the Accusative Singular, before which the nasal (*n* or *m*) was subsequently elided. Compare Sanskr. *śiv-a*, Acc. Sing. *śiv-am*; Acc. Plur. *śiv-ân* (for *śiva-ns*); and so regularly in Masc. Vowel Stems.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musam-s	avom-s	regem-s	manum-s	rem-s
musā-s	avō-s	regē-s	manū-s	rē-s.
		avim-s		
		avī-s		

Obs. In Gothic the Suffix *ns* of the Acc. Pl. has remained entire: as, *vulfa-ns* (=lupō-s), *gasti-ns* (=hostī-s), *sunu-ns* (=pecū-s). Compare in Greek the *Acc. Pl.* *ἀγρούς* (for *ἀγρον-ς*), where the diphthong compensates for the omission of the *ν*: so, *τύπτουσι*, *ὀδούς*, for *τυπτοντ-σι*, *ὀδοντ-ς*.

§ 887. In the Consonant and I Stems the Acc. Pl. was also written *eis* or *is* as well as *es*, as in the Nom. (v. § 883). From Stems in *i* the form in *is* was preferred in the best periods of the language. See § 39.

(2) Neuter Nouns.

§ 888. The Nom., Voc., and Acc. Plur. of all neuter nouns end in **ă**: as,

corpor-ă	regn(o)-ă	cornu-ă
mari-ă		

The *a* was originally long (cf. Sanskr. *śivā-ni*; or *śivān-i*, *n* being assumed as part of the base in these cases). In Zend, Greek, and Gothic the Suffix for these cases in the Neuter is the same as in Latin.

Obs. The origin of this Suffix is doubtful. It has been supposed to be a vocalization of the *n*, which appears in Sanskr. (cf. *Καμβύσε-α* for *Καμβύση-ν*). But the *n* of the Sanskr. itself is probably a matter of vocalization only, and therefore less likely to have entered into the structure of Latin words. It is perhaps simply an extension to all Declensions of the vowel characteristic of Neuter Plurals in one important class of Stems.

10. The Genitive Plural.

§ 889.—(1) The original Suffix of the Genitive Plural was **-sum**, softened into **-rum**; the *s* or *r* is usually dropped in the Consonant, I and U Declensions.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musā-rum	avō-rum	bov-ĕ-rum (v. § 890) reg-um navi-um.	arcu-um	die-rum

Obs. The original form of the Genitive Plural in the Indo-European languages is *-sâm* or *-sôm*. In Sanskrit the Suffix of the *Gen. Pl.* of Nouns is *-nam*, or more probably *-ām* (cf. § 888): e.g. *śiv-a*, Gen. Pl. *śivān-am*; but the true Suffix appears in the *Gen. Pl.* of the Demonstrative and Relative Pronouns (*tê-shâm*, *tâ-sâm*, *tê-shâm* = hō-rum, hā-rum, hō-rum; etc.). In Greek the *s* is dropped, but the long ō is preserved: as, *μουσά-ων* for *μουσά-σων*. In Latin the *s* is changed into *r* (v. § 832, No. 1), and the *-rom* softened into *-rum*.

§ 890. Even in the Consonant Declension, the *r* of the Suffix is preserved in some ancient forms, as, bov-e-rum, Jov-e-rum (Varr. *L. L.* viii. 74, Müller), and nuc-e-rum, reg-e-rum, lapid-e-rum (Charis. i. p. 40, P.). On the other hand, the early poets frequently dropped the *r* in the A and O Declensions: as, meûm factûm for meorum factorum, duûm virûm for duorum virorum (Cic. *Or.* 155, who quotes other instances). Even in later times, the *-um* was the more usual form in many nouns of the A and O Declension, especially with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades, as drachmûm for drachmarum, nummûm for nummorum (§ 17, *Obss. on the Cases*, No. 2).

§ 891. The **i** of Genitives in *-i-um* must, as a general rule, be regarded as part of the Stem: §§ 36–38.

11. The Dative and Ablative Plural.

§ 892. The original Suffix of these cases appears to have been **-bius**, corresponding to the Sanskrit *-bhyas*. From the contraction of the vowels arose the two forms **-bīs** and **-būs**, afterwards **-bŭs**. The form *bīs* occurs in no-bīs, vo-bīs, and in the A and O Stems, with elision of the *b*, as in the A Stems in Sanskrit. The form *bus* occurs in the other Stems.

1 or A Decl.	2 or O Decl.	3 or Cons. and I Decl.	4 or U Decl.	5 or E Decl.
musa-(b)is	avo-(b)is	reg-ĭ-bus	manŭ-bus	rē-bus
musīs	avīs	navĭ-bus	manŭ-bus	

Obs. 1. The long *u* in *būs* is found in omnibūs, Plaut. Aulul. ii. 8, 8; pectoribūs, Virg. Aen. iv. 64.

Obs. 2. The form -bus occurs in some A Stems, as dea-bus, filia-bus, &c. (v. § 17, *Obs.* 4.)

Obs. 3. In the A and O Stems the vowels *a-is* and *o-is* underwent several changes. In inscriptions *eis* is found representing both *ais* and *ois*: as,

incoleis	vieis	tabuleis
amiceis	sueis	agreis.

In O Stems the old forms, suo-is, gnato-is, are still preserved in inscriptions. The Locative Plural is identical with the Dative and Ablative Plural.

Chapter LXX.—Formation of the Comparative and Superlative.

§ 893. Two modes of forming the Comparative and Superlative exist in Sanskrit and in Greek; one by the Suffixes *taras* and *tamas* (Gk. τερος and τατος), and the other by the Suffixes *iyas* and *ishṭhas* (Gk. ἰων = ἰονς, and ιστος). The former is the prevalent mode of comparison in Sanskr. and in Greek; the latter, at least for the Comparative, in Latin.

§ 894. The Sanskr. Suffix *iyas* appears in Latin in the form ior (for ios). In two words the *i* is elided: minor, plus. In other cases, the *u* has been elided; whence the Comparative Adverbs magis, nimis, etc.: § 194, 7. (Similarly from the Suffix *bius* in the Dat. Plur., sprang forms both in bus and bis.)

§ 895. The suffix -ter appears only in words not usually recognised as Comparatives: as,

al-ter	u-ter	neu-ter	dex-ter

Also in the following words, which contain a double comparative suffix:

mag-is-ter	min-is-ter	sin-is-ter

§ 896. The common suffix of the Superlative in Latin is **-issimus**, which appears to have arisen from a combination of the Comparative suffix *-is* (*ios*, *ior*) with the Superlative suffix *-timus* (Sanskr. *-tamas*): hence, **is-timus**, and by assimilation, **issimus**. See § 63, Note 2.

The Superlative suffix **-timus** appears in

op-timus (rt. op-: cf. op-es, *good things, riches*)
in-timus (rt. in-)
ul-timus (rt. ol- or il-; cf. also ul-tra, ul-ter-ior)
ci-timus (rt. ci- as in pron. suffix *ce*; cf. ci-ter-ior)
ex-timus (rt. ec- as in ex: cf. ex-tra, ex-ter-ior)
dex-timus (rt. dex- as in dex-ter)
sin-is-timus (Fest. p. 74, Müller, superlative of sinister, as dextimus of dexter)
soll-is-timus, *most complete* (Fest. p. 289, Superlative of sollus = totus)

To this head may also be referred the forms in **-llimus** and **-rrimus**, by assimilation from *-ltimus* and *-rtimus*: as,

facil-limus = facil-timus
simil-limus = simil-timus
pulcher-rimus = pulcher-timus
veter-rimus = veter-timus

Obs. Also perhaps maximus = mag-ti-mus.

§ 897. The suffix **-timus** itself appears to be a combination of the two suffixes *-tus* and *-mus*.

(1) **-tus** appears as a Superlative suffix in the Ordinals:

quan-tus quin-tus sex-tus quo-tus

(2) **-mus** appears as a Superlative suffix in:

pri-mus min-i-mus supre-mus -mus

Chapter LXXI.—Pronominal Inflexions.

(A.) Personal Pronouns.

§ 898. The inflexion of the Personal Pronouns presents special features.

In the Singular of the 1st Personal Pronoun, two Stems are seen, *ego-* and *me-*, the former confined to the Nom. Case.

The Nominative is in Sanskrit *aha-m*, and in Greek *ἐγώ-ν*. It is identical with O.E. *ic*, Germ. *ich*, Eng. *I*.

The following paradigm shows the inflexion of this Pronoun in the Singular only, in Sanskrit, Latin, and Greek.

	Sanskr.	Lat.	Greek
Nom.	aha-m	ego	*ἐγώ-ν*
Acc.	mām or mā	mē (mēd)	*ἐ-μέ*
Instr.	ma-yā		
Dat.	ma-hyam	mĭ-hī (mĭ-hi)	(*ἐ-μοί*)
Abl.	ma-t	mēd, mē	
Gen.	ma-ma or mê	mis (§ 76, *obs.* 2)	*ἐ-μοῦ*
Loc.	ma-yi	(?) me-i	(?) *ἐ-μοί*

The Latin will be seen to approach more closely to the Sanskrit than does the Greek: e. g. in the long *e* of the Accusative; the *-hi* of the Dative (representing an earlier aspirated Labial, cf. § 194, 9), and in the *d* of the Ablative. The Acc. form in *d* is hard to explain; it is perhaps due to some confusion. The Genitive suffix *-is* (mis, tis, sis) is contr. for -ius.

§ 899. The Plur. of the 1st Pers. Pron. in Sanskr. presents three new stems, two of which are unknown to Latin. The third (*na-*) is identical with that of the Plur. of ego. The form *na-s* (= nos) is an alternative form in Gen. Dat. and Acc. (Sanskr.). Concerning the Genitives nostrum, vestrum, see § 76, *Obs.* 5; and concerning the Dat. and Abl. *nobīs*, *vobīs*, see § 892.

Obs. It is possible that the Sanskr. Plur. stem *asma-* (cf. Gk. *ἡμεῖς*) is the base of the enclitic *-met:* cf. § 76, *Obs.* 1.

§ 900. The stem of the 2nd Pers. Pron. is *tu-*, in Attic Greek softened to *σύ* through the influence of the labial vowel *u*. The following table shows the inflexion of this Pronoun in Sanskrit, Latin, and Greek.

	Sanskr.	Lat.	Greek.
Nom.	tv-am	tu	*τύ, σύ*
Acc.	tv-ām or tv-ā	tē (tēd)	*σέ*
Instr.	tv-ayā		
Dat.	tu-bhyam or tê	tĭ-bei, tĭ-bī, tĭ-bi	(*σοί*)
Abl.	tv-at	tēd, tē	
Gen.	tav-a or tê	tis	*σοῦ*
Loc.	tva-yi	(?) tu-i	*σοί*

This Pronoun, by affinity of sounds, has preserved the original Labial of the Dative (tu-*hyam* would be almost unpronounceable).

Here also, in the Plur., the Sanskrit presents three stems, one only of which is known to Latin; namely, *va-*, in Gen. Dat. and Acc., *va-s* = Lat. *vō-s*.

§ 901. The Sanskr. equivalent to Lat. se is without inflexion; *svayam*, 'self,' 'selves,' of all Persons and Numbers.

The Greek equivalent is *οὗ* (for *σφοῦ*), *οἱ*, *ἕ*. The *σφ* appears in the Dual and Plur. *σφωέ*, *σφεῖς*.

INFLEXION OF **se**.

Acc.	sē (sēd), sēsē
Gen.	sis
Dat.	sībei, sībī, sībi
Abl.	sēd, sē; sēsē
Loc.	(?) sui

(B.) Demonstrative and other Pronouns.

§ 902. The principal Demonstrative (including Relative) stems to be traced in Latin are these: **ho-, to-, no-, so-, i (eo), ollo-, quo.**

Of these *to-*, *no-*, *so-*, do not appear as independent inflected words. See § 197.

The inflexion of the others, though agreeing in general with that of Nouns and Adjectives, presents some marked peculiarities. The chief of these are:—

1. The use of the Neuter suffix *d* (for *t*); as in *id*, *illud*, *quod*.
2. The Gen. Sing. in *-īus*, which is not found in Noun-stems in *o*. See p. 12, *Obs.* 2.
3. The existence of a recognised Locative (Sing.) form.
4. The tendency which they show to become strengthened by the addition of other pronominal elements.

Obs. This tendency is seen in Greek and in modern French. Cf. *οὗτος*, which is itself a compound stem, and is further strengthened and emphasized by the demonstrative suffix *ί*, as *οὑτοσί*. So in French, *ce-la*, *ce-ci*. It is easy to see that this tendency is due to a natural aiming at explicitness, so as to identify the object pointed out beyond the possibility of doubt. Compare in colloquial English, such expressions as, '*this here*,' '*that there*.'

§ 903. The suffixes or strengthening elements employed in Latin are:—

1. **ce**, oftener shortened to *c*, as in hi-c, isti-c, illi-c, etc.
2. **i**, identical with the pronominal stem *i* or *eo-*; by the addition of which the stem-vowel *o* of various Pronouns was converted into *oi*, *ei*, and finally *i*. Thus the stem *ho-* becomes successively, *hoi-*, *hei-*, *hi-*. In Greek this element is added *after* the inflexional suffixes; as, *οὑτοσί*, *τουτονί*, etc.

3. **-dem**, as in *i-dem*, *ea-dem*, *i-dem* (cf. Sanskr. *ayam*, *iyam*, *idam*) with which **-dam**, as in qui-dam, is no doubt etymologically identical. (See below, § 915.)
4. **-pse**, as in *i-psus*, *i-pse*. This is a compound suffix: see below, § 916 ✓ 17304

§ 904. *Nominative Singular of Demonstrative Pronouns.*—(i) The formation of the augmented stem of **ho-** has been explained (§ 903, 2). The whole of the inflected forms of the Singular except the Gen., and the Neuter of the Nom. and Acc. Plural are further strengthened by the addition of the demonstrative element *ce* abbreviated, *c*. In the best age of Latin, *hic* (Nom. Sing. Masc.) is usually long (= *ho-ic*), though examples of the short quantity are to be met with.

The Fem. *haec* is for *ha-i-c*, and the Neut. *hoc* for *ho-(d)-ce*. (The *d* is hypothetical.)

(ii) In the Nom. Sing. of **is**, by Vowel-affinity *i* becomes *e* before *a* in the Fem.; a change which also takes place before the vowels *o* and *u* (e. g. *e-um*, *e-orum*), as in the case of the Verb-stem *i-*, *to go* (§ 109, *Obs.* 1). The Masc. *i-s* and Neut. *i-d* are examples of perfectly simple formation; the Masc. and Neut. suffixes being added immediately to the stem.

(iii) In the Nom. Sing. from stem **ollo-** (illo-), the earliest Masc. forms are *ollos* and *olle*; with Fem. *olla* and Neut. *ollud*. Already by the time of Lucretius and Cicero, the stem had assumed the form *illo-*, and the forms beginning with *o* were archaic. Forms spelt with single *l* occur; and this orthography appears in Adv. *ōl-im*.

(iv) **Qui** is for *qua-i* or *quo-i*, by combination of the two pronominal stems *quo* and *i-*; being thus originally equivalent to qui is or is qui. In the Interrogative form *quĭs*, owing probably to the naturally sharp, quick, intonation of the word in asking a question, the *i* is shortened. No instance of *quis* as Relative has been found; which fact, together with the retention of the *s* in the Interrogative, leads to the conclusion, that the differentiation of the two functions of the word must have taken place at a very early date.

The Fem. *quae* is for *qua-i* (cf. *mens-ae* for *mens-ai*).

There is no trace of the *i-* element in the Neut. *quod*. On the other hand, in the Interrogative form *quid*, the stem-vowel *o* has been lost.

Obs. The corresponding Interrogative in Sanskr. has two stems, *ka-* and *ki-*, the latter found only in Nom. and Acc. Sing. Neut. *ki-m* = *qui-d*. Compare Gk. *τίς*, *τί*.

§ 905. *Genitive Singular.*—The pronominal Gen. Sing. in *-ius* is most easily explained as resulting from the coalescence of the stem-vowel *o* with the element *i*, followed by the ordinary Genitive-suffix *os* or *us* (§ 862). In this way Corssen accounts for the long *i*; though this might perhaps be explained on the basis of the ordinary Sanskr. Gen. suffix for Masculines and Neuters in *a* (= *o*), *asya*.

The resemblance to the Sanskr. Fem. Suffix of the Genitive, *-âyâs* is very striking—indeed the two are phonetically identical: and though it would be difficult to account for the generalization of a Fem. form, there may have been an earlier form from which both Masc. and Fem. were derived.

Cu-jus, from *qui*, is for *quo-ius*, a form which occurs in the famous epitaph on Scipio Barbatus (abt. 280 B.C.)—

Quoius forma virtutei parisuma fuit. (Words. p. 159.)

In the case of unus, ullus, and some other similar words, a Genitive (Locative) form in *i, ae, i* is found. See § 57, *Obs.* 1.

Obs. The objection to Corssen's explanation of the long *i* in *illius* is that no trace of the pronominal element *i* appears in the other Cases of ille, nor at all (apart from this suffix) in the numerous other words which have Gen. in *ius*: e.g. unus, solus, alter, etc.

§ 906. *Dative and Locative Singular.*—The Suffix of the Dative appears to have been, as in the Consonant-Declension, *ei* later *i*. It thus closely resembled the Locative, the suffix of which is *i*. In the Dative of *hic*, however, the stem-vowel is preserved (*hui-c* = *hoice*); which is not the case in the Locative *hī-c*, nor in either the Dat. or Loc. of *ille* or *isti*. *Qui* (Abl.) is perhaps etymologically a Locative; also perhaps *cui* in the compound form cuicui (modi): see § 83, *Obs.*

§ 907. *Accusative Singular.*—The old suffixes of the Acc. Sing. of stems in *o* are: Masc. *-om* (later *-um*), Fem. *-am*; Neut. as in Nom. These are seen in *hun-c* (for *hom-ce*), *illum*, *quom* (later *quem*), with their Feminines. The change from *-om* or *-um* to *em* in *quem* corresponds to that from *diu-* to *die-* (§ 195, 2).

An archaic Accusative *im* or *em*, from stem *i*, is cited by Festus, and occurs in fragments of the XII Tables: igitur *em* (= eum) capito, Tab. 1, 1, Words. p. 254; si *im* (= eum) occisit, Tab. 8, 12, ib. p. 260.

§ 908. *Ablative Singular.*—This conforms to the ordinary law of *o* and *a* stems; but no certain forms in *d* are found. (In Pl. Trin. 3, 3, 78, Fleckeisen reads *quom*; Ritschl, quōd, Abl.) *Quod* is

assumed as Abl. form to account for *que* (§ 197, 10), but it is hypothetical only.

The so-called Ablative *quī*, if not a Locative, as is probable, must have been augmented by Demonstrative *i*: cf. Gk. *οὑτωσί*.

Traces of an Instrumental Case in some of the Pronouns are too uncertain to be noticed here.

§ 909. *Nominative and Accusative Plural.*—As in the Nom. and Acc. Plur. of Noun-stems in *o* (§ 885), forms in *eis* and *es* occur in early documents. *E-eis* (= ii) is found in the S. C. de Bacch. (*eeis* utei ad pr[aetorem] urbanum venirent), and *ques* (= qui) occurs twice in the same document. *Ques* occurs also in fragments of Accius and Pacuvius. *Heis* (= hi) occurs in Inscrr.

The adverbial forms *posthā-c*, ant-eā, praeter-eā, etc., testify to the original quantity of the *a* in Neut. Plur. (§ 888). The diphthongal Neut. Plur. forms in *-ae* are due to the addition of the pronominal element *i*: *quae* = *qua-i*.

Ea-d ('arvorsum *ead*,' S. C. de Bacch.) is almost certainly not Acc. Plur. Neut. but Abl. Sing. Fem., the noun *sententiad* being naturally supplied. The sense of the Preposition arvorsum (= adversum) is not inconsistent with the use of the Ablative.

§ 910. *Genitive Plural.*—Forms in *-om* or *-um* (= orum) occur, as in Consonant-stems. *Cu-i-um* (= quorum) and *e-um* (= eorum) are attested by the ancient Grammarians.

§ 911. *Dative, Locative, and Ablative Plural.*—Of these, the Dat. and Abl. appear to have originally ended in *-bus* (for *-bius*, Sanskr. *-bhyas*, § 892), and such forms occur not only in the case of qui, quis, but also (in earlier documents) in the case of *hic* and *is*. *Hibus* occurs in Plautus, Curc. 4, 2, 19 ('parissumi estis *hībus*'), and *ībus* (*hībus*, Ritschl), id. Mil. 1, 1, 74. *Ea-bus* occurs in Cato.

The ordinary Dat. and Abl. in *-eis*, *-īs*, are strictly either Instrumental forms (cf. Sanskr. *yais*, Instr. Masc. and Neut. of Rel. stem; Fem. *yābhis*), or else Locatives (Sanskr. *yêshu*, *yāsu*, *yêshu*).

§ 912. *The Adverbial Locatives* ibi, ubi.—The suffix *-bi*, provincial (Umbrian) *fe*, is identical with Gk. *φι*, as in Ἰλίοφι = Ἰλίου. According to the analogy of *tībi*, *sĭbi*, the suffix *-bi* should represent a Sanskr. suffix *-bhyām*, which in the case of Pronouns of the 3rd Person is found only in the Dual: e.g. Rel.-stem *ya-*, Instr. Dual Masc. *yā-bhyām*. It seems probable that the suffix *-bi*, like its Greek equivalent *φι*, was generalised in Loc. sense at an early stage of the language.

§ 913. *Other Pronominal Stems.*—The Stems **ta-** or **to-**, **da-** or **do-**, **sa-** or **so-**, **na-** or **no**, **ya**, and perhaps some others, appear in mutilated forms only. Cf. *supr.* § 197.

§ 914. (i) **Ta-**, **to-**, is identical with Sanskr. stem *ta-* (Nom. Sing. *sa-s*, *sā-*, *ta-t:* cf. Gk. *ὁ*, *ἡ*, *τό*). It forms the second half of *is-te*, in which combination it is fully inflected. It appears also in the Adverbs *tum* (*tun-c*), *ta-m*, and probably in *i-ta*, *i-tem;* cf. Sanskr. *i-tas*, '*from here*,' and *i-ti*, '*so*'; also Gk. *εἶ-τα*. This stem is the root of *ta-lis*, *ta-ntus*. It may safely be pronounced the most elementary of Demonstratives.

§ 915. (ii) Another stem **da-** is seen in the suffix *-dem* or *dam;* e. g. *i-dem*, *qui-dam*. It is seen also in the Sanskr. Demonstrative *ayam*, *iyam*, *i-dam*, '*this*.' (It is possible that the particle *dum* is cognate; but another and what seems a more probable account of this particle is given § 194, 3.)

§ 916. (iii) Stem **sa-**, **so-**. This appears to be a softened form of *tà-*, *to-*. Sanskrit, Greek, and O. English agree in confining the *t*-sound to the Neut. of the primary Demonstrative: Sanskr. *sa-s*, *sā*, *tat;* Gk. *ὁ*, *ἡ*, *τό;* O. E. *se*, *seo*, *thæt*. A separate stem is however assumed by modern philologists. This element appears in *i-p-se* (ipse), older form *ip-sus;* in which combination it is fully inflected. The former part of the word consists of the pronominal stem *i* and the particle *pe* (as in *quis-p'-iam*). It is literally rendered by Corssen (Auss. ii. 274): 'der-eben-dieser' (*that-even-this*), much as one might say, '*that there here*.' The same element is seen also in the pronominal forms *sum*, *sam*, *sos*, *sas*, apparently = eum, eam, eos, eas. (Ennius ap. Fest. s.v.; also XII. Tab. No. 7, Words. p. 259.)

Sometimes the first element of *ipse* is declined, the last remaining unchanged. Hence such forms as, *eum-pse*, *eam-pse*, *eō-pse*, *eā-pse;* also *re-apse*, i. e. re-eā-p'-se.

Obs. The Conjunction *si* (with Demonstrative suffix *ce* forming the Adverb *sīc*) looks like the Locative form from stem *sa-* (= *ta*); being thus = '*in that case*,' '*on the supposition that*.' But a comparison of the old form *suad* (= sic, Festus, p. 351, Müller), together with the Oscan *svai*, and Umbrian *sve*, shows that a letter of the root (*v*) has been lost (cf. O. E. *swa*, Goth. *svē*); and it seems better to connect these forms with Sanskr. *sua-* (refl. pron. stem), Lat. *sui*, *se*, Gk. *σφέ* (*οὗ*, *οἷ*, *ἑ*). (Words. p. 108.) *Si-ne* is probably a negative of *si*.

§ 917. (iv) The stem **na-**, cf. Sanskr. *ê-na*, has also a demonstrative force. It is found only in adverbial forms, as *num* = '*is it*

this?'; *nunc* (= *num-ce*), '*at this time, now*;' *nae* (for na-i; Gk. *vaí, verily*); *nam*, Conj.; and in *quis-nam*, *uti-nam*, etc.

§ 918. (v) Other pronominal stems, more or less problematical, have been supposed to be, **ia-** or **ya**, as in *jam* (probably better connected with the group diu, dum, do, § 194, 3); **an-a-** (cf. Sanskr. *an-tara* = alter), as in the Interrogative particle an: utrum . . . an, '*whether this . . . (or) the other*'; **co-**, the supposed base of *-ce* (cf. cis, citra), denoting what is close at hand; and **po-**, the supposed base of enclitic -pe, apparently having the generalising force of an Indefinite Pronoun.

Appendix I.—Latin Authors.

§ 919. A. *Prae-classical Period* (B.C.).

Cn. Naevius (3rd cent.):—Epic poem on the First Punic War; and other poetry.

Q. Ennius (239–169); born at Rudiæ in Calabria:—Epic poem on Roman History; Dramas, Satires, etc.

M. Pacuvius (cir. 220–130); probably born at Brundusium:—Tragedies.

L. Attius or Accius (flor. B.C. 130):—Tragedies.

M. Porcius Cato (234–149):—History of Rome (*Origines*); Treatise *De Re Rustica*.

Caecilius Statius (ob. 168); born at Mediolanum (Milan), and a slave by birth:—Comedies.

Lucilius (148–103):—Satires.

L. Afranius (flor. 94):—Comedies.

T. Maccius Plautus (254–184, B.C.); born at Sarsina in Umbria:—Comedies, twenty in all extant, besides fragments.

P. Terentius Afer (195–159, B.C.); a freedman, and said to have been a native of Carthage:—Comedies (six extant).

Obs. With the exception of the treatise on farming (De Re Rustica) by M. Porcius Cato, and the Comedies of Plautus and Terence, only fragments of the works of the above authors have come down to us.

§ 920. B. *Golden Age.*

M. TERENTIUS VARRO (116–28, B.C.); born at Rome:—De Lingua Latina, and De Re Rustica; besides a work on Roman History and some Satires, fragments of which only remain.

M. TULLIUS CICERO (106–43, B.C.); born at Arpīnum:—Rhetorical works; Speeches in private and public cases; Philosophical and ethical works; Letters.

C. JULIUS CAESAR (100–44, B.C.); born at Rome:—Commentaries or memoirs for the history of his own times, viz., the Gallic and Civil Wars.

T. LUCRETIUS CARUS (? 95–55, B.C.); born at Rome:—Poem in six books, expounding the Epicurean philosophy ("De Rerum Natura").

C. VALERIUS CATULLUS (87–47, B.C.); of Verona:—Lyric poetry.

C. SALLUSTIUS CRISPUS (86–34, B.C.); born at Amiternum:—Historical works; of which the Catiline and Jugurtha are extant; besides fragments of other works.

P. VERGILIUS (or VIRGILIUS) MARO (70–19, B.C.); born at Andes near Mantua:—Bucolics, Georgics, Aeneid; also some short pieces.

Q. HORATIUS FLACCUS (65–8, B.C.); born at Venusia:—Odes, Satires, familiar and critical Epistles in Verse.

CORNELIUS NEPOS (flor. cir. 44, B.C.); of Verona:—Lives of eminent men.

ALBIUS TIBULLUS (? 54–18, B.C.); born at Pedum near Tibur:—Elegiac verse.

SEX. AURELIUS PROPERTIUS (flor. B.C. 30); born in Umbria:—Elegiac verse.

T. LIVIUS PATAVINUS (59–17, B.C.); of Patavium (Padua):—History of Rome; of which only about one-fourth part is extant.

P. OVIDIUS NASO (43 B.C.–17 A.D.); born at Sulmo:—Metamorphoses, a poem in 15 books; Fasti, a poetical Calendar for the first six months of the year; and other poetical works.

M. VITRUVIUS POLLIO (? temp. August.):—work on architecture.

M. MANILIUS (? temp. August.):—Astronomical poem.

T. PHAEDRUS (flor. cir. 15, A.D.); freedman of Augustus:—Fables.

§ 921. C. *Silver Age.*

M. ANNAEUS SENECA, father of L. Seneca (flor. B.C. 31); born at Cordŭba (Cordova), in Spain:—Rhetorical works.

L. ANNAEUS SENECA (? 5 B.C.–65 A.D.); born at Cordŭba:—Philosophical and ethical works; also Tragedies; unless the author of these be a third Seneca.

C. VELLEIUS PATERCULUS (flor. A.D. 30); probably born at Rome:—Roman History.

L. JULIUS MODERATUS COLUMELLA (flor. cir. 20 A.D.); born at Gades (Cadiz):—Work on agriculture.

A. PERSIUS FLACCUS (ob. A.D. 62); born at Volaterrae in Etruria:—Satires.

C. SILIUS ITALICUS (A.D. 25–100):—Epic poem ("*Punica*").

M. ANNAEUS LUCANUS (A.D. 38–65); born at Corduba:—Epic poem ("*Pharsalia*").

C. PLINIUS SECUNDUS (A.D. 23–79); born either at Verona or Comum:—Natural History (37 books). Other works lost.

C. PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS, nephew of the foregoing (flor. A.D. 100); probably born at Comum:—Epistles and Oration.

VALERIUS MAXIMUS (1st cent. ?):—Historical Anecdotes.

C. VALERIUS FLACCUS (1st cent.); born at Padua:—Poem ("*Argonautica*").

Q. CURTIUS RUFUS (date and place of birth unknown):—History of Alexander the Great.

M. FABIUS QUINTILIANUS (? ob. 118 A.D.); born at Calagurris in Spain:—Works on Rhetoric.

P. PAPINIUS STATIUS (flor. A.D. 82); born at Naples:—Poems.

M. VALERIUS MARTIALIS (A.D. cir. 43–104); born at Bilbilis in Spain:—Epigrams.

D. JUNIUS JUVENALIS (latter part of 1st cent. A.D.); born at Aquīnum:—Satires.

L. ANNAEUS FLORUS (flor. A.D. 115):—Summary of Roman History.

C. CORNELIUS TACITUS (cir. A.D. 60–118); place of birth unknown:—History of Rome from Augustus; Life of Agricola; Treatise on Germany; Dialogue on Oratory.

C. Suetonius Tranquillus (latter part of 1st and beginning of 2nd cent. A.D.); place of birth not known:—Lives of the Caesars and others.

Pomponius Mela (flor. A.D. 45); born in Spain:—First systematic writer on Geography in Latin.

T. Petronius Arbiter (ob. 66, A.D.):—Satiric Romance.

Aulus Gellius (fl. 150, A.D.):—"*Noctes Atticae*," a kind of literary miscellany.

L. Apuleius or Appuleius (2nd cent.); born at Madaura in Africa:—Philosophical and imaginative works.

Gaius or Caius (fl. 160, A.D.):—Law.

D. Magnus Ausonius (4th cent.); born at Burdigăla (Bordeaux): Poems.

Justinus (?):—History.

Aur. Theodosius Macrobius (ob. 395):—Critical and antiquarian works.

Appendix II.—The Calendar.

§ 922. The months in the Roman (Julian) Calendar corresponded to our own. But *Julius* and *Augustus* were called *Quintĭlis* and *Sextilis* down to the time of the emperor Augustus. The names of the months were adjectives, with which *mensis* was understood or might be expressed.

The days of the month were not, as with us, counted straight on from the beginning of the month to the end. Instead of this, three fixed points were taken in each month, and any particular day was reckoned as so many days from the nearest of those points in advance of it.

These three points were called,

(1.) Kălendae, arum; *the Kalends:* being the 1st day of the month.

(2.) Nōnae, arum; *the Nones:* being in certain months the 5th and in others the 7th day of the month, i.e., *nine* days before the Ides.*

* The following lines contain the names of the months in which the Nones (and consequently the Ides) fall late:

"In March, July, October, May,
The Nones fall on the seventh day."

In the remaining eight months they fall on the fifth.

(3.) Īdūs, uum (*f.*); *the Ides*; being either the 13th or 15th day of the month. Thus the Ides divided the month into two nearly equal parts.

§ 923. The first day of a month being called its "Kalends," the last day of the preceding month is called *the day before the Kalends* (prīdie Kălendas). Thus, the 31st of December is called *the day before the Kalends of January*; often written pridie Kal. Jan. Then the day before that, is the 3rd of the Kalends, and so on back to the Ides, and from thence again to the Nones, which form fresh points of calculation, as seen in the following table:—

CALENDAR FOR THE MONTH OF DECEMBER.

1.	KALENDIS DECEMBRIBUS.	17.	XVI. ante Kalendas Januarias.
2.	IV. ante Nonas Decembres.	18.	XV. „ „
3.	III. „ „	19.	XIV. „ „
4.	Pridie Nonas Decembres.	20.	XIII. „ „
5.	NONIS DECEMBRIBUS.	21.	XII. „ „
6.	VIII. ante Idus Decembres.	22.	XI. „ „
7.	VII. „ „	23.	X. „ „
8.	VI. „ „	24.	IX. „ „
9.	V. „ „	25.	VIII. „ „
10.	IV. „ „	26.	VII. „ „
11.	III. „ „	27.	VI. „ „
12.	Pridie Idus Decembres.	28.	V. „ „
13.	IDIBUS DECEMBRIBUS.	29.	IV. „ „
14.	XIX. ante Kalendas Januarias.	30.	III. „ „
15.	XVIII. „ „	31.	Pridie Kalendas Januarias.
16.	XVII. „ „		

§ 924. In order to reduce an English to a Roman date, the number of the day in the English Calendar must be subtracted from that of the nearest fixed point in advance of it in the Roman Calendar of the same month. But as the Romans counted inclusively from one day to another, a unit must be added to the number thus obtained. Thus, the 10th of December is not the 3rd before the Ides, but the 4th, &c. Also, as the Kalends form an extra day, beyond the month, a unit must be added to the number of days in the month, in counting on to them:

Obs. Hence the rule,—Before subtracting, add *one* for the Nones or Ides, and *two* for the Kalends.

§ 925. In giving the day of the month as a date, the Ablative was used (§ 322): as, Kalendis Martiis, Idibus Martiis, die quinto ante Kalendas Martias. Both die and ante were often omitted, as XIV. Kal. Mai., which may be either Accusative or Genitive. But

another very common way was to begin with ante, when the Ablative became changed into the Accusative under the government of the preposition: as, ante diem decimum quartum Kalendas Maias, usually written a.d. XIV. Kal. Mai. In this construction, the Accusative Kalendas remained unchanged, as if it were still governed by ante.

§ 926. The expression *ante diem* must be considered as an indeclinable Substantive, since we find it often preceded by prepositions which govern the Accusative or Ablative: as,

In ante diem octavum et septimum Kalendas Octobres comitiis dicta dies, *the date of the comitia was fixed for the eighth and seventh days before the Kalends of October.*—Liv. 43, 16.

Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres, *a public thanksgiving was appointed (to begin) from the fifth day before the Ides of October.*—Liv. 45, 2.

§ 927. When a day needed to be intercalated in the Julian Kalendar, it was done by reckoning the 6th of the Kalends of March twice. Hence the name for Leap-year, Bissextile (bis-sextus). The two *sixths* (24th and 25th February) appear to have been distinguished as prior and posterior.

NOTE.—A complete Calendar for an ordinary year is given on the following page:—

§ 928. KALENDARIUM.

Our days of the Month.	March, May, July, October, have 31 days.	January, August, December, have 31 days.	April, June, September, November, have 30 days.	February has 28 days, and in Leap Year 29.
1.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.	KALENDIS.
2.	VI. } ante Nonas.	IV. } ante Nonas.	IV. } ante Nonas.	IV. } ante Nonas
3.	V.	III.	III.	III.
4.	IV.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5.	III.	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
6.	Pridie Nonas	VIII. } ante Idus.	VIII. } ante Idus.	VIII.
7.	NONIS.	VII. ✓	VII.	VII.
8.	VIII. } ante Idus.	VI.	VI.	VI.
9.	VII.	V.	V.	V.
10.	VI.	IV.	IV.	IV.
11.	V.	III.	III. ✓	III. ✓
12.	IV.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13.	III.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14.	Pridie Idus.	XIX. } Ante Kalendas (of the month following).	XVIII. } Ante Kalendas (of the month following).	XVI. } Ante Kalendas Martias.
15.	IDIBUS.	XVIII. ✓	XVII.	XV.
16.	XVII.	XVII.	XVI.	XIV.
17.	XVI.	XVI.	XV.	XIII.
18.	XV.	XV.	XIV.	XII.
19.	XIV.	XIV.	XIII.	XI.
20.	XIII.	XIII.	XII. ✓	X. ✓
21.	XII.	XII.	XI.	IX.
22.	XI.	XI	X.	VIII.
23.	X.	X. ✓	IX.	VII.
24.	IX.	IX.	VIII.	VI.
25.	VIII.	VIII.	VII.	[bis sextus]
26.	VII.	VII.	VI.	V.
27.	VI.	VI.	V.	IV.
28.	V.	V.	IV.	III.
29.	IV	IV.	III.	Pridie Kalendas Martias.
30.	III.	III.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following).	
31.	Pridie Kalendas (of the month followi ·g).	Pridie Kalendas (of the month following). ✓		

APPENDIX III.—MONEY.

§ 929. The original monetary unit of the Romans was the **as** (Gen. **assis**), or *pound*, viz., of *copper*. The fractions of the as were designated as follows:—

Uncia,	*one ounce;*	$\frac{1}{12}$	.		of an as.
Sextans, ntis,	*two ounces;*	$\frac{2}{12}$,	that is,	$\frac{1}{6}$	,,
Quadrans, ntis,	*three* ,,	$\frac{3}{12}$,	,,	$\frac{1}{4}$	,,
Triens, ntis,	*four* ,,	$\frac{4}{12}$,	,,	$\frac{1}{3}$	,,
Quincunx, ncis,	*five* ,,	$\frac{5}{12}$			,,
Sēmis, issis,	*six* ,,	$\frac{6}{12}$,	,,	$\frac{1}{2}$	,,
Septunx, ncis,	*seven* ,,	$\frac{7}{12}$			,,
Bes, bessis,	*eight* ,,	$\frac{8}{12}$,	,,	$\frac{2}{3}$	,,
Dodrans,* ntis,	*nine* ,,	$\frac{9}{12}$,	,,	$\frac{3}{4}$	,,
Dextans,† ntis,	*ten* ,,	$\frac{10}{12}$,	,,	$\frac{5}{6}$	,,
Deunx, ncis,	*eleven* ,,	$\frac{11}{12}$			,,

Obs. The substantive *as* and its fractions are used of other units. Thus terna jūgĕra et septunces (Liv.), is *three acres and seven twelfths (a-piece)*: hĕres ex asse, *heir to the entire estate*, ex dodrante *to three-fourths*, etc. So fēnus ex triente factum ĕrat bessibus (Cic.) *interest had risen from* $\frac{1}{3}$ *per cent.* (*per month*) *to* $\frac{2}{3}$; or *from* 4 *to* 8 *per cent.* (Madvig.)

§ 930. From being originally a full pound in weight, the **as** was gradually reduced, till, in the time of Augustus, it was a small coin, of little more than nominal value (comp. "*vilem* redigatur ad assem," Hor. Sat. 1. 1, 43). The **dēnārius** was a silver coin, first coined five years before the first Punic war, and was originally equal to 10 asses. But in the later times of the republic the unit of business calculations was the **sestertius** (*sesterce*), being the fourth part of a denarius, and equal to 2½ asses, or a little more than 2*d*. The sesterce was also a silver coin, and both it and the denarius maintained a uniform value, notwithstanding the depreciation of the unit on which both were based.

Obs. Sestertius is a contraction for sēmis tertius, lit. *the third (unit) is a half one*, i.e. 2½. This was often written IIS, whence the common abbreviation HS or $\overline{\text{HS}}$.

§ 931. Sums of 1000 sesterces and under are counted regularly: as, mille sestertii, 1000 *sesterces;* trecenti sestertii, 300 *sesterces.* But in expressing several thousand sestertii, the neuter plural **sestertia** was employed, with which millia must be understood, unless expressed: as duo sestertia or duo millia sēstertiūm, 2000 *sesterces.*

§ 932. To express sums of a million of sesterces and upwards the multiplicative Numeral Adverbs, dĕcies, &c., are used with sester-

* = de-quadrans. † = de-sextans.

tium or HS., the words, "centēna millia" being understood. Thus dēcies sestertium (=decies centēna millia sestertium, *ten times a hundred thousand sesterces*) is *one million sesterces.* (Sometimes we find only decies centena, "millia sestertium" being understood.) In like manner sexāgies sestertium is *six millions of sesterces.*

In such expressions sestertium must have been originally a Gen. Pl.; but it came to be regarded as a Neuter Substantive in the Singular, and was declined accordingly: as,.

Argenti ad summam sestertii decies in aerarium rettulit, *he brought into the treasury (up to) the sum of one million of sesterces.* —Liv. 45, 4.

Serviliae sexagies sestertio margaritam mercatus est, *he bought Servilia a pearl for six millions of sesterces.*—Suet. Caes. 50.

Greater and smaller sums may be combined in one statement; as, accepi vicies ducenta triginta quinque millia quadringentos decem et septem numos, 2,235,417 *sesterces.*—Cic. *Verr.* 2, 1, 36.

Appendix IV.—Roman Names.

§ 933. A Roman citizen had ordinarily three names, as Marcus Tullius Cicero, Caius Julius Caesar. Of these the middle one was properly called nomen, being *the name of his* gens; the third, cognomen, being that *of his family* (familia); the first, praenomen, or *fore-name*, being that by which he was known from the other members of the same family, and answering to our "Christian name."

In addition to these, some persons had what was called agnomen, or *an appendage* to the name proper: as, Publius Cornelius Scipio *Africanus.* When a person was adopted into another gens, he took the entire name of the individual adopting him, but appended to it that of his former gens as an *agnomen*, with the adjectival termination, -anus. Thus, the son of L. Aemilius Paullus, adopted by P. Cornelius Scipio, became P. Cornelius Scipio *Aemilianus.*

Obs. 1. The same individual might have more than one *agnomen.* Thus the complete name of P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus mentioned above was P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Aemilianus.

Obs. 2. The name of father and grandfather were often added by way of distinction. Thus C. Fannius (Cic. Am. 3) is called M. F., *i.e.* Marci filius; and Cn. Pompeius Strabo, father of the triumvir, is called Cn. Pompeius, Sex. F., Cn. N. (nepos) Strabo; i.e. *son of Sextus, grandson of Cnaeus.*

Obs. 3. Women are designated by the gentile name of their family, as Julia, Pompeia, Sempronia.

Obs. 4. In some cases an individual had only two names: as, C. Marius.

§ 934. The whole of a man's name was of course rarely, if ever, used in speaking to him, though it was employed in the headings of letters, and in documents generally. The family name (cognomen) was mostly used in addressing those not of the same family; the use of the gentile name (nomen) had something formal and respectful about it; that of the fore-name (praenomen) was confined to members of the same family or intimate friends. Even a special agnomen, like Magnus, Africanus, was transmitted by the person who bore it to his family.

§ 935. When a slave was manumitted by a citizen, he took the praenomen and gentile name of his manumitter, and added to it some other appropriate name (often that by which he was before called), as cognomen. Thus Cicero's freedman, Tiro, is called M. Tullius Tiro. As additional names of freedmen, may be mentioned, Q. Horatius Flaccus (the father), P. Terentius Afer; L. Cornelius Chrysogonus.

Appendix V.—Abbreviations.

§ 936. A. Praenomina.

A.	Aulus.	Mam.	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	N. or Num.	Numerius.
C.	Caius.	P.	Publius.
D.	Decimus.	Q.	Quintus.
Cn.	Cnaeus.	S. or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius.
L.	Lucius.	Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'.	Manius.	Ti.	Tiberius.

§ 937. B. Titles, &c. (Ancient).

Aed.	Aedilis.	O. M.	Optimus Maximus (surnames of Jupiter).
Cos.	Consul.	Pont. Max.	Pontifex Maximus.
Coss.	Consules.	Quir.	Quirites.
Des.	designatus.	S. P. Q. R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
D.	Divus (applied to deceased emperors).	Tr. Pl.	Tribunus Plebis
Imp.	Imperator.*		
P. C.	Patres Conscripti.		

* In republican times this was an honorary title, bestowed by the Senate upon victorious generals. By the emperors it was used to signify their possession of supreme power. In the former case it was used after the name: as, M. Tullius Cicero Imperator; in the latter it was prefixed, as Imperator C. Julius Caesar.

§ 938. C. Miscellaneous.

	Absolvo,[1] Antiquo.[2]	F. F. F.	felix, faustum, fortunatum.
C.	Condemno.[1]		
N. L.	Non liquet.[1]	H. C. S. E.	Hic conditus, situs est.[3]
U. R.	Uti rogas.[2]	H. M. H. N. S.	Hoc monumentum heredes non sequitur.[3]
A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditae.		
D. D.	Dono dedit.	L.	libertas.
D. D. D.	Dat, dicat, dedicat.	M. P.	mille passuum.
D. M.	Dis Manibus.[3]	N.	nepos.
D. O. M.	Deo optimo, maximo.	Ob.	obiit.
F.	filius.	Resp.	Respublica.
S. D. or S. only	salutem dicit.	S. C.	Senatus consultum.
S. P. D.	salutem plurimam dicit.[4]	S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est, ego valeo.[4]
		Pot.	potestas.
F. C.	faciendum curavit.[3]	V.	vixit.[3]

[1] Judicial formula. [2] Used in voting (with respect to laws).
[3] Sepulchral. [4] Epistolary.

§ 939. D. Modern.

A.B. or B.A.	Artium Baccalaureus.	l.c., ll. cc.	locus citatus, loci citati.
A.D.	Anno Domini.	leg.	lege, legendum.
A.M. or M.A.	Artium Magister.	L.D.S.	Laus Deo Semper.
A.C.	Ante Christum.	LL.B.	Legum Baccalaureus.
A.U.; A.U.C.	anno urbis conditae.	LL.D.	Legum Doctor.
		M.B.	Medicinae Baccalaureus.
cet.	cetera.		
cf.	confer, conferatur.	M.D.	Medicinae Doctor.
cod. codd	codex, codices.	MS., MSS.	Manuscriptus (liber), or pl.
D.	Doctor.		
del.	dele, deleatur.	Mus. D.	Musicae Doctor.
ed., edd.	editio, editiones.	N.B.	nota bene.
e.g.	exempli gratiâ.	N.T.	Novum Testamentum.
etc.	et cetera.	Obs.	observa.
h.e.	hoc est.	P.S.	post scriptum.
I.H.S.	Jesus Hominum Salvator.	q.v.	quod vide.
		sc.	scilicet.
I.N.R.I.	Jesus Nazaraeus Rex Judaeorum.	sq., sqq.	quod sequitur, or pl.
J.C.	Jesus Christus.	S.T.B.; S.T.D.; S.T.P.	Sanctae Theologiae Baccalaureus, Doctor, Professor.
I. ctus (Ictus)	Juris consultus.		
ibid., ib.	ibidem.	V. cel., V. cl.	Vir celeberrimus, clarissimus.
id.	idem.		
J.U.D.	Juris Utriusque Doctor.	V.D.M.	Verbi Divini Minister.
		V.T.	Vetus Testamentum.

N.B.—A doubled letter denotes the plural: see examples given above.

INDEX.

(The Numbers indicate the Sections. The references in italics are to the Accidence.)

A the most elementary vowel, 3; changed to e in comps. 207, 2; to i, 207, 1; to u, 207, 3.
a, ab, 557, 1.
-ā, term. of adv. 194, 5.
abbreviations, 936.
abhinc, constr. 326, *obs.*
ablative, formation of in diff. decl. *sing.* 880; *plur.* 892; in prons. 908, 911.
of 1st Decl. in *abus*, 17, *obs.* 4.
of 3rd Decl. in *i*, 33.
of 3rd Decl. in *i* and *e*, 34.
of 3rd Decl. (pl.) in *is*, 40, 10.
ablative, syntax of, 302, *sqq.*; of separation, 303, *sqq.*; of motion from, 261; after opus, 308; of origin, 309; after ortus, etc. 310; of cause, etc. 311, *sqq.*; after verbs denoting feelings, 313; after utor, etc. 315; of price, 316; of duration (rare), 249, *obs.* 2; of fulness or want, 318: of quality, 319; of comparison, 320; of comparison, after alius, 630, *obs.* 2; of measure, 321; of respect, 322; of time when, 323; of time, within which, 324, 325; time, how long ago, 326; place, 327, *sqq.*; absolute, 332; also 696, 4.
absque, 557, 2.
abstract subs. in plur. 593, 594;—in Tac. 696, 6.
abstract, expr. by *plur.* of concrete, 591.
for concrete, 592.
ac, *see* atque.
acatalectic verse, 778.
accent, where placed, 8.
accusative, formation of, *sing.* 860; *plur.* 886; in prons. 907, 909.
of 3rd Dec. in *im*, 33.
(pl.), in *is* and *es*, 39.
Greek, in *a*, *en*, *in*, 40, 4.
(pl.), in *as*, 40, 9.
accusative, syntax of, 234, *sqq.*; cognate ('contained object'), 235; double, 243; after intrans. verbs, 236, 237, 253; after passives, 243, *obs.* 4; 244, *obs.* 3; after verbs comp. with prep. 238–240; after impers. verbs, 241, 242; complementary, 245; of motion towards, 247; of time, space, 249; in exclamations, 250; of closer definition, 251; Greek, 252; of neuter pron. 253; used adverbially, 254; after verbs of remembering, etc. 279, *obs.* 1.
and infinitive, 507, *sqq.*
-aceus, term of adj. 182, 4, *obs.*
ad, 556, 1; used adverbially, 556, 1, *obs.*; in Livy, 690, 2.
adeo, emphatic, 653.
adipiscor, p. part. in pass. sense, 525.
adjectives, 55, *sqq.*; comparison of, 62, *sqq.*
derivative, 181, *sqq.*
governing genitive: transitive adjj. 276; of fulness, etc. 276, 318; of likeness, 277; of price, 316; of guilt, 280, *obs.* 3.
governing dative; of advantage, likeness, etc. 298.
peculiarities of: used without noun expr. 339, *sqq.*; equiv. to subs. (imus, summus), 342; equiv. to genitive case, 611, 1; do. in Tac. 696, 5; in neuter = abstract subs. 343; with force of adverbs, 344.
position of, 709; when emphatic, 710.
two, requiring conjunction, 340.
Adonian verse, 800.
adulor, constr. 291, *obs.* 3.
adverbs, formation of, 153, *sqq.*; derivation of, 194, *sqq.*
compared, 156; irregular, 157.
classified, 159.
derived from numerals, 74, 75.
joined with subs. 546.
position of, 716.
adversus (prep.), 556, 2.
ae (diphthong), changed to *i* in comps. 206, 5.
aedes, sing. and pl. 51.
aemulor, constr. 291, *obs.* 4.
aes, sing. and pl. 51.
agnomen, 933.
ago, agito, in Sall. 669.
aio, 113, 5.
-al, term. of subs. 182, 5.
Alcaic verse, 802.
alienus, constr. 298, *obs.* 5.
aliquis, 83, 1.
aliquis and quis disting. 383.
-alis, term of adj. 182, 5.
alius, 57.
alius . . . alius, 390.
alius in diff. cases, 629.
sequence of, 630; with abl. 630, *obs.*
alphabet, 819, *sqq.*
alter, 57.
alter . . . alter, 390.
alternating verse, 804.
alteruter, 83, 2, note.
-am, term of adv. 194, 4.
amb-, prefix, 168.
ambage, 52, 3.

ambio (irr.), 109, *obs.* 4.
amphibrachys, 763.
amphimacrus, 763.
amplius, constr. 349.
amussim, 52, 3.
an-, prefix, 204.
-an, adv. suffix, 197, 12.
an, in direct double questions, 414; in simple do. 415; after haud scio, etc. 438.
anacrusis, 788.
anapaest, 763; anapaestic verse, 789.
animi, constr. 278.
ante, 556, 3.
verbs comp. with, 239.
or post, constr. 326.
antequam, 500, 501.
antibacchius, 763.
antispastus, 763.
antithesis, in Sall. 665.
-inus, suffix of adj. 182, 9; 183, 1; 184, 3.
apage, 113, 10.
apodosis, 424; expr. by indic. of debeo, etc. 428, *obs.*; suppressed, 426.
apposition, 214; in case of urbs, civitas, 216; equiv. to *as, when*, 217.
apud, 556, 4.
aqua, -ae, 51.
-ar, term. of subs. 182, 5.
ar = ad, 832, 2.
Archilochus, imitated by Hor. 807, *sqq.*
-aris, term. of adj. 182, 5, *obs.*
-arium, term. of subs. 178, 8.
-arius, term. of adj. 182, 10.
of subs. 178, 8.
arsis, 762.
Arval brothers, chant of, 817.
Aryan family of lang. 819.
-as, term. of adj. 184, 5.
as, parts of, 929.
Asclepiadean verse, 794, *obs.* 1.
asking, verbs of, 244.
assuefacio, assuesco, constr. 292, *obs.* 2.
asynartete metre, 799.
asyndeton, 560; in Sall. 664.
at, 575; in sudden transitions, 576.
atque, ac, 565.
after compar. 352.
atqui, 577.
attraction of dative, 295, *obs.*; 296, *obs.* 1, 2.
of relative (in gender), 229, *b.*
-atus, term. of subs. 178, 3.
of adj. 182, 13.
audeo, 113.
ausim, 128, 2.
aut and vel, 570.
autem, 572.
authors, Latin, 919, *sqq.*
auxilium, -a, 51.
ave, 113, 9.
-ax, term. of adj. 181, 3.
B, power and changes of, 827.
bacchius, 763.
being, verbs of, constr. 232.
belli, constr. 258.
bene (compar.) 157.
-bi, term. of adv. 194, 9; 912.
-bilis, term. of adj. 181, 2.
bonus (compar.) 65; bonum, -a, 51.
bos, 27.
-bulum (*-brum*), term of subs. 177, 4.
-bundus, term. of adj. 182, 8.
C, original power and phonetic changes of, 822.
Caesar, style of, 671; his commentaries, 671, *obs.*; his freq. use of abl. absol. 673; long periods, 674.
caesura, in hexameter, 771: penthemimeral, etc. 773; in pentameter, 779; in iambic trimeter, 784. (See under the diff. metres.)
calendar, Roman, 922, *sqq.*
calling, verbs of, in pass. 232.
callus, -um, 53, 1.
capite, capitis, constr. 280.
carbasus, -a, 54.
carcer, -es, 51.
cardinal numerals, 68, 75.
Cases, 15; formation of, 841, *sqq.*
castrum, -a, 51.
catalectic verse, 778.
cause, in abl. 311.
caveo, constr. of 291, *obs.* 7.
-ce, with prons. 80, p. 57.
cedo, cette, 113, 11.
celo, constr. of, 243: see *obs.* 3.
ceno, -atus, 524.
certe and certo, 659.
ceterum, 573.
change of *a* to *i, e, u*, in comp. 207.
change of *ae* to *i* in comp. 207, 5.
au to *o* in comp. 207, 6.
e to *i* in comp. 207, 4.
e to *i* in subs. 22, *obs.*
e to *u* in subs. 30, *obs.* 3.
i to *e* in subs. 29, *obs.* 1.
o to *i* in subs. 26, *obs.* 1.
o to *u* in subs. 30, *obs.* 3.
u to *i* in subs. 30, *obs.* 4.
consonants; see the several letters.
choliambus, 786.
choriambic metre, 794, *sqq.*; the foot, 763.
ci, how pronounced, 822, 3.
Cicero, style of, 675, *sqq.*; doubles words, 676; uses abstr. subs. for concrete, 677; his diminutives, 678; peculiarities of the Letters of, 680.
circa, circum, 556, 5.
circiter, 556, 7.
circum, in comp. 238, 240, 246.
circumdo, constr. 292, *obs.* 4.
cis, citra, 556, 8.
citerior, compar. 65, 3.
civitas, constr. of, 216; 257, *obs.* 2.
clam, 558, 5.
Claudius, adds to alphabet, 824.
coepi, 113.
cognate accusative, 235.
collective nouns, constr. 222.
collective use of sing. 590.
com-, prefix, 204.
comic tetrameter, 787.
comitium, -a, 51.
commentarius, -um, 53, 1.
comparative degr. 63; 893, *sqq.*
of adj. in *-ius*, 64, IV.
= "too," 351; of adv., constr. of, 320, *obs.* 3; 548.
comparison of qualities by compar. of adj. or adv. 350, 549; in Tac. 695, 2.

compes, 52, 2.
composition of words, 204–206.
concealing, verbs of, 243, see *obs.*
concord, 318; of Verb, 319, *sqq.*; of Adj. 323, *sqq.*; of Rel. 328.
concrete for abstr. 589.
condicio, etym. of, 322, 3, *obs.* 4.
conjugations, how disting. 91.
1, 2, 3, 4, 93–101.
conjunctions, 169; syntax of, 559; with subj. 483, *sqq.*; connective, 560, *sqq.*; adversative, 571, *sqq.*; hypothetical, 425, *sqq.*; causal, 581; conclusive, 582; final, see subj. of purpose; temporal, 501; as particles, 652.
consonants classified, 4.
consulo, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 7.
contentus, with *abl.* 314.
contio, orthog. of, 322, 3, *obs.* 1.
contra, 556, 8.
contracted verbs, 121.
syllables; quant. of, 728.
copia, *ae*, 51.
coram, 557, 3.
correlatives, 84; syntax of, 379.
creticus (foot), 763.
cujas, 79, *obs.* 5.
cujus, *-a*, *-um*, 79, *obs.* 4.
-culum (*-crum*), term. of subs. 177, 4.
cum, 557, 4; plural Verb after, 220, *obs.* 3; denoting manner, 312.
-cundus, term. of adj. 181, 6.
cunque, 661; tmesis of, 661, *obs.*
cupressus, *-i* and *-us*, 53, 4.
curo takes *acc.* 291, *obs.* 2.
D, power of, 829; interchanged with t at the end of a word, 830; final, sign of neut. 830, 2; loss of, 830, 3, 4; changed to l, 831, 2; changed to r, 832, 2; termination of abl. 881.
dactyl, 763.
dactylic hexameter, 768; pentameter, 779; tetrameter, 812.
(*daps*), 52, 1.
dative, formation of: sing. 872, *sqq.*; plur. 892; in prons. 906, 911.
in *-abus*, 17, *obs.* 4; 892.
-is for *-ibus*, 40, 10.
dative, syntax of, 287, *sqq.*: of indirect object, 287, 292; of advantage ('of recipient'), 288; of reference, 288, *obs.*; 289; *dativus ethicus*, 290; after various Verbs (*envy*, *spare*, *obey*, *etc.*), 291; after verbs comp. with prep. 292; denoting agent after Passive Verbs, 293; esp. after gerundive, 294; after certain Impers. Verbs, 295; double, after licet, etc., 295, *obs.*; after sum = habeo, 296; of names, by attraction, 296, *obs.* 1; by Greek idiom, ib. *obs.* 2; of purpose or result, 297; list of principal nouns so used, ib.; esp. in Tac. 696, 2; after adjectives, 298; after idem, 620; after adverbs, 299; exceptional uses of Greek dative, 300; denoting *motion towards*, 301.
de, 557, 5.
-de, term. of adv. 194, 9.
decet, 115, 1; constr. 242.
dedecet, constr. 242.
defective comparison, 65,
nouns, 52.
verbs, 113.
-dem, adv. suffix, 197, 1.
demonstrative pronouns, 80; syntax and uses of, 364, *sqq.*
stems, 902.
demum, 660.
denarius, 930.
dentals, 829, *sqq.*
depereo, as trans. 237.
deponent verbs, 84, 102; conjugated, 103; lists of, 149–152.
deponents, p. part. of, in pass. sense, 525.
semi-deponents, 112.
derivation of nouns, 177, *sqq.*
derivative verbs, 186, *sqq.*
desideratives, 191.
deterior, 65, 2.
determinative prons. 81; constr. 370, *sqq.*
deus, 19, p. 13.
di-, sibilated, 836, *obs.*
diaeresis, 767.
(*dicio*), 52, 1.
dicis, 52, 3.
dies, *m.* and *f.* 47.
different forms of same word placed together, 712.
digamma, how represented, 839, 2.
dignus, with abl. 317; with gen. (rare), ib. *obs.*; foll. by qui, 480; by infin. mood, 420, *obs.* 1.
dimeter, etc. 764.
diminutive nouns, 178, 1; *do. verbs* 192.
diminutives, use of, 600, 680, 2.
diphthongs, short, 765, *obs.* 4.
dis-, *di-*, prefix, 168, 204.
dissyllable pret. and supine, quant. of, 735.
distributive numerals, 70, 75.
use of with plurals differing in sense from sing. 70, note 3.
ditio, v. *dicio*.
diu (compar.), 158.
dives, 60, note 2.
do and comps. 140, 18, note.
-do, adv. suffix, 197, 3.
doceo, constr. 243, *obs.* 2.
domi, constr. 258.
dominor, constr. 291, *obs.* 6.
domum, constr. 260.
domus, 46, *obs.* 4.
donec, constr. 499.
du becomes b, 830, 4.
dubito, in neg. sentence, constr. 438.
duim (from do), 106, *obs.*
dum with pres. Indic. 393, *obs.* 2; with Indic. or Subj. 497.
-dum, adv. suffix, 197, 2.
dummodo, 498.
duntaxat, 658.
dupli, etc. constr. 280, 2, *obs.* 2.
E, a lingual vowel, 3; changed to i, etc.: see 'change.'
-e term of adv. 194, 1; 880, *obs.* 2.
e, ex, 557, 6.

ecca, eccum, 81, *obs.* 1.
ecce, en, constr. 250, *obs.* 1.
eccillum, 80, *obs.* 4.
ecquid as interr. particle, 413.
ecquis, 83, p. 60.
editus, with abl. 310.
ĕdo, 108.
subj. edim, 123, 1, *obs.* 1.
-edo, term. of subs. 180, 4.
-ela (*-ella*), term. of subs. 177, 2.
elision, 765.
ellipsis, of aedes, 266; of uxor, filius, etc. ib.; of various nouns, 341; of verb, 635.
-ellum, 80, *obs.* 4.
-ellus, dim. suffix, 178, 1, *obs.* 3.
emo and comps. 141, 15, and note.
en and ecce, constr. 250, *obs.* 1.
enim and nam, 581.
enim as particle, 654.
-ensis, term of adj. 184, 1; 185, *obs.*
eo, 109.
comps. of, 109, *obs.* 4, 5; constr. of these, 238, 239.
epicenes, 45.
epistolary style, 398.
epitritus, 763.
equidem, 656, *obs.* 3.
eram in aor. sense, 397.
erga, 556, 9.
ergo, with genitive, 263, *obs.*
as conjunction, 583.
-es (*ens*), term. of num. adv. 194, 8.
esse = edere, 108.
est mihi = habeo, 296.
estur (from edo), 108, note.
et, 561; et...et, 562; et...neque, 564.
ethicus: see dative.
etsi, etiamsi, 503.
-etum, term. of subs. 178, 5.
-eumpse, etc. 81, 2, *obs.*
-ĕus, term. of adj. 182, 1.
-ĕus, do. 183, *obs.*
eventus, -um, 53, 4.
expedit, constr. 295.
expers, constr. 307, *obs.* 2.
exterior (compar.), 66, 3.
extra, 556, 10.
F peculiar to Italian langg. 828; power and changes of, ib.
facio, pass. of, 111, with *obs.*
factitive (compl.) acc. 245.
facultas, -tates, 51.
fallit, constr. 242, *obs.*
fari, 113, 7.
fateor, p. part. in pass. sense, 525.
fatim, 52, 3.
faxim, -o, 128.
feet, metrical, 763.
fetialis, orthog. of, 822, 3, *obs.* 3.
ficus, -i, and *-ūs*, 53, 4.
fido, 112.
fido, with dat. 291; with abl. 313.
final consonants, quant. of, 750 *sqq.* vowels, quant. of, 745.
finis, -es, 51.
fio, 111.
quantity of, 111, *obs.* 2.
first word in sent. emphatic, 704.
first person, precedence of, 221, *obs.*
flocci, constr. 281.
foras, 160, 2, *b*.
(*fors*), 52, 2.
frenum, -i and *-a*, 54.
frequent. verbs, 189.
fretus, with abl. 314.
fruor, with abl. 315.
frugi (as adj.), 61, 5.
compared, 65, 1.
syntax of, 297.
(*frux*), 52, 1.
fugit, constr. 242, *obs.*
fulness, or want, adjj. of, 276, 318.
fungor, with abl. 315; with acc. 315, *obs.* 2.
future tense, 399; = imperative, 420, *obs.* 2.
future Infinitive, circumlocution for, 518.
future-perfect, 405; of what is to be done instantly, 406; sign of often not expr. in English, 407.
G, when added to the alphabet, 820, *obs.* 3; elided, 824, 2; softened before *i*, ib.; *obs.* 3.
Galliambic verse, 797.
gaudeo, 112.
genders of nouns: 1 decl. 17; 2 decl. 19; 3 decl. 41–45; 4 decl. 46; 5 decl. 47.
generalization with rerum, 595.
generic plural, 593.
genitive, its formation in the diff. decl. 862–871; *pl.* 889; in prons. 905, 910.
sing. strictly a locative, 17, *obs.* 1.
pl. -ûm (1 Dec.), 17 *obs.* 2; (2 Dec.) 19, *obs.* 5.
sing. -i = ii (2 Dec.), 19, *obs.* 3.
pl. -ôn, 20, 4; 40, 8.
-ium and -um, 36, 1; also 38, 36.
(Greek), in -i, 40, 2; in os and ûs, ib.
genitive, constr. 262, *sqq.*; of names of towns, etc. (locative), 257; after nouns, 263; of the possessor, 264; after sum, 265; elliptical use of, 266; subjective, 267; objective, 268; subj. and obj. combined, ib. *obs.* 2; objective, after adjectives, 276, *obs.* 1; partitive, 269–273; of quality, 274; of definition, 275; after adjectives, 276, 277; of respect (animi), 278, 286; after verbs of remembering, etc. 279; after *to accuse, condemn*, etc. 280; of price (tanti, flocci, etc.), 281; after verbs of feeling, etc. 282; with interest and refert, 283. Exceptional uses of: of separation, 284; of reference, 285; in appos. with pron. implied in pron. adj. 267, *obs.* 2; in Tac. after adjj. 696, 1.
gerund, 88, 3.
gerund, constr. of, 531, 532; governs case, 533; foll. by genitive, 540; converted to gerundive, 537; where preferred to gerundive, 537, *obs.* 2; as abl. absol. 541.
gerundive or *undus*, 128, 4.
gerundive, ord. use of, 534–536; with est, impers. 536; of purpose or result, in dat. 538; also in gen. 539.

gerundive and gerund, freq. in Livy, 689.
gignentia, intrans. in Sall., 669, 2.
gloria, etym. of, 824, No. 1, *obs.*
Glyconian metre, 794.
government, syntactic, 418.
grandinat, 118.
gratia, sing. and pl. 51.
gratis, 195, 2.
Greek nouns (1 Dec.), 18.
(2 Dec.), 20.
(3 Dec.), 40.
Greek use of gen. 284, 285.
of dat. 300; (296, *obs.* 2.)
guberno, governs acc. 291, *obs.* 6.
gutturals, 822, *sqq.*
H, power and uses of, 825.
habeo in Sall. 669, 1.
haud scio an, 438.
hei and vae, with dat. 299, 2.
Hendecasyllabics, 792.
hendiadys, 602.
in Tac. 699, 2.
heteroclita, 53.
heterogenea, 54.
hexameter verse, its laws, 768, *sqq.*
endings of, 776.
hic (pron.), use of, 364.
hic and ille, 366, 367.
Hipponactean verse, 786 (note).
historical present, 393; foll. by past-subj. 423, *obs.*
historical infinitive, 517; in Sall 666; in Tac. 696, 7.
hortus, -i, 51.
humi, constr. 258.
hypermeter lines, 778.
hypothetical sentences, 424, *sqq.*; with indic. 424, 1; with subj. 424, 2, *sqq.*; with indic. in apodosis, 428, *obs.*; without regular protasis, 429.
I, lingual vowel, 3; as vowel of connexion, 207.
changed to e, 861.
dropped in stems in *-al, -ar*, 31, *obs.* 2.
term. of adv. 194, 9.
-ia, term of subs. 180.
-iam, suffix of adv. 197, 13.
Iambic trimeter, 782, 807; *scazon*, 786.
dimeter, 785.
iambus, 763.
-ianus, term. of adj. 183.
-icius, do. 182, 4.
-icus, term. of adj. 182, 3; 185, and *obs.*
-icus, do. 182, 3, *obs.*
id quod, constr. 230, *obs.*
idem, attendant of qui, 371, 379, *obs.* 2; emphatic after relative, 372; = *also, and yet*, 375; sequence of, 620; foll. by dat. *ib.*
-idus, term. of adj. 181, 1.
-ies, term. of subs. 177, 7.
igitur, 584; often stands first in Sall. 668.
-ile, term. of subs. 178, 6.
-ilis, term. of adj. 181, 2.
-ilis, do. 182, 6.
ille, of celebrity, 365; distinguished from hic, 366, 367; repeated pleonastically, 615; with adj. or adv. 616; position of, 713.
-illus, dim. suffix, 178, 1, *obs.* 3.
-im, term. of adv. 194, 9, *obs.* See also *-tim -sim.*
-imini, -mini, in pass. 122, 3.
impedimentum, -a, 51.
Imperative, pres. 417. See also, 419, 420.
future, 418.
imperfect: see past-imperf.
imperfect part. 523; as subs. 638.
impero, foll. by acc. and infin. 451, 3.
impersonal verbs, 114.
impersonal verbs, with acc. 241, 242; with dat. 295.
in, prep. 558, 1.
-ina, term. of subs. 177, 2; 178, 2.
-inc, term of adv. 194, 9.
inceptives, 190. See also 136.
indeclinable nouns, 48.
indef. prons., use of, 383, *sqq.*
indicative, used predicatively, 392, *sqq.*; interrog. 408, *sqq.*; for subj. in oratio obliqua, 467, *obs.*; in Livy, 685.
indirect questions, 433.
Indo-European langg. 819.
indutiae, orthog. of, 822, 3, *obs.* 3.
inferior, 65, 3.
infinitive in ier, 123, 1, *obs.* 2.
infinitive, as subject, 505; as object, 506; accusative and infinitive, 507, *sqq.*; after verbs of *willingness, ability, etc.* 511, *sqq.*; infin. alone, after like verbs, 512; with predicative noun or adj. 513; after other verbs, 514; virtual subject of impers. verbs, 515; in exclamations, 516; historical, 517; circumlocution for future inf. 518; in *oratio obliqua*, 465; in questions in oratio obl. 469; after adjj. 506, *obs.* 2; after prep. ib. *obs.* 3.
infra, 556, 11.
ingratis, 195, 2.
inquam, 113, 6.
inquit, ellipsis of, 635, 2.
instar, constr. 263, *obs.*
inter, 556, 12; repeated, 650.
interest, constr. 283 (see *obss.*).
interior, 65, 3.
interjections, 170.
internecio, 52, 1.
interrogative particles, 409.
sentences, 408, *sqq.*
intra, 556, 13.
intransitive verbs, of 2nd conj. 136.
in pass. 120; 291, *obs.* 1.
with implied trans. sense, 235–237.
-inus, term. of adj. 182, 8; 184, 2.
invideo, constr. 291, *obs.* 5.
invitus, used adv. 344.
-io, term. of subs. 177, 1.
Ionicus a minori, 796.
ipse = *very, just*, 376.
ipse, constr. 377, 617.
(et) ipse, 618.
-is, term. of adv. 194, 7.
is, ea, id, use of, 370; attendant on rel. 371 (see also 379, *obs.* 2); emphatic, 372; dative and acc. of, omitted, 373; et is, isque, 374, 619.
iste, force of, 368; used contemptuously, 369.

ita, use of, 551; = *very*, 644, 1; in adjurations, 644, 2.
-itanus, term. of adj. 184, 4.
itaque, 585.
-itus, term. of adj. 182, 13.
-ium, term. of subs. 177, 1; 178, 4.
-ius, term. of adj. 182, 7.
-ivus, term. of adj. 181, 4.
J, power and changes of, 838.
jam dudum, pridem, with pres. 392, *obs.* 1; cf. 394, *obs.*
Janus = Dianus, 824, 34 *obs.* 3.
jocus, *-i* and *-a*, 54.
Jovis = Diovis, 824, 3; *obs.* 3.
jubeo, takes acc. and inf. 451, *obs.* 2.
jugerum, 53, 6.
Jupiter, 27.
juro, *-atus*, 524.
jussive: see imperative.
jussu, 52, 3.
jussu, etc. 313, *obs.* 1.
juvat, constr. 242, *obs.*
juvenis, (compar.), 65, 2.
juvo, takes acc. 291, *obs.* 2.
juxta, 556, 14.
K, when used, 4, *obs.* 1; 820, *obs.*
L, power of, 831; changed to r after another l, 831, 2.
labials, 826, *sqq.*
last word in sent. emphatic, 705.
latet, constr. 242, *obs.*
Latin, when and where spoken, 1.
languages derived from, ib.
Latin authors, lists of, 919, *sqq.*
laurus, *-i* and *-us*, 53, 4.
lavo, 149, 2, 2; cf. 144, 15.
-lentus, term. of adj. 183, 12.
letters introduced by Claudius, 821.
libens, used adv. 344.
liber, constr. 307, *obs.* 2.
libet, 126.
licet, 126.
licet, libet, with dat. 295; with double dat. ib. *obs.*
conj. with subj. 502.
liquet, 126.
liquids, 831, 832.
littera, sing. and pl. 51.
Livy, style of, 681, *sqq.*; his use of fig. lang. 682; of gen. after adj. 683; of collect. sing. 684; of indic. in *oratio obl.* 685; of fut. part. hypothetically, 688; of gerund and gerundive, 689; of preps. 690.
ll, power of, 831, 3.
locative case, 15, *obs.* 3; formation of, 881; in prons. 906, 911.
locus, *-i* and *-a*, 54.
locus, via, in abl. 329.
logaoedic verse, 798.
lucescit, 118.
ludus, sing. and pl. 51.
luxuria, *-ies*, 47, *obs.* 4.
M, power and changes of, 834; final often lost, ib. *obss.*
magni, parvi, constr. of, 281; see also 316 *obs.* 2.
magnus (compar.), 65.
male (compar.), 157.
male = non, 645.
malim, mallem, 446, *obs.* 2.
malo, 105.
malo, with subj. 447.
malus (compar.), 65.
marmor, sing. and pl. 51.
materia, *-ies*, 47, *obs.* 4.
meā, tuā, etc. 283, *note*.
medcor, medicor, with dat. 291, *obs.* 3.
mediocris, in Sall. 669, 2.
mei, tui, use of, 268, *obs.* 3.
memini, 113.
memini, constr. 279; esp. *obs.* 1.
-men, term of subs. 177, 5.
menda, *-um*, 53, 2.
-mentum, term of subs. 177, 6.
-met, with prons. 76, *obs.* 1.
metonymy, 604; also, 592, 2; in Livy, 682.
metres, 764.
meus, tuus, position of, 711.
middle use of verbs in Latin, 252.
militiae, constr. 258.
mille, 68, note 1.
millia, orthog. 831, 3.
minus = non, 645.
miseret, 115.
miseret, constr, 241 and 282.
miseror, with acc. 282, *obs.* 2.
-mnus, term of subs. 177, 8.
modal subs., constr. in abl. 312, *obs.*
moderor, constr. 291, *obs.* 6.
(non) modo ... sed etiam, 568.
mollitia, *-ies*, 47, *obs.* 4.
money, Roman, 929, *sqq.*
-monia, *-monium*, term. of subs. 177, 2; 178, 7, 180, 5.
monometer, etc. 764.
moods, 87.
mortales, in Sall. 669, 1.
motion towards, in acc. 259; in dat. 301.
multiplicative numerals, 71.
multum (compar.), 157.
multum, etc. with gen. 270.
multus (compar.), 65.
N, power and changes of, 833; when lost, ib.
nam, namque, 581; used ellipt. 581, *obs.* 1; as particle of emphasis, 654, *obs.*; second in sentence, 581, *obs.* 2.
-nam, adv. suffix, 197, 5.
names, Roman, 933, *sqq.*
names of towns, constr. 256, *sqq.*
national names used adject. 608.
natu, 52, 3.
natus, with abl. 310; with *acc.* (annos), 249; also 274, *obs.* 3.
nauci, constr. 281.
-nĕ, in single direct questions, 410; in double, 414, 416; in ind. questions, 436.
nĕ, neve, with imper. 417; with subj. equiv. to imper. 420.
nĕ, after verbs of *commanding*, etc. 451; of purpose, 454; with ut, 455.
ne ... quidem, 656.
necne, 414, *obs.*
nèmo = nullus, 599.
nequam, 61, compared, 65, 1.
neque, nec, with plur. verb, 569; see also 220, *obs.* 5.

nequeo, 110.
nequis, 83.
ne quis, etc. constr. 456.
nescio an, 438.
nescio quis, 626.
neuter of adj. as adv. 194, I. 2, 3.
neuter adj. in predicate, 227.
neuter-passives (so-called), 112.
neut.-pl. in -ia (3 Dec.), 35.
ni (nisi), 475.
nihil, as adv. 254; of persons, 624, *obs.*
nitor, foll. by infin. 451, *obs.* 2.
nix, stem of, 23, *obs.*
"*No*"; how expr. in Lat. 159, *b. obs.*
noctu, 323, *obs.* 1.
noli, periphr. for imperat. 420, *obs.* 1.
nolo, 105.
nolo, foll. by subj. 447.
nom. pl. in -ēs, 40, 7.
nominative sing., formation of, 844, *sqq.* do. plur. 882; in prons. 904.
nominative as subject, 231, complementary, 232; after Infin. 233; by attraction (instead of acc.) with Infin. 507, *obs.*
non, position of, 716, *obs.*
non modo (solum) ... sed, 568.
nonne, 411.
nos, noster = ego, meus, 358.
nostras, 79, *obs.* 5.
nostri, nostrûm, disting. 359.
nouns, peculiarities in use of, 589, *sqq.*; concr. for abstr. 589; abstr. for concr. 592; used collect. 590; plur. = abstr. 591; governing case of verb, 597; used adj. 598.
nŏvi, 113.
novus (compar.), 65, 2.
nubo, 138, 3.
nubo, with dat. 289.
nullus, gen. of in -i, 57, *obs.* 1.
nullus = non, 612.
num, in direct questions, 412; in indirect, 412, *obs.*; 435; in double questions, 416, *obs.* 2.
-num, adv. suffix, 197, 4.
numerals, 67, *sqq.*
numeral adverbs, 74.
nuntius, etym. and orthog. of, 822, 3, *obs.* 2.
nuper (compar.), 158.
nuper, etym. of, 839, 4.
-nus, term. of adj. 182, 2.
O, labial vowel, lighter than a, 3; changed to u, 19, p. 12, *obs.* 1; 30, *obs.* 3; dropped in carnis, 26, *obs.* 2.
-o, term. of adv. 194, I. 1.
ob, 556, 15,
object, direct, case of, 234; indirect, 287.
objective genitive, 268; combined with subjective gen. 268, *obs.* 2.
obliqua oratio, 464, *sqq.*
obliviscor, constr. 279.
ocior (compar.), 65, 2.
odi, 113.
oe (diphthong), 5, 6.
oleo, constr. of, 236.
oleo (to grow), in comps. 131, *a*, *obs.*
olli = illi, 80, *obs.* 1.
omnis for ullus, 386, *obs.*
opera, sing. and pl. 51.
opis, sing, and pl. 51; see also 52, 2.
oportet, 115.
oportet, constr. 241, *obs.*
(*ops*), 52, 2.
opto, constr. 447.
opus, with abl. 308; as adj. 308, *obs.*
-or, term. of subs. 177, 1.
oratio obliqua, 464, *sqq.*; questions in, 468.
order of words, 700, *sqq.*
ordinals, 69, 75.
orior (3 and 4 Conj.), 100, *obs.* 3.
oriundus, with abl. 310, and *obs.*
ortus, with abl. 310.
-osus, term. of adj. 182, 11.
otium, orthog. of, 822, 3, *obs.* 3.
P, power and changes of, 826.
paenitet, 115.
paenitet, constr. of, 241, 282.
paeon, 763.
pars, sing. and pl. 51.
particip. form in *-bundus*, 128, 5, *obs.*
participles, 88.
fut. act. how formed, 127; irreg. ib. *obs.*
participles, use of, 520, *sqq.*; deficiency of how supplied, 526; frequent use of, 530; used substantively, 638; become adjectives and gov. gen. 276, *fin.*
imperf. act. 523.
future act. 527.
perfect with act. sense, 524; of dep. verbs with pass. sense, 525.
gerundive, constr. of, 534, *sqq.*
particles, 652, *sqq.*
partim ... partim, 547.
partitive gen. 269, *sqq.*
parts of speech, 9.
parum = non, 645.
parvus, comp. 65, 1.
passive voice, inflected, 97, *sqq.*; personal endings of, 122, 1.
followed by a, ab, 234, *obs.* 1; used reflex. 252, 631.
perfect tenses of, with sum or fui, etc. 404.
passive of intrans. verbs, 291, *obs.* 1; when used, 632.
past tenses foll. by pres. 471, 2.
past-imperf. tense Indic. 394; of what is customary, 395; of what is attempted, 396; epistolary, 398.
past-imperf. of sum = perf. 397.
past-imperf. subj. = past-perf. 429, *obs.*
past-perf. or plup. indic. 402, for subj. 403; epistolary, 398.
patronymics, 179.
patronymics, use of, 609.
pause, in Hexameter, 775.
-pe, adv. suffix, 197, 6.
penes, 556, 16.
pentameters, 779.
per, 556, 17.
-per, adv. suffix, 197, 7.
perfect indic., its twofold meaning, 400; after postquam, simul atque, 401; for plup. subj. 428; used aoristically, 634.

perfect subj. after past indef. 423 (note); in Livy, 687.
perfect part. with act. sense, 524; of deponents, with pass. sense, 525; equiv. to verbal subs. 596; used subst. 640, 641; neuter of = abstr. subs. 528.
Pergamus, -*a*, 54.
personal endings, formation of, 122.
Phalaecian metre, v. Hendecasyllabics.
Pherecratean metre, 795.
-*piam*, adv. suffix, 197, 8.
piget, constr. 282.
pinus, *i* and *ūs*, 53, 4.
placet, constr. 515.
plebs, *plebes*, 53, 5.
plecto, 139, 34; with note.
plico and comps. 149, 8.
pluit, constr. of, 311, ex. 6.
pluperf. see past-perfect.
plural of 5th Decl. 47, *obs.* 1.
with diff. meaning from sing. 51.
plural, of concrete subs. for abstr. sing. 591.
of abstr. subs. 593, 594.
for sing. 603.
nos = ego, 358.
of verb after collect. noun, 222 (see *obs.* 1).
pluris, minoris, constr. 281.
plus, amplius, constr. 349.
polysyndeton, 560.
pone, 556, 18.
populares, in Sall. 669, 1.
position, syll. long by, 729.
possessive pronouns, 79.
poss. prons. often omitted, 363.
possum, 104.
post, 556, 19.
posterior, compar. 65, 3.
postquam, with perf. 401; with pluperfect, 401, *obs.*; with indic. and subj. 501.
potential subj. 429.
potior, constr. 315.
potus, part. 524.
prae, 557, 7.
quant. of in comp. 727.
praedicate, 213; concord of, 219.
praenomen, 933.
praeter, 556, 20.
praeterit, constr. 242, *obs.*
pransus, 524.
precis (*prex*), 52, 2.
prefixes, 168, 204.
prepositions, 164; how changed in comp. 167; inseparable, 168.
prepositions, gov. of, 533, *sqq.*; separated from case, 718; two prep. constr. 647, 648; repeated before 2nd subs. 651; government in comp. 238, *sqq.*; 246; repeated after comp. verb, 646.
present stem, how formed and strengthened, 124.
present tense, 392; historical, 393; after dum, 393, *obs.* 2; with jam dudum, 392, *obs.*
present subj. in hypoth. sent. 426.
priapean verse, 814.
primary words, 176.
primus, constr. of, 342.
prior, compar. 65, 3.
prius, compar. 157.
priusquam, constr. 501.
pro, 557, 8.
quant. of, in comp. 737.
pronominal inflexions, 898, *foll.*
pronouns, 76, *sqq.*
pronouns, uses of, 357, *sqq.*; personal, not expr. 358; reflexive, constr. 360; possessive, 363; often not expr. 363; demonstrative, 364; determinative, 370; relative, 378; indefinite, 383; peculiarities in use of, 614, *sqq.*
prope, compar. 157.
prope, prep. 556, 21.
proper names, peculiarities in use of, 606.
propior, compar. 65, 3.
proportional numerals, 72.
propter, 556, 22.
prosody, 725, *sqq.*
prospicio, provideo, constr. 291, *obs.* 7.
protasis, 424; not fully expr. 429.
pseudo-consonant stems, 28.
pudet, 115.
pudet, constr. of, 241, 282.
pyrrhic foot, 763.
Q, power of, 823; without u, 823, *obs.* 2.
quaeso, 113, 12.
quality, gen. of, 274; abl. of, 319.
quam qui, with superl. 355.
-*quam*, adv. suffix, 197, 9.
quamvis with subj. 502; with indic. 502, *obs.*
quando (causal), 495.
quanquam, with indic. 503; with subj. 503, *obs.*
quantity, 726; of contracted syllables, 728; of radical vowels, 731; of connecting vowels, 733; of derivatives and compounds, 734; of the reduplication of verbs, 736; of final vowels, 745, *sqq.*; of final consonants, 750.
quantity, marks of, 7.
-que, diff. from et, 563.
-*que*, adv. suffix, 197, 10.
questions, direct single, 408, *sqq.*; direct double, 414, *sqq.*
indirect, 433; appy. so, 437.
in *oratio obliqua*, 468, 469.
qui, 82.
comps. of, 83.
-*qui*, -*quin*, adv. suffix, 197, 11.
qui, concord of, 228.
with subj. 474; hypothetical, 475; causal, 476, 477; of purpose (= ut), 478; of result, 479; after dignus, etc. 480; after is, talis, tantus, 480, *obs.* 2; in such phr. as, sunt qui, 482; in parenthetical clauses, 621; position of rel. clauses, 709.
quī, adv. 82, *obs.*
quia, with indic. and subj. 487; quia and quod, disting. 487, *obs.* 1.
quid = *what of this?* 'and then,' 623; referring to persons, 624.
quidam, use of, 385; as softening an expr. 385, *obs.*
quidem, 656; after ille, 616.
(ne) quidem, 656.

quin, 461, *sqq.*
quippe, 492; ironical, 493.
quis and *qui*, 82.
quis and *qui*, comps. of, 831
quis, as enclit. 383, 625; nescio quis, 626; si quis, 627; used impatiently, 622.
quispiam, 384.
quisquam and ullus, 386, 387.
quisque, plur. after, 222, *obs.* 2; with superl. 356; used distributively, 388.
quo, conj. 453.
quod, a quasi-rel. 491; after verbs, giving a reason, 487, 489; non quod (quo)... sed quia, 488; non quin, ib. *obs.*; explanatory, 490; quod diceret, 487, *obs.* 2.
quod sciam, 475, *obs.*
quodsi, quodni, 491, *obs.* 2; 578.
quoi, *quoius*, 82, *obs.* 1.
quotus, quotusquisque, use of, 628.
quum with subj., of historical sequence, 484; causal, 483; with indic. 485, 486.
quum...tum, 566.
R, power and changes of, 832.
radical vowels, quant. of, 731.
rastrum, *i* and *a*, 54.
ravim, 52, 3.
re-, *red-*, prefix, 204; quant. of, 742.
rĕfert, constr. 283.
reflex. pron. 360, *sqq.*
verbs, 102; foll. by acc. 252.
rego, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 6.
relative, concord of, 228; govt. of, ib.; between two nouns of diff. gender, 229; used attributively, 380; with superl. clause, 381; with anteced. in pron. adj. 267, *obs.* 3; correlation with is.
relative adj., govt. of, 382.
reliquus, constr. 342.
remembering, verbs of, 279.
repetition of verb, 636; in part. form, 636, 3.
requies, 53, 5.
result, dat. of, 297.
rhythm, 761.
rideo, as trans. verb, 237.
roots, 171.
rostrum, *-a*, 51.
ruling, verbs of, 291, esp. *obs.* 6.
rure, rurī, rus, 258, 260.
S, power and changes of, 835; final, faintly sounded, ib. 5, *obs.*
saepe, compar. 158.
sal, sing. and pl. 51.
Sallust, style of, 662, *sqq.*; brevity of, 663; asyndeton, 664; antithesis, 665; use of hist. inf. 666; of alius...alius, 667; begins sentences with igitur, etc. 668; favourite words, 669; archaisms, 670.
salve, 113, 8.
sapio, constr. of, 236, ex. 2.
Sapphic metre, 800; long, 805; joined with Adonian, 801, *obs.* 4.
Saturnian verse, 815.
satus, with abl. 310.
scazon (limping) Iambus, 786.
se, sui, constr. and reference of, 360; in subord. propositions, 362.
se, *sed* (prefix), 204; etym. of, 916, *obs.*
secundum, 556, 23.
secus (noun), 52, 3.
secus, *secius*, 162.
sed, autem, 572.
semi-deponents, 112.
senarius, 782.
senex, decl. 32; compar. 65, 2.
sequence of tenses, 423.
sestertius, 930.
seu, sive, 570, *obs.* 3.
sexcenti, indef. 613.
si, 425, *sqq.*
si quis, force of, 627.
sibilants, 835, *sqq.*
sic, 551; in adjuration, 644, 2.
-sim, term. of adv. 196.
similis, constr. of, 277, 298, *obs.* 2.
simul atque, with perf. 401.
sine, 557, 9.
singular, wanting in some nouns, 50.
after two or more nouns, 22c, *obss.*
used collect. 590, 607.
sino, with subj. 447, *obs.* 1.
-sio, term. of noun, 177, 2.
sis = si vis, 105, *obs.* 2.
sitio, with acc. 237.
sive, seu, 570, *obs.* 3.
soleo, 112.
solus, 57.
solvendo esse, 532 (ii).
-sor (*-tor*), term. of subs. 177, 3.
spondaic lines, 770.
spondee, 763.
sponte, 52, 2.
stems, 12.
studeo, constr. 291, 3.
styles of some prose authors, 662; *sqq.*
subject and pred. 210; case of subject, 231; position of, 702.
subjective gen. 267; see also 268, *obss.*
subjunctive, 421; = imperat. 419, 420; hypothetical, 425; pres. and past tenses of in hypoth. sentences, 426, 427; potential (protasis suppressed), 429; with virtual, not actual, hypoth. 431; of softened affirmation, 430; *optativus*, 443, *sqq.*; *concessivus*, 432; *dubitativus*, 440; of purpose or result, 440, *sqq.*; in oratio obliqua, 467, *sqq.*; of repetition, 481.
subord. clauses, position of, 720.
subter, 558, 4.
suffixes, 174.
suggestus, *-um*, 53, 4.
sui, suus, 360–362.
sum, 92; stems of, *obs.* 2; comps. of, ib. *obs.* 3.
super, 558, 3.
superior, compar. 65, 3.
superlative, 63; formation of, 63, note 2; 896.
superlative, with quam, quantus, 353; with unus (omnium), 354; with quam qui, 355; with quisque, 356.
supines, 88, 2; formation of stem of, 127.
supines, constr. 342.
supra, 556, 24.
-sura, *-sus*, terms. of noun, 177, 2.
synaeresis, 766.
synalopha, 765.
synecdoche, 625.

SYNTAX, 209, *sqq.*; of concord and govt. 218.
T, power of, 829; sibilated before i and vowel, 822, *3*; lost in 3rd pers. sing. 829.
Tacitus, style of, 692; its variety, 695; peculiar idioms, 696; abruptness, 697; suggestiveness, 698; poetical complexion, 699.
taedet, 115.
taedet, constr. 241, 282.
tanti, etc. constr. 281, *obs.* 2.
tantum, etc. gen. after, 270.
Tartarus, -a, 54.
-tas, term. of subs. 180, *3*.
-te, suffix of prons. 77, *obs.* 1.
teaching, verbs of, 243.
teliambic verse, 818.
temperi, compar. 158.
tempero, constr. 291, *obs.* 6, 7.
tempestas, in Sall. 669, 1.
tempto, orthog. 826, 4. *obs.*
tenses, formation of, 121, foll.
sequence of, 423.
-ter, term. of adv. 194, 6.
tetrameter, trochaic, 787.
tetrameter, dactylic, 812.
thesis, 762.
-tia, -ties, term. of subs. 180, 2.
-tim, term. of adv. 196.
-tinus, term. of adj. 182, 14.
-tio, term. of noun, 177, 2.
-tor (*-sor*), *-trix*, term. of subs. 177, 3.
-torium, term. of subs. 177, 9.
totus, 57.
towns, names of, constr. 256, *sqq.*
tribrach, 763.
trimeter, Iambic, 782, 807.
trochaic dim. 788, 806.
tetram. 787.
trochee, 763.
-trum, term. of subs. 177, 4.
-tudo, term. of subs. 180, 4.
tum...tum, 566.
-tura, -tus, term. of subs. 177, 2.
U interchanged with *i*, 840.
ullus, 57.
ulterior, compar. 65, *3*.
ultra, 556, 26.
-ulus, -ula, -ulum, dim. suffix, 178, 1; term. of adj. 181, 7.
unus, 57; voc. of, ib.; in *plur.* 67, *obs.*
ut, of purpose, etc. 449, *sqq.*; concessive, 432; explanatory, 450; after verbs of commanding, etc. 451, 452; after verbs of fearing, 460.
ut ne, 455.
ut non and ne, 456.
ut qui, utpote qui, 477.
uter, 57.
uterumque, 83, 2.
uterque, plur. after, 222, *obs.* 2.
utinam, 446.
utique, 657.
utor, with abl. *315*.
-utus, term. of adj. 182, *13*.
-uus, term. of adj. 181, *5*.
V, power and changes of, 839.
vaco, with dat. 289.
vacuus, constr. 307, *obs.* 2.
vae, with dat. 250, *obs.* 2.
vapulo, 112.
vas, plur. of (*vasa*), 53, 6.
-ve, -vel, 570.
veneo (vaeneo), 112.
venit in mentem, constr. 279, *obs.* 5.
venus (vae-), 53, 4.
verbs, 85; irreg. 104; defect. *113*; impers. *114*; derivative, 186, *sqq.*
verbs, of being, etc. constr. 232; of teaching, 241; of concealing, 243; of asking, 244; of remembering and forgetting, 279; of accusing, etc. 280; of assisting, resisting, commanding, favouring, envying, etc. 291 (and see the several Cases); of separating, removing, 306; of filling and opp. 317.
ellipsis of, 635.
repetition of, 636.
verbere, 52, 2.
vero, verum, 573, 574; tum vero, 660.
versus, prep. 556, 27.
versus, Adonius, 800; Hipponacteus, 786 (note).
octonarius, 787.
vescor, with abl. 315; with acc. ib. *obs.* 2.
vesper, vespera, 53, 2.
vestras, 79, *obs.* 5.
vestri and -um, 273, *obs.* 3.
veto, with inf. 451, *obs.* 2.
vicis, 52, 2.
videor, constr. of, 232, *obs.*; redundant 679.
vis, 52, 2.
vocative of 2nd decl. in ī, 19, *obs.* 4.
vocative, use of, 335; same as nom. 337; with O, 336; formation of, 859.
volo, 105.
volo, with subj. 447; with inf. 512.
vowels, classification of, 3; see also 840.
wish, subj. of, 443, *sqq.*
X, an addition to alph. 820; where first found, 837, *obs.*; its changes, ib. 2.
"Yes," how expr. 159, *obs.*; 574.
Z, found in earliest alph. 820; its power and uses, 836.
zeugma, 643.

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
LONDON AND BECCLES.

FROM

MR. MURRAY'S EDUCATIONAL LIST

Complete Educational Catalogue post free on application.

CLASSICS.

LATIN GRAMMAR, COMPOSITION AND LITERATURE.

"Clari Romani" Series. Edited by W. L. Paine, M.A., Whitgift Grammar School, Croydon.

The object of this series is to supply beginners with Latin narrative which can be easily read. Care has therefore been taken to select interesting stories, and to simplify the text where it has seemed too difficult.

A full vocabulary and historical appendix are included in each volume, but there are no notes. It has been thought best to let the master decide the amount of help in translation which the class ought to receive.

For those who intend further to pursue the study of the language, the series endeavours to satisfy the claims of good scholarship by providing a set of exercises designed to test their knowledge of accidence, syntax, and composition. This portion of the book is interleaved, as the authors are of opinion that it is a good thing for the beginner to make his own record of progress, and to keep it under the same cover as the book he has read.

LIST OF SERIES.

AGRICOLA. By W. L. PAINE, M.A., Whitgift Grammar School.

CAMILLUS. By C. H. BROADBENT, B.A., Bradford Grammar School.

ÆMILIUS PAULUS. By F. R. DALE, B.A., Leeds Grammar School.

METELLUS AND MARIUS (Jugurthine War). By A. J. SCHOOLING, B.A., Liverpool Institute.

JULIUS CÆSAR. By H. J. DAKERS, M.A., Manchester Grammar School.

Limen: a First Latin Book. By W. C. Flamstead Walters, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature in King's College, London; formerly Master in Christ's College, N.Z.; and R. S. Conway, Litt.D., Professor of Latin in the University of Manchester; formerly Fellow of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. *2s. 6d.* And in Two Parts, *1s. 6d.* each.

Appendix for Teachers, containing suggestions on the Oral Method. *6d.*

This *First Latin Book*, written by two well-known classical scholars who have had wide experience as teachers, is on the lines of the reforms advocated by the Classical Association. It serves both as a Reader and a Grammar, and takes the pupil up to the standard of University Matriculation.

Latin Translation at Sight. Passages of Graduated Difficulty, carefully selected from Latin Authors, with Notes. By T. D. Hall, M.A., Fellow of University College, London. *Revised Edition.* Crown 8vo. *1s.*

Principia Latina, Part I. First Latin Course. Grammar, Delectus, Exercises and Vocabularies. New (1906) Edition, thoroughly revised, so as to meet the requirements of Modern Teachers and Scholars. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Appendix to Part I. Additional Exercises. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.*
Part II. Reading Book. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*
Part III. Poetry. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*
Part IV. Prose Composition. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

A First Latin Book. Comprising Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives, with the Verbs. With numerous and varied Exercises, designed for Oral Practice. Both old and new order of Cases given. By T. D. Hall, M.A. Enlarged Edition, including the Passive Verb. 16mo. *2s.*

Latin Literature. By J. W. Mackail, Professor of Poetry in the University of Oxford. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

CLASSICAL DICTIONARIES.

A First Latin-English Dictionary. By A. C. Ainger, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge; late Assistant Master at Eton College. Large Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Smaller Latin-English Dictionary. With a Separate Dictionary of Proper Names, Table of Roman Moneys, &c. Thoroughly revised and in great part rewritten. Edited by Sir Wm. Smith and T. D. Hall, M.A. The Etymological portion by John K. Ingram, LL.D. *7s. 6d.*

Classical Dictionaries—CONTINUED.

Complete Latin-English Dictionary. Based on the Works of Forcellini and Freund. With Tables of the Roman Calendar, Measures, Weights, Money, and a Dictionary of Proper Names. By Sir Wm. Smith, D.C.L., LL.D. Medium 8vo. 22nd Edition. *16s.*

Copious and Critical English-Latin Dictionary Compiled from Original Sources. By Sir Wm. Smith. D.C.L., and T. D. Hall, M.A. 5th Impression. Medium 8vo. *16s.*

Smaller English-Latin Dictionary. Abridged from the above Work, by Sir Wm. Smith and T. D. Hall, M.A., for the use of Junior Classes. 19th Impression. Square 12mo. *7s. 6d.*

Smaller Classical Dictionary. With 200 Woodcuts. In great part re-written by G. E. Marindin, M.A. sometime Assistant-Master at Eton College. 28th Impression. *7s. 6d.*

Classical Dictionary of Mythology, Biography and Geography. Compiled from Sir Wm. Smith's larger Dictionaries. In great part re-written by G. E. Marindin, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, sometime Assistant-Master at Eton College. With over 800 Woodcuts. Thoroughly Revised Edition. 8vo. *18s.*

Smaller Dictionary of Antiquities. Abridged from Sir Wm. Smith's larger Dictionary. With 200 Woodcuts. 13th Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Concise Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities. Based on Sir Wm. Smith's larger Dictionary, and Incorporating the Results of Modern Research. Edited by F. Warre Cornish, M.A., Vice-Provost of Eton College. With over 1,100 Illustrations taken from the best examples of Ancient Art. Medium 8vo. *21s.*

For complete list of Classical Dictionaries see Mr. Murray's Educational Catalogue.

GREEK GRAMMAR, COMPOSITION AND LITERATURE.

BY JOHN THOMPSON, M.A.,
Late Scholar of Christ's College, Cambridge;
Headmaster of the High School, Dublin.

An Elementary Greek Grammar for Schools. Crown 8vo. Part I—Accidence, *1s. 6d.* Part II—Syntax, *1s. 6d.*: Complete, with Indexes, *3s.*

Greek Grammar, Accidence and Syntax for Schools and Colleges. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Greek Grammar, Composition and Literature—CONTINUED.

BY SIR WILLIAM SMITH.

Initia Græca, Part I. A First Greek Course, containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, and Vocabularies. New (1906) Edition, carefully revised and simplified, special attention being given to Attic forms. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

NEW EDITION (1906).—The new feature of this edition is that the grammar has been simplified. The exercises and numbers of sections are unchanged, so no confusion will arise from using it in conjunction with editions published from 1898 onward.

Appendix to Part I. Additional Exercises, with Examination Papers. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Part II. A Reading Book. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Part III. Prose Composition. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

These texts have been specially prepared with the intention of carrying out the recommendations of the Classical Association —that Greek should be taught for reading purposes, and not for the acquisition of a mass of useless grammatical detail.

The "Andromache" of Euripides. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, and Appendix, by **Gilbert Norwood, B.A.,** Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Assistant Lecturer in Classics in the Victoria University of Manchester. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Selections from Thucydides, Book VI [§§ 30—53 and 60—105 (end)]. The First Part of the Sicilian Expedition. Edited, for Beginners in Greek, with Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary and Maps, by **Percy Ure,** Assistant Lecturer in Greek, University College, Cardiff. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Murray's Handy Classical Maps. Edited by **G. B. Grundy, M.A., D.Litt.,** Corpus Christi College, Oxford.

LIST OF MAPS.

GRÆCIA—GALLIA—BRITANNIA—HISPANIA—ITALIA—GERMANIA —PALESTINE, SYRIA, etc.—THE ROMAN EMPIRE—THE EASTERN EMPIRES—ASIA MINOR—MARE ÆGÆUM, &c.

The Maps are issued in cloth at *2s.* and *3s.*, and in paper wrappers at *1s.* net and *1s. 6d.* net. Full particulars will be sent free on application.

Murray's Small Classical Atlas for Schools. Edited by **G. B. Grundy, M.A., D.Litt.,** Fellow and Tutor of Corpus Christi College, Oxford. Folio ($14\frac{1}{4} \times 9\frac{3}{4}$ in.). *6s.*

LONDON: JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.

BSW.7'5M.210

00054499

Digitized with financial assistance from the
Government of Maharashtra
on 23 January, 2019